OLD NORSE SERIES · VOLUME 49

The King's Mirror

Konungs skuggsjá

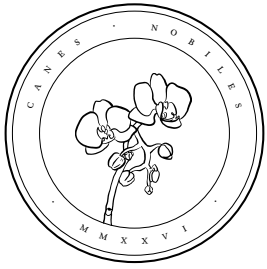
The King's Mirror

A Father Instructs His Son

---

with a word-for-word interlinear English translation

preserving the original word order

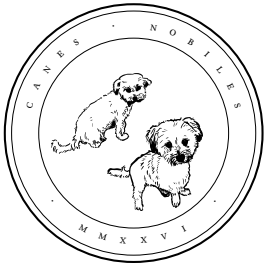


CANES NOBILES · MMXXVI

Copyright © 2026 Christopher Hench
All rights reserved

Published by Canes Nobiles
canesnobiles.com

The source text is in the public domain



Volume 49 of the Canes Nobiles Old Norse interlinear texts

The Old Norse text follows R. Keyser, P. A. Munch, and C. R. Unger, Speculum regale. Konungs-skuggsjá. Konge-speilet (Christiania, 1848)

Translated and composed with AI, edited by Christopher Hench
Artwork by Esther Steves

CONTENTS

I · Prologue: The Paths of Manners 9
II · The Son Comes to His Father 16
III · The Merchant's Life 20
IV · More Counsel for the Merchant 24
V · The Winds and the Seasons 32
VI · Tides, Moon, and Sun 42
VII · Why the Sun Grows Faster in the North 47
VIII · A Lighter Talk 54
IX · Wonders of Norway 58
X · The Wonders of Ireland 63
XI · Irish Saints and Marvels 71
XII · The Whales of Iceland's Sea 84
XIII · The Fire and Springs of Iceland 95
XIV · Torment-Places 101
XV · More Wonders of Iceland 107
XVI · Greenland's Seas 110
XVII · Why Men Go to Greenland 119
XVIII · How the Greenlanders Live 124

XIX · The Northern Lights and the Zones 125
XX · Smoke in the Northern Lights 135
XXI · The South Wind 139
XXII · When to Sail 143
XXIII · Spring Sailing 150
XXIV · Turning to the King's Court 153
XXV · The King's Household 157
XXVI · Why Men Serve the King 161
XXVII · The Guests and Other House-Carls 165
XXVIII · Why Rich Men Take the King's Name 171
XXIX · The Retainers 174
XXX · How to Come Before the King 181
XXXI · Why Go Cloakless 189
XXXII · Speaking to the King 192
XXXIII · Why the Plural to Kings 195
XXXIV · The Plural of Honor 198
XXXV · Year-Failure in the Realm 204
XXXVI · How a Realm Is Ruined 208
XXXVII · A Retainer's Conduct 221
XXXVIII · Fighting on Horseback 242
XXXIX · Weapons for a Siege 246
XL · Courtesy, Manners, and Wit 255
XLI · Moderation in Fortune 262
XLII · Examples of Pride and Humility 269
XLIII · The King's Duty 287
XLIV · The King's Night Watch 293

XLV · The Four Sisters 297
XLVI · Judgments Without Mercy 309
XLVII · Lucifer and the Serpent 311
XLVIII · Glosses and Their Roots 332
XLIX · Kings Under Judgment 341
L · Judgments of Mercy 345
LI · Why the Judgments Differed 350
LII · Peter and Judas 353
LIII · When God Changed a Judgment 355
LIV · The King's Prayer 362
LV · The King's Day 383
LVI · Wisdom's Own Words 387
LVII · The Prince and the Scales 394
LVIII · Saint Laurence and Stephanus 403
LIX · Four Things to Shut Out 410
LX · Moses' Anger 416
LXI · Punishment as a Good Work 419
LXII · David's Judgments 422
LXIII · Saul and David 424
LXIV · Solomon's Judgment 455
LXV · Shimei's Death 458
LXVI · Adonijah and Abishag 462
LXVII · Promises Broken for Right 477
LXVIII · What to Grant 480
LXIX · The Two Halls of God 484
LXX · King and Bishop 494

The author surveys all the estates and sees many men lost on byways that lead from good manners, through ignorance, sloth, fear of mockery, or wickedness. He goes to his wise and kind father, who gladly promises to teach him. He asks first of merchants, then of kings, of learned men, and last of farmers. Wise listeners bid him write the talks down; he names the book the King's Mirror, meant for kings yet open to all, withholds his own name lest envy reject it, asks readers to amend it, and begins with how a son greets his father.

Ek leidda allar iðróttir fyrir augu hugar, ok rannsakaða
I led all skills before (the)-eyes of-mind and searched
ek með athygli alla siðu hverrar iðróttar, þá sá ek mikinn
I with attention all customs of-every skill then saw I great
fjölda mœðask í villistigum þeim, er frá hölluðu
multitude tire-themselves in error-paths those which from turned
siðligum þjóðgötum í villiáttir úsiða, ok týndusk í
mannerly highways into error-directions of-ill-customs and were-lost in
úbyggiligum dölum þeir, er þá stigu géngu, er mest lágu
uninhabitable dales they who those paths walked which most lay
forbrekkis, þvíat þeir þreyttusk af langri mœði runnins
downhill because they wearied-themselves from long weariness of-(the)-run
vegar ok höfðu eigi brekkumegin til uppgöngu, ok eigi fundu
way and had not climbing-strength for ascent and not found
þeir gagnstigu þá, er þá mætti leiða til þjóðvega siða.
they short-paths those which them might lead to highways of-customs
Sá fjöldi sýndisk mér týnask með ýmsum atburðum: sumir
That multitude seemed to-me to-be-lost by various events some
fyrir fáfrœði sakir, þvíat villistígar váru svá mjök troðnir, at
for ignorance's sake because error-paths were so much trodden that
þeir sýndusk fýsiligstir at ganga, ok hugðu fáfróðir menn,
they seemed most-desirable to walk and thought ignorant men

at þat væri þjóðgötur, þvíat þar var mestr fjöldinn á; en
that that were highways because there was greatest the-multitude on but
sumir týndusk fyrir leti sakir ok rœktarleysi; sumir hræddusk
some were-lost for sloth's sake and neglect some feared
háð ok spott, ef þeir géngi sér einir at vegum; en
mockery and scorn if they walked by-themselves alone on ways but
sumum gékk til þrályndi ok illska með ýmsum girndum.
to-some went to obstinacy and wickedness with various desires
En þá er ek hafða sét hafnan siðsemi ok tjón hafnanda,
But then when I had seen forsaking of-good-manners and (the)-loss of-(the)-forsaker
þá hugða ek með mér, hvern stig er ek skylda ganga þann,
then thought I with myself which path that I should walk that
er ek yrða eigi einn saman á staddr á þeim veg, er ek
which I became not alone together on placed on that way which I
tœka ganga; þó eigi þá stigu, er ek sá flesta þreytask á,
took to-walk though not those paths which I saw most tire-themselves on
at eigi mœddi mik brekkumegin, ef ek fýstumk aptr at hverfa.
that not wearied me climbing-strength if I desired back to turn
En með því at faðir minn var lifandi ok unni mér vel,
But with that that father my was living and loved me well
þektisk mér at leita hans ráðagerðar, heldr en ek tœka þat
seemed-good to-me to seek his counsel rather than I took that
ráð með skjótu áliti, er hánum sýndisk eigi. Ok rann ek
counsel with quick judgment which to-him seemed not And ran I
til föður míns skyndiliga, ok birta ek fyrir hánum alt mitt
to father my hastily and disclosed I before him all my
erendi. En fyrir því at faðir minn var bæði vitr ok góðviljaðr,
errand But for that that father my was both wise and well-meaning
þá fann ek hann í góðu skapi, þegar er hann heyrði, at
then found I him in good mood as-soon as he heard that
þat var erendi mitt, at leita nýtra siða; ok lofaði hann mér
that was errand my to seek useful manners and allowed he me

at spyrja slíks, er ek vilda, um siða athöfn eða grein í
to ask such as I wished about customs' practice or distinction in
hverri iðrótt; ok hét því at gera mér alla siðu kunna til
every skill and promised that to make me all customs known to
hverrar iðróttar, er ek spurða, þá sem makligstir væri hverri
every skill which I asked those as most-fitting were to-every
iðrótt at fylgja; ok hann hét at sýna mér til viðsýndar þá
skill to follow and he promised to show me for viewing those
villistigu, er flestir byrja með upphafi, þeir er snúask frá
error-paths which most begin with beginning those who turn-themselves from
siðligum þjóðvegum; ok svá hét hann at sýna mér gegnliga
mannerly highways and so promised he to show me straight
gagnstigu, þeim er aptr vilja hverfa af villiáttum til þjóðvega.
short-paths to-those who back will turn from error-directions to highways
En því næst byrjaða ek rœðu mína með upphafligri spurning
But that next began I speech my with initial question
um kaupmanna iðróttir ok þeirra siðu. En at lokinni þeirri
about merchants' skills and their customs But at ended that
rœðu ok spurningum ok fengnum svörum, þá dirfðumk ek
speech and questions and gotten answers then dared I
í rœðu ok spurningum, ok steig ek hátt upp til iðrótta
in speech and questions and climbed I high up to skills'
umrœðu, þvíat ek tók þar næst at spyrja ok forvitna um
discussion because I took there next to ask and be-curious about
konungliga siðu ok annarra stórhöfðingja ok þeirra manna,
kingly customs and of-other great-chieftains and of-those men
er þeim fylgja eða þjóna. Ok eigi lét ek með öllu úspurt
who them follow or serve And not left I with all unasked
um lærðra manna iðróttir eða þeirra siðu. En þó lauk minni
about learned men's skills or their customs But yet ended my

spurning með því, at ek rœdda um iðrótt bónda ok
questioning with that that I talked about (the)-skill of-(the)-farmer and
fjölmennis þess, er land byggvir, ok þeirra siðu ok athæfi.
of-(the)-multitude that which land inhabits and their customs and conduct
En þá er ek hafða fengit gnóg svör ok vitrlig af munni
But then when I had gotten enough answers and wise from (the)-mouth
föður míns um alla hluti, er ek spurða, þá váru nær
of-father my about all things which I asked then were near
staddir göfgir menn ok spakir, þeir er heyrðu mína spurning
present noble men and wise those who heard my questioning
ok hans vitrlig andsvör ok sannlig; þá báðu þeir þess, at
and his wise answers and true then asked they of-that that
ek skylda alla okra rœðu skrifa ok bóksetja, at eigi yrði
I should all our-two's talk write and set-in-a-book that not became
sú rœða svá skjótt með tjónum, sem vér þögnuðum, heldr
that talk so quickly with losses as we fell-silent rather
væri hon þá mörgum nytsamligt gaman, er eigi máttu
were it then to-many useful entertainment who not could
halda skemtan af oss, er nær várum þeirri rœðu.
hold enjoyment from us who near were that talk
En ek gerða bæði eptir bœn þeirra ok ráðum, ok studerða
But I did both after prayer their and counsels and studied
ek mikit í þeim rœðum með athugasamligu minni, ok setta
I much in those talks with attentive memory and set
ek allar þær rœður í eina bók, eigi at eins til eyrna
I all those talks into one book not at only for ears'
gamans ok skjóttíndrar skemtunar þeim er heyra, heldr til
amusement and quick-passing entertainment for-those who hear rather for
margfaldrar nytsemdar öllum þeim, er með réttum athuga
manifold usefulness to-all those who with right attention
nema þessa bók ok fylgja því öllu vel, er býðr í bókinni.
learn this book and follow that all well which bids in the-book

En bókin er svá gör, at þó mun fróðleikr í þykkja ok
But the-book is so made that yet will learning in-it seem and
skemtan, ok þó mikit gagn, at þat sé vel numit, ok gætt
entertainment and yet much profit that it be well learned and kept
eptir því er ritat er í bókinni. En sá er hann hefir
according-to that which written is in the-book But he who he has
fulla skilning ok rétta, þá verðr hann þess varr, at sú
full understanding and right then becomes he of-that aware that that
er meiri bók er glósa þarf en hin er rituð er.
is (the)-greater book which gloss needs than the-other which written is
En bókinni er gefit fagrt nafn, þvíat hon heitir Speculum
But to-the-book is given fair name because it is-called Speculum
regale, eigi fyrir drambs sakir þess er ritaði, nema fyrir þá
regale not for pride's sake of-him who wrote but for that
sök at þeim skyldi þykkja girniligri til náms er heyrði, ok
cause that to-them should seem more-desirable for learning who heard and
fyrir þá sök aðra, at hverr er forvitnask vill um góða
for that cause (the)-other that whoever that be-curious will about good
siðu eða hœvesku, eða fögr ok sannlig orðalög, þá mun hann
customs or courtesy or fair and true phrasings then will he
þar finna ok sjá í bókinni svá sem margar líkneskjur eða
there find and see in the-book so as many images or
allskyns smíði í skírri skuggsjá. En fyrir því heitir konungs
all-kinds handiwork in clear mirror But for that is-called (the)-king's
skuggsjá, at þar er víst ritat um konunga siðu sem
mirror that there is surely written about kings' customs as
annarra manna, enda er hann hæstr at nafni, ok á hann
of-other men moreover is he highest in name and ought he
at fylgja fegrstum siðum, ok hans hirð ok allir aðrir hans
to follow fairest customs and his court and all other his
þjónustumenn, at allar þjóðir taki af þeim góð dœmi til
servants that all peoples take from them good examples for

ráðvendi ok góðrar meðferðar ok allra annarra hœveskra siða.
uprightness and good conduct and of-all other courteous customs
Enda á konungrinn hverr sem einn at sjá opt í þessa
Moreover ought the-king each as one to look often into this
skuggsján, ok líta fyrst á sjálfs síns siðu, ok því næst allra
the-mirror and look first on of-self his customs and that next of-all
annarra þeirra, er undir hánum eru; sœma alla þá, er góða
others those who under him are honor all those who good
siðu hafa, en temja þá til góðra siða með aga, er eigi
customs have but tame those to good customs with discipline who not
megu ógnarlaust numit fá. En þóat þat nafn sé heldr á, at
can without-fear learned get But though that name be rather on that
konungs skuggsjón sé kallat, þá er hon þó skipuð öllum at
(the)-king's mirror it-be called then is it yet appointed for-all as
heimild svá sem almenningr, þvíat hverjum er kostr í at sjá,
right so as commons because to-each is choice in to look
er vill, ok skygna, hvárt er heldr vill, um siðu sjálfs síns
who wishes and peer whichever that rather wishes about customs of-self his
eða alla aðra siðu, þá er þar má í finna, ok þess vænti
or all other customs those which there may in find and that expect
ek, at sá mun eigi úfróðr vera taldr eða með úsiðamönnum,
I that he will not unlearned be counted or among ill-mannered-men
er vel fylgir því öllu, er þar má í finna, ok til hans
who well follows that all which there may in find and to his
siðar hœfir, hvat manni sem hann er at tegund eða nafni.
manner befits whatever man that he is in kind or name
En ef nökkurir girnask eða forvitnask at heyra eða nema
But if any desire or are-curious to hear or learn
þessa bók, þá er eigi nauðsyn at forvitnask þess nafn, eða
this book then is not need to be-curious-about his name or
hvat manna sá var, er samansetti ok ritaði þessa bók, at
what of-men he was who composed and wrote this book that

eigi berisk svá til, at nökkurr hafni því, sem til nytsemdar
not happen so to-it that any reject that which for usefulness
má þar í finnask, annathvárt fyrir háðungar sakir eða
may there in be-found either for mockery's sake or
öfundar, eða einshvers fjándskapar við þann er gerði.
envy's or of-some enmity toward him who made-it
En þess viljum vér gjarna beiða, er öllum er vel veitanda,
But of-this will we gladly ask which to-all is well to-grant
at þeir góðir menn, er bókina heyra vandliga með athygli,
that those good men who the-book hear carefully with attention
þá rannsaki með réttu áliti, ef nökkurir hlutir finnask þeir,
then examine with right judgment if any things be-found those
er nauðsynligir þykkja bókinni vera, ok þar eru eigi áðr í
which necessary seem to-the-book to-be and there are not before in
settir, annathvárt um siða athöfn eða vitrlig ok viðrkvæmilig
set either about customs' practice or wise and fitting
orðalög, þá auki til með góðri skipan; svá ok ef nökkurir
phrasings then add to-it with good arrangement so also if any
hlutir finnask þeir þar í skipaðir, er spilla þykki fyrir
things be-found those there in arranged which spoil seem for
bókinni, ok vár skipan hefir ofmælt, þá dœmi þat með
the-book and our arrangement has overstated then judge that with
sannsýni af ok bœti með góðum vilja yfir vára fáfrœði,
justice off and amend with good will over our ignorance
ok virði vel ok góðgjarnliga fyrir oss várt starf; þvíat eigi
and value well and kindly for us our labor because not
störfuðum vér fyrir drambs sakir, heldr fyrir góðvilja sakir
labored we for pride's sake rather for goodwill's sake
við alla þá, er þurfa þykkisk ok girnisk slíks fróðleiks.
toward all those who need think-themselves and desire such learning

En þá er ek gékk til fundar við föður minn um þenna
But then when I went to meeting with father my about this
spurdaga, er nú höfum vér um rœtt, þá lærða ek alla
question-day which now have we about talked then taught I all
í fyrsta orði, er ek kvadda hann, hversu hverjum byrjar
in (the)-first word when I greeted him how to-each befits
at kveðja eða mæla við sinn föður.
to greet or speak with his father

II · THE SON COMES TO HIS FATHER

The son greets his father and asks him to bear with his questions, and the father welcomes his only son. The son says the whole land holds his father wise, a counselor of kings, and asks for the first letters of his wisdom. The father, glad to leave his wealth to a true son, teaches that wisdom begins in the fear of God, a fear of love, felt whenever a man desires wrong. When the son asks for more, the father says that from this alphabet come the skills a man needs, whether king's man, farmer, or merchant.

SON Góðan dag, herra minn! Ek em svá kominn til yðars
Good day lord my I am so come to your
fundar sem byrjar hlýðnum syni ok lítillátum, at finna
meeting as befits an-obedient son and humble to meet
ástsamligan föður ok göfgan, ok vil ek þess yðr biðja, at
a-loving father and noble and will I this you ask that
þér hafit þolinmœði at hlýða þeim hlutum, er mik fýsir
you have patience to listen to-those things which me urges
at spyrja, en lítillæti at svara með góðfýsi spurðum hlutum.
to ask but humility to answer with goodwill asked things

FATHER Með því at þú ert einga son minn, þá líkar mér vel, at
With that that you are only son my then pleases me well that
þú komir opt til míns fundar, þvíat skylt væri tal okkart um
you come often to my meeting because fitting were talk our-two's about
marga hluti; ok vil ek gjarna hlýða því, er þú vilt spurt hafa,
many things and will I gladly listen to-that which you will asked have
ok veita andsvör þeim hlutum, er ek em með skynsemd spurðr.
and give answers to-those things which I am with good-sense asked
SON Ek heyri þat alþýðu vitni, sem ek ætla satt vera um vizku
I hear that common-folk's witness which I think true to-be about wisdom
yðra, at varla fái vitrara mann í þessu landi, en þér erut,
your that hardly can-one-get wiser man in this land than you are
til allrar speki, þvíat til yðarrar orlausnar stunda allir þeir, er
for all wisdom because to your solution strive all those who
vandamálum eigu at skipta; enda heyri ek ok, at svá væri, þá
difficult-cases have to deal-with moreover hear I also that so were then
er þér várut með konungum, at í yðrum munni þóttu vera
when you were with kings that in your mouth seemed to-be
öll landráð, svá lögmál ok sættargerðir ok allskonar speki. Nú
all land-counsels so law and settlements and all-kinds wisdom Now
með því at ek em hœfiligr arfi yðarr til fjárgæzlu, þa vilda
with that that I am fitting heir your to wealth-keeping then would-wish
ek ok gjarna verða nökkurs hluttakari af arfi spektar
I also gladly become somewhat sharer of (the)-inheritance of-wisdom
yðarrar, ok vilda ek at þér lærðit mik, hvert stafrof eða
your and would-wish I that you taught me which alphabet or
upphaf, er ek mega þat nema af yðr, at ek mega þaðan af
beginning that I may it learn from you that I may thence from
lesa allar ritningar mannvits yðars, ok svá stíga ek í yður
read all writings of-understanding your and so step I into your

fótspor; þvíat ek vænti, ef yðar missir við, at margir muni á þat
footsteps because I expect if of-you lacks at-it that many will on that
stunda, at þér munit mik lærðan hafa eptir yðrum siðum.
look that you will me taught have according-to your customs
FATHER Þessum rœðum þykki mér bæði gott at hlýða ok em ek
These speeches seem to-me both good to listen-to and am I
þó fúss at svara; þvíat þat er mér mikil huggan, at ek hefi
yet eager to answer because that is to-me great consolation that I have
til þess leift eptir mik stór auðœfi, at réttr son minn skyli
for that left after me great riches that a-right son my should
eptir mik njóta; þvíat ek munda varla virða sem minn son
after me enjoy because I would hardly value as-if my son
væri, þóat ek hefða getinn, ef fífl væri. En ef þú vilt nema
were though I had begotten if a-fool were But if you will learn
mannvit, þá vil ek sýna þér þann grundvöll, er upphaf er
understanding then will I show you that foundation which beginning is
allrar speki, eptir því sem einn höfuðspekingr hefir mælt:
of-all wisdom according-to that as one chief-sage has spoken
þat er upphaf speki at hræðask almáttkan guð. En hann
that is (the)-beginning of-wisdom to fear almighty God But him
skal þó eigi hræðask sem úvin heldr með ástarhræzlu,
shall-one yet not fear as-if an-enemy rather with love's-fear
svá sem guðs son lærði þann er spurði, hvat væri upphaf
so as God's son taught him who asked what were (the)-beginning
boðorða, en guðs son vísaði hánum til þeirrar ritningar, er
of-commandments but God's son directed him to that scripture which
svá mælti: elskaðu guð af öllu hjarta þínu, ok af öllu afli
so spoke love-you God with all heart your and with all strength
þínu, ok af öllum mætti þínum. Nú skal guði unna umfram
your and with all might your Now shall-one God love above
hvetvetna, en hræðask guð hvert sinni, er maðr girnisk rangra
everything but fear God each time when a-man desires wrong

hluta, ok láta þó laust ranga girnd fyrir guðs sakir, þóat
things and let yet loose (the)-wrong desire for God's sake though
maðr hafi dirfð á at halda fyrir manna sakir. Nú með því
a-man have daring for-it to hold-on for men's sake Now with that
at þú leitar, hvat stafrof eða grundvöllr sé til spektarnáms, þá
that you seek what alphabet or foundation be for wisdom-learning then
er þetta eitt satt upphaf ok ekki annat. En sá er þetta nemr
is this one true beginning and not other But he who this learns
ok gætir, þá missir sá eigi sannrar spektar ok allrar gœzku.
and keeps then misses he not true wisdom and all goodness

SON Þetta eru víst ástsemdar ráð, sem af yðr er ván,
These are surely love's counsels as from you is expected
ok er þó gott ok auðnæmligt hverjum, er gipta fylgir,
and is yet good and easy-to-learn for-each whom luck follows
en þar munu þó margir hlutir verða fylgja, þeir er til
but there will yet many things have to-follow those which to
iðrótta heyra, ef maðr skal vitr heita.
skills belong if a-man shall wise be-called

FATHER Þetta er upphaf allra góðra hluta ok stafrof, en
This is (the)-beginning of-all good things and alphabet but
af stafrofi kynnask allar bœkr, ok er æ því betr, er fleiri
from alphabet become-known all books and is ever the better as more
iðróttir fylgja þessu; þviat af iðróttum verðr maðr fróðr,
skills follow this because from skills becomes a-man learned
með hverju athæfi er hann vill síðan lifa, hvárt er heldr
in whatever conduct which he will afterward live whichever that rather
er, at hann vill vera konungs maðr eða bóndi eða kaupmaðr.
is that he will be king's man or farmer or merchant

III · THE MERCHANT'S LIFE

The son, young and eager to travel, asks about the merchant's calling before he seeks the court. The father, though a king's man himself, does not disparage it but warns against merchants who cheat. A merchant must be brave at sea and courteous in towns. He should go to church early, watch how the best merchants trade, buy only sound goods before witnesses, keep a good table, sell openly at a fair price, and study the laws, above all the Bjarkey law, and languages, chiefly Latin and French.

SON Með því at ek em nú á léttasta aldri, þá fýsumk
With that that I am now in (the)-lightest age then desire
ek at fara landa meðal, þvíat ek treystumk eigi til hirðar
I to travel of-lands between because I trust-myself not to (the)-court
leita fyrr en ek hefða sét annarra manna siðu áðr. Nú
to-seek before than I had seen other men's customs before Now
er þetta fýsi mín, nema þér leggit annat ráð til við mér.
is this desire my unless you lay other counsel to with me
FATHER Þóat ek hafa heldr konungsmaðr verit en kaupmaðr,
Though I have rather king's-man been than merchant
þá vil ek þá iðn eigi fyrir þér lasta, fyrir því at til þess
then will I that trade not before you blame for that that to that
veljask opt hinir beztu menn. En þat varðar miklu,
choose-themselves often the best men But that matters much
hvárt maðr líkisk heldr þeim, er kaupmenn eru réttir,
whether a-man likens-himself rather to-those who merchants are true
eða þeim er sér gefa kaupmanna nöfn, ok eru þó
or to-those who to-themselves give merchants' names and are yet
mangarar eða falsarar, selja ok kaupa rangliga.
mongers or falsifiers sell and buy wrongly
SON Þat mundi mér vel gegna at líkjask þeim, er vel væri,
That would to-me well suit to liken-myself to-those who well were
fyrir því at þat mun sýnask verr en ván væri til, ef
for that that it will seem worse than expected were to-it if

yðarr son líktisk þeim, er eigi væri vel. En hvers sem
your son likened-himself to-those who not were well But whatever that
mér verðr af auðit, þá fýsir mik þó, at þér gerit mér
to-me becomes of granted then urges me yet that you make me
kunna þeirra manna siðu, er vel þykkja vera í þeirri iðrótt.
known those men's customs who well seem to-be in that skill
FATHER Sá maðr er kaupmaðr skal vera, þá verðr hann
That man who a-merchant shall be then must he
leggja sik í margan lífs háska, stundum í hafi en
lay himself into many life's dangers at-times on sea but
stundum í heiðnum löndum, en næsta jafnan með úkunnum
at-times in heathen lands but almost always among unknown
þjóðum, ok þarf maðr jafnan leiða at huga, at hann sé
peoples and needs a-man always to-lead to mind that he be
þar vel, sem þá er hann staddr. Nú þarf hann í hafi
there well as then is he placed Now needs he on sea
mikinn ofléttleik ok hraustleik.
great nimbleness and hardiness
Nú ef þú ert staddr í kaupstöðum, eða hvar sem þú ert,
Now if you are placed in market-towns or wherever that you are
þá ger þik siðsaman ok léttlátan; þat gerir mann vinsælan
then make yourself well-mannered and cheerful that makes a-man well-liked
við alla góða menn. Ven þú þik árvakran um morna, ok
by all good men Accustom you yourself early-waking in mornings and
gakk þegar fyrst til kirkju, þar sem þér þykkir bezt fallit at
go at-once first to church there where to-you seems best suited to
hlýða tíðum, ok hlýð þar öllum dagtíðum ok messu þegar
hear hours and hear there all day-hours and mass at-once
eptir óttusöng, ok bið þá meðan fyrir þér með sálmum
after matins and pray then meanwhile for yourself with psalms
þínum ok þeim bœnum, er þú kant. En at loknum tíðum
your and those prayers which you know But at ended hours

gakk þú út ok skygn um kaup þín. En ef úkunn eru
go you out and look-after about trades your But if unknown are
þér kaup í bœ, þá skygn þú vandliga at, hversu þeir
to-you trades in (the)-town then look you carefully at how they
fara með sínum kaupum, er mestir ok beztir kaupmenn
deal with their trades who greatest and best merchants
eru kallaðir. Þat skaltu ok varask um allan þann varning
are called That shall-you also beware about all those wares
er þú kaupir, at hann sé allr úspiltr ok flærðalauss, ok
which you buy that it be all unspoiled and deceit-free and
fyrri rannsakaðr en þú festir kaup þitt til fulls. En öll þau
before examined than you fix bargain your to full But all those
kaup er þu kaupir, þá hafðu jafnan nökkura skilamenn
trades which you buy then have-you always some witnesses
íhjá, þá er váttar sé, hversu því kaupi var keypt.
by those who witnesses be how that bargain was bought
Nú skalt þú at kaupum þínum fara alt til dögurðarmáls eða
Now shall you to trades your go all to breakfast-time or
miðs dags, ef svá berr nauðsyn til, en síðan gakk þú til matar
mid day if so bears need to-it but afterward go you to food
þíns. Borð þitt skaltu vel búa með hvítum dúkum ok hreinni
your Table your shall-you well prepare with white cloths and clean
fœzlu ok góðum drykk. Get þér vel at borði þínu, ef þú
fare and good drink Get for-yourself well at table your if you
átt þess kosti; en eptir mat þá görðu annattveggja, at þú
have of-that choice but after food then do-you either that you
sofna litla hríð, eða elligar gakk nökkura hríð ok skemt þér,
sleep little while or else walk some while and amuse yourself
ok sésk um, hvat er aðrir góðir kaupmenn hafask at,
and look about what that other good merchants occupy-themselves with
eða nökkurr nýr varningr sé sá kominn til bœjar, er þér
or some new wares be that come to (the)-town which to-you

sé nauðsynligr at kaupa. En er þú kemr aptr til herbergis
be needful to buy But when you come back to lodging
þíns, þá rannsakaðu varning þinn, at hann verði eigi síðan
your then examine wares your that it become not afterward
fyrir spellum, er hann kemr þér í hendr; en ef spell eru
before spoilage when it comes to-you into hands but if spoilage are
á, ok skaltu þann varning selja, þá leyndu eigi þann er
on-it and shall-you those wares sell then hide not from-him who
kaupir: sýn hánum þau spell sem á eru, ok semit síðan
buys show him those spoilage which on-it are and agree afterward
kaup ykkart sem þit megut, þá heitir þú eigi svikari. Met
bargain your-two's as you-two can then are-called you not a-cheat Value
ok varning þinn allan í gott verð, ok þó því nær sem þú sér
also wares your all at good price and yet that nearer as you see
at taka mun, en eigi or hófi, þá heitir þú eigi mangari.
to take will but not beyond measure then are-called you not a-monger
En þat skaltu víst hugleiða, at á hverri stundu er þú
But that shall-you surely consider that at every hour which you
mátt þik til tœma, at minnask á nám þitt ok allra
can yourself to free to remember on learning your and of-all
mest um lögskrár, þvíat þat er raunar, at allra manna vit
most about law-books because that is truly that of-all men wit
er minna en þeirra, er af bókum taka mannvit, þvíat
is less than of-those who from books take understanding because
þeir hafa flest vitni til síns fróðleiks, er bezt eru lærðir.
they have most witness to their learning who best are learned
Gör þú þér allar lögskrár kunnar, en meðan er þú vilt
Make you to-yourself all law-books known but while that you will
kaupmaðr vera, þá þarftu engan rétt þér meir annan
merchant be then need-you no law to-yourself more other
kunnan gera en Bjarkeyjar rétt. En ef þér eru lög kunn,
known make than Bjarkey law But if to-you are laws known

þá verðr þú eigi beittr úlögum, ef þú átt málum at skipta
then become you not treated with-unlaws if you have cases to deal
við jafnmaka þína, ok kantu at lögum svara öllum málum.
with equals your and know-you by laws to-answer all cases
En þóat ek rœða flest um lögmál, þá verðr engi maðr
But though I speak most about law then becomes no man
alvitr, nema hann kunni góða skilning ok hátt á öllum
all-wise unless he know good understanding and manner in all
siðum, þar sem maðr verðr staddr; ok ef þú vilt verða
customs there where a-man becomes placed and if you will become
fullkominn í fróðleik, þá nemdu allar mállýzkur, en allra
perfect in learning then learn all languages but of-all
helzt latínu ok völsku, þvíat þær tungur ganga víðast, en
most Latin and French because those tongues go widest but
þó týndu eigi at heldr þínu máli eða tungu.
yet lose not the more your speech or tongue

IV · MORE COUNSEL FOR THE MERCHANT

The father counsels cheerfulness, a guarded tongue, and the schooling of children, and warns against drink, board games, whores, quarrels, and dicing for stakes. A merchant should learn the sky, the stars, the hours, the tides, and reckoning; befriend the king's officers; tar his ship in autumn; own shares only in good ships; and carry spare sailcloth, nails, and tools. He should lodge with a quiet host, seek redress without rashness, give God and the saints a share, and split his wealth among partners and voyages, at last putting two parts into good land and leaving the sea once he has seen men's customs.

SON Guð þakki yðr, herra minn! at þér sýnit oss svá ástsamliga
God thank you lord my that you show us so loving
frændsemi, at þér sýnit mér alla þá hluti, er mér væri
kinship that you show me all those things which to-me were

nauðsynligir, ef ek bæra giptu til at nema, eða muna eptir, ef
necessary if I bore luck to-it to learn or remember after if
numit yrði. En ef yðr sýnask nökkurir hlutir enn nauðsynligir
learned became But if to-you seem any things still necessary
þessarri rœðu, þá vil ek gjarna með athygli til hlýða.
to-this talk then will I gladly with attention to-it listen
FATHER Eru enn þeir hlutir, er varla má missa í þessarri rœðu,
Are still those things which hardly may be-missed in this talk
ok má þó vel lúka með skjótri rœðu, ef svá sýnisk. Vendu
and may yet well finish with quick talk if so seems Accustom-you
þik jafnan sem vakrastan máttu, ok þó svá, at eigi spilli
yourself always as most-wakeful you-can and yet so that not spoil
heilsu þinni. Vendu þik sjaldan hryggvan, þvíat hrygt
health your Accustom-you yourself seldom sorrowful because a-sorrowful
hugskot er jafnan sjúkt; heldr verðu jafnan blíðr ok léttlátr,
mind is always sick rather be-you always gentle and cheerful
jafnhugaðr ok eigi mislyndr. Verðu lastvarr sjálfr, ok kenn
even-minded and not changeable Be-you fault-shy yourself and teach
hverjum manni gott, er þat vill af þér nema, ok þýðsk
every man good who that will from you learn and associate-with
jafnan ena beztu menn. Gæt þú vandliga tungu þinnar, þvíat
always the best men Guard you carefully tongue your because
þat er virktaráð, fyrir því at tunga þín má sœma þik, ok
that is excellent-counsel for that that tongue your may honor you and
tunga þín má dœma þik; ok þóat þú verðir reiðr, þá mæl þú
tongue your may condemn you and though you become angry then speak you
fátt ok eigi bræðimæli, þvíat eitt orð má þat mæla í bræði,
little and not anger-speech because one word may that speak in anger
ef maðr gætir eigi, er síðan vildi hann með gulli keypt
if a-man guards not which afterward would he with gold bought
hafa, at úmælt væri. Enda veit ek enga þá hefnd, þó göri
have that unspoken were Moreover know I no that vengeance though do

margir, er maðr fremi minnr sjálfan sik á, en hann deili
many which a-man performs less self himself on than he deals
illum orðum við annan, þóat hann eigi úsætt at skipta við
evil words with another though he have discord to deal with
hann. Þat skaltu ok víst vita, at engi er einn œðri kraptr eða
him That shall-you also surely know that no is one nobler power or
sterkri, en maðr fái vel hept tungu sína frá munneiðum
stronger than (if)-a-man can well curb tongue his from oaths
eða illyrðum, eða sögvísi ok öllu tunguskœði. En ef þér
or evil-words or gossip and all tongue-harm But if to-you
verðr barna auðit, þá láttu ekki þitt barn iðróttalaust verða
becomes of-children granted then let-you not your child skill-less become
upp alit, fyrir því at þá er ván, at maðr fái haldit sik
up brought for that that then is expectation that a-man can hold himself
helzt sjálfr til mannvits eða iðrótta, þegar hann tekr sjálfrœði,
most himself to understanding or skills when he takes self-rule
ef hann verðr ávita í œsku, meðan hann er undir ráðningu.
if he becomes disciplined in youth while he is under correction
Enn eru þeir hlutir, er þú skalt svá flýja ok varask sem
Still are those things which you shall so flee and beware as
fjándann sjálfan, þat er drykkja ok tafl, ok portkonur, ok
the-fiend himself that is drinking and chess and harlots and
þrætur ok kast um viðlögur, þvíat af þessum grundvöllum
quarrels and casting for stakes because from these foundations
timbrask enar mestu höfuðúgæfur, ok fáir einir munu lengi
are-built the greatest chief-misfortunes and few only will long
lastalausir eða glœpa, ef eigi varask þessa hluti.
blameless or of-crimes if not beware these things
Nemdu vandliga birting lopts ok gang himintungla,
Learn-you carefully (the)-lighting of-(the)-air and (the)-course of-heavenly-bodies
dœgrafar ok eyktaskipan, ok kunn vel at skilja ok
day-divisions and (the)-marking-of-hours and know well to distinguish and

marka, hversu þverr eða vex úkyrrleikr sjóa; þvíat þat er
mark how lessens or grows (the)-unrest of-seas because that is
fróðleikr ok þó nauðsynligt at kunna þeim, er farmenn skulu
learning and yet necessary to know for-those who seafarers shall
vera. Gerðu þik tölvísan vel, þat þurfu kaupmenn mjök.
be Make-you yourself numerate well that need merchants much
En ef þú verðr þar staddr, sem umboðsmaðr er konungs
But if you become there placed where agent is of-(the)-king
eða annars höfðingja þess, er þar hefir landstjórn, sem þá
or of-another chieftain that who there has land-rule as then
verðr þú staðinn, þá gör þá þér at vinum, ok ef þeir
become you placed then make them to-you as friends and if they
fremja nökkur nauðsynlig útboð af hendi landshöfðingja, þá
perform any necessary levies on behalf of-(the)-land-chief then
ver þú greiðr í útboðum öllum ok framlögum, at eigi
be you ready in levies all and contributions that not
haldir þú til þess smám hlutum, at þú týnir stórum. Ver
hold you for that small things that you lose great Be
þú ok um þat varr, at konungs sakir komi eigi í þung
you also about that aware that (the)-king's fines come not into purse
þér, þvíat þú veizt eigi, nema sá verði fégjarn er til saka
your because you know not unless be become money-greedy who over fines
gætir, ok er verra síðan at biðja en fyrir öndverðu við
watches and is worse afterward to ask than at (the)-beginning against-it
at sjá. Sittu ok aldri lengi yfir varningi þínum, ef þú mátt
to look Sit-you also never long over wares your if you can
með réttu verði brott koma, þvíat þat er kaupmanna aðal,
at right price away come because that is merchants' chief-mark
at kaupa jafnan ok selja síðan skyndiliga fram á leið.
to buy always and sell afterward quickly forward on way

En ef þú skalt kaupferð þína yfir haf búa, ok áttu skip
But if you shall trading-voyage your over sea prepare and own-you ship
sjálfr, þá bræð vel skip þitt um haustit ok lát standa undir
yourself then tar well ship your in the-autumn and let stand under
bráði um vetrinn, ef svá má vera. En ef svá síðarliga kemr
tar through the-winter if so may be But if so late comes
skip til hlunns, at eigi má um haustit bræða, þá bræð þat
(the)-ship to roller that not may in the-autumn tar then tar it
at öndverðu vári, ok lát vel þorna síðan. Eigðu ok í góðum
at (the)-beginning-of spring and let well dry afterward Own-you also in good
skipum jafnan hlut, eða elligar eigðu ekki. Ger ok skip þitt
ships always share or else own-you not Make also ship your
fýsiligt, þá veljask góðir menn til, ok verðr þá rífskipat.
attractive then choose-themselves good men to-it and becomes then amply-manned
Bú ok jafnan skip þitt at öndverðu sumri, ok far meðan
Prepare also always ship your at (the)-beginning-of summer and go while
bezt er sumars, ok haf jafnan öruggan reiða á skipi þínu,
best is of-summer and have always sound rigging on ship your
ok ver aldri um haustum lengi í hafi, ef þú mátt sjálfr ráða.
and be never in autumns long at sea if you may yourself decide
Gæt vel allra þessa hluta, þá er ván at hlýði með guðs
Guard well all these things then is expectation that it-avails with God's
miskunn. Þat skaltu ok víst hugleiða, at aldri gangi sá dagr
mercy That shall-you also surely consider that never goes that day
yfir þik, at eigi nemir þú nökkurn hlut þann er þér sé gagn
over you that not learn you some thing that which to-you be profit
í, ef þú vilt allvitr heita; ok gersk eigi þeim líkr, er
in if you will all-wise be-called and make-yourself not to-them like to-whom
þat þykki úsœmd vera, at annarr segir eða kennir þeim þá
that seems dishonor to-be that another tells or teaches them those

hluti, er þeim væri mikit gagn í, ef þeir næmi; láttu þér
things which to-them were great profit in if they learned let-you to-yourself
jafnmikla sœmd at nema sem at kenna, ef þú vilt allfróðr heita.
equal honor to learn as to teach if you will all-learned be-called
Enn eru þeir hlutir í smáku, er hugleiða þarf. Hvert sinni
Still are those things in small which consider must-one Each time
er þú ferr í haf, þá hafðu tvau hundruð vaðmála eða þrjú
when you go to sea then have-you two hundred of-homespun or three
með þér á skip, þau er til seglbóta sé fallin, ef þarf til at
with you on ship those which for sail-patches be suited if needs to to
taka, nálar margar ok ærna þræðr eða sviptingar; þóat slíkt
take needles many and enough thread or cords though such
sé smáligt at geta, þó er þat opt at til slíks þarf at taka.
be small to mention yet is that often that to such needs to take
Saum þarftu ok mikinn á skip at hafa jafnan með þér, svá
Nails need-you also many on ship to have always with you so
stóran sem því skipi hœfir, er þá hefir þú, hvártveggja
big as to-that ship befits which then have you both
reksaum ok hnoðsaum. Sóknir góðar ok smiðaröxar, skolpa
driving-nails and riveting-nails Boathooks good and carpenter's-axes gouges
ok nafra, ok öll önnur þau tól, er til skipsmíðar þarf at
and augers and all other those tools which for ship-building need-one to
hafa. Þessa hluti alla er nú hefi ek nefnda, þá skaltu jafnan
have These things all which now have I named then shall-you always
minnask at hafa á skip með þér, ef þú ferr kaupfarar ok
remember to have on ship with you if you go on-trading-voyages and
áttu sjálfr skipit. En ef þú kemr til kaupstaðar, ok skaltu
own-you yourself the-ship But if you come to market-town and shall-you
þar dveljask, þa tak þér þar herbergi, sem þú spyrr
there stay then take for-yourself there lodging where you learn
spakastan húsbúanda í bœ ok vinsælastan bæði við
(the)-most-peaceable householder in (the)-town and best-liked both with

bœjarmenn ok konungsmenn. Haf þik vel jafnan at mat ok
townsmen and king's-men Have yourself well always in food and
at klæðum, ef þú átt þess kosti; haf ok aldrigi úspaka menn
in clothes if you have of-that choice have also never unruly men
eða svarfsama í mötuneyti með þér eða í sveit. Verðu sjálfr
or quarrelsome in mess-fellowship with you or in company Be-you yourself
sem spakastr, ok þó svá at eigi þolir þú skemdir eða stóra
as most-peaceable and yet so that not endure you shames or great
brigzlastaði fyrir ofbleyði sakar. En þóat nauðsynligar
taunts for too-great-cowardice's sake But though necessary
sakar þröngvi þik til úspektar, þá gersk þú eigi bráðr í
causes press you to unrest then make-yourself you not hasty in
hefndum fyrr en þú sér, at vel verði framgengt ok þar komi
vengeance before than you see that well become carried-forward and there come
niðr sem makligt er; en eigi skaltu hlauprífr gerask, ef þú
down where fitting is but not shall-you rash become if you
sér at eigi má framkvæmt verða, ok leita þú þinnar sœmdar
see that not may carried-out become and seek you your honor
þóat síðar verði, nema hinn bjóði svá, at þú sér vel sœmdr.
though later it-be unless the-other offer so that you be well honored
En ef fé þitt tekr mikinn vöxt, þá skiptu því til félags,
But if wealth your takes great growth then divide it for partnership
í aðra staði, þangat sem þú ferr eigi sjálfr, ok ver þú
into other places thither where you go not yourself and be you
vandr at félagsmönnum. Jafnan skaltu almáttkan guð ok
choosy about partners Always shall-you almighty God and
ena helgu mey Maríu láta eiga nökkut í félagi með þér,
the holy maid Mary let own something in partnership with you
ok þann helgan mann er þú hefir optast á kallat þér
and that holy man whom you have oftenest on called for-yourself
til árnaðarorðs; ok gæt þess fjár vandliga, er helgir menn
for intercession and guard that wealth carefully which holy men

eigu með þér, ok fœr þat jafnan tryggliga til þeirra staða,
own with you and bring it always faithfully to those places
er þat var til gefit fyrir öndverðu.
which it was to given at (the)-beginning
En ef þú átt allmikit fé í kaupferðum, þá skiptu því í
But if you own very-much wealth in trading-voyages then divide it into
þrjá hluti; legg einn hlut í félag við þeim mönnum, er
three parts lay one part into partnership with those men who
jafnan sitja í kaupstöðum ok sé þar tryggvir ok kunni vel
always sit in market-towns and be there trustworthy and know well
við kaup. En tveim hlutum skiptu í ýmisligar kaupferðir,
about trade But two parts divide-you into various trading-voyages
þá er sízt ván, at alt verði senn fyrir tjónum, er í
then is least expectation that all become at-once to losses when in
mörgum stöðum er fé þitt senn, ok er þá ván helzt, at
many places is wealth your at-once and is then expectation most that
í nökkurum stöðum haldisk, þóat fjárháskar kunni iðuliga at
in some places it-holds though money-dangers may often to
berask. En ef þú sér at alhugat tekr fé þitt at vaxa stórum
happen But if you see that firmly takes wealth your to grow greatly
í kaupförum, þá tak þú af tvá hluti ok legg í góðar jarðir,
in trading-voyages then take you off two parts and lay into good lands
þvíat sá eyrir þykkir optast víss vera, hvárt sem heldr er,
because that money seems oftenest certain to-be whichever that rather is
at hánum er sjálfum auðit at njóta eða frændum hans. En þá
that to-him is himself granted to enjoy or kinsmen his But then
máttu gera hvárt er þér sýnisk við enn þriðja hlut, at hafa
may-you do whichever which to-you seems with the third part to have
í kaupferðum lengr, eða viltu alt í jarðir leggja. En þóat
in trading-voyages longer or will-you all into lands lay But though
þú vilir fé þitt lengi hafa í kaupförum, þá hættu sjálfr at
you will wealth your long have in trading-voyages then stop yourself to

leggjask í höf eða í kaupfarar landa á meðal, þegar er fé
put-yourself on seas or on trading-voyages of-lands in between as-soon as wealth
þitt er fullvaxta, ok þú hefir rannsakat siðu manna sem þér
your is full-grown and you have examined customs of-men as to-you
sýnisk; ok mun vandliga alla þá er þú sér, hvárt sem eru
seems and remember carefully all those which you see whether that are
góðir eða illir. Mun illa siðu til viðsýndar, en alla góða siðu
good or evil Remember evil customs for viewing but all good customs
til nytja sjálfum þér ok öllum þeim, er af þér vilja nema.
for use for-self yourself and for-all those who from you will learn

V · THE WINDS AND THE SEASONS

The son asks about the sun, the sky, and the unrest of the sea. The father tells of the sun's course through the eight quarters as the winds greet one another in peace through spring and summer. While that peace holds, the sea is passable, and fish, birds, the earth, trees, beasts, and even the ant keep their seasons by it, the ant teaching kings when to build and farmers and merchants when to toil. This covenant of the eight winds, ordained by God until he bids it change, makes all air, land, and sea gentle.

SON Þat er víst nauðsynligt hverjum þeim, er forvitnask vill
That is surely necessary for-each that-one who be-curious-about will
slíka hluti, sem nú hafi þér um rætt, at skilja vel hvat
such things as now have you about talked to understand well what
mest verðr nema, ok muna vandliga síðan eptir, þat sem
most becomes to-learn and remember carefully afterward after that which
hann heyrir. En með því at þér gátut litlu fyrr í yðarri
he hears But with that that you mentioned a-little before in your
rœðu þeirra hluta sumra, er ek skil eigi með hverjum
talk of-those things some which I understand not in what

hætti fram fara, ok hefi ek þó leitt at huga með mér, þat
manner forward go and have I yet led to mind with me that
er um birting lopts ok úkyrrleik sjóar; nú með því
which about (the)-lighting of-(the)-air and (the)-unrest of-(the)-sea now with that
at þér báðut at nema þá hluti, ok kölluðut fróðleik í,
that you bade to learn those things and called learning in-it
ef numit yrði; enda skil ek eigi áðr en ek heyri görr
if learned became moreover understand I not before than I hear fully
skilat fyrir mér, enda veit ek engan þann vísan meistara,
explained before me moreover know I none that wise master
er jafngóðan vilja mun hafa til at læra mik um þá hluti
who equally-good will will have to-it to teach me about those things
sem sjálfa yðr; fyrir því vil ek með leyfi biðja yðr at
as self you for that will I with leave ask you that
þér lengit með því þessa rœðu, at ek yrða nökkut fróðari
you lengthen with that this talk that I became somewhat wiser
um þá hluti, hversu þverr eða vex birting lopts eða
about those things how lessens or grows (the)-lighting of-(the)-air or
gangr himintungla, dœgrafar eða eyktaskipan, ok allra helzt
(the)-course of-heavenly-bodies day-divisions or marking-of-hours and of-all most
um úkyrrleik sævar, hvat er veldr hans mislyndi, at hann
about (the)-unrest of-(the)-sea what that causes its changeableness that it
sýnisk stundum í svá mikilli blíðu, at manninn girnir til
shows-itself at-times in so great gentleness that the-man desires to
við hann at leika misserum heilum; en því næst sýnir hann
with it to play seasons whole but that next shows it
svá mikla reiði ok illsku, at hann þrætir til fjár ok til lífs
so great anger and wickedness that it contends for wealth and for life
þeirra, er við hann skipta. Nú hugða ek þat, þóat sólin fyldi
of-those who with it deal Now thought I that though the-sun fulfilled
rásir sínar eptir fyrirsettri skipan, at ekki mundi þat ráða
courses her according-to appointed order that not would that rule

hrœring hafsins. Nú ef yðarr er vili til at skýra þessa hluti
(the)-motion of-the-sea Now if your is will to-it to explain these things
gerr fyrir mér, þá vilda ek gjarna með athygli til hlýða.
fully before me then would-wish I gladly with attention to-it listen
FATHER Þat má ek vel gera, eptir því sem ek hefi heyrt or
That may I well do according-to that which I have heard out-of
fróðra manna munni, ok mér þykki líkast vera eptir því viti
learned men's mouth and to-me seems likeliest to-be according-to that wit
sem guð hefir mér gefit. Sól hefir fengit fjölskylt embætti,
which God has to-me given (The)-sun has gotten manifold office
þvíat hon skal lýsa allan heim ok verma, ok gleðjask
because she shall light all (the)-world and warm and rejoice
ýmsir staðir heimsins við hennar nærkvámu, en svá berr rás
various places of-the-world at her near-coming but so bears course
hennar til, at hon firrisk þá staði stundum, er hon
her to-it that she distances-herself-from those places at-times which she
nálgask stundum. En þá er hon tekr at vitja austrs ættar
approaches at-times But then when she begins to visit (the)-east quarter
með vörmum ok björtum geislum, þá tekr þar fyrst dagr upp
with warm and bright rays then begins there first day up
at létta austanvindi silfrligar brýnn ok blítt andlit; en því
to lift for-(the)-east-wind silvery brows and gentle face but that
næst verðr hann kórónaðr með gulligum röðli, ok skrýðisk
next becomes he crowned with golden orb and adorns-himself
hann þá með öllum gleðibúnaði sínum, léttir sorgum ok
he then with all joy-attire his lightens sorrows and
harmsamligum andvörpum, sýnir blítt andlit grönnum sínum
grievous sighs shows gentle face to-neighbors his
á báðar hendr, ok biðr þá vera glaða með sér í sínum
on both hands and bids them be glad with himself in his
fagnaði ok létta vetrligum sorgum; sendir hann ok skínandi
joy and lighten wintry sorrows sends he also shining

geisla í andlit vestanvindi at boða hánum sína gleði ok
rays into (the)-face to-(the)-west-wind to announce to-him his gladness and
fagnað; þat boðar hann ok vestanvindi, at hann skrýðisk
joy that announces he also to-(the)-west-wind that he adorns-himself
þvílíkum búnaði um aptan sem austanvindr hafði um morgin.
with-such attire at evening as (the)-east-wind had at morning
En at mögnuðum degi ok fyrirskipuðum tíma, þá hrósar
But at strengthened day and appointed time then glories-in
landsynningr nýteknum búnaði ok sendir ornandi geisla með
(the)-south-east-wind newly-taken attire and sends warming rays with
blíðu boði í andlit útnyrðingi. En at miðjum degi
gentle message into (the)-face to-(the)-north-west-wind But at mid day
sýnir sunnanvindr sik efldan vera með yljar auðœfum,
shows (the)-south-wind himself strengthened to-be with warmth's riches
sendir varmar vingjafir norðanvindi ok vermir svalt andlit,
sends warm friend-gifts to-(the)-north-wind and warms (the)-cool face
ok býðr öllum grönnum sínum at miðla við þá af gnótt
and bids all neighbors his to share with them of (the)-abundance
síns auðar. En at hníganda degi þá tekr útsynningr við
of-his wealth But at sinking day then takes (the)-south-west-wind with
vægjanda skini ok vörmum geislum með glöðu andliti, sýnir
yielding shine and warm rays with glad face shows
af sinni hendi sætt ok samþykki at niðrlagðri reiði,
on his hand reconciliation and agreement at laid-down anger
býðr sterkum bylgjum ok bröttum bárum at hógværask með
bids strong billows and steep waves to grow-gentle with
minkanda afli, ok kallar fram gróðrsamar döggvar til fullrar
lessening strength and calls forth growth-bringing dews to full
sættar við sína granna, ok blæss hógværliga með vörmum
reconciliation with his neighbors and blows gently with warm
anda í andlit landnyrðingi ok vermir blástsvalar varrar
breath into (the)-face to-(the)-north-east-wind and warms blast-cool lips

ok þíðir hélukalt enni ok frosnar kinnr. En at aptni
and thaws rime-cold forehead and frozen cheeks But at evening
upphöfðum þá sýnir vestanvindr skínanda enni yfir blíðu
begun then shows (the)-west-wind a-shining forehead over gentle
andliti, skrýðisk með prýði ok kveldligri fegrð svá sem at
face adorns-himself with splendor and evening beauty so as at
hátíðligum aptni, boðar austanvindi með sendum geislum,
a-festive evening announces to-(the)-east-wind with sent rays
at hann búisk móti komandi hátíðum morgininn eptir.
that he prepare-himself against coming festivals the-morning after
En at settri sólu þá tekr útnyrðingr at létta fögrum
But at set sun then begins (the)-north-west-wind to lift fair
brúnum, ok bendir með léttri brún öllum grönnum sínum,
brows and beckons with light brow to-all neighbors his
at hann hefir í sinni gæzlu skínanda röðul; því næst leiðir
that he has in his keeping (the)-shining orb that next leads
hann fram skugga yfir andlit jarðar, ok boðar þat öllum, at
he forth shadow over (the)-face of-earth and announces that to-all that
þá nálgask hvíldarstund eptir dagligt erfiði. En at miðri nótt
then approaches rest-time after daily toil But at mid night
þá tekr norðanvindr við rás sólar, ok leiðir hana um
then takes (the)-north-wind with (the)-course of-(the)-sun and leads her over
fjalligar auðnir móti þunnbygðum ströndum, ok leiðir fram
mountainous wastes against thinly-settled shores and leads forth
þykkvan skugga, ok hylr andlit sitt með skýjuðum hjálmi, ok
thick shadow and covers face his with clouded helmet and
boðar öllum, at hann er búinn til varðhalds yfir grönnum
announces to-all that he is ready for guard over neighbors
sínum með náttligri vöku, til þess at þeir taki örugga hvíld
his with nightly watch for that that they take secure rest
ok hœga eptir dagligan hita; hann blæss ok vægiliga með
and easy after daily heat he blows also gently with

svölum munni í andlit sunnanvindi, til þess at hann megi
cool mouth into (the)-face to-(the)-south-wind for that that he may
betr standask öflgan hita at komanda degi. Hann fægir ok
better withstand strong heat at coming day He cleanses also
andlit himins eptir brottrekit ský, til þess at komanda ljósi
(the)-face of-heaven after driven-away cloud for that that at-(the)-coming light
megi sól auðveldliga senda varma geisla í allar ættir með
may (the)-sun easily send warm rays into all quarters with
björtu skini. En at komanda morni þá tekr landnyrðingr
bright shine But at coming morning then begins (the)-north-east-wind
at opna samanlagðar brár ok rennir til sýnar bjúgt sjáldr, svá
to open laid-together brows and turns to sight curved pupil so
sem til skygningar um upprisutíma. En því næst lýkr hann
as for looking-about at rising-time But that next opens he
upp vakrliga birtandi sjónir svá sem saddr af svefni eptir
up wakefully brightening eyes so as sated with sleep after
tekna hvíld; en eptir þat leiðir hann fram ljósan dag svá sem
taken rest but after that leads he forth bright day so as
fagran œskumann ok hœfiligan fyrirrásara í allra tún,
a-fair youth and fitting forerunner into all-men's homefields
ok boðar til víss, at þá kemr þegar eptir hann geislanda
and announces for certain that then comes at-once after him (the)-raying
hvel ok skínandi sól, ok býðr öllum at vera vel viðbúnum.
wheel and shining sun and bids all to be well prepared
En því næst rennr upp sól ok skýtr geislum sínum
But that next runs up (the)-sun and shoots rays her
í allar ættir at skynja um samantengt sáttmál, ok gengr
into all quarters to perceive about joined covenant and goes
síðan eptir fyrirskipuðum veg, svá sem fyrr var sagt.
afterward according-to appointed way so as before was said

En at algörvum friði milli þessarra höfðingja, er nú eru
But at fully-made peace between these chieftains who now are
nefndir, þá er vel fœrt í hvers þeirra veldi, sem þá vill
named then is well passable in of-each of-them realm who then will
farit hafa. Þá tekr haf úti at byrgja allan meginstorm,
gone to-have Then begins (the)-sea out to shut-in all mighty-storm
ok görir þar slétta vegu, sem fyrr var úfœrt fyrir stórum
and makes there smooth ways where before was impassable for great
bárum ok þykkum bylgjum, ok veita strandir þá þar í
waves and thick billows and grant shores then there in
mörgum stöðum hafnir, sem fyrr var örœfi. Nú meðan
many places harbors where before was wilderness Now while
þessi friðargerð stendr, þá er þér vel fœrt ok hverjum
this peace-making stands then is to-you well passable and to-each
annarra þeim, er sitt skip vilja leiða eða sjálfir fara landa
of-others those who their ship will lead or themselves go of-lands
meðal yfir hafs háska; ok væri þat mönnunum skyldligt,
between over (the)-sea's danger and were that for-the-men fitting
ok þó nauðsynligt, at kunna góða skilning á því, nær
and yet necessary to know good understanding of that when
háskatímar væri ok úfœrir, eða nær þeir tímar kœmi, er
danger-times were and impassable or when those times came which
vel er til hættanda alls; þvíat skilningarlaus skepna gætir
well is to to-venture all because understanding-less creature heeds
þessarra tíma þó með náttúru, at eigi sé skilning til, þvíat
these times yet by nature that not be understanding to-it because
mannvitslausir fiskar kunnu at gæta sín í djúpum höfum,
wit-less fishes know to guard themselves in deep seas
meðan hæstir eru stormar um vetrinn; en at hallanda vetri
while highest are storms through the-winter but at declining winter
þá sœkja þeir nærmeir landi, ok samna gleði svá sem eptir
then seek they nearer to-land and gather gladness so as after

liðna sorg. En at fengnum hrognum ok at vaxanda vári,
passed sorrow But at gotten roe and at growing spring
þá gjóta þeir hrognum sínum ok leiða fram fjölda mikinn
then spawn they roe their and lead forth multitude great
ungra fiska, ok œxla svá ættir sínar hverr í sínu kyni ok
of-young fishes and increase so kindreds their each in his kind and
tigund. Er þat mikil ætlan skynlausrar skepnu, at sjá svá
species Is that great forethought of-understanding-less creature to look so
vel við komanda stormi um vetrinn, at hann leiðir fram
well against coming storm through the-winter that it leads forth
sitt afspringi til þess at öndverðu vári, at hann megi
its offspring for that at (the)-beginning-of spring that it may
njóta kyrrar veðráttu um sumarit, ok leita sér matar
enjoy quiet weather through the-summer and seek for-itself food
í góðum friði hjá víðum ströndum, ok styrkjask svá
in good peace by wide shores and strengthen-themselves so
af sumrinu, at þeir hafa yfrit afl at komanda vetri, til
from the-summer that they have ample strength at coming winter for
þess at hirða sik í köldum djúpum milli annarra fiska.
that to keep themselves in cold deeps among other fishes
Þessarri sættargerð fagnar jafnvel loptit sem lögrinn, þvíat á
At-this reconciliation rejoices equally the-air as the-sea because in
vaxanda vári sœkja fuglar háleik lopts með fögrum söngum,
growing spring seek birds (the)-height of-air with fair songs
ok fagna nygörri sætt milli þessarra höfðingja svá
and rejoice-at (the)-newly-made reconciliation between these chieftains so
sem komandi hátíð, ok gleðjask þá svá mjök, sem þeir hafi
as a-coming festival and are-glad then so much as-if they have
fengit forðazk mikinn háska ok váðvænligan í höfðingja deild.
managed to-avoid great danger and perilous in chieftains' strife
Því næst göra þeir sér hreiðr á jörðu ok leiða þar or
That next make they for-themselves nests on earth and lead there out

unga fugla, hverr eptir sinni kynfylgju, ok œxla svá ættir
young birds each according-to his kind's-nature and increase so kindreds
sínar ok nœra um sumarit, at þeir megi enn sér sjálfir
their and nourish through the-summer that they may still for-themselves themselves
leita atvinnu um vetrinn eptir. Jörðin sjálf fagnar þessarri
seek livelihood through the-winter after (The)-earth herself rejoices-at this
sættargerð, þvíat þá er sól tekr út at steypa ylsamligum
reconciliation because then when (the)-sun begins out to pour warmth-bringing
geislum yfir andlit jarðar, þá tekr jörð at þíða frosnar grasrœtr;
rays over (the)-face of-earth then begins earth to thaw frozen grass-roots
en því næst leiðir hon fram ilmandi grös með smaragligum lit,
but that next leads she forth fragrant grasses with emerald color
ok sýnir hon sik fagna ok gleðjask hátíðliga með nýtekinni
and shows she herself to-rejoice and be-glad festively with newly-taken
fegrð grœns skrúðs, ok býðr hon þó glaðliga nœring öllum
beauty of-green attire and offers she yet gladly nourishment to-all
afspringum sínum, þeim er hon synjaði áðr sakar vetrligrar
offspring her those which she refused before for-sake-of wintry
nauðar. Tré þau er stóðu með frosnum rótum ok drjúpandi
need Trees those which stood with frozen roots and drooping
kvistum, þá leiða þau nú fram af sér grasgrœnt lauf,
twigs then lead they now forth from themselves grass-green leaf
ok gleðjask svá eptir liðna sorg vetrligrar nauðar.
and rejoice so after passed sorrow of-wintry need
Úhrein skepna ok leiðendi sýna mannvit sitt ok skilning
Unclean creatures and creeping-things show understanding their and perception
í því, at þau kunnu at skipta hœfiligum tíma til aukningar
in that that they know to divide fitting time for increase
sinnar ættar ok útgöngu or fylsnum. Svá gæta þau þess
of-their kind and out-going out-of hiding-places So heed they that
tíma, nær þau þurfu at flýja kulda ok stormsamligar vetrar
time when they need to flee cold and stormy winter's

nauðir, ok hirða sik svá undir steinum eða í stórum
needs and keep themselves so under stones or in great
hellum eða í djúpum jarðföllum til þeirrar stundar, er þau
caves or in deep earth-falls until that hour when they
hafa tíma til framgöngu. Villidýr þau er fœðask í fjöllum
have time for coming-forth Wild-beasts those which are-born in mountains
eða skógum, þá kunnu þau vel at skipta öllum tíma, þvíat
or forests then know they well to divide all time because
þau ganga með getnum burð, meðan vetr er kaldastr, til þess
they go with conceived young while winter is coldest for that
at þau megi sinn getnað fram leiða at nýkomnum grösum
that they may their offspring forth lead at newly-come grasses
ok vörmu sumri. Einn lítill maðkr er maurr heitir, hann
and warm summer One little worm which ant is-called it
má kenna vitrum mönnum mikla hagspeki, hvárt sem heldr
may teach wise men great husbandry whether that rather
er kaupmaðr eða bóndi, ok jafnvel konungum sem smærrum
is merchant or farmer and equally kings as lesser
mönnum. Hann kennir konungum, nær þeir skulu borgir
men It teaches kings when they shall towns
göra eða kastala; hann kennir ok bónda ok kaupmanni með
build or castles it teaches also farmer and merchant in
sama hætti, hversu ákafliga eða hvern tíma þeir skulu sína
same manner how eagerly or what time they shall their
sýslu frammi hafa; þvíat sá er rétta skilning hefir ok hyggr
business forward have because he who right understanding has and considers
hann vandliga at hans athæfi, þá má hann mikit marka ok
he carefully at its conduct then may he much mark and
draga sér til nytsemdar. Öll önnur kvikendi, hvárt sem
draw for-himself to usefulness All other living-things whether that
eru hrein eða úhrein, þá fagna þessum tíma, ok leita svá
are clean or unclean then rejoice-at this time and seek so

sinnar nœringar á vörmu sumri með allri viðrsýn, at þau
their nourishment in warm summer with all foresight that they
megi örugglíga standask allan háska vetrligrar nauðar. Nú
may securely withstand all danger of-wintry need Now
veldr þessi sáttmálasamtenging milli þessarra átta vinda allri
causes this covenant-joining between these eight winds all
blíðu lopts eða lands, eða sjóar hrœring, með boðorði ok
gentleness of-air or land or of-sea motion with (the)-command and
leyniligum smiðvélum þess, er fyrir öndverðu skipaði, at svá
secret contrivances of-him who at (the)-beginning ordained that so
skyldi jafnan síðan standa, til þess er hann býðr at brigð
should always afterward stand until that when he bids that change
skyli á görask. Nú ef þér þykkir nökkut þar vanspurt um,
shall on happen Now if to-you seems anything there under-asked about
þá máttu nú með meiri eptirleitan spyrja slíks er þér sýnisk.
then may-you now with greater inquiry ask such as to-you seems

VI · TIDES, MOON, AND SUN

The father explains the tides, which rise for seven days and a half hour and fall as long, sharpest at new and full moon and weakest at the half moons. He divides the day and night into twenty-four hours, sets the sun's year at three hundred and sixty-five days and six hours with its leap year, and notes the reckoning of hundreds by twelves and by tens. The sun's daily growth this far north he puts at five small hours, quicker to the north and slower to the south.

SON Með því at mér þykki þat vel ráðit, at ek hefi spurt
With that that to-me seems that well counseled that I have asked
þessarra hluta, er ek hefi svá fögr svör fyrir fengit, þá
of-these things which I have so fair answers for gotten then
mun þat enn eggja mik með orlofi fleiri hluta at spyrja
will that still urge me with leave of-more things to ask

um vöxt sólar eða tungls, eða strauma sjóar eða
about (the)-growth of-(the)-sun or of-(the)-moon or of-currents of-(the)-sea or
flœðar, hversu skjótt eða stórum þessir hlutir vaxa eða
of-(the)-flood how quickly or greatly these things grow or
þverra. Nú með því at ek hefi þá rœðu í munni, er helzt
lessen Now with that that I have that talk in mouth which most
byrjar til farmanna óðals, þá þykki mér þat líkt, at slíkir
befits to seafarers' patrimony then seems to-me that likely that such
hlutir muni þeim vel gegna at verða áskynja til fróðleiks
things will them well serve to become aware for learning
sinnar leiðvísi; ok með því at ek ætla mjök í þeirri iðrótt
of-their way-finding and with that that I intend much in that skill
at starfa, þá vilda ek gjarna, at mér skildisk nökkut af
to work then would-wish I gladly that to-me were-understood somewhat of
þessum hlutum, er nú hefi ek eptir frétt, ef svá má vera.
these things which now have I after asked if so may be
FATHER Þessir hlutir er þar hefir þú um rœtt, þá eru eigi
These things which there have you about talked then are not
allir jafnskjótir at vexti eða þurði; því at straumr fyllir rásir
all equally-quick in growth or waning because (the)-current fills courses
sínar á sjau dögum til vaxtar, ok hálfa stund til átta dags,
its in seven days for growth and half hour to (the)-eighth day
ok verðr hvern sjaunda dag flœðr í fjöru stað, fyrir því at
and becomes each seventh day flood in ebb's place for that that
hinum sjaunda hlut vex hann, þegar hann tekr at vaxa, ok
by-the seventh part grows it when it begins to grow and
með hinum sama hætti þverr hann aðra sjau daga, þegar
in the same manner lessens it (the)-other seven days when
hann tekr aptr at hverfa ok minka, ok svá miklu seinna sem
it begins back to turn and diminish and so much later as
öllum sjau dögum skal fylgja hálf stund til átta dags. En
to-all seven days shall follow half hour to (the)-eighth day But

stundir má ek þér vel kunnar gera, hversu þær kunnu langar
hours may I you well known make how they can long
at vera, þvíat 24 skulu vera á tveim dœgrum, nótt ok degi,
to be because 24 shall be in two half-days night and day
meðan sól veltisk um átta ættir, ok verða svá at réttri
while (the)-sun rolls through eight quarters and become so by right
tölu, at þat eru þá þrjár stundir dags, er sól veltisk
count that that are then three hours of-day which (the)-sun rolls
um eina ætt. En tungl fyllir rásir sínar til uppstígningar
through one quarter But (the)-moon fills courses its for ascent
fimtán daga ok sex stundum minnr, ok með sama hætti
fifteen days and six hours less and in same manner
þverr þat, til þess er þat er aftalit ok annat kemr; ok berr
lessens it until that when it is waned and another comes and bears
því þat saman jafnan, at þenna tíma eru straumar allir
therefore it together always that at-this time are currents all
sem hvassastir, ok fjörur allar sem mestar; en at hálfvöxnu
as sharpest and ebbs all as greatest but at half-grown
tungli, þá eru allir straumar sem minstir, ok svá fjörur með
moon then are all currents as least and so ebbs in
þeim hætti; en at fullu tungli þá eru enn straumar sem
that manner but at full moon then are again currents as
hvassastir ok fjörur sem mestar; en at hálfþverranda tungli,
sharpest and ebbs as greatest but at half-waning moon
þá er hvártveggja sem minst, straumar ok fjörur. En þessa
then is each-of-two as least currents and ebbs But these
hluti megu kaupmenn varla markat fá fyrir sakir svá skjótrar
things may merchants hardly marked get for sake of-so swift
rásar, þvíat tungl stígr svá stórum, annattveggja upp eða
course because (the)-moon climbs so greatly either up or
niðr, at varla fá menn ættum skipat af rásum þess fyrir þá
down that hardly can men quarters arrange by courses its for that

sök. En fyrir sól er þat markanda, at hon fyllir seinna
cause But for (the)-sun is that to-be-marked that she fulfills more-slowly
rásir sínar, hvártveggja til uppstígningar ok niðrstígningar,
courses her both for ascent and descent
ok megu menn vel marka allar ættir af hennar rásum;
and may men well mark all quarters by her courses
en hon stígr upp átján tigu daga ok hálfan þriðja dag
but she climbs up eighteen tens of-days and half third day
ok þrjár stundir, ok með sama hætti stígr hon niðr aptr,
and three hours and in same manner climbs she down back
ok hefir hon þá fylda alla rás sína bæði at uppstigu ok
and has she then fulfilled all course her both in ascent and
niðrstigu, þrjú hundruð daga tólfrœð ok fimm daga ok
descent three hundred days counted-by-twelves and five days and
6 stundir; ok verðr þat þá á hinu fjórða hverju ári þrjú
6 hours and becomes that then in the fourth every year three
hundruð tólfrœð ok sex dagar, ok heitir þat hlaupár;
hundred counted-by-twelves and six days and is-called that leap-year
þvíat þá er einum degi fleira í tólf mánuðum en fyrr, ok
because then is by-one day more in twelve months than before and
samnask þar stundir til tveggja dœgra, einnar nætr ok
gather-themselves there hours to two half-days of-one night and
eins dags. En at bókmáli verða öll hundruð tírœð, ok
of-one day But in book-language become all hundreds counted-by-tens and
verðr þat þá at réttri tölu þrjú hundruð tírœð ok 60
becomes that then by right count three hundred counted-by-tens and 60
daga ok 6 dagar, hvert sinn er hlaupár er, en hlaupára á
days and 6 days each time when leap-year is but of-leap-years on
meðal þá verðr þat eigi meira en fimm dagar ok 6 stundir,
between then becomes it not more than five days and 6 hours
ok svá margir dagar at annarri tölu sem nú hefi ek talt.
and so many days by (the)-other count as now have I counted

En þat er þú leitar eptir vexti sólar, hversu hana má
But that which you seek after (the)-growth of-(the)-sun how her may-one
markat fá skilvísligast, þá fær þat varla svá glögt sagt, at
marked get most-clearly then can-one that hardly so clearly told that
þat ljúgisk hvergi, ok fyrir því at eigi vex sól í öllum
it lie nowhere and for that that not grows (the)-sun in all
stöðum heimsins jafnskjótt. En eptir því má ek þér vel
places of-the-world equally-quickly But according-to that may I you well
segja, sem ek hefi fundit í orðum þeirra manna, er inniliga
tell as I have found in (the)-words of-those men who closely
hafa þar um talat, ok þat er helzt haldit fyrir satt, at þeir
have there about spoken and that is most held for true that they
munu næst réttu um hafa rætt. En ek hafða áðr sagt þér,
will nearest right about have talked But I had before told you
hversu margar stundir verða í tveim dœgrum, ok nefnda ek
how many hours become in two half-days and named I
þær fyrir þér, ok markaða ek lengð hverrar stundar með
them before you and marked I (the)-length of-each hour with
þeirri tilvísan, at 3 stundir líði, meðan sól gengr um eina
that direction that 3 hours pass while (the)-sun goes through one
ætt. Nú eru aðrar smár stundir, þær er ostensa eru kallaðar,
quarter Now are other small hours those which ostensa are called
ok gera þær 60 eina hina, er fyrr nefnda ek. Nú sýnisk
and make they 60 one the-other which before named I Now seems
mér sannligast, at svá norðarliga sem vér erum staddir, at
to-me truest that so far-north as we are placed that
sól vaxi 5 þessar stundir enu smá um dag, ok svá miklu
(the)-sun grow 5 these hours the small in day and so much
minna en sex, sem tólftungrinn er or þessarri einni hinni
less than six as the-twelfth is out-of this one the
litlu stund; en þat þykki mér sannast um aukning sólar
little hour but that seems to-me truest about (the)-increase of-(the)-sun

vera, at hon vaxi þrjá hluti af þessum stundum til austrs ok
to-be that she grow three parts of these hours to (the)-east and
til vestrs, ok inn fjórða til hæðar upp á himininn. Nú má
to (the)-west and the fourth to height up onto the-heaven Now may
þessi merking ljúga suðr ífrá oss, þvíat norðr ífrá oss vex hon
this marking lie south from us because north from us grows she
skjótara, en suðr seinna en nú höfum vér talt, ok því
quicker but south slower than now have we counted and so-much
meiri er munr, er sunnar ferr ok meir undir sólina.
greater is (the)-difference as farther-south goes and more under the-sun

VII · WHY THE SUN GROWS FASTER IN THE NORTH

The son cannot see why the sun should grow faster in the cold north than in hot Apulia or Jerusalem. The father explains with a candle and an apple: the round earth lies unevenly toward the sun, so lands under its direct rays are hotter, though their nights stay long and dark even in summer. In Hálogaland the sun is hidden in midwinter and shines all night from late May to late July, so it grows fastest there though it is coldest.

SON Með leyfi man ek til forvitnask at rannsaka þessa rœðu
With leave will I to be-curious to examine this talk
nökkuru görr, með því at ek skil eigi til fulls. Nú
somewhat more-fully with that that I understand not to full Now
gátu þér þess at norðr ífrá oss vaxi sól skjótara, þar
mentioned you that that north from us grows (the)-sun quicker there
sem næsta er ekki sumar, ok vetrar megin er svá hátt, at
where nearly is no summer and of-winter strength is so high that
sumar þykkir ekki vera nema skuggi einn, ok margir staðir
summer seems not to-be except shadow one and many places
þeir, er bæði liggr á snjór ok jökull öllum sumrum svá
those which both lies on snow and glacier all summers so

sem um vetrum, sem annathvárt er Ísland eða enn heldr
as in winters as either is Iceland or yet rather
Grœnaland. En ek spyr þat sunnan af löndum, at þar
Greenland But I learn that from-the-south from lands that there
sé öngvar vetrar nauðir, ok sól verðr þar jafnheit um
be no of-winter needs and (the)-sun becomes there equally-hot in
vetrum sem hér er hon um sumrum, ok vex þar um vetrum
winters as here is she in summers and grows there in winters
alt, þá er sól hefir minna megin, bæði korn ok allr
all then when (the)-sun has less strength both grain and all
annarr ávöxtr; en um sumrum má jörð eigi þola hita
other fruit but in summers may (the)-earth not endure (the)-heat
sólar, ok gefr hvárki korn né gras fyrir bruna sakir, ok
of-(the)-sun and gives neither grain nor grass for burning's sake and
er þeim sumarit til jafnmikillar nauðar fyrir hita sakir, sem
is to-them the-summer for equally-great need for heat's sake as
oss er vetr fyrir kulda sakir, lönd slík sem er annathvárt
to-us is winter for cold's sake lands such as is either
Púl eða enn heldr Jórsalaland. Nú með því at þér kváðut
Apulia or yet rather Jerusalem-land Now with that that you said
sólina skjótara vaxa norðr hingat en suðr þangat, þá má
the-sun quicker to-grow north hither than south thither then may
mér þat eigi skiljask, með því at þeir hafa jafnmikit sólar
to-me that not be-understood with that that they have equally-great of-sun
megin um vetrinn sem vér um sumarit, en því meira um
strength in the-winter as we in the-summer but so-much more in
sumarit, at þá brennr af allr jarðar ávöxtr fyrir ofhita; ok
the-summer that then burns off all of-earth fruit for too-great-heat and
sýnisk mér þat sannast, at þar sé meiri vöxtr sólar sem
seems to-me that truest that there be greater growth of-(the)-sun where

meira er megin hennar. Nú ef þér megit sýna mér þetta, svá
greater is strength her Now if you can show me this so
at mér skilisk, þá vil ek gjarna til hlýða með athygli.
that to-me it-be-understood then will I gladly to-it listen with attention
FATHER Lítit efni vil ek með upphafi í þat mál hafa, er
Little matter will I at beginning in that speech have which
ek vil hér um rœða, ok vita ef þat dragi þik til skilningar,
I will here about talk and know if that draw you to understanding
með því at þú lætr svá torveldliga yfir, at svá megi vera.
with that that you act so hard-to-believe over-it that so may be
Tak eitt brennanda kerti ok set í eitt hús, þá er ván
Take one burning candle and set in one house then is expectation
at þat lýsi um alt húsit innan, ef ekki meinar því, þó
that it light about all the-house within if nothing hinders it though
at húsit sé allmikit. En ef þú tekr eitt epli ok hengir
that the-house be very-great But if you take one apple and hang
við logann sjálfan, svá nær at eplinu verðr heitt, þá mun
by the-flame itself so near that to-the-apple becomes hot then will
skyggja náliga allan helming hússins eða þaðan af meira.
shade nearly all half of-the-house or thence from more
En ef þú hengir eplit við vegginn sjálfan, þá verðr því
But if you hang the-apple by the-wall itself then becomes to-it
ekki heitt ok lýsir þá kertit alt húsit innan, ok varla
not hot and lights then the-candle all the-house within and hardly
verðr svá mikill skuggi á vegginum, þar sem eplit hangir
becomes so great shadow on the-wall there where the-apple hangs
við, sem hálft er eplit at vexti. Nú skaltu á því marka, at
by as half is the-apple in size Now shall-you on that mark that
böllóttr er jarðarhringr, ok berr eigi öllum stöðum jafnnær
ball-shaped is earth's-circle and bears not to-all places equally-near
sólu; en þar sem kúfótt hvel hans kemr næst veg
(the)-sun but there where (the)-convex wheel its comes nearest (the)-way

sólar, þá verðr þar miklu heitast, ok eru þau lönd sum
of-(the)-sun then becomes there much hottest and are those lands some
úbyggvandi, er jafnt liggja undir úsköddum geislum hennar.
uninhabitable which evenly lie under unimpaired rays her
En þau lönd er hon kemr at með hölluðu skini, þá
But those lands which she comes at with slanted shine then
má þau vel byggva; en þó eru þau sum heitari en sum,
may-one them well inhabit but yet are they some hotter than some
þvíat sum liggja nærmeir rás hennar en sum; en kompásuð
because some lie nearer course her than some but compassed
brekka böllótts hvels gerir þar myrkvastan skuggann,
slope of-(the)-ball-shaped wheel makes there darkest the-shadow
sem sólu er næst, þegar er brekkuhvelit má uppganga
where to-(the)-sun is nearest as-soon as the-slope-wheel may up-go
fyrir skin sólarinnar ok geisla hennar, en þó verðr þar
before (the)-shine of-the-sun and rays her but yet becomes there
heitast jafnan sem næst berr henni. Nú sanna ek þat með
hottest always where nearest bears to-her Now affirm I that with
þér, at Púl ok Jórsalaland er heitara en vár lönd; en þó
you that Apulia and Jerusalem-land is hotter than our lands but yet
skaltu þat vita, at eru þeir staðir, er enn eru heldr heitari
shall-you that know that are those places which still are rather hotter
en hvárgi þessi, er nú er nefndr; þvíat þeir staðir eru ok,
than neither these which now is named because those places are also
er úbyggvandi eru með öllu fyrir hita sakir; en þó hefi
which uninhabitable are with all for heat's sake but yet have
ek þat sannspurt, at þar verðr mikil nótt bæði myrk ok vel
I that truly-learned that there becomes great night both dark and well
löng, þá er sól gengr sem hæst; ok skaltu á því marka,
long then when (the)-sun goes as highest and shall-you on that mark
at hon mun þar seinna fara ok svá niðr stíga, sem áðr er
that she will there later go and so down step as before is

meira afl hennar ok megin, er hon er nærri, fyrir því at
greater strength her and might when she is near for that that
þar er mikil nótt um sumarit, þá er hon gengr hæst, ok
there is great night in the-summer then when she goes highest and
mikill dagr um vetrinn, þá er hon gengr sem lægst. Nú
great day in the-winter then when she goes as lowest Now
vil ek sýna þér þat svá inniliga, at þér skilisk til fulls.
will I show you that so closely that to-you it-be-understood to full
Þat veiztu, at hér er um vetrinn með oss lítill dagr ok
That know-you that here is in the-winter with us little day and
lítill sólargangr, svá at sól hefir eigi meira gang en at
little sun's-course so that (the)-sun has not more course than that
hon veltisk um eina ætt, ok þar at einu svá, sem allgott
she rolls through one quarter and there at one so as very-good
er sólar megin; en í mörgum stöðum er þat, at hana
is of-sun strength but in many places is that that her
má eigi sjá mikinn hlut vetrarins, allrahelzt á Hálogalandi,
may-one not see great part of-the-winter of-all-most in Halogaland
er vér höfum eigi at eins fréttir til haft, heldr opt ok
where we have not at only news to-it had rather often and
iðuliga sét með augum várum ok reynt. Þvíat þat vitu vér
frequently seen with eyes our and tested Because that know we
til víss, at ífrá því er inngengr quarta Idus Novembris ok
for certain that from that when enters fourth Ides of-November and
til þess er kemr quarta Idus Januarii, þá verðr aldrigi svá
to that when comes fourth Ides of-January then becomes never so
ljóss dagr í Vágum norðr eða um Andarnes á Hálogalandi,
light day in Vagar north or about Andarnes in Halogaland
at eigi sé stjörnur sýnar á himni jafnvel um miðjan dag
that not be stars visible in sky even at mid day
sem um miðja nótt. En þóat síðan taki svá dagr at lýsa,
as at mid night But though afterward begins so day to lighten

at eigi megi stjörnur sjá, þá er þat þó í flestum stöðum
that not may-one stars see then is that yet in most places
þeim, sem nú rœddu vér um, at eigi má sól sjá alt
those which now spoke we about that not may-one (the)-sun see all
til decima Kal. Februarii. En því næst tekr dagr svá skjótt
to tenth Kalends of-February But that next begins day so quickly
at togna ok sólargangr at vaxa, at þann tíma er inngengr
to stretch and sun's-course to grow that that time when enters
octava Idus Aprilis þá sezk eigi dagr fyrr en inngengr
eighth Ides of-April then sets not day before than enters
quinta decima Kal. Octobris, ok er öll sú stund, er þar
fifth tenth Kalends of-October and is all that while which there
er á millum alt einn dagr, svá at aldrigi sezk dagr á allri
is on between all one day so that never sets day in all
þeirri stundu. Nú máttu þat til víss marka, þóat sólin sé
that while Now may-you that for certain mark though the-sun be
heitari suðr í löndin, sem vit rœddum fyrr um, þá vex
hotter south in the-lands as we-two spoke before about then grows
hon þar þó smærrum til uppstígningar, er mikil er nótt
she there yet smaller to ascent where great is night
ok löng ok myrk á miðjum sumrum, ok er aldrigi sá
and long and dark in mid summers and is never that
tími á öllum tólf mánuðum, er eigi sezk dagr. En hér á
time in all twelve months when not sets day But here in
Hálogalandi, sem nú rœddu vér um, þá er engi dagr um
Halogaland as now spoke we about then is no day in
vetrum, ok sér stjörnur um miðja daga, þá er dagr skyldi
winters and see-one stars at mid days then when day should
ljósastr vera; en síðan er dagr tekr at vaxa, þá vex hann
lightest be but afterward when day begins to grow then grows it

svá skjótt, at snemma um várit tekr dagr ljóss at vera
so quickly that early in the-spring begins day light to be
um allar nætr, ok heldr til þess er mikit er af hausti.
through all nights and holds to that when much is of autumn
Nú er þat mark eitt eptir, at þér mun enn glöggvast
Now is that mark one left which to-you will still clearest
verða, þvíat þú veizt þat í þessum sömum stöðum á
become because you know that in these same places in
Hálogalandi, er nú höfum vit um rætt, í þann tíma
Halogaland which now have we-two about talked at that time
er inngengr octava decima Kal. Junii, þá tekr sól
when enters eighth tenth Kalends of-June then begins (the)-sun
at skína jafnbjart um nætr sem um daga, ok sezk aldrigi
to shine equally-bright at nights as at days and sets never
hvártki nótt né dag, ok skínn jafnan með sama hætti bæði
neither night nor day and shines always in same manner both
at bjartleik ok at öllu öðru, þegar er eigi grandar ský skini
in brightness and in all other as-soon as not harms cloud shine
hennar, alt til octava Kal. Augusti. Nú veiztu þat, at
her all to eighth Kalends of-August Now know-you that that
sól er mundanga heit á Hálogalandi, ok er þó litla hríð
(the)-sun is moderately hot in Halogaland and is yet little while
þat á sumrinu, er hon hefir ýrinn yl, en þó er hon svá
that in the-summer that she has ample warmth but yet is she so
nökkuru lengi með skínanda hveli, sem nú höfum vér sagt,
somewhat long with shining wheel as now have we said
ok svá nökkuru ok heldr hon ljósum degi, sem nú hefi ek
and so somewhat and holds she light day as now have I
sagt; en þat er hvergi suðr á lönd, þóat at hon sé þar
said but that is nowhere south in lands though that she be there
heitari. Nú bera þessir hlutir vitni, at sól er hér firrmeir,
hotter Now bear these things witness that (the)-sun is here farther

þvíat hon er kaldari hér en hizug. En þat berr vitni um
because she is colder here than yonder But that bears witness about
vöxt hennar, at því vex hon hér skjótara, at hon skínn
growth her that for-that grows she here quicker that she shines
hér jafnbjart um nætr sem um daga; en hizug því smærra
here equally-bright at nights as at days but yonder for-that smaller
vex hon ok seinna, at nótt hefir þar tíma sinn allan bæði
grows she and later that night has there time its all both
at myrkri ok at lengð, jafnvel um sumar sem um vetr.
in darkness and in length even in summer as in winter

VIII · A LIGHTER TALK

The son, content with these answers, asks leave to turn to lighter questions for pleasure. The father agrees, and the son asks about the wonders of Ireland, Iceland, and Greenland. The father is reluctant, because men call lies what they have not seen, as they have called the book of India's wonders sent to Emperor Manuel, yet the north holds things as strange.

SON Nú skilsk mér þetta svá vel, at ek má ekki í
Now is-understood to-me this so well that I may not in
móti mæla, at miklu vex þar sólin skjótara ok stœrrum
against speak that much grows there the-sun quicker and greater
til uppstígningar, sem næsta er engi dagr um vetr, en svá
for ascent where nearly is no day in winter but so
mikil gnótt at sólunni um sumarit, at hon skínn um
great abundance of the-sun through the-summer that she shines at
nætr sem um daga flestalt sumar; ok sé ek at miklu
nights as at days nearly-all summer and see I that much
vex hon hizug smærrum, sem hon er há um vetrum, ok
grows she yonder smaller where she is high in winters and

langr dagr ok mikill sólargangr ok heitr, ok þó löng nótt
long day and great sun's-course and hot and yet long night
ok myrk um sumarit; ok þurfu kaupmenn þetta mjök at
and dark through the-summer and need merchants this much to
marka ok ætla fyrir í hvárntveggja mun, í hverjum höfum
mark and reckon before in either-of-two respect in whatever seas
sem þeir eru staddir, hvárt sem þau eru sunnarliga eða
that they are placed whether that they are southerly or
norðarliga, ok sýnisk mér nú svá sem ek þurfa þessa rœðu
northerly and seems to-me now so as-if I needed this talk
eigi lengr at forvitnask, fyrir því at ek þykkjumk nú hafa
not longer to be-curious-about for that that I seem-to-myself now to-have
fengit gnóg svör ok sönn. Nú með því at vér mœðumk
gotten enough answers and true Now with that that we tire
í athugasamligum rœðum, þá viljum vér nú taka oss
in attention-requiring talks then will we now take for-ourselves
hvíld í várri rœðu með gamansamligum spurningum nökkura
rest in our talk with amusing questions some
stund; ok vil ek yðr biðja fyrir dæligleika sakir, þóat ek leita
while and will I you ask for pleasantness' sake though I seek
nökkurra spurninga þeirra, er eigi eru svá nauðsynligar,
some questions of-those which not are so necessary
sem þær er til stórnauðsynja þarf, at þó veiti þér mér
as those which for great-needs is-needed that yet give you me
andsvör fyrir, er ek spyr, með því at hugr minn forvitnask
answers for what I ask with that that mind my is-curious
eigi síðr til gamans, heldr hins er til nauðsynja horfir.
not less for amusement rather-than for-that which to needs looks
Ok vera má, at þat þykki nökkur hvíld í langri rœðu, ef
And be may that that seem some rest in long talk if
nökkur sú spurning kemr í rœðuna, er veki huginn til
some that question comes into the-talk which wakes the-mind to

léttrar skemtanar. Nú vil ek því at eins hafa gamansamligar
light entertainment Now will I for-that at only have amusing
spurningar í rœðu várri, at yðvart sé leyfi til.
questions in talk our that yours be leave to-it
FATHER Þess vænti ek, at þú munt enskis þess spyrja, er
That expect I that you will of-nothing that ask which
heimskligt er, með því at þú hefir þess eins spurt, er heldr
foolish is with that that you have that alone asked which rather
þykkir viðkvæmiligt vera, ok máttu fyrir því spyrja með leyfi
seems becoming to-be and may-you for that ask with leave
slíks, er þú vilt, þvíat kostr mun vera, at láta þá spurning
such as you will because choice will be to let that question
niðrfalla þegar er vill, ef eigi þykkir viðkvæmilig vera.
drop as-soon as one-wishes if not it-seems becoming to-be
SON Með því at ek skal í leyfi forvitnask til gamansamligrar
With that that I shall in leave be-curious for amusing
rœðu, þá þykkjumk ek oflítit spurt hafa um Írland eða Ísland
talk then seem-to-myself I too-little asked to-have about Ireland or Iceland
eða Grœnaland ok undr þau öll, er þar eru í, annathvárt um
or Greenland and wonders those all which there are in either about
eld eða undarlig vötn, eða um kyn fiska eða um skrimsl, þau
fire or wondrous waters or about kinds of-fish or about monsters those
er þar vafra í höfum umhverfis, eða ofrgang ísa bæði í
which there roam in seas round-about or (the)-overrunning of-ice both in
hafi eða á þeim löndum, eða þat er Grœnlendingar kalla
(the)-sea or on those lands or that which Greenlanders call
norðrljós, eða hafgerðingar þær sem verða í Grœnlands höfum.
northern-lights or sea-hedges those which become in Greenland's seas
FATHER Eigi em ek fúsastr at rœða um undr þau er hér eru
Not am I most-eager to talk about wonders those which here are
norðr með oss, ok veldr því lítill hlutr, þvíat þat er siðr
north with us and causes that little thing because that is (the)-custom

margra manna, at kalla flestalt logit, þat er þeir hafa eigi
of-many men to call nearly-all lied that which they have not
augum sét, ok þykki mér þat ilt í rœður at flytja, er ek
with-eyes seen and seems to-me that ill into talks to bring which I
skal síðan vera kallaðr lygimaðr af, þóat ek vita til víss at
shall afterward be called liar for though I know for certain that
satt sé, sumt þat er ek hefi augum sét, en þat er sumt,
true is some that which I have with-eyes seen but that is some
er hvern dag er kostr at spyrja af þeim, er augum hafa sét
which each day is choice to ask of those who with-eyes have seen
ok rannsakat, ok vitu til víss at satt er, ok vitu vér þá
and examined and know for certain that true is and know we them
úlygna vera. En ek mæli fyrir þá sök þessi andyrði, at ein
unlying to-be But I speak for that cause this preface that one
lítil bók, er skömmu hefir komit hingat í land várt, er
little book which shortly has come hither into land our which
kallat er at gör var á Indíalandi ok rœðir um Indíalands
called is that made was in India-land and talks about India-land's
undr, ok er svá mælt í bókinni, at hon hafi send verit
wonders and is so said in the-book that it have sent been
Emanueli Girkja keisara. Nú er þat orð flestra manna,
to-Emanuel of-(the)-Greeks emperor Now is that (the)-word of-most men
er bókina heyra, at þat megi eigi vera, ok þat sé ekki nema
who the-book hear that that may not be and that is nothing except
lygi, er þar segir í þeirri bók; en ef görla skal rannsaka
lie which there says in that book but if fully shall-one examine
í várum löndum, þá eru ekki hér þeir færri hlutir heldr
in our lands then are not here those fewer things rather
en hizug eru ritaðir, er undarligir munu þykkja eða enn
than yonder are written which wondrous will seem or yet
undarligri í várum löndum þeim, sem ekki eru slíkir hlutir
more-wondrous in our lands those where not are such things

sénir eða dœmi til. Nú köllu vér fyrir því þá hluti lygiliga
seen or examples to-it Now call we for that those things lie-like
vera, at þeir eru ekki hér sénir, ok eigi fyrr heyrðir heldr
to-be that they are not here seen and not before heard rather
en hér í þessi bók, sem nú rœddu vit um. Nú hefir sú
than here in this book which now spoke we-two about Now has that
en litla bók verit þó víða borin, við þat at hon hafi jafnan
the little book been yet widely borne with that that it has always
verit tortrygð ok lygi vænd, ok þykki mér þó engi sœmd
been mistrusted and of-lying suspected and seems to-me yet no honor
þeim í hafa verit, þóat víða hafi borin verit, með því at
to-them in to-have been though widely have borne been with that that
æ hefir logit verit kallat þat, er í er ritat, þóat víða hafi
ever has lied been called that which in-it is written though widely have
síðan borin verit til eyrna gamans ok fyrir skemtanar sakir.
since borne been to ears' amusement and for entertainment's sake

IX · WONDERS OF NORWAY

When the son cites the Indian book's tamed dragons, the father names Norwegian wonders that would seem stranger abroad: men on skis who outrun birds, hounds, and reindeer, so that one may spear nine reindeer in a single run; the summer sun that shines all night; and the bog of Björkudalr in Mœrr, where wood lying three winters turns to stone.

SON Eigi er mér kunnigt hversu víðfleyg er vár rœða vill
Not is to-me known how wide-flying is our talk will
gerask um vára daga eða eptir, en þó vil ek enn með tilmæli
become in our days or after but yet will I still with request
eptir leita þeirri skemtan, at vér talim lengra um þá
after seek that entertainment that we talk longer about those

hluti, er vér ætlum at undarligir muni þykkja í öðrum
things which we think that wondrous will seem in other
löndum, ok vér vitum hér til sanns at úlognir eru. Ok ekki
lands and we know here for truth that unlied are And not
töku vér mikit af at tortryggva þá bók, er kallat er at
take we much from-it to mistrust that book which called is that
gör var á Indíalandi, þóat mart sé undarligt í sagt, þvíat
made was in India-land though much be wondrous in-it told because
margir hlutir eru þeir hér með oss, er þar munu undarligir
many things are those here with us which there will wondrous
þykkja vera, er oss þykki hér ekki undarligt, ef vár rœða
seem to-be which to-us seem here not wondrous if our talk
mætti svá langt fljúga, at hon kœmi þangat, sem þess
might so far fly that it came thither where of-that
er engi ván. En ef ek skylda yfir einum hverjum hlut
is no expectation But if I should over one any thing
undarliga láta þeim, sem þar í er mælt, þá sýnisk mér
wondrous act of-those which there in-it is said then seems to-me
þat eigi sízt undr, at smáir menn megi temja þá ena stóru
that not least wonder that small men may tame those the great
flugdreka, er þar eru í fjöllum eða í eyðimörkum, svá sem
flying-dragons which there are in mountains or in deserts so as
bók sú rœðir um, til þess at þeir megi ríða þeim hvert
book that talks about to that that they may ride them wherever
sem þeir vilja, svá sem hestum, jafngrimm kykvendi sem
that they will so as horses equally-fierce creatures as
mér eru þau sögð ok eitrfull, ok engi náttúra til, at maðr
to-me are they told and poison-full and no nature to-it that a-man
megi í nánd vera, enn síðr til þjónunar eða til tamningar.
may in nearness be yet less for service or for taming

FATHER Bæði eru slíkir hlutir ok margir aðrir þeir þar í
Both are such things and many others those there in-it
mæltir, er undarligir þykkja, ok láta margir tortryggliga
told which wondrous seem and act many mistrustfully
yfir, ok sýnisk mér fyrir því engi nauðsyn at jafna þeim
over-it and seems to-me for that no need to compare those
hlutum saman, er þar eru í ritaðir, ok þeim er hér eru
things together which there are in-it written and those which here are
með oss, er jafnundarligir munu þykkja þar, sem oss þykkja
with us which equally-wondrous will seem there as to-us seem
þessir hér, er nú rœddir þú um; þvíat þat mætti vera,
these here which now talked you about because that might be
at temja mætti dýrin eða önnur kykvendi, þóat þau væri
that tame one-might the-beasts or other creatures though they were
grimm eða torveldlig um at véla. En þat mun þykkja meira
fierce or difficult about to handle But that will seem greater
undr, er svá er ífrá sagt um þá menn er þat kunnu, at
wonder which so is from told about those men who that know to
temja tré eða fjalir til þess, at sá maðr, er hann er eigi
tame trees or boards to that that that man who he is not
fimari á fœti en menn aðrir, meðan hann hefir ekki
more-nimble on foot than men other while he has not
annat á fótum en skúa sína eða elligar bera fœtr sína, en
other on feet than shoes his or else bare feet his but
jafnskjótt sem hann bindr fjalar undir fœtr sér, annattveggja
as-soon as he binds boards under feet his either
sjau álna langar eða átta, þá sigrar hann fugla at flaug eða
seven ells long or eight then defeats he birds in flight or
mjóhunda at rás, þá sem mest megu hlaupa, eða hrein
greybounds in running those which most can run or reindeer
er hleypr hálfu meira en hjörtr; þvíat sá er mikill fjöldi
which runs half more than hart because that is great multitude

manna, er svá kann vel á skíðum, at hann stingr í einni
of-men who so know well on skis that he stabs in one
rend sinni 9 hreina með spjóti sínu ok þaðan af fleiri. Nú
run his 9 reindeer with spear his and thence from more Now
mun þessi hlutr þykkja tortryggligr ok úlíkligr ok undarligr
will this thing seem doubtful and unlikely and wondrous
á öllum þeim löndum, er eigi vitu menn með hverri vél
in all those lands where not know men with what device
eða list slíkt má vera, at fjölin má tömd vera til svá mikils
or art such may be that the-board may tamed be to so great
fljótleiks, at á fjöllum uppi þá má ekki vætta forðask
swiftness that on mountains up then may not of-creature escape
rás þess manns ok skjótleik, er fjalar hefir á fótum
(the)-running of-that man and swiftness who boards has on feet
sér, þat sem jörðunni fylgir; en þegar hann lætr fjalarnar af
his that which to-the-earth follows but when he lets the-boards off
fótum sér, þá er hann ekki fimari en aðrir menn. En í
feet his then is he not more-nimble than other men But in
öðrum stöðum þar sem menn eru ekki slíku vanir, þá mun
other places there where men are not to-such used then will
varla finnask svá fimr maðr, at eigi þykki af hánum taka
hardly be-found so nimble a-man that not it-seems from him take
allan fimleika, þegar er slík svá tré eru bundin við fœtr
all nimbleness as-soon as such so trees are bound to feet
hánum, sem nú höfum vér um rœtt. Nú vitum vér þessa
his as now have we about talked Now know we these
hluti til víss, ok eigum kost þegar um vetrum er snjár er,
things for certain and have choice when in winters is snow is
at sjá gnótt þeirra manna, er þessar vélar ok listir kunnu.
to see abundance of-those men who these devices and arts know

Nú gátu vér ok skömmu þeirra hluta, er allmikit undr
Now mentioned we also shortly of-those things which very-great wonder
mun þykkja í flestum löndum öðrum, þvíat þat er mest
will seem in most lands other because that is most
ígegn náttúru þeirri, er flest öll lönd hafa um dœgraskipti,
against nature that which nearly all lands have about day-division
þvíat hér skínn sól jafnbjart ok jafnfagrt með jöfnum
because here shines (the)-sun equally-bright and equally-fair with even
yl jafnvel um nætr sem um daga mikinn hluta sumars.
warmth equally at nights as at days great part of-summer
Þat mun ok undarligt þykkja hér í landi á Mœri um mýri
That will also wondrous seem here in land in More about bog
þá, er Björkudals mýrr er kölluð, at hvatki tré er þar er
that which Bjorkudal's bog is called that whatever tree which there is
í kastat, ok liggr þat þar þrjá vetr, þá verðr þat at steini,
into thrown and lies it there three winters then becomes it to stone
ok hafnar tréit náttúru sinni, þvíat þóat þat sé í eld kastat,
and rejects the-tree nature its because though it be into fire thrown
þá glóar þat síðan sem steinn, en áðr brann þat sem tré;
then glows it afterward as stone but before burned it as tree
ok höfum vér marga þá steina séna ok í höndum hafða, er
and have we many those stones seen and in hands had which
hálft hefir verit tré, þat sem upp hefir staðit or mýrinni, en
half has been tree that which up has stood out-of the-bog but
hitt steinn er niðr hefir staðit í mýrina. Nú má þat
the-other stone which down has stood in the-bog Now may-one that
undarligt kalla, þvíat sú mýrr er í þeirri mörku, sem allskyns
wondrous call because that bog is in that forest where of-all-kinds
er ærinn viðarvöxtr, ok sakar þat ekki, meðan þat er grœnt ok
is ample wood-growth and harms that not while it is green and

í vexti; en þegar er þat er höggvit, ok þat tekr at hrörna, ok
in growth but as-soon as it is hewn and it begins to decay and
er þat þá kastat í mýrina, þá snýsk þat til steins náttúru.
is it then thrown into the-bog then turns it to stone's nature

X · THE WONDERS OF IRELAND

Iceland and Greenland are harsh, but Ireland is nearly the best of lands, so temperate that cattle winter outdoors and so holy that no poisonous creature can live there; its soil and wood kill serpents. The father tells of a lake that turns holly to iron and stone, two springs that blacken and whiten, a floating island that heals the sick, an island where the dead stand unrotted, another where no one can die, an island half held by devils, and a wild hairy creature caught in the woods.

SON Þessir hlutir eru mér allir kunnir, þvíat þeir eru hér í landi,
These things are to-me all known because they are here in land
ok hefi ek alla séna, en hinir hlutir eru mér allir úkunnir, er
and have I all seen but the-other things are to-me all unknown which
bæði eru á Íslandi eða Grœnalandi eða á Írlandi, þvíat þar hefi
both are in Iceland or Greenland or in Ireland because there have
ek spurdaga til haft, eða í höfum þeim er þar eru umhverfis.
I reports to-it had or in seas those which there are round-about
FATHER Þóat vit skyldim fleira um þessi lönd rœða, þá eru
Though we-two should more about these lands talk then are
þau með ýmsum háttum, ok eru þau eigi öll eptir einum
they in various manners and are they not all after one
hætti, þvíat þau undr er annattveggja eru á Íslandi eða
manner because those wonders which either are in Iceland or
Grœnalandi, þá eru bæði með ofgangi frosts ok jökla, eða
Greenland then are both with excess of-frost and of-glaciers or
elligar af ofgangi elds ok bruna, eða með stórum fiskum ok
else from excess of-fire and burning or with great fishes and

mörgum öðrum sæskrimslum; ok er hvarvetna þat land svá
many other sea-monsters and is everywhere that land so
ilt ok snarpt, at þat er náliga úbyggvanda fyrir þá sök. En
ill and harsh that it is nearly uninhabitable for that cause But
Írland er náliga landa bezt, þeirra er menn vitu, þó þar
Ireland is nearly of-lands best of-those which men know though there
vaxi eigi vín á, ok eru þar þó margir undarligir hlutir, ok
grow not wine on and are there yet many wondrous things and
þeir sumir er þat land mun kallat helgara en önnur lönd.
those some which that land will called holier than other lands
Þat liggr á þeirri heims síðu er svá vel er temprat saman
It lies on that world's side which so well is tempered together
með hita ok kulda, at þar verðr aldrigi ofkalt né ofheitt;
with heat and cold that there becomes never too-cold nor too-hot
þvíat um vetrum öllum fœðisk þar búfé úti, ok náliga eru
because in winters all is-fed there livestock outside and nearly are
þar menn klæðlausir bæði um vetr ok sumar. En þat land er
there men clothesless both in winter and summer But that land is
svá heilagt umfram önnur lönd, at þar má ekki eitrkvikendi
so holy beyond other lands that there may no poison-creature
þrifask, hvárki ormr né padda; ok þóat þat sé flutt þangat
thrive neither serpent nor toad and though it be brought thither
af öðrum löndum, þá deyr þat þegar, er þat kemr á bera
from other lands then dies it as-soon as it comes on bare
jörð eða stein. Ok þóat nökkut sé tekit or því landi,
earth or stone And though anything be taken out-of that land
annattveggja tré eða jörð eða sandr, ok flutt í þau lönd,
either tree or earth or sand and brought into those lands
er eitrkvikendi eru í, ok er þeim sandi eða moldu sáit í
which poison-creatures are in and is with-that sand or soil sown in
hring um þau, þar sem þau liggja, þá komask þau aldrigi
a-ring around them there where they lie then get they never

síðan út um þann hring, ok þar liggja þau öll dauð í.
afterward out over that ring and there lie they all dead in-it
Svá ok þóat þú takir tré þat, er or þessu landi er, sem
So also though you take tree that which out-of this land is which
nú rœddum vér um, ok dragir í hring um þau, svá at þú
now talked we about and draw in a-ring around them so that you
skeðir jörðunni með trénu, þá liggja þau öll dauð í þessum
scratch the-earth with the-tree then lie they all dead in this
hring. Þat er ok mælt um Írland, at jafnmikit eyland sem
ring That is also said about Ireland that equally-great island as
þat er, þá vitu menn þat varla, er jafnmargr sé heilagr
it is then know men that hardly which equally-many be holy
maðr í sem þar. Þat er ok mælt, at sú þjóð er þat land
man in as there It is also said that that people which that land
byggvir, er bæði grimm í sér ok þó drápgjörn ok mjök
inhabits is both fierce in itself and yet slaughter-eager and very
úsiðug; en svá drápgjarnir sem þeir eru, ok svá margir sem
ill-mannered but so slaughter-eager as they are and so many as
helgir eru í þeirra landi, þá hafa þeir engan drepit af þeim;
holy are in their land then have they none killed of them
ok allir þeir helgir menn sem þar eru, þá hafa allir sóttdauðir
and all those holy men who there are then have all sickness-dead
orðit; þvíat þeir hafa heilhugaðir verit við alla góða menn
become because they have whole-minded been toward all good men
ok helga, þóat þeir hafi verit grimmir sín á millum.
and holy though they have been fierce themselves on between
Vatn eitt er ok þat í því landi, er undarligt er sagt ífrá náttúru
Water one is also that in that land which wondrous is told from nature
þess; þat vatn er kallat á þeirra tungu Logechag. Þat vatn er
its that water is called in their tongue Logechag That water is
vel mikit at vexti; en sú er náttúra þess vatns, ef þú tekr tré
well great in size but that is (the)-nature of-that water if you take tree

þat, er sumir kalla beinvið, en sumir hulfr, en á latínu er
that which some call bone-wood but some holly but in Latin is
kallat acrifolium, ok setr þú þat í vatnit, svá at sumt stendr
called acrifolium and set you it in the-water so that some stands
niðr í jörðina, en sumt í vatninu, en sumt upp or vatninu,
down in the-earth but some in the-water but some up out-of the-water
þá verðr þat at járni, er niðr stendr í jörðina, en þat at steini
then becomes that to iron which down stands in the-earth but that to stone
er í vatninu er; en þat tré sem upp stendr or vatninu, sem
which in the-water is but that tree which up stands out-of the-water as
áðr var þat. En þóat þú takir annarskonar tré en þetta, þá
before was it But though you take of-another-kind tree than this then
hafnar þat ekki sinni náttúru, þóat þú setir þat í þetta vatn.
rejects it not its nature though you set it in this water
Þar eru enn keldur tvær í fjalli því, er Blandina heitir,
There are still springs two in mountain that which Blandina is-called
ok er þat náliga eitt eyðifjall; en þær keldur hafa undarliga
and is it nearly one waste-mountain but those springs have wondrous
náttúru. Önnur sú kelda er þar er í því fjalli, hefir
nature One that spring which there is in that mountain has
þá náttúru, ef þú tekr annattveggja hvítan sauð, eða naut,
that nature if you take either white sheep or ox
eða hross, eða mann þann, er hár hefir hvítt, ok þvær
or horse or man that who hair has white and wash
þú einnhvern þessarra hluta í vatninu, þá verðr þegar
you any-one of-these things in the-water then becomes-it at-once
kolsvartr. En þat er náttúra annarrar keldu þeirrar, er þar
coal-black But that is (the)-nature of-the-other spring that which there
er, ef maðr þvær sér í hvat lit sem áðr hafði hann,
is if a-man washes himself in whatever color which before had he

hvárt sem hann var rauðr eða hvítr eða svartr, þá verðr hann
whether that he was red or white or black then becomes he
síðan snæhvítr af hærum, svá sem hann sé elligamall maðr.
afterward snow-white with hoary-hairs so as-if he be an-age-old man
Þat vatn er þar enn í því landi, er þeir kalla á sína
That water is there still in that land which they call in their
tungu Loycha; en í því vatni er hólmi einn lítill, svá sem
tongue Loycha and in that water is islet one little so as-if
flotahólmi sé, þvíat hann flýtr umhverfis vatnit innan, ok
floating-islet be because it floats around the-water within and
kemr hann hér ok hvar at landi, stundum svá nær at maðr
comes it here and there to land at-times so near that a-man
má stíga á hólmann, ok verðr þat optast á dróttinsdögum.
may step onto the-islet and becomes that most-often on Lord's-days
En sú er náttúra at hólma þessum, ef sá maðr stígr í
But that is (the)-nature in islet this if that man steps onto
þann hólma, er sjúkr er, hvatki sótt sem hann hefir, ok
that islet who sick is whatever sickness which he has and
neytir hann þeirra grasa, er þar vaxa, þá verðr hann þegar
partakes he of-those herbs which there grow then becomes he at-once
heill; þat fylgir ok þeirri náttúru, at aldri kemsk fleiri senn
whole that follows also that nature that never gets more at-once
í en einn, þóat margir vili, þvíat sá hólmi flýtr þegar frá
in than one though many will because that islet floats at-once from
landi, er einn maðr er í. Sjá náttúra er ok með þessum
land when one man is in-it This nature is also with this
hólma, at hann flýtr sjau vetr staðfast í þessu vatni; en
islet that it floats seven winters fixed in this water but
þegar er sjau vetr eru liðnir, þá flýtr hann til lands í
as-soon as seven winters are passed then floats it to land in
einhverjum stað, ok grær þar við annat land, svá sem hann
some place and grows-fast there to other land so as-if it

hefði jafnan þar við verit. En meðan sá tími er, þá heyrisk
had always there to been But while that time is then is-heard
mönnum sem dynr komi líkr reiðiþrumu, en eptir liðna
to-men as-if din came like thunderclap but after passed
þrumu, þá sjá menn slíkan hólma í vatninu sem áðr, með
thunder then see men such islet in the-water as before with
sama vexti ok með samri náttúru; ok ferr svá hverja sjau
same size and with same nature and goes so each seven
vetr eptir aðra, at æ sem annarr grœr við meginland,
winters after another that ever as one grows-fast to (the)-mainland
þá kemr annarr hólmi í, ok veit þó engi hvaðan kemr.
then comes another islet in and knows yet no-one whence comes
Þá er þar enn ey ein lítil í því landi, er þeir kalla á sína
Then is there still island one little in that land which they call in their
tungu Inhisgluer. Þar er mjök mikil manna bygð í þeirri ey,
tongue Inhisgluer There is very great of-men settlement in that island
en þar er ein kirkja í, þvíat svá nökkuru mikit fólk er í þeirri
but there is one church in-it because so somewhat great folk is in that
ey, sem vera mun ein kirkjusókn. En þóat menn andisk þar,
island as be will one parish But though men die there
þá eru þeir eigi í jörð grafnir, heldr eru þeir reistir umhverfis
then are they not in earth buried rather are they raised around
kirkjuna við kirkjugarðinn, ok standa upp sem kykvir menn
the-church by the-churchyard and stand up as living men
með þornuðum öllum limum ok úsköddu hári ok nöglum, ok
with dried all limbs and unharmed hair and nails and
fúna aldrigi, ok aldrigi setjask þar fuglar á; ok má þar hverr
rot never and never settle there birds on and may there each
fram á leið kenna, sá er eptir lifir, sinn föður, eða föðurföður,
forward on way recognize he who after lives his father or father's-father
eða allar sínar kynkvíslir þær sem hann er frá kominn.
or all his kindreds those which he is from come

Þá er þar enn eitt mikit vatn, þat er heitir Logri; en
Then is there still one great water that which is-called Logri but
þar liggr ein lítil ey í því vatni, ok eru hreinlífismenn
there lies one little island in that water and are chaste-living-men
þar í, þeir er kalla má hvárt er vill munka eða
there in-it those whom call may-one whichever that one-wishes monks or
eremita, en þó eru þeir með svá miklum fjölda, at þar er
hermits but yet are they with so great multitude that there is
full eyin af, en stundum eru þeir færri. En þat er sagt
full the-island of-them but at-times are they fewer But that is told
ífrá ey þeirri, at hon er heilsöm ok ekki sóttul, ok seinna
from island that that it is healthful and not sickly and later
eldask menn þar en í öðrum stöðum í landinu. En þegar
age men there than in other places in the-land But as-soon
er menn eldask svá mjök eða sýkjask, at þeir sjá endadag
as men age so much or sicken that they see end-day
sinn ætlaðan af guði, þá verðr þá or at flytja í
their appointed by God then becomes-needed them out-of to bring into
einnhvern stað til lands, þar sem hann skal andask, þvíat
some place to land there where he shall die because
engi má líflátinn verða í eynni af sóttum, en sýkjask
no-one may life-lost become in the-island from sicknesses but sicken
má maðr ok gremjask í ey þessarri, en eigi má önd hans
may a-man and suffer in island this but not may soul his
skiljask við líkama, fyrr en hann er or fluttr eynni.
part from body before than he is out-of brought the-island
Þá er ok þar enn eitt mikit vatn, er þeir kalla á sína tungu
Then is also there still one great water which they call in their tongue
Logherne. Í því vatni er þesskonar mikill fiskafjöldi, er menn
Logherne In that water is of-that-kind great fish-multitude which men
kalla laxa; en sá fiskr gengr svá nógr um alt land þeirra, at
call salmon but that fish goes so plentiful about all land their that

þeir hafa ærinn til síns borðs. Eyjar eru ok þar margar i vatni
they have ample for their table Islands are also there many in water
því, en ein er sú þar, er þeir kalla á sína tungu Kertinagh.
that but one is that there which they call in their tongue Kertinagh
Sú ey væri hœfilig at byggva fyrir mikilleika sakar, ef menn
That island were fitting to inhabit for size's sake if men
þyrði at byggva hana. En þat er mælt um þá ey, at djöflar
dared to inhabit her But that is said about that island that devils
hafi jafnmikit veldi yfir helmingi eyjar þeirrar, sem í sjálfu
have equally-great power over half of-island that as in itself
helvíti; ok þeim sinnum er freistnir menn hafa þat gört
hell and those times when venturesome men have that done
til raunar, þá hafa þeir svá síðan frá sagt, at jafnmargar
for trial then have they so afterward from told that equally-many
þrautir ok pínslir hafa þeir þar þolt, sem sagt er ífrá, at
torments and tortures have they there endured as told is from that
sálur þola í helvíti. En í öðrum helmingi eyjarinnar, þá er
souls endure in hell But in (the)-other half of-the-island then is
kirkja ok kirkjugarðr um, ok er þó nú hvártveggja helmingr
church and churchyard around and is yet now each-of-two half
auðr; en svá er frá sagt, at yfir þeim helmingi eyjarinnar,
empty but so is from told that over that half of-the-island
sem kirkjan stendr í, þá hafa djöflar eigi þar vald yfir.
which the-church stands in then have devils not there power over
Þat gerðisk enn á því landi, er mjök undarligt mun þykkja,
That happened still in that land which very wondrous will seem
at menn veiddu í skógi eitt þat kykvendi, er engi maðr
that men caught in forest one that creature which no man
kunni frá at segja, hvárt heldr var maðr eða annat dýr, þvíat
could from to tell whether rather was man or other beast because
menn féngu ekki mál af því, ok eigi urðu menn varir við, at
men got not speech from it and not became men aware of that

þat skildi manna mál. En þat var þó vaxit at öllum hlutum
it understood men's speech But it was yet grown in all things
svá sem maðr, bæði hendr ok fœtr á ok manns andlit, en
so as man both hands and feet on and man's face but
hári var vaxinn allr líkamr sem annarra dýra, en at endilöngu
with-hair was grown all body as of-other beasts and at end-long
baki þá var vaxit sem manstœði á hrossi með stóru hári
back then was grown as mane on horse with great hair
ok síðu, ok féll báða vega hryggjar, svá at dragnar á jörðu,
and long and fell both ways of-(the)-spine so that trails on earth
þegar þat gengr bjúgt. Þat vænti ek nú, at ek hafa flestra
when it goes bent That expect I now that I have of-most
hluta þeirra getit, er þar eru orðnir af sjálfri landsins
things of-those mentioned which there are become from itself the-land's
náttúru, svá at menn þykkjask víst vita sannendi af.
nature so that men think-themselves surely to-know truth of

XI · IRISH SAINTS AND MARVELS

The father adds wonders worked by saints: an island where no female creature may enter Diermicius's churchyard, and Kevinus's willow that bore apples for his sick kinsman and still bears them. He tells of Themar, the royal seat turned upside down when a king judged unjustly; of the kindred made werewolves for howling at Saint Patricius; of madmen who flee to the woods and grow feathers; of an anchor dropped from a ship in the air at Cloena; and of the jester Klefsan, whose skull still makes men laugh.

SON Því þykki mér vel ráðit, at ek hafa forvitnazk til
Therefore seems to-me well counseled that I have been-curious about
slíkra hluta, þvíat margir munu svá úfróðir vera, at eigi
such things because many will so unlearned be that not

munu hafa heyrt slíka hluti fyrr, ok mun þó nú hvárttveggja
will have heard such things before and will yet now both
undarligt þykkja, ok þó fróðleikr í flestum er heyra. En með
wondrous seem and yet learning in most who hear But with
því at mér heyrisk svá í orðum yðrum, at enn mundi þeir
that that to-me is-heard so in words your that still would those
hlutir nökkurir eptir vera, er undarligir væri, hvárt sem þat
things some left be which wondrous were whether that it
væri víst af landsins náttúru eða með einum hverjum öðrum
were surely from the-land's nature or in one any other
hætti, þeim sem umrœðu þœtti verðir vera; þá viljum vér
manner that which discussion seemed worthy to-be then will we
heldr tilmæli veita, at eigi liggi sá hlutr eptir, er yðr þykki
rather request give that not lie that thing left which to-you seems
umrœðiligr vera, með því at vér höfum til tekit þessarrar rœðu.
worth-discussing to-be with that that we have to-it taken this talk
FATHER Eru þeir ok enn aðrir sumir hlutir, er undarligir
Are those also still other some things which wondrous
munu þykkja, ok eru þeir eigi af landsins náttúru, heldr af
will seem and are they not from the-land's nature rather from
jartegnum heilagra manna, ok vitum til víss at satt er. Sumir
miracles of-holy men and know-we for certain that true is Some
hlutir eru ok, þeir er vér vitum eigi víst, hvárt sannir eru
things are also those which we know not surely whether true are
eða eigi, annat en af umrœðu manna, ok þat er almæli
or not other than from discussion of-men and that is common-talk
þar í landinu; en þessa hluti vitum vér víst sanna vera.
there in the-land but these things know we surely true to-be
Í vatni því sama er vér nefndum fyrr ok Loghri heitir,
In water that same which we named before and Loghri is-called
þá liggr ey ein lítil, er kölluð er Inisclodran. Þar
then lies island one little which called is Inisclodran There

var einn heilagr maðr, sá hét Diermicius, ok hafði
was one holy man that-one was-called Diermicius and had
hann sér þar kirkju, þá er hann sat at. En í þá
he for-himself there church that which he sat at But into that
kirkju eða þann kirkjugarð, er hann varðveitti, þá má
church or that churchyard which he kept then may
ekki kvennkykvendi þar í koma, ok kunnu þau öll við
no female-creature there in come and know they all against
því at sjá, hvártveggja fuglar ok aðrar skepnur, þau sem
that to look both birds and other creatures those which
mannvitslaus eru, þá kunnu þetta at varask svá sem menn,
wit-less are then know this to beware so as men
ok freistar ekki kykvendi þar í at ganga þenna kirkjugarð,
and tries no creature there in to go this churchyard
þat er kvennkent er, ok engu hlýðir þóat freisti.
that which female is and nothing avails though it-try
Þar var ok enn í því landi heilagr maðr einn sá er
There was also still in that land holy man one that-one who
Kevinus hét í bœ þeim er Glumelaga heitir, ok var
Kevinus was-called in town that which Glumelaga is-called and was
hann í þann tíma sem einsetumaðr væri, ok gerðisk þessi
he in that time as-if hermit were and happened this
atburðr í hans tíma, er nú viljum vér frá segja. Þat
event in his time which now will we from tell That
gerðisk svá til at hann hafði einn ungan mann hjá sér,
happened so to-it that he had one young man with himself
frænda sinn, þann sem þjónaði hánum, ok unni hann þeim
kinsman his that-one who served him and loved he that
sveini mikit. Sveinn sá tók at sýkjask fyrir hánum, ok varð
lad much Lad that began to sicken before him and became
sótt hans svá þung ok mikil, at hann var banvænn. Þat
sickness his so heavy and great that he was death-likely That

var í þann tíma um várit í Marcio mánaði, er sóttir
was in that time in the-spring in March month when sicknesses
manns verða sem hættastar. En þá gerðisk svá til, at
of-man become as most-dangerous But then happened so to-it that
sveinn beiddisk af Kevino frænda sínum, at hann skyldi gefa
(the)-lad asked of Kevinus kinsman his that he should give
hánum epli, ok sagði at sótt hans mundi þá verða léttari,
him an-apple and said that sickness his would then become lighter
ef hann fengi þat er hann beiddisk. En til þess var þá
if he got that which he asked But for that was then
ekki líkt í þann tíma, at þá mundi epli fá, þvíat þá hit
not likely in that time that then would-one apple get because then the
fyrsta tók brum at þrútna um várit á öllum aldinviði til
first began bud to swell in the-spring on all fruit-trees for
laufs. En fyrir því at hinn helgi Kevinus harmaði sjúkleik
leaf But for that that the holy Kevinus grieved-at (the)-sickness
frænda síns mjök, ok þat annat, at hann mátti þat eigi fá
of-kinsman his much and that other that he might that not get
hánum er hann beiddisk; þá féll hann til bœnar ok bað
for-him which he asked then fell he to prayer and asked
þess guð, at hann sendi hánum nökkura þá hluti, er
of-that God that he sent him some those things which
frændi hans tœki huggan af því, sem hann girntisk. En at
kinsman his took comfort from that which he desired But at
lokinni bœn þá gékk hann út ok sásk um, en skamt frá
ended prayer then went he out and looked about but short from
húsi hans þá stóð píll einn mikill at vexti; hann leit upp
house his then stood willow one great in size he looked up
í kvistu pílsins, svá sem væntandi miskunnar ok þaðan
into (the)-twigs of-the-willow so as expecting mercy and thence
nökkurrar hugganar. Því næst sá hann at vaxin váru epli á
some comfort That next saw he that grown were apples on

píli þeim, svá sem vera mundi á apaldri í tíma sinn réttan,
willow that so as be would on apple-tree in time its right
ok tók hann þar af þá þrjú epli ok færði sveininum.
and took he there from then three apples and brought to-the-lad
Sem sveinninn hafði etit af þeim eplum, þá tók sótt hans
When the-lad had eaten of those apples then began sickness his
at léttask, ok varð hann heill sóttar þeirrar. En píll sá
to lighten and became he whole of-sickness that But willow that
hefir jafnan síðan haldit þeirri gjöf, er guð gaf hánum þá,
has always since held that gift which God gave him then
þvíat hann berr á hverju ári epli svá sem apaldr, ok heita
because it bears in each year apples so as apple-tree and are-called
þau jafnan síðan hins helga Kevinus epli, ok fara þau um
they always since of-the holy Kevinus apples and go they about
alt Írland síðan með þessum hætti, at menn eta þar af, ef
all Ireland since in this manner that men eat there of if
þeir verða sjúkir, ok þykkjask þeir menn fró á finna, at
they become sick and think-themselves those men relief on to-find that
þau eru góð við öllum sjúkleikum manna, en ekki eru þau
they are good against all sicknesses of-men but not are they
girnilig til áts fyrir sœtleiks sakar, ef menn hefði þau eigi
desirable for eating for sweetness' sake if men had them not
meir fyrir lækningar sakar. Margir hlutir hafa ok þar þeir
more for healing's sake Many things have also there those
orðit, er helgir menn hafa skjótliga gört með sínum krapti,
happened which holy men have quickly done with their power
ok svá munu enn undarligir þykkja. En vér höfum nú
and so will still wondrous seem But we have now
þá eina hluti rœdda, er með þeim heilagleik váru görvir,
those only things talked which with that holiness were done
at þeir standa enn í dag til vitnisburðar, ok jafnundarligir
that they stand still in day for witness and equally-wondrous

þykkja enn í dag, sem þá hinn fyrsta dag er þat varð.
seem still in day as then the first day when it happened
En þeir aðrir hlutir, er menn halda víst fyrir satt, ok fyrir
But those other things which men hold surely for true and for
sanna hluti eru hafðir, þá megum vér nú ok þá vel sýna.
true things are held then may we now and then well show
Þar er ok enn í því landi sá staðr einn, er Themar er
There is also still in that land that place one which Themar is
kallaðr, ok var sá staðr forðum svá sem hann væri höfuðsæti
called and was that place formerly so as-if it were chief-seat
ok konungsborg, en hann er þó nú auðr, fyrir því at menn
and king's-town but it is yet now empty for that that men
þora eigi at byggva hann. En þessi atburðr gerðisk til þess,
dare not to inhabit it But this event happened to that
at staðrinn varð auðr, at alt fólkit, er í var landinu,
that the-place became empty that all the-people who in was the-land
trúði því, at sá konungr er þar sæti á þeim stað, skyldi
believed that that that king who there sat in that place should
jafnan dœma rétta dóma ok engan annan. En þóat þeir
always judge right judgments and none other But though they
væri heiðnir annars kostar, ok hefði eigi rétta trú til guðs,
were heathen of-other choice and had not right faith toward God
þá höfðu þeir þó þenna átrúnað svá staðfastan, at þeir
then had they yet this belief so steadfast that they
hugðu þat hvetvetna réttdœmt vera, er sá konungr dœmdi,
thought that everything right-judged to-be which that king judged
ok aldri hugðu þeir at rangr dómr mundi dœmask af því
and never thought they that wrong judgment would be-judged from that
konungs sæti. En þar sem hæð þótti vera borgarinnar,
king's seat But there where (the)-height seemed to-be of-the-town
þá átti konungr þar kastala fagran ok vel görvan; í þeim
then owned (the)-king there castle fair and well made in that

kastala átti konungr fagra höll ok mikla, þá sem hann var
castle owned (the)-king fair hall and great that which he was
vanr at sitja í yfir dómum manna. En at sinni gerðisk
wont to sit in over judgments of-men But at (one)-time happened
svá til, at þau mál kómu fyrir konung ok í hans dóm,
so to-it that those cases came before (the)-king and into his judgment
er annan veg áttu hlut í vinir hans ok kunnir menn, ok
which on-one way had share in friends his and known men and
vildi hann þeirra máli fulltingja um alla hluti; en annan
would he their case support in all things but on-the-other
veg áttu hlut í málinu þeir menn, er hánum var illa
way had share in the-case those men whom to-him was ill
við, ok hann var þeirra mikill úvin; ok gerðisk þá svá til,
with and he was their great enemy and happened then so to-it
at konungr hallaði meir dómi eptir vilja sínum en eptir
that (the)-king inclined more judgment after will his than after
réttendum. En fyrir því at þaðan kom rangdœmi, sem öll
rights But for that that thence came wrong-judgment where all
alþýða hugði at koma mundi réttdœmi, þá sneri
(the)-common-people thought that come would right-judgment then turned
um sæti því sakar átrúnaðar fólksins, ok snerisk sá kastali
around seat that for-sake-of (the)-belief of-the-people and turned that castle
um ok höllin með öllum sínum gröndvöllum, ok svá jörðin
around and the-hall with all its foundations and so the-earth
með, ok snerisk þat upp á jörðunni, er áðr vissi niðr, en
with-it and turned that up on the-earth which before faced down but
hús öll ok hallir snerusk niðr í jörðina, ok hefir svá verit
houses all and halls turned down into the-earth and has so been
jafnan síðan. En fyrir því at svá mikill undarligleikr varð,
always since But for that that so great wondrousness happened
þá þora síðan eigi menn þann stað at byggva, ok engi
then dare since not men that place to inhabit and no

konungr þorir þar síðan sitt sæti at hafa, ok er þar þó hinn
king dares there since his seat to have and is there yet the
fegrsti staðr, er menn vitu á þeirri jörðu. Þat er ok mælt,
fairest place which men know on that earth That is also said
ef menn vildi þann stað byggva, at engi mundi sá dagr
if men would that place inhabit that no would that day
yfir koma, er þeir mundu eigi hvern dag sjá nýtt undr.
over come when they would not each day see new wonder
Þá er þar enn einn sá hlutr í því landi undarligr, er
Then is there still one that thing in that land wondrous which
mönnum mun þykkja mjök útrúligr; en þat segja þó þeir
to-men will seem very unbelievable but that say yet those
menn, er landit byggva, at hann er víst sannr, ok varð
men who the-land inhabit that it is surely true and happened
þat sakar reiði eins heilags manns. Svá er sagt, at þá
that for-sake-of (the)-anger of-one holy man So is said that then
er hinn helgi Patricius boðaði kristni í landi því, þá var
when the holy Patricius preached Christianity in land that then was
þat eitt kyn, er miklu var hánum gagnstaðligara en annat
that one kindred which much was to-him more-hostile than other
fólk, er í var landinu, ok leituðu þeir menn við at gera
folk which in was the-land and sought those men on to do
hánum margskyns háðung bæði móti guði ok þeim helgum
him manifold mockery both against God and that holy
manni. En þá er hann bauð þeim kristni svá sem öðrum
man But then when he offered them Christianity so as to-other
mönnum, ok hann kom á þeirra fund, ok þar sem þeir
men and he came to their meeting and there where they
höfðu þing sín, þá tóku þeir þat til ráðs, at ýla at
had assemblies their then took they that for counsel to howl at
hánum svá sem vargar. En þá er hann sá, at hann mundi
him so as wolves But then when he saw that he would

sínu erendi litlu fram koma við þetta fólk, þá varð hann
his errand little forward come with this folk then became he
mjök reiðr, ok bað þess guð, at hann skyldi hefna þeim
very angry and asked of-that God that he should avenge on-them
með nökkurum þeim bardaga, er þær kynkvíslir mætti
with some that blow which those kindreds might
jafnan síðan taka (í) minning móti sinni úhlýðni. En þær
always afterward take in memory against their disobedience But those
kynkvíslir féngu síðan mikla hefnd ok makliga, ok þó mjök
kindreds got afterward great vengeance and deserved and yet very
undarliga, þvíat svá er frá sagt, at allir þeir menn, er af
wondrous because so is from told that all those men who from
þeim ættum koma, þá eru þeir jafnan vargar nökkura stund,
those families come then are they always wolves some while
ok renna í skógum, ok hafa slíka fœzlu sem vargar, ok eru
and run in forests and have such food as wolves and are
því verri, at þeir hafa manns vit til allra véla sinna, en
so-much worse that they have man's wit for all wiles their but
slíka ágirnd ok gráða til manna sem til annarra kykvenda.
such greed and ravening for men as for other creatures
En svá er sagt, at sumir fá þetta hvern sjaunda vetr, ok
But so is said that some get this each seventh winter and
eru menn þess á millum, en sumir hafa þetta svá lengi,
are men of-that on between but some have this so long
at þeir hafa 7 vetr um samt, ok fá aldri síðan optar.
that they have 7 winters on together and get never afterward oftener
Þá er enn einn sá hlutr er undarligr mun þykkja um menn
Then is still one that thing which wondrous will seem about men
þá, er geltir eru kallaðir. En þessi er sök til, ef menn
those who madmen are called But this is (the)-cause to-it if men
verða at gelti, at þar sem lið kemr saman, ok skipat með
become to madman that there where an-army comes together and arrayed with

tvennum fylkingum, ok œpa hvárirtveggja heróp ákafliga, þá
two battle-lines and shout both-sides war-cry fiercely then
kann þat at henda blauða menn ok œskufulla, þá sem eigi
can that to befall timid men and youthful those who not
hafa fyrr í her komit, at þeir láta vit sitt af þeirri ógn ok
have before into army come that they lose wit their from that terror and
hrælzlu, er þeir fá þar, ok hlaupa síðan í skóga frá öðrum
fright which they get there and run afterward into forests from other
mönnum, ok fœðask þar sem dýr, ok svá forðask þeir
men and feed-themselves there as beasts and so avoid they
manna fund sem villidýr. En svá er sagt frá fólki þessu, ef
of-men meeting as wild-beasts But so is told from folk this if
þat lifir í skógum 20 vetr með þessum hætti, þá vaxa fjaðrar
it lives in forests 20 winters in this manner then grow feathers
á líkömum þeirra svá sem á fuglum, þær er hylja má líkam
on bodies their so as on birds those which cover may body
þeirra með fyrir frosti ok kulda, en engar þær stórfjaðrar,
their with-them against frost and cold but no those great-feathers
er þeir megi flaug af taka sem fuglar. En svá er mikill
which they may flight from take as birds But so is great
sagðr fljótleikr þeirra, at eigi fá aðrir menn nálgazk fund
told swiftness their that not can other men approach meeting
þeirra, ok eigi mjóhundar heldr en menn, þvíat þat fólk má
their and not greyhounds rather than men because that folk may
náliga jafnskjótt fara hit efra í trjám sem apynjur eða íkornar.
nearly equally-quickly go the upper in trees as she-apes or squirrels
Þar er ok enn einn sá hlutr er heldr mun undarligr
There is also still one that thing which rather will wondrous
þykkja, er gerðisk í borg þeirri er Cloena heitir. Í
seem which happened in town that which Cloena is-called In
þeirri borg er kirkja sú, er vígð er í minning þess
that town is church that which consecrated is in memory of-that

heilags manns er Kiranus heitir. En þar gerðisk svá til
holy man who Kiranus is-called But there happened so to-it
einn sunnudag, er fólk var at kirkju ok hlýddi messu, þá
one Sunday when folk was at church and heard mass then
kom þar sígandi or lopti ofan eitt akkeri, svá sem þat
came there sinking out-of air down one anchor so as-if it
væri or skipi kastat, þvíat þar var strengr við, ok krœktisk
were out-of ship thrown because there was rope on-it and hooked-itself
akkeris fleinninn í bogann á kirkjudurunum; en fólkit
of-(the)-anchor the-fluke in the-arch on the-church-doors but the-people
alt gekk út or kirkjunni ok undraði, ok sá í lopt upp
all went out out-of the-church and wondered and looked into air up
eptir strenginum. Þeir sá skip fljóta fyrir strenginum ok
along the-rope They saw ship float at the-rope and
menn á, ok því næst sá þeir or því skipi mann einn
men on-it and that next saw they out-of that ship man one
fyrir borð hlaupa ok kafask niðr til akkerisins, ok vildi leysa
over board leap and dive down to the-anchor and would loosen
þat. Hans atferð sýndisk þeim eptir því vera, bæði handa
it His conduct seemed to-them according-to that to-be both of-hands
læti ok fóta, sem þess manns er í sjó svimr. En er
motions and of-feet as of-that man who in sea swims But when
hann kom niðr til akkerisins, þá leitaði hann við at leysa
he came down to the-anchor then sought he on to loosen
þat, en því næst hljópu menn til ok vildu taka manninn.
it but that next ran men to and would take the-man
En kirkja sú er akkerit stóð fast í, þá er þar byskupsstóll
But church that which the-anchor stood fast in then is there bishop's-seat
einn. Byskupinn var við staddr þenna atburð, ok fyrirbauð
one The-bishop was by present-at this event and forbade
hann mönnum at halda þeim manni, þvíat byskup sagði, at
he men to hold that man because (the)-bishop said that

hann mundi bana hafa, sem hann væri í vatni haldinn. En
he would death have as-if he were in water held But
þegar er hann varð lauss, þá skundaði hann ferð sinni upp
as-soon as he became loose then hastened he journey his up
aptr til skipsins; en þegar hann kom upp, þá hjoggu þeir
back to the-ship but when he came up then hewed they
strenginn, ok fóru síðan leiðar sinnar or augliti manna. En
the-rope and went afterward way their out-of sight of-men But
akkerit hefir þar síðan legit til vitnisburðar í þeirri kirkju.
the-anchor has there since lain for witness in that church
Flestra allra hluta þeirra ætla ek at ver hafim nú getit,
Of-most all things of-those think I that we have now mentioned
er helzt eru nauðsynligir at geta or þessu landi. En þó
which most are necessary to mention out-of this land But yet
er sá einn hlutr enn eptir, er geta má, ef sýnisk, fyrir
is that one thing still left which mention may-one if it-seems for
gamans sakir ok skemtanar. Gamansmaðr einn var í landi
amusement's sake and entertainment's Jester one was in land
því mjök löngu, ok þó var hann kristinn, ok var sá maðr
that very long-ago and yet was he Christian and was that man
kallaðr Klefsan at nafni. Þat var mælt um þann mann, at
called Klefsan by name That was said about that man that
engi maðr mundi sá vera, er hann sæi, at hann mundi
no man would that-one be whom he saw that he would
eigi hlæja gera með sínum gamansamligum orðum ok þó
not laugh make with his amusing words and yet
lygiligum; ok þóat maðr væri hryggr í hug sínum, þá er
lying and though a-man were sad in mind his then is
þat sagt, at maðr mundi eigi hlátrs bindask, ef hann
that said that a-man would not from-laughter restrain-himself if he
heyrði þessa manns rœðu. En hann fékk sótt ok dó, ok
heard this man's talk But he got sickness and died and

var síðan grafinn í kirkjugarði sem aðrir menn; hann lá
was afterward buried in churchyard as other men he lay
lengi í jörðu, svá at alt var hold fúit af beinum hans, ok
long in earth so that all was flesh rotted off bones his and
svá mörg bein fúin með. Þá gerðisk svá til, at menn grófu
so many bones rotted with-it Then happened so to-it that men dug
líkami manna í þeim sama kirkjugarði, ok grófu svá nær þar
bodies of-men in that same churchyard and dug so near there
sem Klefsan var grafinn, at þeir grófu upp haus hans heilan,
where Klefsan was buried that they dug up skull his whole
ok settu síðan upp á stein einn hávan í kirkjugarðinum,
and set afterward up on stone one high in the-churchyard
ok stendr hann þar jafnan síðan. En hverr sá maðr er þar
and stands it there always since But each that man who there
kemr ok þann haus lítr, ok sér í þann stað, er munnr
comes and that skull looks-at and sees into that place where mouth
hans var ok tunga, þá hlær hann þegar, ok svá þóat hann sé
his was and tongue then laughs he at-once and so though he be
í hryggu skapi, áðr en hann sjái þetta höfuð; ok hlœgja
in sad mood before than he see this head and make-laugh
nú dauð bein hans litlu færri menn, en þá er hann var
now dead bones his little fewer men than then when he was
kvikr. Eigi veit ek fleiri hluti á því landi vera, þeir er mér
alive Not know I more things in that land to-be those which to-me
þykkja til þess fallnir vera at hafa til lengðar slíkrar rœðu.
seem for that fitted to-be to have for lengthening of-such talk

In Iceland's seas the wonders are the whales. The father lists the many kinds: the toothless hnýðingr, porpoises, the dog-like vögnhvalr, the inedible duck-whales and swine-whales, the fish-driver that herds fish ashore and may not be hunted, beaked whales, the dangerous horse-whale and red-comb, the narwhal with its spiral tusk, the ship-wrecking skeljungr, the gentle red whale, best of all to eat, and the sea-mist (hafgufa), a monster more like land than fish that gathers fish by belching.

SON Nú með því at vér höfum rætt um þá hluti, er
Now with that that we have talked about those things which
undarligir þykkja á Írlandi, þá viljum vér nú ræða um þá
wondrous seem in Ireland then will we now talk about those
hluti ok þau undr, er eru á Íslandi eða í Íslands hafi.
things and those wonders which are in Iceland or in Iceland's sea
FATHER Í Íslands höfum þykki mér fátt þat vera, er
In Iceland's seas seems to-me little that to-be which
minningar sé vert eða umræðu, fyrir utan hvali þá, er þar
of-memory be worth or of-discussion before outside whales those which there
eru í höfum, ok eru þeir mjök með ýmsum hætti eða vexti,
are in seas and are they very in various manner or size
ok verða þeir hvalir er hnýðingar heita, er með mestum
and become those whales which hnyding are-called which with greatest
fjölda eru, 20 álna langir, verða þeir ok sumir svá fjöldinn
multitude are 20 ells long become they and some so the-multitude
af þeim smár, at eigi eru lengri en 10 álna, ok þar á millum
of them small that not are longer than 10 ells and there on between
hverr eptir sínum vexti. En þessir fiskar hafa hvárki tönn
each according-to his size But these fishes have neither tooth
né tálkn, ok ekki eru þeir hættir hvárki við skip né menn,
nor gill and not are they dangerous neither to ships nor men
heldr forðask þeir veiðimanna fund, ok verða þó veiddir
rather avoid they of-hunters meeting and become yet caught

iðuliga ok reknir á land hundruðum saman, ok er þat
frequently and driven onto land by-hundreds together and is that
mikil fœzla mönnum, þar sem þeir verða margir veiddir. En
great food to-men there where they become many caught But
þá eru önnur smá hvalakyn, svá sem er hnísa, er eigi verðr
then are other small whale-kinds so as is porpoise which not becomes
lengri en 5 álna, eða leiptr, er eigi verðr lengri en 7 álna.
longer than 5 ells or leiptr which not becomes longer than 7 ells
Þat er enn eitt hvalakyn, er menn kalla vögnhvali, ok verða
That is still one whale-kind which men call vognwhales and become
eigi lengri en 12 álna, ok eru þeir tentir eptir sínum vexti,
not longer than 12 ells and are they toothed according-to their size
svá mjök sem hundar, ok þvílíkir í ágirnd sinni við aðra hvali
so much as dogs and such in greed their toward other whales
sem hundar við dýr; þvíat þeir samnask flokkum saman ok
as dogs toward beasts because they gather-themselves in-flocks together and
renna at stórum hvölum, ok þar sem mikill hvalr er einn staddr,
run at great whales and there where great whale is one placed
þá bíta þeir hann ok mœða til þess, er hann hefir bana.
then bite they him and weary to that when he has death
Kann ok þat vera at hann drepr iðuliga mikinn fjölda af þeim
Can also that be that he kills frequently great multitude of them
í stórum höggum í vörn sinni, áðr en hann verðr dauðr.
with great blows in defense his before than he becomes dead
Þat eru enn tvenn hvalakyn, þau er annat heitir andhvalir,
That are still two whale-kinds those which one is-called duck-whales
en annat svínhvalir, ok verða þeir ekki stœrri en 5 álna
but (the)-other swine-whales and become they not bigger than 5 ells
ok 20, þeir sem stœrstir verða; ok eru þeir fiskar eigi ætir,
and 20 they who biggest become and are those fishes not edible
þvíat þat smjör er rennr af þeim hvölum, þá megu menn
because that fat which runs from those whales then can men

eigi melta með sér, ok ekki annat kvikendi er þess
not digest in themselves and not other creature which of-it
neytir, þvíat þat rennr í gegnum hann ok jafnvel í gegnum
partakes because it runs in through him and even in through
tréit, ok þó mun illa halda, ef nökkura hríð stendr, at
the-wood and yet will ill hold if some while it-stands that
horn sé. Þá eru þau enn sum hvalakyn, er lítillar umræðu
horn be Then are those still some whale-kinds which of-little discussion
er vert, er bæði eru hrafnhvalir ok hvítingar; ok eru þeir
is worthy which both are raven-whales and white-whales and are they
fyrir því hvítingar kallaðir, at þeir eru snjóhvítir at lit, en
for that white-whales called that they are snow-white in color but
flestöll önnur hvalakyn eru svört, fyrir utan þat, er flekkar
nearly-all other whale-kinds are black before outside that which spots
eru á sumum, svá sem annathvárt er á skjaldhvölum, eða
are on some so as either is on shield-whales or
á geirhvölum, eða á barðhvölum. Þessi öll hvalakyn, er
on spear-whales or on beaked-whales These all whale-kinds which
nú hefi ek nefnt, þá eru þau vel æt ok svá mörg önnur.
now have I named then are they well edible and so many others
Þá heitir enn hvalakyn eitt fiskreki, ok stendr mönnum náliga
Then is-called still whale-kind one fish-driver and stands to-men nearly
mest gagn af; þvíat hann rekr til lands or höfum utan
most profit from-it because he drives to land out-of seas from-outside
bæði síld ok aðra allskyns fiska, svá sem hann sé skipaðr
both herring and other of-all-kinds fishes so as-if he be appointed
eða sendr til þess af guði, ok þat sé hans skyldarembætti æ
or sent for that by God and that be his duty-office ever
meðan fiskimenn gæta með spekt sinnar veiði; ok hefir hann
while fishermen keep with peaceableness their fishing and has he
þó nökkut svá undarliga náttúru, þvíat hann kann at þyrma
yet somewhat so wondrous nature because he knows to spare

náliga bæði mönnum ok skipum; en ef þeir verða úsáttir ok
nearly both men and ships but if they become unreconciled and
berjask, svá at blóði verði spilt, þá er sem þessi hvalr viti
fight so that blood become spilled then is as-if this whale knew
þat, ok ferr þá millum lands ok fiska, ok rekr görvalla brott
that and goes then between land and fishes and drives all away
ok út í haf frá þeim, svá sem hann hafði áðr rekit til þeirra;
and out to sea from them so as he had before driven to them
en þessi hvalr er eigi meiri at vexti en 30 álna, eða 40 þeir
but this whale is not greater in size than 30 ells or 40 they
sem stœrstir verða; ok er mönnum vel ætr, ef lofat væri at
who biggest become and is to-men well edible if permitted were to
veiða hann, en mönnum er því eigi lofat at veiða hann eða
hunt him but to-men is for-that not permitted to hunt him or
nökkut mein gera, at hann gerir mönnum jafnan mikit gagn.
any harm do that he does to-men always great profit
Enn er þat ok eitt hvalakyn, er barðhvalir heita, ok
Still is that also one whale-kind which beaked-whales are-called and
hafa þeir hvalir tennr eigi stœrri en gera má mjök stór
have those whales teeth not bigger than make may-one very big
knífshepti af eða tafl. Ekki eru þeir ólmir né grimmir,
knife-hafts from or chessmen Not are they savage nor fierce
heldr eru þeir hógværir, ok firrask sem þeir megu fund
rather are they gentle and keep-away as they can (the)-meeting
veiðimanna, ok því nær at vexti sem þeir, er nú rœdda
of-hunters and so near in size as those which now talked
ek næsta um; en einn hvalr hefir svá margar tenn í höfði,
I next about but one whale has so many teeth in head
at hann hefir nökkura sjautigu, af þessu kyni enu sama.
that he has some seventy of this kind the same

Þá heitir enn hvalakyn eitt sléttibaka, ok er ekki horn
Then is-called still whale-kind one right-whale and is not horn
á baki, ok svá miklir nökkut at vexti sem hinir, er
on back and so great somewhat in size as the-others which
nú gátum vér. En þeir menn hræðask hana mjök, er um
now mentioned we But those men fear her much who over
sjó fara, þvíat hennar náttúra er sú, at leika mjök við skip.
sea go because her nature is that to play much with ships
Þat er enn eitt hvalakyn, er heitir hafrkitti, ok er þat
That is still one whale-kind which is-called hafrkitti and is that
með undarligri náttúru, þvíat þeir hafa í holi sínu netju
with wondrous nature because they have in belly their caul
ok mör, svá sem búfé, ok verða þeir hvalir eigi stœrri
and suet so as livestock and become those whales not bigger
en 30 álna, þeir er lengstir verða.
than 30 ells they who longest become
Þá eru þau enn hvalakyn, er ólm eru ok grimm við
Then are those still whale-kinds which savage are and fierce toward
menn, ok leita hvervetna við at týna mönnum, þar sem
men and seek everywhere on to destroy men there where
þeir megu við koma: heitir annarr hrosshvalr, en annarr
they can on come is-called one horse-whale but (the)-other
rauðkembingr. Þessir eru fullir af ágirnd ok illsku; aldri
red-comb These are full of greed and wickedness never
verða þeir saddir af manndrápum, þvíat þeir fara um öll höf
become they sated with man-slayings because they go about all seas
innan, ok leita ef þeir megu skip finna; þá hlaupa þeir upp,
within and seek if they can ship find then leap they up
til þess at þeir megi þeim þá skjótara niðr sökkva ok týna
for that that they may them then quicker down sink and destroy
með þeim hætti. Þessir fiskar eru mönnum eigi ætir, heldr
in that manner These fishes are to-men not edible rather

gagnstaðligir, svá sem skipaðir úvinir mannligu kyni; en ekki
hostile so as appointed enemies to-human kind but not
verða þeir stœrri en 30 álna eða 40, þeir er lengstir verða.
become they bigger than 30 ells or 40 they who longest become
Þá er enn þat hvalakyn, er náhvalr er kallaðr, ok megu
Then is still that whale-kind which narwhal is called and can
menn eigi eta fyrir sótta sakir, þvíat menn fá sótt af ok
men not eat for sicknesses' sake because men get sickness from-it and
deyja, ef þeir eta hann. En sá hvalr er eigi mikill at vexti,
die if they eat him But that whale is not great in size
eigi verðr hann lengri en 20 álna; at engu er hann ólmr,
not becomes he longer than 20 ells in nothing is he savage
heldr forðask hann veiðimanna fund. En hann hefir tenn í
rather avoids he of-hunters meeting But he has teeth in
höfði, allar smár fyrir utan eina, ok stendr sú í efra
head all small before outside one and stands that in (the)-upper
gómi í öndverðu höfði hans; hon er fögr ok vel vaxin,
palate in (the)-front-of head his it is fair and well grown
ok svá rétt sem laukr; hon er 7 álna löng, sú er lengst
and so straight as leek it is 7 ells long that which longest
kann at verða, ok snúin öll, svá sem hon sé með tólum
can to become and twisted all so as-if it be with tools
ger; hon stendr rétt fram or höfði hánum, þá er hann
made it stands straight forward out-of head for-him then when he
ferr leiðar sinnar; en svá hvöss sem hon er ok rétt, þá
goes way his but so sharp as it is and straight then
verðr hánum engi vörn at henni, heldr er hann svá virkr at
becomes to-him no defense in it rather is he so careful of
henni ok kærr, at hann lætr þar ekki vætta við koma. Eigi
it and fond that he lets there not of-thing to come Not
veit ek þau fleiri hvalakyn, er mönnum sé eigi æt en
know I those more whale-kinds which to-men be not edible than

þessi 5, sem nú hefi ek upptalt; þau tvenn er fyrst nefnda
these 5 which now have I counted-up those two which first named
ek, þat er svínhvalr ok andhvalr, ok þessi þrenn er síðar
I that is swine-whale and duck-whale and these three which later
nefnda ek, þat var hrosshvalr ok rauðkembingr ok náhvalr.
named I that was horse-whale and red-comb and narwhal
Nú eru þau kyn hvala útöld, er enn eru stœrri at vexti,
Now are those kinds of-whales untold which still are bigger in size
ok eru þau öll mönnum æt, er ek skal nú skýra fyrir
and are they all to-men edible which I shall now explain before
yðr. Sumir ok af þessum eru hættir við líf manna, en sumir
you Some also of these are dangerous to life of-men but some
eru spakir ok hógværir. Skeljung kalla menn eitt kyn af
are peaceable and gentle Skeljung call men one kind of
þeim, ok er sá fiskr mikill vexti ok ólmr við skip. Þat er
them and is that fish great in-size and savage toward ships That is
hans náttúra at ljósta skip með sundfjöðrum sínum, elligar
his nature to strike ships with fins his or-else
at hann lætr fljótask ok leggsk fyrir skip, þar sem
that he lets-himself float and lays-himself before ships there where
menn sigla; en þó at menn beiti frá hánum, þá
men sail but though that men beat-to-windward from him then
ferr hann þó jafnan fyrir, ok er engi annarr kostr en sigla
goes he yet always before and is no other choice than sail
á hann; en ef skip sigla á hann, þá kastar hann skipum,
on him but if ships sail on him then throws he ships
ok týnir öllu því á er. Sá fiskr verðr 70 álna langr
and destroys all that on-them is That fish becomes 70 ells long
eða 80, þeir er stœrstir verða, ok eru þeir fiskar vel ætir.
or 80 they who biggest become and are those fishes well edible

Þá er þat enn eitt hvalakyn, er norðhvalir heita, ok er
Then is that still one whale-kind which north-whales are-called and is
sá fiskr 80 álna langr eða 90, þeir er stœrstir verða, ok
that fish 80 ells long or 90 they who biggest become and
jafndigr sem hann er langr; þvíat reip þat er dregit er
equally-thick as he is long because rope that which drawn is
jafnlangt hánum, þá tekr þat um hann þar sem hann
equally-long to-him then reaches it around him there where he
er digrastr; hann hefir ok svá mikit höfuð, at þat er enn
is thickest he has also so great head that it is the
mesti þriðjungr af hánum. En þessi fiskr lifir hreinliga, þvíat
greatest third of him But this fish lives cleanly because
þat segia menn, at hann hafi öngva fœzlu aðra en myrkva
that say men that he has no food other than mist
ok regn, ok þat eitt er fellr or lopti ofan á haf, ok
and rain and that only which falls out-of air down onto sea and
þó at hann sé veiddr, ok innýfli hans opnuð, þá finnsk
though that he be caught and entrails his opened then is-found
ekki slíkt í hans maga sem annarra fiska þeirra, er fœzlu
not such in his stomach as of-other fishes those which food
hafa, þvíat hans magi er hreinn ok tómr. Ekki má hann vel
have because his stomach is clean and empty Not may he well
munn sinn opna, þvíat tálkn þau, er vaxin eru í munni
mouth his open because gills those which grown are in mouth
hánum rísa um þveran munn hans, þegar hann lýkr hánum
to-him rise about across mouth his when he opens it
mjök upp, ok hefir hann iðuliga af því bana, at hann má
greatly up and has he frequently from that death that he may
eigi munni sínum aptr koma. Ekki er hann mjök ólmr við
not mouth his back get Not is he very savage toward
skip; öngvar hefir hann ok tennr, ok er feitr fiskr ok vel ætr.
ships none has he also teeth and is fat fish and well edible

Þá er enn eitt hvalakyn, er reyðr er kallat, ok er sá fiskr
Then is still one whale-kind which red-whale is called and is that fish
allra beztr átu. Hann er hógværr fiskr ok eigi hættr við
of-all best for-eating He is gentle fish and not dangerous to
skip, þóat hann fari nær. En sá fiskr er mikill ok langr at
ships though he go near But that fish is great and long in
vexti; svá segja menn, at þann hafi menn mestan veiddan,
size so say men that that-one have men greatest caught
er hann var 13 tigu álna langr, þat er 30 álna ok hundrað
when he was 13 tens of-ells long that is 30 ells and hundred
tírœtt; ok verðr hann opt veiddr af veiðimönnum fyrir
counted-by-tens and becomes he often caught by hunters for
hógværi sinnar sakir ok spektar; ok er hann betri átum ok
gentleness his sake and peaceableness and is he better for-eating and
betr þefjaðr en nökkurr fiskr annarr þeirra, er nú höfum vér
better smelling than any fish other of-those which now have we
um rœtt, ok er hann þó vel feitr talinn; hefir hann ok öngvar
about talked and is he yet well fat reckoned has he also no
tennr. Þat er ok mælt, ef maðr mætti ná aukningu fræs hans,
teeth That is also said if a-man might get (the)-spawn of-seed his
svá at þat vissi til sanns, at af hánum væri ok eigi af
so that that one-knew for truth that from him it-were and not from
öðrum hvölum, þá væri þat öruggast til allra lækninga, bæði
other whales then were that surest for all healings both
við augum ok líkþrá ok við riðu, ok við höfuðverk ok á mót
for eyes and leprosy and for ague and for headache and on against
öllum sóttum, þeim er menn fá; en þó er annarra hvala
all sicknesses those which men get but yet is of-other whales
auki góðr til lækningar, þó eigi sé svá góðr sem þessi er.
spawn good for healing though not be so good as this is
Nú hefi ek flestöll hvalakyn talit fyrir þér, er menn veiða.
Now have I nearly-all whale-kinds counted before you which men catch

Einn fiskr er enn útaldr, er mér vex heldr í augu frá at
One fish is still untold which to-me grows rather in eyes from to
segja fyrir vaxtar hans sakir, þvíat þat mun flestum mönnum
tell for size his sake because that will to-most men
útrúligt þykkja; þar kunnu ok fæstir frá hánum nökkut at
unbelievable seem there can also fewest from him anything to
segja görla, þvíat hann er flestum sjaldsénn, þvíat hann er
tell fully because he is to-most seldom-seen because he is
sjaldan við land eða í ván við veiðarmenn, ok ætla ek
seldom by land or in expectation for fishermen and think I
ekki þesskyns fisk margan í höfum; vér köllum hann optast
not of-that-kind fish many in seas we call him most-often
á vára tungu hafgufu. Eigi kann ek skilvísliga frá lengð
in our tongue sea-mist Not can I precisely from length
hans at segja með álna tali, þvíat þeim sinnum er hann
his to tell by ells' count because those times when he
hefir birzk fyrir mönnum, þá hefir hann landi sýnzk líkari
has appeared before men then has he to-land seemed more-like
en fiski; hvárki spyr ek, at hann hafi veiddr verit né dauðr
than to-fish neither learn I that he have caught been nor dead
fundinn; ok þat þykki mér líkt, at þeir sé eigi fleiri en tveir
found and that seems to-me likely that they be not more than two
í höfum, ok öngvan ætla ek þá auka geta sín ámilli,
in seas and none think I them increase beget themselves between
þvíat ek ætla þá hina sömu jafnan vera, ok eigi mundi
because I think them the same always to-be and not would
öðrum fiskum hlýða, at þeir væri svá margir sem aðrir hvalir
to-other fishes avail that they were so many as other whales
fyrir mikilleika sakir þeirra, ok svá mikillar atvinnu er þeir
for greatness sake their and so great livelihood which they
þurfu. En sú er náttúra sögð þeirra fiska, at þegar er hann
need But that is nature told of-those fishes that as-soon as he

skal eta, þá gefr hann ropa mikinn upp or hálsi sér, ok
shall eat then gives he belch great up out-of throat his and
fylgir þeim ropa mikil áta, svá at allskyns fiskar, þeir er í
follows that belch great food so that of-all-kinds fishes those which in
nánd verða staddir, þá samnask til, bæði smáir ok stórir,
nearness become placed then gather-themselves to both small and great
ok hyggjask sér skulu þar matar afla ok góðrar
and think-themselves for-themselves shall there food get and good
atvinnu; en þessi hinn mikli fiskr lætr standa munn sinn
livelihood but this the great fish lets stand mouth his
opinn meðan, ok er þat hlið eigi minna en sund mikit eða
open meanwhile and is that gate not smaller than sound great or
fjörðr, ok kunnu fiskar eigi at varask þat at renna þar í með
fjord and know fishes not to beware that to run there into with
fjölda sínum. En þegar er kviðr hans er fullr ok munnr, þá
multitude their But as-soon as belly his is full and mouth then
lýkr hann saman munn sinn, ok hefir þá alla veidda ok inni
shuts he together mouth his and has then all caught and inside
byrgða, er áðr girntusk þangat at leita sér til matfanga.
shut who before desired thither to seek for-themselves for food-getting
Nú höfum vér flesta hluti talda ok sagða, þá er helzt
Now have we most things counted and told those which most
mun þykkja undarligir í Íslands höfum, ok heldr þó suma
will seem wondrous in Iceland's seas and rather yet some
hluti hér talda, er í öðrum stöðum er meiri gnótt, en
things here counted which in other places is greater abundance than
þar sem þeir eru nú nefndir.
there where they are now named

XIII · THE FIRE AND SPRINGS OF ICELAND

The son asks about Iceland's fires, earthquakes, and ice. The father thinks the ice comes from Greenland's nearness. Unlike Sicily's fire, which burns wood and earth, Iceland's fire burns only stone and rock, a dead fire like hell's, and some springs turn whatever they wet to stone. He reasons, without claiming certainty, that winds and fire in the land's hollow foundations may cause the earthquakes.

SON Nú með því at vér höfum getit flestra fiska þeirra, er
Now with that that we have mentioned most fishes of-those which
þar hvarfla í höfum, þá sem nökkurrar minningar eru verðir
there roam in seas those which of-some memory are worthy
ok umrœðu, þá fýsumk vér at rœða um þá hluti, er á
and discussion then desire we to talk about those things which in
landinu eru helzt minningar verðir. Hvat ætli þér um þann
the-land are most of-memory worthy What think you about that
mikla eldsgang, er þar er ofrmikill á því landi, hvárt hann
great fire-going which there is over-great in that land whether it
mun vera af nökkurri landsins náttúru, eða kann þat at vera,
will be from some of-the-land's nature or can that to be
at hann sé af andligum hlutum? Eða hvat ætli þér um þá
that it be from spiritual things Or what think you about those
hina ógurligu landskjálfta, er þar kunnu at verða, eða þau
the terrible earthquakes which there can to happen or those
hin undarligu vötn eða ísa, er þar þekja öll lönd hit efra?
the wondrous waters or ice which there cover all lands the upper
FATHER Þat þykki mér vera mega um ísa, þá er á Íslandi
That seems to-me be may about ice that which in Iceland
eru, at þat land gjaldi návistar þeirrar, er þat liggr
is that that land pays for-the-nearness that which it lies
nær Grœnalandi, ok er þess ván, at þaðan standi mikill
near Greenland and is that expectation that thence stands great

kuldi, með því at þat er umfram öll lönd ísum þakit.
cold with that that it is beyond all lands with-ice covered
En nú með því at Ísland tekr þaðan mikinn kulda, ok
But now with that that Iceland takes thence great cold and
hefir þó lítinn verma af sólinni, þá hefir þat fyrir því svá
has yet little warmth from the-sun then has it for that so
mikla gnótt ísa yfir fjallgörðum sínum. En um ofrgang
great abundance of-ice over mountain-ranges its But about (the)-excess
elds þess, er þar er, þá veit ek síðr hvat ek skal þar
of-fire that which there is then know I less what I shall there
um rœða, þvíat þar er undarlig náttúra um hann. Ek hefi
about talk because there is wondrous nature about it I have
spurt í Sikiley, at þar er mikill eldsofrgangr, hann brennir
learned in Sicily that there is great fire-excess it burns
bæði tré ok jörð; ok er mér svá sagt, at í Dialogo hafi
both wood and earth and is to-me so told that in (the)-Dialogue have
hinn helgi Gregorius svá mælt, at píslarstaðir sé í Sikiley,
the holy Gregorius so said that torment-places be in Sicily
í þeim eldi er þar er; en menn draga þó meiri líkendi
in that fire which there is but men draw yet greater likelihoods
til þess, í þessum eldi er á Íslandi er, at þar sé víst
to that in this fire which in Iceland is that there be surely
píslarstaðir; fyrir því at sá eldr, er í Sikiley er, þá dregr
torment-places for that that that fire which in Sicily is then draws
hann til sín kvika hluti, þar sem hann brennir jörð ok tré.
it to itself living things there where it burns earth and wood
Þvíat tréit er kvikt, þat vex ok gefr grœnt lauf, ok svá
Because the-wood is living it grows and gives green leaf and so
hrörnar þat ok þornar, þegar þat tekr at deyja; en fyrir því
decays it and dries when it begins to die but for that
má þat kvikt kalla, meðan þat er grœnt, at þat deyr
may-one it living call while it is green that it dies

þegar er þat hrörnar. Jörðina má ok víst kvika kalla; hon
as-soon as it decays The-earth may-one also surely living call she
gefr stundum mikinn ávöxt, en þegar sá er niðr fallinn,
gives at-times great fruit but when that is down fallen
þá gefr hon nýjan ávöxt; svá ok öll líkamlig skepna, sú
then gives she new fruit so also all bodily creation that
er af jörðu grœr, ok má hana því víst kvika kalla.
which from earth grows and may-one her therefore surely living call
En hvárntveggja þann hlut, tréit ok jörðina, þá brennir
But each-of-two that thing the-wood and the-earth then burns
Sikileyjar eldr, ok dregr til sinnar nœringar. En sá eldr er
Sicily's fire and draws to its nourishment But that fire which
á Íslandi er, þá brennir eigi tréit, þóat í sé kastat,
in Iceland is then burns not the-wood though into-it be thrown
ok eigi jörðina, en steina ok hart berg þá dregr hann til
and not the-earth but stones and hard rock then draws it to
sinnar nœringar, ok kveikisk þar af, svá sem annarr eldr
its nourishment and is-kindled there from so as other fire
af þurrum viði; ok er aldri svá harðr steinn né berg, at
from dry wood and is never so hard stone nor rock that
hann bræði eigi sem vax, ok brenni síðan sem feitt oleum;
it melt not as wax and burn afterward as fat oil
en þóat þú skjótir trénu í eldinn, þá sviðnar þat at eins
but though you shoot the-wood into the-fire then singes it at only
ok vill eigi brenna. Nú með því at þessi eldr vill eigi
and will not burn Now with that that this fire will not
við annat fœðask en við dauða skepnu, en hann hafnar
on other feed than on dead creation but it rejects
allri skepnu, er annarr eldr fœðisk við, þá má þat víst
all creation which other fire feeds on then may-one that surely

kalla, at sá eldr er dauðr, ok er hann til þess líkastr,
call that that fire is dead and is it to that likest
at hann sé helvítis eldr, þvíat þar eru allir hlutir dauðir.
that it be hell's fire because there are all things dead
Svá virðask mér ok vötn þau sum, er þar eru, um dauðleik
So seem to-me also waters those some which there are about deadness
sinn at sumri náttúru sem eldr sá, er vér rœddum um;
their of some nature as fire that which we talked about
þvíat þar eru þær keldur, er æ ok æ vella ákafliga bæði
because there are those springs which ever and ever boil fiercely both
vetr ok sumar. Nú er stundum svá mikill ákafi á vellu
winter and summer Now is at-times so great fierceness on boiling
þeirra, at þær spýja langt í lopt upp vatni or sér; en
their that they spew far into air up water out-of themselves but
hvat sem menn leggja þar íhjá keldunum, í þeim tíma er
whatever that men lay there beside the-springs in that time when
þær spýja, hvárt sem þat er klæði eða tré, eða hvatki hlut
they spew whether that it is cloth or wood or whatever thing
sem vatn þat kann á at koma í niðrfalli sínu, þá verðr þat
which water that can on to come in down-fall its then becomes it
at steini, ok þykki mér þau líkendi mest til draga, at vatnit
to stone and seem to-me those likelihoods most to draw that the-water
mun dautt vera, at þat dregr til dauðrar náttúru hvetvetna
will dead be that it draws to dead nature everything
þat, sem þat vætir með sínu ádrifi; þvíat steinninn hefir
that which it wets with its spray because the-stone has
dauða náttúru. En með því at sá eldr væri eigi dauðr, ok
dead nature But with that that that fire were not dead and
yrði hann með einnihverri landsins náttúru, þá mætti þetta
became it with some of-the-land's nature then might this
líkast vera um vöxt landsins, at grundvöllr þess mun
likeliest be about (the)-growth of-the-land that (the)-foundation its will

vaxinn með mörgum æðum ok tómum smugum eða stórum
grown with many veins and empty crevices or great
holum. En síðan kunnu þeir atburðir at verða, annathvárt
hollows But afterward can those events to happen either
af vindum eða af afli gnýjanda gjálfrs, at þessar æðar
from winds or from (the)-force of-roaring surf that these veins
eða holur verði fullar af vindum svá mjök, at þær þoli eigi
or hollows become full of winds so much that they bear not
umbrot vindsins, ok kunnu þaðan af at koma landskjálftar
(the)-upheaval of-the-wind and can thence from to come earthquakes
þeir inir miklu, er á því landi verða. Nú ef þetta mætti
those the great which in that land happen Now if this might
vera með nökkurum líkendum eða hætti, þá mætti þat vera
be with some likelihoods or manner then might that be
af því hinu sterka umbroti, er veðrit hefir í grundvöllum
from that the strong upheaval which the-weather has in (the)-foundations
landsins, at þaðan mætti eldr sá hinn mikli kveikjask ok
of-the-land that thence might fire that the great be-kindled and
koma, er brestr upp í ýmsum stöðum landsins.
come which bursts up in various places of-the-land
Nú skal þetta eigi hafa fyrir sannfrœði, at svá sé, sem
Now shall-one this not have for truth that so be as
nú höfum vér umrœtt, nema heldr þat, at draga slíka hluti
now have we discussed but rather that to draw such things
saman til líkenda, er vænligast þykkir til vera; fyrir því at
together for likelihoods which likeliest seems to be for that that
þat sjám vér, at af afli kemr eldr allr; þar sem saman kemr
that see we that from force comes fire all there where together comes
högg harðs steins ok harðs járns, þá kemr þar eldr af því
(the)-blow of-hard stone and of-hard iron then comes there fire from that
járni ok afli, er þau berjask. Trjám máttu ok til þess
iron and force when they strike-each-other Trees may-you also to that

saman ríða, at þar fáisk eldr af því erfiði, er þau hafa;
together rub that there be-got fire from that toil which they have
þat verðr ok iðuliga, at tveir vindar rísa upp í senn, hvárr í
That happens also frequently that two winds rise up at once each in
móti öðrum, ok ef þeir mœtask í lopti, þá verðr þat mikit
against (the)-other and if they meet in air then becomes that great
högg, svá at þat högg gefr mikinn eld af sér, ok dreifisk
blow so that that blow gives great fire from itself and scatters
hann víða um lopt. Þat kann ok stundum vera, at sá eldr
it widely about (the)-air That can also at-times be that that fire
dreifisk til jarðar, ok gerir þar mikinn skaða, ok brennir þar
scatters to earth and does there great damage and burns there
hús ok stundum skóga, ok skip í hafi. En allir þessir eldar,
houses and at-times forests and ships at sea But all these fires
er nú hefi ek talda, hvárt sem þeir koma af járni eða vinda
which now have I counted whether that they come from iron or winds'
umbroti í lopti, eða af einhverju því ofrefli, er eld má
upheaval in air or from some that over-force which fire may
gefa, þá brenna þeir þó tré ok skóga ok jörð. En sá eldr
give then burn they yet wood and forests and earth But that fire
er fyrr rœddum vér um, ok upp kemr á Íslandi, þá hafnar
which before talked we about and up comes in Iceland then rejects
hann öllum þessum hlutum, svá sem fyrr sögðum vér ífrá. Nú
it all these things so as before told we from Now
draga þau líkendi heldr grun á hans náttúru, at hann mun
draw those likelihoods rather suspicion on its nature that it will
heldr koma af dauðligum hlutum ok öðru efni, en þessir
rather come from deathly things and other matter than these
eldar er nú rœddum vit um. Ok ef þat er með þeim hætti,
fires which now talked we-two about And if that is in that manner
sem nú höfum vit grun á, þá er þat líkligt, at þeir hinir
which now have we-two suspicion on then is that likely that those the

stóru landskjálftar, er þar verða á því landi, þá verða þeir
great earthquakes which there happen in that land then happen they
af ofrgangi elds þess, er um brýzk í grundvöllum landsins.
from (the)-excess of-fire that which about bursts in (the)-foundations of-the-land

XIV · TORMENT-PLACES

The son asks whether the fire might melt the whole land. The father holds that Iceland, with its fire, glaciers, boiling springs, and ice-cold torrents, is surely a place of torments, shown to men as a warning of hell. But nothing can happen before God's appointed time: as Satan could do to Job only what God allowed, so the devil can harm men only by leave.

SON Enn girnumk ek með leyfi nökkurs at spyrja um þenna
Still desire I with leave something to ask about this
eld lengra. Þér gátut fyrr í yðarri rœðu, at Gregorius hefði
fire longer You mentioned before in your talk that Gregorius had
ritat í Dialogo, at í Sikiley væri píslarstaðir, en mér þykki
written in (the)-Dialogue that in Sicily were torment-places but to-me seems
meiri líkendi, at á Íslandi muni vera píslarstaðir. En þar sem
greater likelihood that in Iceland will be torment-places But there where
þér rœðit um, at svá mikil gnótt verðr eldsins í grundvöllum
you talk about that so great abundance becomes of-the-fire in (the)-foundations
landsins, at landskjálftar verði af umbroti eldsins, enda er
of-the-land that earthquakes happen from (the)-upheaval of-the-fire moreover is
eldrinn svá heitr við stein eða berg, at hann bræðir þat sem
the-fire so hot toward stone or rock that it melts it as
vax ok nœrisk við þat eina, þá hugða ek, at hann mundi
wax and nourishes-itself on that alone then thought I that it would
brátt bræða alla grundvöllu undan landinu ok svá öll bergin.
soon melt all foundations from-under the-land and so all the-rocks

Nú þóat yðr þykki barnlig spurning mín um slíka hluti,
Now though to-you seems childish question my about such things
vilda ek þess yðr biðja, at þér svarit líkendliga, þvíat margs
would-wish I of-that you to-ask that you answer reasonably because of-much
mun ek þess spyrja, at heldr mun œsku at kenna en vizku.
will I that ask that rather will to-youth to ascribe than to-wisdom
FATHER Eigi efumk ek í því, at píslarstaðir eru á Íslandi í
Not doubt I in that that torment-places are in Iceland in
fleirum stöðum, en í eldinum einum, ok fyrir því at eigi
more places than in the-fire alone and for that that not
er minni ofrgangr jökla ok frosts á því landi heldr en
is less excess of-glaciers and of-frost in that land rather than
eldsins. Þar eru ok þær keldur ok vellandi vötn, svá sem
of-the-fire There are also those springs and boiling waters so as
fyrr sögðum vér ífrá. Þar eru ok ísköld vötn, þau er falla
before told we from There are also ice-cold waters those which fall
undan jöklum, svá stórum, at berg ok jörð er hjá liggr,
from-under glaciers so great that rock and earth which beside lies
þá skjálfa fyrir þær sakir, at vatnit fellr svá strítt ok með
then shake for those sakes that the-water falls so violently and with
svá stórum forsum, at bergin skjálfa fyrir ofreflis sakir ok
so great waterfalls that the-rocks shake for over-force's sake and
stríðleiks, ok eigi megu menn til ganga at forvitnask á þá
violence and not can men to go to be-curious onto those
árbakka, nema löng reip hafi ok sé borin á þá menn, er til
river-banks unless long ropes have and be borne onto those men who to-it
vilja forvitnask at sjá, ok siti hinir fjarri, er gæta reipsins,
will be-curious to see and sit the-others far-off who keep the-rope
svá at þeir eigi kost at draga þá þegar aptr til sín, þegar
so that they have choice to draw them at-once back to themselves when
stríðleikr vatnsins ærir þá. Nú ætla ek þat víst, at hvervetna
(the)-violence of-the-water maddens them Now think I that surely that everywhere

þar sem svá mikil ákefð verðr í slíkum ógnarhlutum, at
there where so great fierceness becomes in such terror-things that
þar eru víst píslarstaðir; ok sýnir guð mönnum fyrir því
there are surely torment-places and shows God to-men for that
svá mikla ógurliga hluti opinberliga á jörðu, at menn skuli
so great terrible things openly on earth that men shall
því meir við sjá ok ætla með sér, at þó væri miklar
the more against look and reckon with themselves that though were great
píslirnar til at hyggja, at þat skyldi maðrinn þola síðan
the-torments to to consider that that should the-man bear afterward
er hann er framfarinn, sem nú sér hann meðan hann lifir
when he is departed which now sees he while he lives
á jörðu; en heldr þat, at hann skal þat ætla með sér, at
on earth but rather that that he shall that reckon with himself that
miklu munu þeir hlutir stœrri er úsýniligir eru, ok hánum
much will those things greater which invisible are and to-him
eru eigi lofaðir at sjá. En þessir hlutir eru til vitnisburðar,
are not permitted to see But these things are for witness
at þat er eigi logit, er oss er sagt, at þeir menn eigu
that it is not lied which to-us is told that those men have
kvala vánir, er fram fara af þessum heimi, ok hér
of-torments expectations who forth go from this world and here
vilja eigi við sjá, meðan þeir lifa, fyrir sakir illra verka
will not against look while they live for (the)-sake of-evil works
ok ranglætis. En þat mætti margir hyggja fáfróðir menn, at
and unrighteousness But that might many think ignorant men that
þat væri ekki annat en lygð, ok enskis vert, nema mælt
that were not other than lie and of-nothing worth except spoken
fyrir ógnar sakir, ef eigi væri slíkir vitnisburðir íhjá, sem nú
for terror's sake if not were such witnesses beside as now
höfum vit um rœtt. En nú má engi dyljask við, sá
have we-two about talked But now may no-one deny-it at that-one

er sjá má fyrir augum sér, fyrir því at slíkir hlutir eru oss
who see may before eyes his for that that such things are to-us
sagðir frá píslum helvítis, sem nú má sjá í þeirri ey, er
told of torments of-hell as now may-one see in that island which
Ísland heitir; þvíat þar er gnótt elds ofrgangs ok ofrefli
Iceland is-called because there is abundance of-fire's excess and over-force
frosts ok jökla, vellandi vötn ok stríðleikr ískaldra vatna.
of-frost and of-glaciers boiling waters and violence of-ice-cold waters
En þeir hlutir er þú rœddir áðr um eldinn, at hann
But those things which you talked before about the-fire that it
mundi bræða eða brenna grundvöllu landsins eða fjöllin,
would melt or burn (the)-foundations of-the-land or the-mountains
svá at alt landit mundi af því týnask, þá má þat eigi vera
so that all the-land would from that perish then may that not be
fyrir þann tíma, er guð hefir fyrir ætlat; þvíat skepnan
before that time which God has before appointed because the-creation
ok alt annat rœðr sér eigi sjálft, heldr verða allir hlutir
and all other rules itself not itself rather must all things
eptir því at fara, er guðlig forsjá hefir fyrir öndverðu
after that to go which divine providence has at (the)-beginning
skipat; ok mun þér skilnara vera, ef ek sýni þér
ordained and will to-you more-understandable be if I show you
nökkur þau dœmi, er slíka hluti megi eptir marka.
some those examples which such things may-one by mark
Þá er höfðingi dauðans vildi freista Jobs, þá átti hann þó
Then when (the)-chieftain of-death would tempt Job then had he yet
eigi framar veldi en hann bað lofs til; ok er hann hafði
not further power than he asked leave for and when he had
lof fengit, þá átti hann þó eigi kost framar sinn vilja at
leave gotten then had he yet not choice further his wish to
drýgja, en hánum var lof til gefit; þvíat gjarna mundi hann
perform than to-him was leave to-it given because gladly would he

hafa viljat drepa hann í fyrstu, ef hánum væri þat lofat.
have wished to-kill him at first if to-him were that permitted
En hánum var þar til leyfi gefit, at taka fé hans, ok hann
But to-him was there for leave given to take wealth his and he
tók þat alt í fyrstunni, þvíat hánum var eigi lofat at týna
took it all in the-first because to-him was not permitted to destroy
hánum sjálfum. En þá er hann girntisk optar at biðja
him himself But then when he desired oftener to ask
leyfis til meiri freistni við Job, heldr en fyrr hafði hann,
leave for greater temptation toward Job rather than before had he
þá var hánum lofat at drýgja vilja sinn á líkama Jobs ok
then was to-him permitted to perform will his on (the)-body of-Job and
öllum þeim varnaði, er hánum varðaði; en þat leyfi fékk
all that goods which to-him belonged but that leave got
hann eigi, at skilja önd hans frá líkama, fyrr en sá tími
he not to part soul his from body before than that time
kœmi, er sá hafði fyrir ætlat, er allan kost átti á
came which that-one had before appointed who all choice had over
hans dómi ok lífdögum. En þegar er Sathanas hafði leyfi
his judgment and life-days But as-soon as Satan had leave
til þess fengit at drýgja vilja sinn á hánum, þá sýndi hann
for that gotten to perform will his on him then showed he
brátt hversu góðviljaðr hann var um þá hluti er hann
soon how good-willed he was about those things which he
átti kost á; þvíat svá er ritat at Sathanas tók frá Job alla
had choice over because so is written that Satan took from Job all
gnótt fjár ok 7 sonu hans ok 3 dœtr, ok laust síðan
abundance of-wealth and 7 sons his and 3 daughters and struck afterward
allan líkam hans með líkþrá ógurligri millum hvirfils ok ilja.
all body his with leprosy terrible between crown and soles

Nú er sú grein á því, er oss hœfir vel at gæta, at
Now is that distinction in that which to-us befits well to heed that
höfðingi lífsins á vald á öllum hlutum, ok er hann
(the)-chieftain of-life has power over all things and is he
sjálfr góðviljaðr; en höfðingi dauðans er illviljaðr ok á
himself good-willed but (the)-chieftain of-death is ill-willed and has
enskis kost, nema þess eins, at hann þiggr leyfi áðr af
of-nothing choice except of-that alone that he receives leave before from
þeim, er öllum hlutum ræðr, en þat er allsvaldandi guð.
him who all things rules but that is all-ruling God
Má fjándinn fyrir því eigi gera mönnum skaða, svá at þeir
May the-fiend for that not do to-men harm so that they
týnisk með dauðligum eldi, þeim er hann kveikir ok gætir
perish with deadly fire that which he kindles and keeps
síðan vakrliga með ógurligum jarðskjálftum eða grimmleik
afterward watchfully with terrible earthquakes or fierceness
einhverjum eða illsku þeirri, er hann girnisk; at hann fær
some or wickedness that which he desires that he gets
eigi leyfi til meira en slíkra hluta, sem þá hefir hann frammi,
not leave for more than such things as then has he forward
ok helzt birtask eptir þvílíkum dœmum, sem nú sagða
and most appear according-to such examples as now told
ek þér um Job, ok bæði eru œrin ok nóg þvílík, ef þess
I you about Job and both are ample and enough such if of-that
þœtti nauðsyn vera at leiða svá mörg dœmi í eina rœðu.
seemed need to-be to lead so many examples into one talk

The son asks for more of Iceland. The father tells of bog-iron that vanishes the day after it is found, and of the ale-springs, chief of them in Hítárdalr, whose water tastes like ale but flees any house built over it and goes flat if carried away.

SON Þess betr þœtti mér, er ek mætta fleiri dœmi af
Of-that better would-seem to-me if I might more examples from
yðrum munni heyra, þau er mik leiði til fróðleiks. En
your mouth hear those which me lead to learning But
þessi dœmi er nú hafi þér um rœtt, þá leiða mik til
these examples which now have you about talked then lead me to
fullrar skilningar um þat, at þar sem Sathanas átti eigi
full understanding about that that there where Satan had not
kost at drýgja vilja sinn á einum manni um þat fram
choice to perform will his on one man about that forward
sem hánum var lofat, þá er þat víst, at síðr mun hann
which to-him was permitted then is that certain that less will he
eiga vald á mörgum þúsundum manna, at drýgja vilja sinn
have power over many thousands of-men to perform will his
á þeim um þat fram, er hánum er leyfi til gefit, hvárki
on them about that forward which to-him is leave to given neither
fyrir sjálfan sik né einnhvern sinn embættismann. Nú með
for self himself nor any his officer Now with
því at vér skulum enn fram á leið á þessarri gamanrœðu
that that we shall still forward on way on this amusement-talk
halda, er nú höfum vit umrœtt, þá vil ek forvitnask,
hold which now have we-two discussed then will I be-curious
ef yðr sýnisk nökkurir hlutir fleiri í þessarri ey, þeir er
if to-you seem some things more in this island those which
minningar sé verðir til umrœðu, ok undarligir munu þykkja.
of-memory be worthy for discussion and wondrous will seem

FATHER Flestra hluta höfum vér þeirra getit í þessarri ey,
Of-most things have we of-those mentioned in this island
er helzt eru umrœðu verðir. En þó eru enn þeir hlutir
which most are of-discussion worthy But yet are still those things
sumir, er geta má ef vill. Á því landi er málmr sá
some which mention may-one if one-wishes In that land is ore that
mikill, er járn skal af gera, ok kalla menn þann málm
great which iron shall-one from make and call men that ore
rauða eptir mállýzku sinni, ok svá kalla menn hér með
bog-iron according-to dialect their and so call men here with
oss. En sá málmr hefir verit œrinn einn dag fundinn, ok
us But that ore has been ample one day found and
menn hafa ætlat at búa annan dag ferð sína þangat, ok
men have intended to prepare (the)-other day journey their thither and
blása þar ok gera járn af, þá hefir sá rauði horfit svá
smelt there and make iron from-it then has that bog-iron vanished so
í brott, at engi maðr veit hvar hann kom niðr, ok er þat
off away that no man knows where it came down and is that
kallat á því landi rauða-undr. Þá er sá enn annarr hlutr,
called in that land bog-iron-wonder Then is that still other thing
er mönnum þykkir undarligr vera. Svá er sagt, at keldur
which to-men seems wondrous to-be So is said that springs
sé þær á Íslandi, er menn kalla ölkeldur, ok er því svá
be those in Iceland which men call ale-springs and is for-that so
kallat, at vatn er þar er í, er líkara þefjat munngáti
called that (the)-water which there is in-them is more-like smelling to-ale
en vatni; ok þóat menn drekki þar af, þá fyllask menn
than to-water and though men drink there from then fill-themselves men
eigi af því vatni, svá sem af öðru vatni, heldr sjatnar þat
not from that water so as from other water rather subsides it
vel, ok rennr í hörund sem munngát. Fleiri eru keldur á
well and runs into skin as ale More are springs in

því landi en einn, er ölkeldur eru kallaðar; en þó er sú
that land than one which ale-springs are called but yet is that
ein, er bezt er ok frægust af öllum, ok liggr sú í dal
one which best is and most-famous of all and lies that in dale
þeim, er heitir Hítárdalr. Svá er sagt af þeirri keldu eða
that which is-called Hitardal So is told of that spring or
vatni því er þar er í, at þat er dámat allíkt munngáti,
water that which there is in-it that it is tasting very-like ale
ok til gnógs at drekka; ok þat er mælt, at þat fái á mann
and for plenty to drink and that is said that it get on a-man
svá nökkut, ef þat er mjök drukkit. En ef menn gera hús
so somewhat if it is much drunk But if men make house
um kelduna, þá hverfr hon brott or húsinu, ok brestr upp
about the-spring then vanishes it away out-of the-house and bursts up
fyrir utan húsit. Svá er ok sagt, at menn megi þar af
before outside the-house So is also said that men may there from
drekka við kelduna, slíkt hverr vill, en ef þeir fýsask brott
drink by the-spring such each wishes but if they desire away
at hafa með sér, þá dofnar þat skjótt, ok er þat þá eigi
to have with themselves then goes-flat it quickly and is it then not
betra en annat vatn, eða þaðan af verra. Nú gátum vér
better than other water or thence from worse Now mentioned we
fyrir því svá margra hluta ok smárra, at slíkir hlutir þykkja
for that so many things and small that such things seem
undarligir þar vera. Eigi má ek hug mínum á koma fleiri
wondrous there to-be Not can I to-mind my on come more
þá hluti, er þar eru áminningar verðir í því landi.
those things which there are of-mention worthy in that land

Turning to Greenland, the father describes the merman and mermaid, sea-monsters whose appearance foretells storms; the sea-hedges, three great waves that wall in ships; the vast ice-floes, where sailors who approach too early must drag small boats over the ice for days to reach land; the fall-glaciers, standing like mountains in the sea; and the many kinds of seals, including the skemmingr that blows holes through thick ice, and the walrus, with two long tusks and a hide that makes the strongest ropes.

SON Nú með því at vér höfum gamanrœðu upphafða ok
Now with that that we have amusement-talk begun and
rœtt um undr þau, er á Íslandi eru ok í Íslands höfum,
talked about wonders those which in Iceland are and in Iceland's seas
þá lúkum vér henni með því, at vér höfum minning
then end we it with that that we have memory
þeirra hluta, er í Grœnalands höfum eru, eða á landi
of-those things which in Greenland's seas are or in (the)-land
sjálfu, ok þau undr er þar eru.
itself and those wonders which there are

FATHER Þat er mælt um Grœnalands höf, at þar sé skrimsl
That is said about Greenland's seas that there be monsters
í, ok ætla ek þau þó eigi opt fyrir augum verða, en fyrir
in-them and think I them yet not often before eyes become but for
því kunnu menn þó frá at segja, at menn munu sét hafa
that can men yet from to tell that men will seen have
ok varir við orðit. Svá er sagt um þat skrimsl, er menn
and aware of become So is said about that monster which men
kalla hafstramba, at þat sé í Grœnalands hafi. Þat skrimsl
call merman that it be in Greenland's sea That monster
er mikit vexti ok at hæð, ok hefir staðit upp rétt or
is great in-size and in height and has stood up straight out-of
hafinu. Þat hefir svá sýnzk, sem þat hafi haft manns herðar,
the-sea It has so appeared as-if it have had man's shoulders

háls ok höfuð, augu ok munn, ok nef ok höku; en upp ífrá
neck and head eyes and mouth and nose and chin but up from
augum ok brúnum þá hefir verit því líkast, sem maðr hafi
eyes and brows then has been to-that likest as-if a-man have
haft á höfði hvassan hjálm. Axlir hefir þat haft svá sem
had on head a-pointed helmet Shoulders has it had so as
maðr, en engar hendr, ok svá hefir þat sýnzk sem þegar hafi
a-man but no hands and so has it appeared as-if at-once have
þat svengzk frá öxlum ofan, ok æ því mjórra er þat hefir
it narrowed from shoulders down and ever the narrower which it has
neðarmeir verit sét. En þat hefir engi sét, hversu hinn neðri
lower-down been seen But that has no-one seen how the lower
endir er skapaðr á því, hvárt heldr er, at sporðr hefir á
end is shaped on it whether rather is that tail-fin has on-it
verit sem á fiski, eða hefir hvast niðr verit sem hæll. En
been as on fish or has pointed down been as peg But
líkamr þess hefir þvílíkr verit at ásýn sem jökull. Engi hefir
body its has such been in appearance as glacier No-one has
þat svá glögt sét, hvárt heldr hefir á verit hreistr sem á
that so clearly seen whether rather has on-it been scales as on
fiski, eða húð sem á manni. Jafnan þegar þetta skrimsl hefir
fish or skin as on man Always when this monster has
sét verit, þá hafa menn ok vitat vísan storm í hafi eptir. Þat
seen been then have men also known certain storm at sea after That
hafa menn ok markat, hversu þat hefir horft eða fallit síðan
have men also marked how it has faced or fallen afterward
á sjó, þá er þat hefir steypzk; en ef þat hefir horft at
into sea then when it has plunged but if it has faced toward
skipi ok þangat steypzk, þá hafa menn víst vitat sér
ship and thither plunged then have men surely known for-themselves
manntjón á því skipi; en ef þat hefir horft frá skipi ok þangat
loss-of-men on that ship but if it has faced from ship and thither

steypzk, þá hafa menn verit í góðri vilnan, at þeir mundi
plunged then have men been in good hope that they would
halda mönnum, þóat þeir hitti í stóran sæ ok storma mikla.
keep men though they met in great sea and storms great
Þat hefir ok enn sét verit þar eitt skrimsl, er menn kalla
That has also still seen been there one monster which men call
margýgi. Þess vöxtr hefir svá sýnzk sem þat hafi kvennmanni
mermaid Its form has so appeared as-if it have to-woman
líkt verit upp ífrá lindastað, þvíat þat skrimsl hefir haft á
like been up from waist because that monster has had on
brjósti sér stóra spena svá sem kona, langar hendr ok sítt
breast its great teats so as woman long hands and long
hár ok vaxit svá at öllum hlutum um háls ok um höfuð
hair and grown so in all things about neck and about head
sem maðr. Hendr hafa mönnum sýnzk miklar á því skrimsli
as a-man Hands have to-men appeared great on that monster
ok eigi með sundrslitnum fingrum, heldr með þvílíkri fit
and not with separated fingers rather with such web
sem tengjask saman á fitfuglum. Niðr ífrá lindastað hefir
as join together on web-footed-birds Down from waist has
þat skrimsl sýnzk líkt fiski bæði með hreistri ok með sporði
that monster appeared like fish both with scales and with tail-fin
ok sundfjöðrum. Þetta skrimsl hefir svá verit sem hit fyrra,
and fins This monster has so been as the former
at sjaldan hefir þat sýnzk nema fyrir stórum stormum. Þetta
that seldom has it appeared except before great storms This
hefir verit athæfi þessa skrimsl, at þat hefir opt kafzk
has been (the)-conduct of-this monster that it has often dived
ok jafnan svá upp komit, at þat hefir haft fiska í höndum
and always so up come that it has had fishes in hands
sér, ok ef þat hefir horft at skipi ok leikit sér við fiska
its and if it has faced toward ship and played itself with fishes

eða kastat fiskum at skipinu, þá hafa menn verit hræddir
or thrown fishes at the-ship then have men been afraid
um þat, at þeir mundu fá stór manntjón. Þat skrimsl hefir
about that that they would get great loss-of-men That monster has
ok sýnzk mikit ok hræðiligt í andliti með hvössu enni ok
also appeared great and frightful in face with pointed forehead and
breiðum augum, mjök mynt, ok með hrokknum kinnum.
broad eyes very great-mouthed and with wrinkled cheeks
En ef skrimsl þat etr sjálft fiska eða kastar á haf frá
But if monster that eats itself fishes or throws onto sea from
skipi, þá hafa menn verit í góðri ván um, at þeir mundi
ship then have men been in good hope about that they would
halda mönnum, þóat þeir féngi stóra storma.
keep men though they got great storms
Nú er þat enn eitt undr í Grœnalands hafi, er ek em eigi
Now is that still one wonder in Greenland's sea which I am not
fróðastr um, með hverjum hætti er þat er, þat kalla menn
most-learned about in what manner which it is that call men
hafgerðingar; en þat er því líkast sem allr hafstormr ok
sea-hedges but that is to-that likest as-if all sea-storm and
bárur allar, þær sem í því hafi eru, samnisk saman í
waves all those which in that sea are gather-themselves together into
þrjá staði, ok gerask af því þrjár bárur; þær þrjár gerða alt
three places and become from that three waves those three hedge all
haf, svá at menn vitu hvergi hlið á vera, ok eru þær stórum
sea so that men know nowhere gate on to-be and are they than-great
fjöllum hærri, líkar bröttum gnípum, ok vitu menn fá dœmi
mountains higher like steep peaks and know men few examples
til, at þeir menn hafi or höfum komizk, er þar hafa
to-it that those men have out-of seas got who there have
í verit staddir, þá er þessi atburðr hefir orðit. En því
in-it been placed then when this event has happened But for-that

munu sögur vera af görvar, at guð mun æ nökkura þaðan
will stories be from made that God will ever some thence
hafa frjálsat, þá sem þar hafa verit staddir, ok mun þeirra
have freed those who there have been placed and will their
rœða síðan dreifzk hafa ok fluzk manna í millum, hvárt
talk afterward spread have and been-carried of-men in between whether
sem nú er svá frá sagt sem þeir hafa helzt um rœtt, eða er
that now is so from told as they have most about talked or is
nökkut þeirra rœða aukin eða vönuð, ok munu vér fyrir því
somewhat their talk increased or lessened and will we for that
varliga um þá hluti rœða, at vér höfum fá þá hitta nýliga,
warily about those things talk that we have few those met newly
er þaðan hafi komizk, ok oss kynni þessi tíðendi at segja.
who thence have got and to-us could these tidings to tell
En í því sama hafi þá eru þó mörg fleiri undr, þóat þau
But in that same sea then are yet many more wonders though they
megi eigi með skrimslum telja; þvíat þegar er or sœkir
may not with monsters count because as-soon as out-of one-goes
hinum mesta háleik hafsins, þá er svá mikil gnótt ísa í
the greatest height of-the-sea then is so great abundance of-ice in
hafinu, at ek vita eigi dœmi til þvílíkra annarstaðar í öllum
the-sea that I know not example of such elsewhere in all
heiminum. Þeir ísar eru sumir svá flatir, sem þeir hafi frosit
the-world Those ice-floes are some so flat as-if they have frozen
á hafinu sjálfu, annathvárt fjögurra álna þykkvir eða fimm,
on the-sea itself either of-four ells thick or five
ok liggja svá langt undan landi, at þat verðr annathvárt
and lie so far off-from land that that becomes either
fjögurra daga ferð eða fleiri, er menn fara at ísum. En þeir
four days' journey or more which men go to (the)-ice But those
ísar liggja meir í landnorðr eða til norðrs fyrir landinu,
ice-floes lie more in (the)-north-east or to (the)-north before the-land

heldr en til suðrs eða útsuðrs eða vestrs; ok fyrir því skal
rather than to (the)-south or south-west or west and for that shall
um landit sigla, hverr er landinu vill ná, til útsuðrs ok
around the-land sail each who the-land will reach to (the)-south-west and
vestrs, til þess er hann er umkominn alla þessa ísa ván,
west to that when he is come-around all this ice's likelihood
ok sigla þaðan ok til landsins. En iðuliga hefir menn þat
and sail thence and to the-land But frequently has men that
hent, at þeir hafa ofsnemma landsins leitat, ok hafa þeir
befallen that they have too-early the-land sought and have they
fyrir því í þessa ísa komit; ok sumir þeir er þar hafa
for that into these ice come and some those who there have
í komit, þá hafa týnzk, en sumir hafa ok or komizk, ok
in come then have perished but some have also out-of got and
höfum vér nökkura sét af þeim ok heyrt þeirra rœður ok
have we some seen of them and heard their talks and
frásögur. En þat hafa allir til ráðs tekit, þeir sem í þessa
tales But that have all for counsel taken those who into this
ísavök hafa komit, at þeir hafa tekit smábáta ok dregit á
ice-hole have come that they have taken small-boats and drawn onto
ísa upp með sér, ok hafa svá leitat landsins, en hafskip
ice up with themselves and have so sought the-land but (the)-sea-ship
ok allr annarr fjárhlutr, þá hefir þar eptir dvalzk ok týnzk;
and all other goods then has there behind stayed and perished
en sumir hafa ok úti búit síðan á ísum, áðr en þeir
but some have also outside lodged afterward on ice before than they
hafi landi náð, fjóra daga eða fimm, ok sumir enn lengr.
have land reached four days or five and some yet longer
Ísar þessir eru undarligir at náttúru; þeir liggja stundum svá
Ice-floes these are wondrous in nature they lie at-times so
kyrrir sem ván er at með sundrslitnum vökum eða stórum
still as expectation is that with separated openings or great

fjörðum, en stundum er svá mikil ferð þeirra ok áköf, at þeir
fjords but at-times is so great journey their and fierce that they
fara eigi seinna en þat skip, er gott byrleiði hefir, ok fara þeir
go not slower than that ship which good fair-wind has and go they
eigi sjaldnar móti veðri en fyrir, þegar sem þeir taka ferðina.
not more-seldom against (the)-wind than before as-soon as they take the-journey
Þar eru enn ok sumir þeir ísar í því hafi, er með öðrum
There are still also some those ice-floes in that sea which with other
vexti eru, er Grœnlendingar kalla falljökla. Þeirra vöxtr er
form are which Greenlanders call fall-glaciers Their form is
eptir því sem hátt fjall standi upp or hafinu, ok blandask
according-to that as-if high mountain stand up out-of the-sea and mixes-itself
eyvitar við aðra ísa, nema sér einum saman heldr hann.
not-at-all with other ice but to-itself alone together holds it
Í því hafi eru ok hvalakyn mörg, þau sem vér höfum fyrr
In that sea are also whale-kinds many those which we have before
um rœtt. Svá er ok sagt, at þar sé ok öll selakyn í því hafi,
about talked So is also said that there be also all seal-kinds in that sea
ok fylgja þeir mjök ísum þessum, svá sem þar sé ekki þrot
and follow they much ice these so as-if there be not lack
œrinnar átu. En þessi eru þau kyn sela, er þar eru: Eitt
of-ample food But these are those kinds of-seals which there are One
kyn af þeim er þat, er náselar heita, ok verða þeir ekki
kind of them is that which na-seals are-called and become they not
lengri en fjögurra álna langir. Þá er þat annat selakyn, er
longer than of-four ells long Then is that second seal-kind which
erknselar heita, ok verða þeir fimm álna langir, eða sex þeir
erkn-seals are-called and become they five ells long or six they
er lengstir verða. Þá er þat hit þriðja selakyn, er flettuselar
who longest become Then is that the third seal-kind which flettu-seals
eru kallaðir, ok verða þeir þvílíkir at lengð, sem þeir er
are called and become they such in length as those which

áðr rœddum vér um. Þá er þat hit fjórða selakyn enn, er
before talked we about Then is that the fourth seal-kind still which
granselar heita, ok verða þeir sumir sex álna eða sjau, þeir
gran-seals are-called and become they some six ells or seven they
er lengstir verða. Þá eru enn sum smærri þar selakyn, ok
who longest become Then are still some smaller there seal-kinds and
er þat kallat af þeim eitt kyn opnuselar, ok eru þeir fyrir
is that called of them one kind open-seals and are they for
því svá kallaðir, at þeir symja eigi á grúfu sem aðrir selar,
that so called that they swim not on (the)-belly as other seals
heldr symja þeir opnir eða elligar á hlið, ok verða þeir
rather swim they on-(the)-back or else on side and become they
ekki stœrri en fjögurra álna. Þá er þat enn eitt selakyn enn
not bigger than of-four ells Then is that still one seal-kind the
smæst, er skemmingr heitir, ok eru þeir eigi lengri at vexti
smallest which skemming is-called and are they not longer in size
en tveggja álna, ok er þat með undarligri náttúru, þvíat svá
than of-two ells and is that with wondrous nature because so
er frá sagt, at hann ferr undir þá ísa, er flatir eru, ok
is from told that he goes under those ice-floes which flat are and
annathvárt eru fjögurra álna þykkvir eða fimm, ok blása (upp)
either are of-four ells thick or five and blow up
ígegnum þá, svá at þeir hafa stórar vakir þar sem þeir vilja.
through them so that they have great holes there where they wish
Nú er þat enn eitt kyn eptir, er Grœnlendingar kalla í
Now is that still one kind left which Greenlanders call in
tölu með hvölum, ok virðisk mér svá, at þá megi heldr
number with whales and seems to-me so that them may-one rather
telja með selum, er rostungr heitir, ok verða þeir at vexti
count with seals which walrus is-called and become they in size
fjórtán álna eða fimtán, þeir sem lengstir verða. Vöxtr þess
fourteen ells or fifteen they who longest become (The)-form of-that

fisks er allr sem sels, bæði hár ok höfuð ok húð ok fitjar
fish is all as of-seal both hair and head and hide and flippers
aptr, ok sundhreifar frammi svá sem á sel; eigi er hann ok
behind and swimming-fins in-front so as on seal not is he also
ætr á föstudögum heldr en aðrir selar. En þat bregðr af
edible on Fridays rather than other seals But that differs from
vexti hans frá öðrum selum, at hann hefir tennr tvær stórar
size his from other seals that he has teeth two great
ok langar umfram aðrar smátennr, ok standa þær í efra
and long beyond other small-teeth and stand they in (the)-upper
gómi í öndverðu höfði, náliga hálfrar annarrar álnar langar,
palate in (the)-front-of head nearly of-half (the)-second ell long
þær sem lengstar verða. Húð hans er góð ok þykk til reipa,
those which longest become Hide his is good and thick for ropes
ok rista menn þar af sterkar álar, svá at vel draga sex
and cut men there from strong straps so that well draw six
tigir manna eitt reip eða fleiri, ok geta þó eigi slitit. Þessi
tens of-men one rope or more and can yet not break These
selakyn er nú höfum vér um rætt, þá eru fiskar kallaðir,
seal-kinds which now have we about talked then are fishes called
þvíat þeir fœðask í sjó ok lifa við aðra fiska, ok eru þeir
because they are-born in sea and live by other fishes and are they
mönnum vel ætir, ok þó eigi sem hvalar, þvíat hvalar eru
to-men well edible and yet not as whales because whales are
ætir á föstudögum sem aðrir fiskar, en þessir fiskar eru eigi
edible on Fridays as other fishes but these fishes are not
ætir, nema þá er kjöt skal eta. En eigi veit ek fleiri
edible except then when meat shall-one eat But not know I more
hluti í Grœnalands hafi sjálfu, þá er mér þykki getu
things in Greenland's sea itself those which to-me seem of-mention
verðir eða frásagnar, nema þat sem nú höfum vér rœtt.
worthy or of-telling except that which now have we talked

The son asks why men risk Greenland. The father names three reasons in man's nature: fame, curiosity, and gain. Iron and timber must be bought from abroad, and the Greenlanders pay in hides of goats, cattle, and seals, and in walrus rope and tusks. Little is sown, most have never seen bread, and the land seems joined to the mainland, since hares, wolves, and reindeer live there. The white bear hunts seals on the ice. Most of the land lies under glacier. Marble and white falcons abound.

SON Þessir hlutir munu öllum þykkja undarligir þeim sem
These things will to-all seem wondrous those who
heyra, bæði um skrimsl þau er töld hafa verit í hafi
hear both about monsters those which counted have been in sea
því (ok fiska). Svá skilsk mér ok, at þetta haf mun vera
that and fishes So is-understood to-me also that this sea will be
stormsamara en hvert annarra, ok þykkir mér því þat
more-stormy than any of-others and seems to-me therefore that
undarligt, at þat er þakt með ísum um vetrum ok sumrum
wondrous that it is covered with ice in winters and summers
umfram öll önnur höf þau sem eru; ok þykkir mér undarligt,
beyond all other seas those which are and seems to-me wondrous
hví menn girnask þangat svá mjök at fara, er svá mikill
why men desire thither so much to go where so great
lífsháski liggr við, eða hvat menn sœkja til þess lands, þat sem
life-danger lies by-it or what men seek to that land that which
til nytsemda horfir eða gœzku. Svá vil ek ok þess með leyfi
to usefulness looks or goodness So will I also of-that with leave
spyrja, við hvat sá lýðr lifir, er þat land byggvir, eða hversu
ask on what that people lives who that land inhabits or how
landinu er farit, hvárt þat er ísum þakt sem hafit, eða er
with-the-land is fared whether it is with-ice covered as the-sea or is
þat þítt, þóat hafit sé frosit, eða er nökkut sáð á landinu
it thawed though the-sea be frozen or is anything sown in the-land

sem á öðrum löndum. Svá forvitnar mik ok þat, hvárt þér
as in other lands So makes-curious me also that whether you
ætlit at þat sé meginland eða eyland, eða eru þar dýr nökkur
think that it be mainland or island or are there beasts some
á því landi, eða slíkir hlutir sem á öðrum löndum eru.
in that land or such things as in other lands are
FATHER Þar er þik forvitnar um þat, hvat menn sœkja
There where you makes-curious about that what men seek
þingat til lands þess, eða hví menn fara þangat í svá mikinn
thither to land that or why men go thither into so great
lífsháska, þá dregr þar til þreföld náttúra mannsins. Einn
life-danger then draws there to-it threefold nature of-man One
hlutr er kapp ok frægð, því at þat er mannsins náttúra at fara
thing is rivalry and fame because that is man's nature to go
þangat, sem mikils er háska ván, ok gera sik af því
thither where of-great is danger expectation and make himself from that
frægan. En annarr hlutr er forvitni, því at þat er ok mannsins
famous But (the)-second thing is curiosity because that is also man's
náttúra at forvitna ok sjá þá hluti, er hánum eru sagðir, ok
nature to be-curious and see those things which to-him are told and
vita hvárt svá er, sem hánum var sagt eða eigi. Hinn þriði hlutr
know whether so is as to-him was told or not The third thing
er fjárföng, því at hvervetna leita menn eptir fénu, þar sem
is wealth-getting because everywhere seek men after the-wealth there where
þeir spyrja, at féföngin eru, þóat mikill háski sé annan
they learn that the-wealth-gettings are though great danger be on-the-other
veg við. En á Grœnalandi er svá sem þú mátt ván nær
way with-it But in Greenland is so as you may of-likelihood near
vita, at alt þat sem þangat kemr af öðrum löndum, þá er
know that all that which thither comes from other lands then is
þar dýrt, því at þat land liggr svá í fjarska við önnur lönd,
there dear because that land lies so in distance from other lands

at þangat fara sjaldan menn, En hvetvetna þat sem þeir skulu
that thither go seldom men But everything that which they shall
landinu með hjálpa, þá verða þeir þat alt at kaupa af öðrum
the-land with help then must they that all to buy from other
löndum, bæði járn ok svá við allan þann sem þeir skulu hús
lands both iron and so timber all that which they shall houses
af gera. En þenna fjárhlut flytja menn þaðan móti sínum
from make But this goods bring men thence against their
varningi: bukka vöru ok nauta vöru ok sela húðir, ok reip þau
wares buck wares and cattle wares and seals' hides and ropes those
er fyrr rœddum vér um, er menn rista af fiskum þeim
which before talked we about which men cut from fishes those
er rostungr er kallaðr, ok svarðreip heita, ok tennr þeirra.
which walrus is called and hide-ropes are-called and teeth their
En þar sem þú rœddir um þat, hvárt þar væri nökkut sáð eða
But there where you talked about that whether there were anything sown or
ekki, þá ætla ek þat land lítit af því fram flytjask, en þó
not then think I that land little from that forward bring-itself but yet
eru þeir menn þar er helzt eru ágætastir ok ríkastir kallaðir,
are those men there who most are most-excellent and richest called
at þeir leita við fyrir freistni sakir at sá; en þat er þó mestr
that they seek on for trial's sake to sow but that is yet greatest
fjöldi á því landi, er eigi veit hvat brauð er ok aldrigi sá
multitude in that land which not knows what bread is and never saw
enn brauð. En er þú leitaðir um mikilleika landsins, eða hvárt
yet bread But when you asked about (the)-size of-the-land or whether
þat er eyland eða meginland, þá ætla ek fá vita mikilleika
it is island or mainland then think I few know (the)-size
landsins, en allir geta þess, at þat sé meginland ok áfast við
of-the-land but all guess that that it be mainland and fast to
önnur meginlönd; þvíat þat er ásýnt, at þar er fjöldi þeirra
other mainlands because it is evident that there is multitude of-those

dýra, er menn vitu at á meginlöndum fœðask, en lítt í
beasts which men know that on mainlands are-born but little on
eylöndum. Þar er heri margr ok vargar, ok mikill fjöldi
islands There is hare many and wolves and great multitude
hreindýra, ok þykkjask menn vita, at þessi dýr fœðask
of-reindeer and think-themselves men to-know that these beasts are-born
ekki á eylöndum nema menn flyti í, þat þykkjask menn ok
not on islands unless men bring into it think-themselves men also
víst vita, at engi maðr hefir flutt þau á Grœnaland, nema
surely to-know that no man has brought them to Greenland unless
þau hafa sjálf runnit af öðrum meginlöndum. Björn er þar
they have themselves run from other mainlands Bear is there
ok á því landi, ok er hvítr, ok ætla menn at hann fœðisk á
also in that land and is white and think men that he is-born in
því landi, þvíat hann hefir alt aðra náttúru en svartir birnir,
that land because he has all other nature than black bears
er í skógum ganga; þeir veiða at sér hross ok naut
which in forests go they hunt to themselves horses and cattle
ok annat bú, ok fœðask við þat, en hinn hvíti björninn,
and other livestock and feed-themselves on that but the white the-bear
er á Grœnalandi er, þá ferr hann mest í hafi út á ísum,
which in Greenland is then goes he most in sea out on ice
ok veiðir þar at sér bæði sela ok hvala, ok lifir við þat;
and hunts there to himself both seals and whales and lives on that
svá er hann ok vel fœrr til sunds alls sem selar eða hvalar.
so is he also well able for swimming all as seals or whales
En þar sem þú spurðir hvárt landit væri þítt eða eigi, eða
But there where you asked whether the-land were thawed or not or
væri þat ísum þakt sem hafit, þá skaltu þat víst vita, at
were it with-ice covered as the-sea then shall-you that surely know that
þat er lítill hlutr á landinu er þítt er, en alt annat þá
that is little part of the-land which thawed is but all other then

er ísum þakt, ok vitu menn því eigi hvárt landit er mikit
is with-ice covered and know men therefore not whether the-land is great
eða lítit, at allir fjallgarðarnir ok allir dalarnir eru ísum
or little that all the-mountain-ranges and all the-dales are with-ice
þaktir, svá at hvergi finnr hlið á. En þat mun þó raunar
covered so that nowhere finds-one gap on-it But that will yet in-fact
vera, at vera munu þau hlið, annattveggja í dölum þeim
be that be will those gaps either in dales those
er liggja millum fjallanna, eða með ströndum, er dýrin
which lie between the-mountains or along shores which the-beasts
megu gegnum hitta, þvíat eigi mætti dýrin elligar renna af
may through find because not might the-beasts else run from
öðrum löndum, nema þau finni hlið á ísum ok landit þítt.
other lands unless they find gap in (the)-ice and the-land thawed
En opt hafa menn freistat at ganga upp á landit á þau
But often have men tried to go up onto the-land on those
fjöll er hæst eru í ýmisum stöðum at sjásk um, ok
mountains which highest are in various places to look-themselves about and
vildu vita, ef þeir fynni nökkut er þítt væri á landinu ok
would know if they found anything which thawed were in the-land and
byggvanda, ok hafa menn hvergi þat funnit, nema þar sem
habitable and have men nowhere that found except there where
nú búa menn, ok er þat lítit fram með ströndunni sjálfri.
now dwell men and is that little forward along the-shore itself
Marmari er þar mikill á því landi, þar sem bygt er, með
Marble is there much in that land there where settled is with
ýmisum lit, bæði rauðr ok blár ok grœnfáinn. Valr er
various color both red and blue and green-streaked Falcon is
þar ok mikill ok margr í því landi, sá er í öðrum
there also great and many in that land that-one which in other
löndum þœtti mikil gersemi í vera: hvítir valir, ok er
lands would-seem great treasure in to-be white falcons and is

hann gnógari þar en á engu landi öðru, ok kunnu
he more-plentiful there than in no land other and can
landsmenn sjálfir þó sér ekki af at nýta.
(the)-land's-men themselves yet for-themselves not of-it to make-use

XVIII · HOW THE GREENLANDERS LIVE

The father says Greenland's people are few and Christian, with churches, priests, and now a bishop of their own. They live not on bread but on good pasture, cattle, and sheep, on butter, cheese, and meat, and on hunting reindeer, whales, seals, and bears.

SON Þér gátut þess ok fyrr í yðarri rœðu, at ekki sáð er á
You mentioned that also before in your talk that no seed is in
því landi, ok vil ek nú þess spyrja, við hvat þat fólk lifir, er
that land and will I now of-that ask on what that folk lives which
á því landi er, eða hversu mikit þat fólk er, eða hvat matvistum
in that land is or how great that folk is or what provisions
þat hefir, eða hvárt þat hefir tekit við kristni eða eigi.
it has or whether it has taken with Christianity or not
FATHER Fátt er fólk á því landi, þvíat lítit er þítt, svá at
Few is folk in that land because little is thawed so that
byggvanda er, en þat fólk er kristit, ok kirkjur hafa þeir ok
habitable is but that folk is christened and churches have they and
kennimenn. En ef þat lægi nær öðrum löndum, þá mundi þat
priests But if it lay near other lands then would it
vera kallaðr þriðjungr af einum byskups dómi, en þó hafa þeir
be called a-third of one bishop's see but yet have they
sér nú byskup, þvíat eigi hlýðir annat, sakar svá mikillar
for-themselves now bishop because not avails other for-sake-of so great
fjarvistar sem þeir eru við aðra menn. En þar er þú leitar
distance as they are from other men But there where you ask

eptir því, við hvat er þeir lifa á því landi, með því at þeir
after that on what that they live in that land with that that they
hafa ekki sáð; en við fleira lifa menn en við brauð eitt. Svá
have no seed but on more live men than on bread alone So
er sagt, at á Grœnalandi eru grös góð, ok eru þar bú góð
is said that in Greenland are grasses good and are there farms good
ok stór, þvíat menn hafa þar mart nauta ok sauða, ok er þar
and great because men have there many cattle and sheep and is there
smjörgerð mikil ok osta; lifa menn við þat mjök, ok svá við
butter-making great and of-cheeses live men on that much and so on
kjöt ok við allskonar veiði, bæði við hreina hold ok hvala ok
meat and on all-kinds hunting both on reindeer's flesh and whales' and
sela, ok bjarnar hold, ok fœðask menn við þat þar á landi.
seals' and bear's flesh and feed-themselves men on that there in land

XIX · THE NORTHERN LIGHTS AND THE ZONES

The son asks why Greenland holds so much ice. Following Isidore, the father describes five zones of heaven: one burning, two cold at the poles, and two habitable between them. Greenland lies in the cold zone at the world's northern edge, where the outer ocean enters the land-clefts. Its weather is fair, though winter is nearly one night and summer one day, and its sun gives light but little warmth. He describes the northern lights and gives three guesses at their cause, judging none certain, though the last, that ice and frost shine, not unlikely.

SON Enn þykkir mér nökkut vanspurt vera um þetta land. Hvat
Still seems to-me somewhat under-asked to-be about this land What
ætlit ér at valdi, hví þat land hafi meiri ísa fjölda en ekki
think you that causes why that land have greater ice's multitude than none
annarra, eða hafit þat sem þar er um, ok þó skilsk mér þat
of-others or the-sea that which there is around and yet is-understood to-me that

af, at hafit sé bæði djúpt ok þó mjök salt, ok svá iðuliga
from-it that the-sea be both deep and yet very salt and so frequently
gjálfrsamt, ok hugða ek at þat mundi eigi auðveldliga frjósa,
surf-full and thought I that it would not easily freeze
þvíat hvervetna þar sem hafit er djúpt ok þó saltr særinn, þá
because everywhere there where the-sea is deep and yet salt the-sea then
kunnu varla at frjósa, en þó allra sízt þá er hrœring hafsins
can-it hardly to freeze but yet of-all least then when motion of-the-sea
fylgir ok gjálfrljótt verðr. En mér heyrisk svá um þetta haf,
follows and surf-rough becomes But to-me is-heard so about this sea
er nú rœddum vér um, ok svá landit, þá verðr aldrigi
which now talked we about and so the-land then becomes never
millum at eigi er ísum þakt hvárttveggja landit ok hafit,
between that not is with-ice covered both the-land and the-sea
nema þat kunni at verða stundum hér ok hvar, at hlið verðr
unless it can to happen at-times here and there that gap becomes
á ísum fyrir hrœring gjálfrsins, en eigi fyrir ylja sakir.
in ice for motion of-the-surf but not for warmths' sake
Nú með því at þar er æ jafnan frosit bæði vetr ok sumar,
Now with that that there is ever always frozen both winter and summer
þá vil ek nú þess biðja, at þér skýrit, hversu veðrátta er á því
then will I now of-that ask that you explain how weather is in that
landi, hvárt þar verða nökkurir ylir eða fögr sólskin sem í
land whether there become some warmths or fair sunshines as in
öðrum löndum, eða er þar jafnan ill veðrátta, ok fyrir því svá
other lands or is there always ill weather and for that so
mikil gnótt ísa ok frosts, ok vil ek at þér lýsit fyrir mér
great abundance of-ice and frost and wish I that you explain before me
þenna spurning, ok svá um þat sem ek hefi fyrrmeir spurt í
this question and so about that which I have earlier asked in
okkarri rœðu, ok um þat er Grœnlendingar kalla norðrljós;
our talk and about that which Greenlanders call northern-lights

ok vilda ek nú at þér leystit þenna spurdaga fyrir mér, ok
and would-wish I now that you solved this question before me and
um þat, hvat þér ætlit, í hverjum hlut heimsins er þetta land
about that what you think in what part of-the-world is this land
liggr, hvárt þat liggr á einnihverri utanverðri heimsins síðu,
lies whether it lies on some outer world's side
eða liggr þat nökkut inn í landaklofa sem önnur stór lönd,
or lies it somewhat in into land-cleft as other great lands
með því at þér segit at þat er áfast við önnur meginlönd.
with that that you say that it is fast to other mainlands
FATHER Þessa hluti sem nú hefir þú spurða, þá má ek þik
These things which now have you asked then can I you
eigi sannfróðan göra til fulls, fyrir því at ek hefi engan
not truly-informed make to full for that that I have none
þann funnit, er kannat hafi allar kringlur heimsins eða
that found who explored have all circles of-the-world or
hans vöxt, eða rannsakat hafi allar heimsins síður eða landa
its size or examined have all world's sides or of-lands
skipan eða þau endimörk, sem þar eru í skipuð; ok
arrangement or those end-bounds which there are in-it ordained and
ef ek hefða nökkurn þann funnit, er þessa hluti hefði
if I had any that-one found who these things had
sét ok rannsakat, þá mætta ek þik nú hér sannfróðan um
seen and examined then might I you now here truly-informed about
göra, en þat má ek í ljós láta við þik, hvat getur manna
make but that may I into light let with you what guesses of-men
eru, þeirra sem helzt hafa ætlat eptir líkligleikum.
are of-those who most have reckoned after likelihoods
En þeir menn sem helzt hafa ritat um heimsins vöxt eptir
But those men who most have written about world's form after
tilvísan Ysidori eða annarra fróðra manna, þá hafa þat mælt,
(the)-direction of-Isidore or of-other learned men then have that said

at í himnum eru þeir meginvegir sem úbyggvanda er undir;
that in heavens are those main-ways which uninhabitable is under
er einn svá heitr, at ekki má undir búa fyrir hita sakir ok
is one so hot that not may-one under dwell for heat's sake and
bruna, ok hvetvetna brennr er undir verðr, ok þykkir mér þat
burning and everything burns which under becomes and seems to-me that
líkast, at sá mun vera meginrásar vegr sólarinnar, ok ætla ek
likest that that will be of-the-main-course way of-the-sun and think I
allan þann veg skipaðan vera með logandum geislum hennar, ok
all that way ordered to-be with flaming rays her and
má eigi fyrir því þar undir búa, engi sá er vel tempraðan
may-one not for that there under dwell no-one that who well tempered
bólstað vill hafa. Svá hafa þeir ok mælt um þá tvá vegu er í
dwelling will have So have they also said about those two ways which in
himni liggja, at þar er úbyggvanda undir, at þeir sé svá kaldir,
heaven lie that there is uninhabitable under that they be so cold
at fyrir þá sök sé eigi hœgra undir þeim at búa fyrir kulda
that for that cause be not easier under them to dwell for cold's
sakir en hinnug er fyrir ofrhita sakir; þvíat þar hefir kylrinn
sake than yonder is for over-heat's sake because there has the-cold
svá mikit afl undir sik dregit, at vatnit hafnar náttúru
so great strength under itself drawn that the-water rejects nature
sinni, þvíat þat snýsk í jökul, ok svá öll löndin þekjask
its because it turns into glacier and so all the-lands cover-themselves
með ísum, ok svá höf, ef undir þeim veg liggja, ok skilsk
with ice and so seas if under that way lie and is-understood
mér þá þat, at fimm sé vegirnir í himnum: tveir þeir er
to-me then that that five be the-ways in heavens two those which
byggvanda er undir, en þrír hinir, er úbyggvanda er undir.
habitable is under but three the-others which uninhabitable is under

Nú er þar alt byggvanda undir þeim vegum, er millum eru
Now is there all habitable under those ways which between are
kuldans ok brunans, ok er þat líkt at því sé landaskipti
of-the-cold and of-the-burning and is that likely that in-that be difference-of-lands
á, at sum sé heitari en sum, ok liggi þau nærmeir
on that some be hotter than some and lie they nearer
brunaveginum er heitari eru. En þau lönd sem köld eru,
the-burning-way which hotter are But those lands which cold are
svá sem lönd vár, þá liggja þau þeim veg nærmeir, er kaldr
so as lands our then lie they to-that way nearer which cold
er, ok frost má við koma sínu afli at svala. En eptir
is and frost can to come its strength to cool But according-to
hugþokka mínum at ætla, þá þykkir mér þat líkast, at hinn
opinion my to reckon then seems to-me that likest that the
heiti vegrinn liggr or austri ok í vestr, með bjúgum
hot the-way lies out-of (the)-east and into (the)-west with curved
hring brennanda vegar, umkringðum öllum jarðar böllum. En
ring of-burning way encircled all of-earth ball But
þat er þá líkast móti því, at þeir hinir köldu vegirnir liggja
that is then likest against that that those the cold the-ways lie
á hinum yztum síðum heimsins til norðrs ok suðrs. Ok
on the outermost sides of-the-world to (the)-north and (the)-south And
ef ek hefi þetta ætlat eptir réttri skipan, þá er þat
if I have this reckoned according-to right order then is that
eigi úlíkt, at Grœnaland liggi undir þeim kalda veginum,
not unlikely that Greenland lie under that cold the-way
fyrir því at þat vitni bera flestir Grœnalandi, þeir sem þar
for that that that witness bear most to-Greenland those who there
hafa verit, at kuldinn hefir þar fengit yfrit afl sitt, ok
have been that the-cold has there gotten ample strength its and
svá berr hvervetna vitni á sér landit ok hafit, at þar er
so bears everywhere witness on itself the-land and the-sea that there is

algangsi orðit frostit ok meginafl kuldans, þvíat þat er bæði
all-prevailing become the-frost and main-strength of-the-cold because it is both
frosit um vetrum ok sumrum, ok hvárttveggja ísum þakt.
frozen in winters and summers and both with-ice covered
Þat mæla menn ok víst, at Grœnaland liggi á yztu
That say men also surely that Greenland lie on (the)-outermost
síðu heimsins til norðrs, ok ætla ek ekki land út or
side of-the-world to (the)-north and think I no land out from
kringlu heimsins frá Grœnalandi, nema hafit mikla, þat
(the)-circle of-the-world from Greenland except the-sea great that
er umhverfis rennr heiminn; ok þat mæla menn, þeir sem
which around runs the-world and that say men those who
fróðir eru, at þat sund skerisk íhjá Grœnalandi, er hit
learned are that that sound cuts-itself beside Greenland where the
tóma haf steypisk inn í landaklofa, ok síðan skiptisk
empty sea pours-itself in into land-cleft and afterward divides-itself
þat með fjörðum ok hafsbotnum allra landa millum, þar
it with fjords and sea-bays all lands between there
sem þat nær at renna inn í kringlu heimsins.
where it reaches to run in into (the)-circle of-the-world
En þar er þú spurðir eptir því, hvárt sól skínn á
But there where you asked after that whether (the)-sun shines in
Grœnalandi, eða verði þat nökkut sinni at þar sé fögr veðr,
Greenland or happen it any time that there be fair weathers
sem í öðrum löndum, þá skaltu þat víst vita, at þar eru
as in other lands then shall-you that surely know that there are
fögr sólskin, ok heldr er þat land veðrgott kallat. En þar
fair sunshines and rather is that land weather-good called But there
skiptisk stórum sólargangr, þvíat þegar sem vetr er, þá er
changes greatly sun's-course because as-soon as winter is then is
þar náliga alt ein nótt, en þegar er sumar er, þá er náliga
there nearly all one night but as-soon as summer is then is nearly

sem alt sé einn dagr; ok meðan er sól gengr hæst, þá
as-if all be one day and while that (the)-sun goes highest then
hefir hon œrit afl til skins ok bjartleiks, en lítit afl til
has she ample strength for shine and brightness but little strength for
yljar ok hita; en hefir hon þó svá mikit afl, at þar sem
warmth and heat but has she yet so great strength that there where
jörðin er þíð, þá vermir hon svá landit, at jörðin gefr
the-earth is thawed then warms she so the-land that the-earth gives
af sér góð grös ok vel ilmandi, ok má fólkit fyrir því vel
from itself good grasses and well fragrant and may the-folk for that well
byggva landit, þar sem þat er þítt, en þat er afar lítit.
inhabit the-land there where it is thawed but that is exceedingly little
En sá hlutr er þú hefir opt eptir spurt, hvat vera mun þat
But that thing which you have often after asked what be will that
er Grœnlendingar kalla norðrljós, þá em ek eigi um þann
which Greenlanders call northern-lights then am I not about that
hlut fróðastr, ok hefi ek þá menn funnit iðuliga, er langar
thing most-learned and have I those men found frequently who long
stundir hafa á Grœnalandi verit, ok þykkjask þeir þar eigi
whiles have in Greenland been and think-themselves they there not
sannfróðir um vera, hvat þat er. En þó er svá um þann hlut
truly-informed about to-be what that is But yet is so about that thing
sem um flesta aðra, þá sem menn vitu eigi til sanns, at
as about most others those which men know not for truth that
vitrir menn fœra í ætlan ok í getur, ok geta slíks um,
wise men bring into opinion and into guesses and guess such about
sem þeim þykki þá vera vænligast ok sannligast. En þessi
as to-them seems then to-be likeliest and truest But this
verðr náttúra ok skipan á norðrljósi, at þat er æ þess
becomes nature and order on (the)-northern-light that it is ever the
ljósara, er sjálf er nótt myrkvari, ok sýnisk þat jafnan
lighter which itself is (the)-night darker and shows-itself it always

um nætr, en aldrigi um daga, ok optast í niðmyrkrum,
at nights but never at days and most-often in pitch-darkness
en sjaldan í tunglskini; en þat er svá tilsýnum, sem maðr
but seldom in moonshine but it is so to-sight as-if a-man
sjái mikinn loga langa leið af miklum eldi. Þar skýtr af
saw great flame long way from great fire There shoot from
í lopt upp at sjá hvössum oddum, misjöfnum at hæð ok
into air up to see sharp points unequal in height and
mjök úkyrrum, ok verða ýmisir hærri, ok bragðar þetta ljós
very unquiet and become various higher and flickers this light
alt tilsýnum svá sem svipandi logi. En meðan þessir geislar
all to-sight so as flickering flame But while these rays
eru hæstir ok bjartastir, þá stendr þar svá mikit ljós af,
are highest and brightest then stands there so great light from-it
at þeir menn er úti verða staddir, þá megu þeir vel
that those men who outside become placed then can they well
fara leiðar sinnar, svá ok at veiðiskap, ef þeir þurfu; svá ok
go way their so also at hunting if they need so and
ef menn sitja í húsum sínum, þeim er skjáir eru á, þá
if men sit in houses their those which windows are on then
er svá ljóst inni, at hverr maðr kennir annan, sá sem
is so light inside that each man recognizes another that-one who
inni er staddr; en svá er þetta ljós brigðiligt, at þat þykkir
inside is placed but so is this light changeable that it seems
stundum vera dökkvara, svá sem þar gjósi upp svartr reykr
at-times to-be darker so as-if there gushed up black smoke
á millum eða þjukkr mjörkvi, ok er þá því líkast at
on between or thick mist and is then to-that likest that
ljósit kvefisk þá í þeim reyk, sem þat sé búit at slokna;
the-light is-smothered then in that smoke as-if it be ready to go-out
ok sem þat kvóf tekr at þynna, þá tekr þat ljós annat
and when that smothering begins to thin then begins that light a-second

sinni at birtask, ok þat kann at verða stundum at mönnum
time to brighten and that can to happen at-times that to-men
sýnisk svá, sem þar skjóti af stórum gneistum, svá sem af
it-seems so as-if there shot from great sparks so as from
sindranda járni því er nýtekit verðr or afli. En þá er
glowing iron that which newly-taken becomes out-of (the)-forge But then when
nóttin líðr ok dagr nálgask, þá tekr þetta ljós at lægjask,
the-night passes and day approaches then begins this light to lower
ok er þá sem hverfi alt í þann tíma er dagr birtisk.
and is then as-if vanished all at that time when day brightens
En þeir menn, er í ætlan eða í umræðu hafa slíka hluti
But those men who into opinion or into discussion have such things
fœrt, þá eru þeir þrír hlutir er menn hafa í getur fœrt,
brought then are those three things which men have into guesses brought
at einnhverr mundi vera af þeim. Menn segja sumir, at eldr
that one would be of them Men say some that fire
kringi umhverfis höfin ok öll vötn þau sem hit ytra renna
encircles around the-seas and all waters those which the outer run
um böll jarðarinnar. En með því at Grœnaland liggr á
about (the)-ball of-the-earth But with that that Greenland lies on
hinni yztu síðu heimsins til norðrs, þá kalla þeir þat
the outermost side of-the-world to (the)-north then call they that
mega vera, at þat ljós skíni af þeim eldi, er umhverfis
may be that that light shine from that fire which around
er kringðr hin yztu höfin. Þetta hafa ok sumir í rœður
is encircled the outermost the-seas This have also some into talks
fœrt, at í þann tíma er rás sólarinnar verðr undir
brought that at that time when (the)-course of-the-sun becomes under
belli jarðarinnar um nóttina, at nökkurir skimar megi
(the)-ball of-the-earth through the-night that some glimmers may
af hennar geislum bera upp á himininn, með því at
from her rays bear up onto the-heaven with that that

þeir kalla Grœnaland svá utarliga liggja at á þessi heimsins
they call Greenland so far-out lie that on this world's
síðu, at brekkuhvelit jarðarinnar má þar minka, þat er
side that the-slope-wheel of-the-earth may there lessen that which
fyrir berr skin sólarinnar. En þeir eru sumir er þetta
before bears (the)-shine of-the-sun But they are some who this
ætla, ok þat þykki ok eigi úlíkast vera, at ísarnir ok frostit
think and that seems also not unlikeliest to-be that the-ice and the-frost
dragi svá mikit afl undir sik, at af þeim geisli
draw so great strength under themselves that from them shine-forth
þessi skimi. Eigi veit ek þá hluti fleiri, er í getur sé
this glimmer Not know I those things more which into guesses be
fœrt um þetta mál, en þessa þrjá hluti, er nú rœddum
brought about this matter than these three things which now talked
vér um, ok engan dœmum vér sannan af þeim, en þessi
we about and none judge we true of them but this
þykki mér eigi úlíkastr, er síðast rœddum vér um. Eigi
seems to-me not unlikeliest which last talked we about Not
veit ek ok fleiri þá hluti á Grœnalandi, er mér þykkja
know I also more those things in Greenland which to-me seem
áminninga verðir í umrœðu, en þessa er nú höfum vér
of-mention worthy in discussion than these which now have we
um talat ok hér eru ritaðir eptir ætlan hoskra manna.
about talked and here are written according-to (the)-opinion of-sensible men

XX · SMOKE IN THE NORTHERN LIGHTS

The son asks whence the smoke that dims the northern lights, and how a frozen land can be called fair-weathered. The father answers that the earth and sea keep warmth in their depths, which rises through rifts and holes as mist. Greenland's storms are fierce but short and far apart, and the glacier drives its cold blasts away from itself onto its neighbors, keeping its own head bare.

SON Þeir hlutir eru hér allir um rœddir, er mér þykki
Those things are here all about talked which to-me seem
undarligir vera, ok þó mikill fróðleikr, at maðr má fara út
wondrous to-be and yet great learning that a-man may go out
or heiminum ok sjá sjálfr þau endimerki, er guð hefir
from the-world and see himself those end-marks which God has
skipat með svá miklum torfœrum, sem nú hafi þér frá sagt,
ordained with so great obstacles as now have you from told
en enn þykki mér lítit vanspurt um þetta sama mál, eptir
but still seems to-me little under-asked about this same matter according-to
því sem þér gátut í hinu fyrra orði. Þér sögðut svá at
that which you mentioned in the former word You said so in
þessum þrem gátum, at yðr þótti þat líkast vera, at þetta
these three guesses that to-you seemed that likeliest to-be that this
ljós mundi skína af frosti ok jöklum, en í fyrra orði
light would shine from frost and glaciers but in (the)-former word
létut þér þat fylgja, þá er þér sögðut, hversu þetta ljós var
let you that follow then when you said how this light was
tilsýnum, at þar skaut upp endr ok sinnum þoku ok mjörkva
to-sight that there shot up now and then fog and mist
líkum svörtum reyk í því ljósi, ok þykkir mér þat undarligt
like black smoke in that light and seems to-me that wondrous
vera, ef kuldinn er þar svá algangsa, at af hánum stendr
to-be if the-cold is there so all-prevailing that from it stands

þetta ljós, líkt eldligum geislum, hvaðan reykr sá kemr er
this light like fiery rays whence smoke that comes which
stundum þykkir skýja ok skyggva fyrir ljósit, svá at þat
at-times seems to-cloud and overshadow before the-light so that it
þykkir náliga kvafna við; þvíat mér þykkir þat líkt, at
seems nearly to-be-smothered with-it because to-me seems that likely that
heldr verðr reykrinn af ylinum en af frostinu. Þá er enn
rather becomes the-smoke from the-warmth than from the-frost Then is still
sá annarr hlutr, er mér þykkir ok undarligr vera, er þér
that other thing which to-me seems also wondrous to-be which you
gátut enn fyrr í yðarri rœðu, at þér töldut heldr Grœnaland
mentioned still before in your talk that you reckoned rather Greenland
vera veðrgott, enda er þat þó fult af jöklum ok frosti; þá
to-be weather-good moreover is it yet full of glaciers and frost then
má ek þat varla skilt fá, hversu þat land má veðrgott vera.
can I that hardly understood get how that land may weather-good be
FATHER Þat er þú spurðir um reyk þann, er stundum sýnisk
That which you asked about smoke that which at-times seems
fylgja norðrljósi, ok lézt þat fylgja, at þér þótti þat líkt,
to-follow (the)-northern-light and let that follow that to-you seemed that likely
at reykrinn kœmi heldr af yl en kulda, þá sanna ek þat
that the-smoke came rather from warmth than cold then affirm I that
með þér. En þú mátt þat vita, at hvarvetna þar sem jörðin er
with you But you may that know that everywhere there where the-earth is
þíð undir jöklinum, þá varðveitir hon æ nökkurn verma í
thawed under the-glacier then keeps she ever some warmth in
undirdjúpum sínum; svá ok hafit undir ísunum, þá varðveitir
under-deeps her so also the-sea under the-ice then keeps
þat ok nökkurn yl í djúpum sínum. En ef jörðin væri
it also some warmth in deeps its But if the-earth were
án allan verma eða yl, þá væri hon öll í einum þela
without all warmth or heat then were she all in one frozen-ground

frá ofanverðu ok niðr til hinna neztu grundvalla; svá ok höfin,
from (the)-top and down to the lowest foundations so also the-seas
ef þau hefði engan hlut verma í sér, þá væri þat alt einn
if they had no part of-warmth in themselves then were it all one
jökull frá ofanverðu ok til grunns. Verða munu ok hvárttveggja
glacier from (the)-top and to bottom Be will also both
stórar rifur á þeim jöklum er á landinu liggja, eða svá ok
great rifts in those glaciers which on the-land lie or so also
vakir á þeim ísum er í hafinu liggja. En hvarvetna þar
holes in that ice which in the-sea lies But everywhere there
sem jörð verðr ber, sú er þíð er, hvárt sem heldr er, at
where earth becomes bare that which thawed is whether that rather is that
hon berask þar sem engi liggr jökull yfir henni, eða berask
she bares-herself there where no lies glacier over her or bares-herself
hon undir gínandi rifum jökulsins, svá ok hafit þar sem þat
she under gaping rifts of-the-glacier so also the-sea there where it
berask undir sundrslitnum vökum íssins, þá gefr hvárttveggja
bares-itself under broken-asunder holes of-the-ice then gives both
þaðan ropa af undirdjúpum sínum, ok kann vera at þat
thence belch from under-deeps their and can be that that
dupt samnisk saman, ok sýnisk þat líkt reyki eða mjörkva,
dust gathers-itself together and shows-itself it like smoke or mist
ok taki sú þoka fyrir at draga norðrljósit þeim sinnum,
and take that fog before to draw the-northern-light those times
er því þykki líkt vera sem þat kvœfi reykr eða mjörkvi.
when therefore seems like to-be as-if it smothered smoke or mist
En þar er þú rœddir um veðrleik landsins, at þér þótti
But there where you talked about (the)-weather of-the-land that to-you seemed
þat undarligt, hví þat land var veðrgott kallat, þá vil ek þat
that wondrous why that land was weather-good called then will I that
segja þér, hversu því landi er farit. Þeim sinnum er þar
tell you how with-that land is fared Those times when there

kann illviðri at verða, þá verðr þat þar með meiri ákefð en
can ill-weather to happen then happens it there with greater fierceness than
í flestum stöðum öðrum, hvárttveggja um hvassleik veðra
in most places other both in sharpness of-weathers
ok um ákefð frosts ok snjóa. En optast halda þar illviðri
and in fierceness of-frost and snows But most-often hold there ill-weathers
litla hríð, ok er langt í millum at þau koma, ok er þá
little while and is long in between that they come and is then
góð veðrátta millum þess, þóat landit sé kalt, ok verðr því
good weather between of-that though the-land be cold and becomes that
náttúra jökulsins at hann verpr af sér jafnan köldum
(the)-nature of-the-glacier that he throws from himself always cold
gust, þeim sem elum hrindr brott af hans andliti, ok heldr
gust that which storms drives away from his face and holds
hann optast beru höfði yfir sér. En jafnan gjalda hans
he most-often bare head over himself But always pay for-him
þó nálægir grannar, þvíat öll önnur lönd, þau er í nánd
yet near neighbors because all other lands those which in nearness
hánum liggja, þá taka mikil illviðri af hánum, ok koma
to-him lie then take great ill-weathers from him and come
þau öll þá á, er hann hrindr af sjálfum sér með köldum
they all then on which he drives from self himself with cold
blæstri. Nú ef þér skilsk þetta, þá þykki mér eigi fleiri
blast Now if to-you is-understood this then seems to-me not more
svör hér til koma, en nú hefir þú heyrt hér af þessu.
answers here to come than now have you heard here of this

The son asks why lands are hotter the farther south one goes, and why the south wind is mild, if both poles are cold. The father answers that no traveler has gone as far south of the burning zone as Greenland lies north of it. The south wind is warm because it blows through the burning ring. The sun's broad course gives one side of the world summer while the other has winter, and day and night follow it around the earth. Few seafarers, he says, have asked more.

SON Þessir hlutir skiljask mér allir vel, ok þykki mér víst
These things are-understood to-me all well and seems to-me surely
sannligt, at svá muni vera; en þó eru enn þeir hlutir, er
true-like that so will be but yet are still those things which
þér gátut litlu fyrr í yðarri rœðu, er ek vil enn með yðru
you mentioned little before in your talk which I will still with your
leyfi til forvitnask. Þér sögðut svá, at báðar síður heimsins
leave to be-curious-about You said so that both sides of-the-world
væri kaldar, jafnvel hinn syðri sem hinn nörðri; en ek heyri
were cold equally the southern as the northern but I hear
þat alla menn segja, þá sem sunnan af löndum koma, at
that all men say those who from-the-south from lands come that
þau sé æ þess heitari, er maðr ferr sunnar; svá ok allir þeir
they be ever the hotter as a-man goes farther-south so also all those
vindar er or suðrættum koma, þá eru þeir bæði blautari
winds which out-of southern-quarters come then are they both softer
ok hlærri en aðrir vindar. Svá gera þeir vindar ok iðuliga um
and milder than other winds So make those winds also frequently in
vetrum góðan þey, þóat aðrir vindar sé svá kaldir, at frost
winters good thaw though other winds be so cold that frost
standi af ok ísa leggi. En þá er varmt er sumar, þá er
stand from-them and ice lay But then when warm is summer then is
þó æ jafnan sunnanvindr hlærri en aðrir vindar. Nú ef yðr
yet ever always (the)-south-wind milder than other winds Now if to-you

leiðisk eigi spurning mín ok þœtta ek eigi ofmargs spyrja, þá
is-wearisome not question my and seemed I not too-much to-ask then
vilda ek enn biðja yðr, at þér veittit svör þessarri spurning.
would-wish I still ask you that you gave answers to-this question
FATHER Þá er ek sagða yðr, at á himnum váru skipaðir þrír
Then when I told you that in heavens were ordained three
vegir torfœriligir, einn brennandi en tveir kaldir, þá gat
ways impassable one burning but two cold then mentioned
ek þess, at hinn heiti vegr beygisk or austri ok í
I that that the hot way bends out-of (the)-east and into
vestr. En ef ek hefi þat sagt með réttri skipan, þá ætla ek
(the)-west But if I have that said with right order then think I
víst, at jafnköld sé at því í syðri síðunni sem í nörðri;
surely that equally-cold be in that on southern the-side as on-the northern
en þó ætla ek öll þau lönd, er liggja nær hinum heita
but yet think I all those lands which lie near the hot
veginum, hvárt sem þau liggja fyrir sunnan hann eða norðan,
the-way whether that they lie to-the south of-it or north
þá ætla ek öll þau heit vera, en hin ætla ek köld vera
then think I all them hot to-be but the-others think I cold to-be
löndin, er fjarri liggja á hvárritveggja síðunni. En þar er
the-lands which far lie on either the-side But there where
þú gazt þess, at allir menn segja löndin æ því heitari,
you mentioned that that all men say the-lands ever the hotter
er sunnar ferr, þá ætla ek þat því valda, at þú munt
as farther-south one-goes then think I that it to-cause that you will
engan þann funnit hafa, er jafnlangt hafi suðr á lönd
none that-one found have who equally-far have south into lands
farit frá þeim heita veginum, sem þessi lönd liggja norðr
gone from that hot the-way as these lands lie north
ífrá, er nú höfum vér um rœtt. En þar sem þú rœddir
from which now have we about talked But there where you talked

um þat, at vindarnir þeir sem or suðrættum koma eru
about that that the-winds those which out-of southern-quarters come are
varmari en aðrir, þá er þat líkt at hann verði varmr til vár
warmer than others then is that likely that it become warm to us
at koma, þóat hann blési af sunnanverðri frosinni heimsins
to come though it blew from (the)-southern frozen world's
síðu, þvíat hann blæss gegnum boginn hring brennanda
side because it blows through (the)-bent ring of-burning
vegar, ok kemr hann því varmr norðr ígegnum hann, þóat
way and comes it therefore warm north through it though
hann blási kaldan sunnan til. Ok ef menn byggi jafnnær
it blow cold from-the-south to And if men dwelt equally-near
hinum kalda veginum á syðri síðu, sem Grœnlendingar
the cold the-way on (the)-southern side as Greenlanders
búa á hinni nörðri, þá ætla ek víst, at jafnvarmr kœmi
dwell on the northern then think I surely that equally-warm came
norðanvindr til þeirra sem sunnanvindr til vár; þvíat svá
(the)-north-wind to them as (the)-south-wind to us because so
eigu þeir norðr at líta til miðs dags ok allrar sólar rásar,
have they north to look toward mid day and all sun's course
sem vér eigum suðr at líta, er fyrir norðan búum sólina.
as we have south to look who to-the north dwell of-the-sun
Þat sem fyrr höfum vit um rœtt, at um vetrum er
That which before have we-two about talked that in winters is
hér sólargangr lítill, en svá mikil gnótt um sumarit, at
here sun's-course little but so great abundance through the-summer that
náliga er alt sem einn dagr sé, nú skaltu á því marka, at
nearly is all as-if one day be now shall-you on that mark that
vegr sólarinnar er einkum breiðr, ok er eigi rás hennar
(the)-way of-the-sun is especially broad and is not course her
svá mjó eða bein, sem hon renni jafnan á einum streng.
so narrow or straight as-if she run always on one string

En þegar hon tekr hinar yztu renslur á skáðum veg til
But when she takes the outermost runs on slanted way to
suðrs, þá hafa þeir sumar ok nógan sólargang, er búa á
(the)-south then have they summer and enough sun's-course who dwell on
yztum síðum heimsins til suðrs, en vér höfum þá vetr ok
outermost sides of-the-world to (the)-south but we have then winter and
eklu sólargangs. En þegar sem sól tekr hina yztu renslu
lack of-sun's-course But as-soon as (the)-sun takes the outermost run
til norðrs, þá höfum vér yfrinn sólargang, en þeir hafa þá
to (the)-north then have we ample sun's-course but they have then
kaldan vetr; ok ferr svá jafnan, at hon stígr þá upp til
cold winter and goes so always that she climbs then up to
norðrs, er hon stígr niðr til suðrs, en þar hon stígr niðr
(the)-north when she climbs down to (the)-south but where she climbs down
til norðrs, þá tekr hon at vaxa til hinnar syðri síðu.
to (the)-north then begins she to grow toward the southern side
Þat skaltu ok vita, at svá ferr dœgraskipti sem sólargangr;
That shall-you also know that so goes day-division as sun's-course
þvíat sumum stöðum er þá miðr dagr, er sumum stöðum
because in-some places is then mid day when in-some places
er mið nótt; en sumum stöðum rennr þá dagr upp ok lýsir,
is mid night but in-some places runs then day up and lights
er sumum stöðum tekr at rökkva ok nátta; þvíat jafnan
when in-some places begins to darken and grow-night because always
fylgir dagr sólinni ok ljós, en skugginn flýr sólina ok sœkir
follows day the-sun and light but the-shadow flees the-sun and seeks
þó eptir henni æ sem hon líðr undan, ok er þar jafnan
yet after her ever as she glides away and is there always
nóttin sem skugginn er, en þar jafnan dagr sem ljósit er.
the-night where the-shadow is but there always day where the-light is
En nú ef þessir hlutir skiljask þér allir vel, er vit
But now if these things are-understood to-you all well which we-two

höfum nú um rœtt þessar stundir, hvárttveggja um dœgrafar
have now about talked these whiles both about day-divisions
eða sólargang, eða allir aðrir þeir hlutir er vit höfum
or sun's-course or all other those things which we-two have
þar um rœtt, þá máttu vera fyrir því fullgóðr farmaðr,
there about talked then may-you be for that fully-good seafarer
at fáir munu um slika hluti fleira spurt hafa en þú.
that few will about such things more asked have than you

XXII · WHEN TO SAIL

The son asks when to sail and when the seas grow stormy. The father says small seas may be crossed almost any time with care, but long and dangerous ones not after the beginning of October. Then the eight winds fall out: the east wind mourns its lost crown, and each in turn grows angry, until all rage together. Days shorten, the sea rises, harbors fail, and men and cargoes are lost, so a wise man spends the winter enjoying what he won in summer.

SON Víst þœtti mér nú fróðleikr í vera, ef ek mætta
Surely would-seem to-me now learning in-it to-be if I might
alla hluti þá muna, er þér hafit mér nú kunniga gerva.
all things those remember which you have to-me now known made
Svá þykkjumk ek nú þat finna í yðarri rœðu, at yðr
So seem-to-myself I now that find in your talk that to-you
þykkir yfrit margra hluta ek hafa spurt í þessarri rœðu.
seems too many of-things I to-have asked in this talk
En ef yðr leiðisk eigi spurning mín, þá er sú enn
But if to-you is-wearisome not question my then is that still
ein lítil spurning, er ek vilda til forvitnask með yðru
one little question which I would-wish to be-curious-about with your
leyfi, ok mér þykkir horfa til farmanna iðróttar.
leave and to-me seems to-look toward seafarers' skill

Þér gátut þess mjök löngu í yðarri rœðu, at þat byrjaði
You mentioned that very long-ago in your talk that it befitted
þeim mönnum er farmenn vilja vera, at vera árbúnir um
those men who seafarers will be to be early-ready in
várum, ok sjá við því at vera um haustum lengi í hafi, en
springs and look against that to be in autumns long at sea but
á tíma kváðut þér eigi, nær yðr þœtti fyrst til hættanda
on time said you not when to-you seemed first to to-be-ventured
vera um várum at fara yfir höf landa á millum, eða svá
to-be in springs to go over seas of-lands on between or so
ok, nær yðr þœtti síðast til hættanda yfir höf at fara um
also when to-you seemed last to to-be-ventured over seas to go in
haustum. Þess gátut þér, með hverjum atburð höfin tóku at
autumns That mentioned you by what event the-seas began to
lægja storma sína, en um þat rœddut þér ekki, með hverjum
lay storms their but about that talked you not in what
hætti þau taka at úkyrrask; ok vil ek enn gjarnsamliga
manner they begin to grow-unquiet and will I still eagerly
biðja, at yðr leiðisk eigi at leysa þessa spurning fyrir
ask that to-you be-wearisome not to solve this question before
mér, þvíat mér virðisk, at berask mætti svá at, at þœtti
me because to-me it-seems that happen might so that that would-seem
eitthvert sinn nauðsynligt at vita, ok þó fróðligt at kunna.
some time necessary to know and yet instructive to know
FATHER Þeir hlutir er þar rœðir þú nú um, þá er varla sem
Those things which there talk you now about then is hardly as
með einum hætti, þvíat höf eru eigi öll jöfn, höf eru eigi öll
in one manner because seas are not all equal seas are not all
jafnstór. Smá höf eru skipuð með litlum torfœrum, ok megu
equally-great Small seas are ordered with little obstacles and may
menn til hætta flesta alla tíma yfir þau at fara; þvíat þar
men to-it venture nearly all times over them to go because there

er fyrir litlu at sjá, eins dœgrs byr eða tveggja, þeim
is for little to look-to one day's fair-wind or two's for-those
mönnum er veðrkœnir eru. Þvíat þau eru mörg lönd, er gott
men who weather-wise are Because they are many lands which good
er til hafna í, þegar er menn koma til lands. En hvervetna
is for harbors in as-soon as men come to land But everywhere
þar sem svá er tilvaxit, at menn megu bíða byrjar í góðri
there where so is grown-to that men may await fair-wind in good
höfn, eða elligar sé góðra hafna fyrir ván, þegar maðr kemr
harbor or else be good harbors for expectation when a-man comes
fram, enda hafit svá lítit, at eigi þarf lengri forsjá fyrir at
forth moreover the-sea so little that not needs-one longer foresight for to
hafa en eins dags ferð eða tveggja, þá má yfir slík höf
have than of-one day's journey or of-two then may-one over such seas
hætta næsta í hvern tíma er sýnisk. En þeim er leið
venture nearly at any time which seems-good But those to-whom way
er skipuð með torfœrum meirum, annathvárt með löngu hafi
is ordered with obstacles greater either with long sea
rastafullu, eða elligar sé þeirra landa ván fyrir stafni, er
full-of-currents or else be of-those lands expectation before (the)-prow which
háskasamligar hafnir eru í, annathvárt fyrir skerja sakar eða
dangerous harbors are in either for skerries' sake or
boða eða grunna eða stórra sanda, þá er hvervetna þar sem
breakers or shallows or great sands then is everywhere there where
svá er tilvaxit, at mikla forsjá þarf fyrir at hafa, ok eigi
so is grown-to that great foresight needs-one for to have and not
má þar síðarliga til hætta at fara yfir slík höf landa meðal.
may-one there late to-it venture to go over such seas of-lands between
En þar er þú leitaðir eptir tíma, þá þykki mér þat
But there where you asked after time then seems to-me that
sannligast, at varla sé síðar til hættanda yfir höf at fara en
truest that hardly be later to to-be-ventured over seas to go than

í þann tíma, er inngengr öndverðr October; þvíat þá
at that time when enters (the)-beginning-of October because then
þegar taka höf mjök at úkyrrask, ok vex þeirra stormr jafnan
at-once begin seas much to grow-unquiet and grows their storm always
síðan því meir, er síðar er á hausti ok nærmeir sœkir
afterward the more as later is in autumn and nearer seeks
vetri. En í þann tíma er inngengr septima decima kal.
to-winter But at that time when enters seventh tenth kalends
Novembris, þá tekr austanvindr at úgleðjask ok þykkisk vera
of-November then begins (the)-east-wind to grow-gloomy and thinks-himself to-be
aftignaðr eptir brauttekinn höfuðbúnað gulligrar kórónu. Því
dishonored after taken-away head-attire of-golden crown That
næst setr hann á höfuð sér skýþaktan hött, andvarpar af
next sets he on head his cloud-covered hood sighs from
þjósti miklum svá sem syrgjandi eptir nýfenginn skaða. En þá
anger great so as mourning after newly-gotten loss But then
er landsynningr lítr úfagnað granna síns, þá hryggisk
when (the)-south-east-wind sees (the)-unhappiness of-neighbor his then grieves
hann með tvefaldri sorg. Sú er hans önnur sorg, at hann
he with twofold sorrow That is his one sorrow that he
hræðisk slíkt rán sem austanvindr hefir fengit; en önnur er
fears such robbery as (the)-east-wind has gotten but (the)-other is
sú, at hann hryggisk af harmi góðs granna síns ok ágæts,
that that he grieves from (the)-grief of-good neighbor his and excellent
hann œsisk af harmi reiðs hugar ok yglir brúnum undir
he rages from grief of-angry mind and frowns with-brows under
fólgnum skrúfi, ok blæss þjóstsamliga hreytandi slefu. En þá
hidden adornment and blows angrily spattering slaver But then
er sunnanvindr lítr reiði násettra granna, þá skrýðisk
when (the)-south-wind sees (the)-anger of-near-placed neighbors then adorns-himself
hann með skýjaðri loðkápu, ok hirðir svá fyrir þeim sinn
he with clouded shaggy-cloak and keeps so before them his

auð ok ylsamligar féhirzlur, ok blæss harðliga svá sem með
wealth and warmth-bringing treasuries and blows hard so as with
óttasamligri vörn. En þá er útsynningr verðr varr, at
fearsome defense But then when (the)-south-west-wind becomes aware that
vinátta kólnar eptir rofnar sættir, þá klökkr hann af harmi
friendship cools after broken reconciliations then weeps he from grief
hugar með stórum regnelum, yglir augu yfir tárdöggu
of-mind with great rain-storms frowns-with eyes over tear-dewy
skeggi, belgir hvápta undir þykkskýjuðum hjálmi, blæss af
beard puffs jaws under thick-clouded helmet blows from
œði með köldum regnskúrum, leiðir fram harla þykkvar
fury with cold rain-showers leads forth very thick
bylgjur ok brjóstmiklar bárur með skipgjörnum áföllum, ok
billows and broad-breasted waves with ship-greedy breakers and
býðr öllum hafstormum at œsask með kappsamligri reiði.
bids all sea-storms to rage with zealous anger
En þá er vestanvindr sér þat, at hánum kemr af austri
But then when (the)-west-wind sees that that to-him comes from (the)-east
hryggligr blástr ok harmsamlig andvörp, þar sem hann var
grievous blast and sorrowful sighs there where he was
áðr vanr þaðan við at taka skínandi geislum með hátíðligum
before wont thence to to take shining rays with festive
vingjöfum, þá skilr hann þat görla, at sættir eru
friend-gifts then understands he that clearly that reconciliations are
sundrslitnar ok uppsagt allri friðargerð, ok hryggisk hann
broken-asunder and renounced all peace-making and grieves he
með mikilli kvíðu sakar úfriðar, ok ferr hann í svartan
with great anxiety for-sake-of strife and goes he into black
úgleðikyrtil, ok dregr þar yfir sik gráskýjaða kápu, ok kastar
gloom-kirtle and draws there over himself gray-clouded cloak and casts
ákafliga öndu með harmsamligri kvíðu, sitr með snerkjanda
fiercely breath with sorrowful anxiety sits with wrinkling

nefi ok frottandi vörrum. En þá er bráðlyndr útnyrðingr
nose and snorting lips But then when hot-tempered (the)-north-west-wind
sér þenna hryggleik granna sinna ok lítr skaða sjálfs síns
sees this grief of-neighbors his and looks-at (the)-loss of-self his
um kveldligar fegrðir, þær er hann var vanr áðr at hafa,
about evening beauties those which he was wont before to have
þá sýnir hann skjótt lunderni með stríðri reiði, yglir heldr
then shows he quickly temper with violent anger frowns rather
hvassliga brýnn, hreytir harðliga með skrapanda hagli, ok
sharply with-brows spatters hard with scraping hail and
leiðir fram glumrandi reiðiþrumur með ógurligum eldingum,
leads forth rumbling wrath-thunders with terrible lightnings
ok sýnir af sinni hendi ógurliga reiði án allrar vægðar.
and shows on his hand terrible anger without all mercy
En þá er norðanvindr saknar þeirrar blíðu, er hann
But then when (the)-north-wind misses that gentleness which he
fékk af sunnanvindi, ok mildligra vingjafa, þá leitar hann
got from (the)-south-wind and mild friend-gifts then seeks he
at sínum fjárhirzlum ok hrósar þá þeim auð, er hann
to his treasuries and boasts then of-that wealth which he
hefir gnógastan til, ok leiðir fram dökkvan skima með
has most-plentiful at-hand and leads forth dark glimmer with
glæanda frosti, setr á höfuð sér ískaldan hjálm yfir jökluðu
glittering frost sets on head his ice-cold helmet over glaciered
skeggi, blæss stríðliga at haglsfullum skýfjöllum. En kaldr
beard blows violently at hail-full cloud-mountains But cold
landnyrðingr sitr reiðuliga með snjódrifnu skeggi ok gustar
(the)-north-east-wind sits angrily with snow-drifted beard and gusts
kaldliga vindþrotnum nösum, eitlar augum undir hrímfrosnum
coldly with-wind-swollen nostrils glares with-eyes under rime-frozen

brúnum, snerkir kinnr undir kaldskýjuðu enni, hvetr hvápta
brows wrinkles cheeks under cold-clouded forehead whets jaws
með ískaldri tungu, blæss af þjósti með smogligu rennidrifi.
with ice-cold tongue blows from anger with piercing driving-snow
En at sundrslitnum friði millum þessarra átta höfðingja
But at broken-asunder peace between these eight chieftains
ok alœstum vindum með stormsamligri ákefð, þá görir
and all-raging winds with stormy fierceness then (it)-makes
mönnum úfœrt yfir höf at fara landa á millum með
to-men impassable over seas to go of-lands on between with
mörgum torfœrum: dagr skemmisk, en nótt myrkvisk, haf
many obstacles day shortens and night darkens sea
úkyrrisk, bárur styrkjask, en ádrykkir kólna, regn stœrisk,
grows-unquiet waves strengthen and spray cools rain grows-greater
en stormr kveikisk, boðar vaxa, en strandir synja góðra hafna,
and storm is-kindled breakers grow and shores refuse good harbors
menn dæsask, en skipfarmi kasta(r), ok týnisk iðuliga mikill
men tire and ship-cargo throw(s) and perishes frequently great
mannafjöldi sakar ofmikillar tilhættni; sálur eru lagðar undir
multitude-of-men for-sake-of too-great venturing souls are laid under
háskasamliga dóma fyrir vangæzlu sakar ok skjótligs dauða.
dangerous judgments for carelessness' sake and sudden death
Nú er fyrir því öllum vitrum mönnum viðrsjánda, at
Now is for that by-all wise men to-be-guarded-against to
verða síðarliga í höfum staddir, þvíat við mörgum háskum
become late in seas placed because against many dangers
er at sjá ok eigi við einum, ef maðr hættir of mjök
is to look and not against one if a-man ventures too much
undir slíka tíma. Nú er fyrir því þat betr tilætlat at fara
under such times Now is for that that better intended to go
meðan bezt er sumars, at þat er ván verr ef illa hlýðir,
while best is of-summer that it is expectation worse if ill it-goes

meðan vel er fyrir séð ok vitrliga; en þat er víst betr en
while well is before seen and wisely but that is surely better than
ván er at, ef þat ferr vel, er heimskliga er til ráðit
expectation is that if it goes well which foolishly is to-it counseled
eða ætlat fyrir öndverðu, þóat þat hlýði stundum. Þat kalla
or intended at (the)-beginning though it avail at-times That call
ek vitrligra til ætlat, at maðr siti, meðan svá mikilla háska
I wiser to intended that a-man sit while so great dangers
er ván, ok neyti með góðu hófi ok róligri hvíld um
is expectation and enjoy with good measure and quiet rest through
vetrinn þess, sem hann aflar með starfi um sumarit, heldr
the-winter that which he gets with toil through the-summer rather
en hann egni til þess með sínu sjálfræði, at hann týni allri
than he incite to that with his self-will that he lose all
þeirri aflan á lítilli hríð, er hann starfaði til um sumarit.
that getting in little while which he toiled for through the-summer
En allra mest er fyrir sjálfum sér at sjá, þvíat hann aflar
But of-all most is for self himself to look because he gets
aldrigi síðan, ef svá illa berr til, at hann fylgir tjóni sjálfr.
never afterward if so ill bears to-it that he follows loss himself

XXIII · SPRING SAILING

The son asks how early in spring the seas may be crossed. The father answers that most seas may be ventured from early April, when the days lengthen, the north wind sweeps the sky clear, and the winds make peace again. He has now told the son the times for sailing and resting and the order of the heavens, and bids him fix it all in mind.

SON Nú er þetta vel ráðit, at ek jók mína spurning í
Now is this well counseled that I increased my question in
næstu rœðu, þvíat ek hefi bæði fengit af yðr síðan fróðlig
(the)-next talk because I have both gotten from you since instructive
svör ok þó nytsamlig öllum þeim, er vit hafa til at skilja
answers and yet useful to-all those who wit have to-it to understand
ok sér í nyt fœra þessa hluti, er nú hafit þér um
and for-themselves into use bring these things which now have you about
rœtt. Fyrir því vil ek biðja yðr enn, at þér talit með nökkurum
talked For that will I ask you still that you speak with some
orðum um þat, hversu snemma um várit yðr þykki
words about that how early in the-spring to-you seems
tilhættanda vera í höf at fara landa á millum með ákveðnum
to-be-ventured to-be into seas to go of-lands on between with appointed
tíma, eptir því sem ek beiddumk í hinni fyrri spurningu.
time according-to that which I asked in the former question
FATHER Flestöll höf fyrir utan hin stœrstu höf, er mönnum
Nearly-all seas before outside the greatest seas are to-men
vel tilhættanda yfir at fara í þann tíma, er öndverðr
well to-be-ventured over to go at that time when (the)-beginning-of
Aprilis gengr inn; þvíat í þann tíma er inngengr septima
April goes in because at that time when enters seventh
decima kal. Aprilis, þá tognar dagr, sól vex, en nótt
tenth kalends of-April then stretches day (the)-sun grows and night
skemmisk, norðanvindr fægir vægiliga andlit himins með
shortens (the)-north-wind cleanses gently (the)-face of-heaven with
svalri ok léttri veðrblöku, ok sópar brott alla illviðris bakka
cool and light weather-fan and sweeps away all ill-weather's banks
ruglanda skýs, ok beiðisk nýrrar sættargerðar með blíðri
of-confusing cloud and asks-for new reconciliation with gentle
eptirleitan, ok setjask þá á nýja leik grið allra vinda á
seeking and are-set then at new play truces of-all winds on

millum, þvíat þá girnask þeir allir at taka hvíld eptir móðliga
between because then desire they all to take rest after weary
reiði ok erfiðligan blástr, ok samtengisk þá annat sinni ný
anger and toilsome blowing and is-joined then a-second time new
sætt þeirra á meðal, eptir því sem fyrr var sagt, þá
reconciliation of-them on among according-to that which before was told then
er um þeirra sættargerð var rætt; létta regnskúrir, bárur
when about their reconciliation was talked cease rain-showers waves
lægjask, áföll minka, ok dvinar allr þroti þjótanda
lie-down breakers lessen and dwindles all (the)-swelling of-(the)-roaring
hafs, ok létta allir stormar, kemr ró eptir hvíldarlaust rót.
sea and cease all storms comes calm after restless tumult
Nú hefi ek gört sem þú beiddisk ok sýnt þér hvárntveggja
Now have I done as you asked and shown you both
tíma með ákvæðum, bæði um haustum ok um várum, nær
times with appointments both in autumns and in springs when
mér sýndisk ráðuligast at fara yfir hafs háska. Svá hefi ek
to-me seemed most-advisable to go over (the)-sea's danger So have I
ok þá tíma þér kunna görva, er mér þykkja heldr til hvílda
also those times to-you known made which to-me seem rather for rests
fallnir en fara. Markat hefi ek ok með nökkurum orðum
fitted than going Marked have I also with some words
fyrir þér birting lopts eða þau endimerki, er skipuð eru í
before you (the)-lighting of-air or those end-marks which ordained are in
himnum, hvárttveggja þau er torfœrilig eru, ok svá hin
heavens both those which impassable are and so the-others
er fœr eru. Ok ef þú mant alla hluti þessa inniliga, er
which passable are And if you remember all things these closely which
nú hefi ek rœdda fyrir þér, þá muntu eigi taldr vera með
now have I talked before you then will-you not counted be among
úfróðum farmönnum, ef þú vilt þessarrar iðróttar freista. Nú
unlearned seafarers if you will this skill try Now

er ráð at festa hluti alla vel í hug þér fyrst, er nú
is counsel to fasten things all well in mind your first which now
hefir þú heyrða, en síðan er kostr at spyrja fleira ef sýnisk.
have you heard but afterward is choice to ask more if it-seems

XXIV · TURNING TO THE KING'S COURT

At their next meeting the son, having pondered the talk on merchants, asks leave to put new questions, and the father grants it. Since he may one day wish to go to the king, the son asks to learn at home the customs of the court. The father answers that the court is the source of all good manners, but its manners vary with service, and the best-mannered are fewest: which does the son mean?

SON A hinum næsta fundi, er ek var á tali við yðr, herra!
At the next meeting when I was in talk with you lord
Þá heyrða ek af yðrum munni spakliga rœðu ok nytsamliga,
Then heard I from your mouth wise talk and useful
hverjum er nema vill, til þeirrar iðróttar sem sú rœða var
to-each who learn will in that skill which that talk was
um gör, ok hefi ek síðan þá rœðu hugleidda, ok vænti ek,
about made and have I since that talk pondered and expect I
at ek muna mjök hugfest hafa til minnis flesta alla þá
that I will much mind-fastened have for memory nearly all those
hluti, er þar var umtalat, hverja gæfu sem ek ber til fram
things which there was talked-about whatever luck which I bear to-it forward
á leið at fylgja; en ek munda þó þess þurfa, sem hverr
on way to follow but I would yet of-that need as each
annarra, at fylgja vel öllu því, er maðr verðr góðs áskynja;
of-others to follow well all that which a-man becomes of-good aware
eru ok vænni þeir til er hugleiða en hinir er gleyma. En
are also more-likely they to-it who ponder than the-others who forget But

hverja gæfu ok auðnu sem ek ber til at fylgja, þá fýsir mik
whatever luck and fortune which I bear to-it to follow then desires me
þó at nema, meðan þess er kostr. Nú með því at þeir hlutir
yet to learn while of-that is choice Now with that that those things
eru enn í hug mér, er mik fýsir at spyrja, þá vil ek fyrri
are still in mind my which me desires to ask then will I first
leyfis biðja til rœðu, en ek byrja þá hluti, er mik forvitnar,
leave ask for talk than I begin those things which me make-curious
en síðan vænta andsvara, er ek hefi mína rœðu flutta.
but afterward expect answers when I have my talk delivered

FATHER Þat er næst rœddum vit um kaupmanna líf eða
That which last talked we-two about merchants' life or
atferðir, þá ætla ek, at vit mintumk þeirra hluta flestra, er
conduct then think I that we-two mentioned of-those things most which
þar var mest nauðsyn um at rœða, ok þess vænti ek, at sá
there was most need about to talk and that expect I that that
maðr mun eigi illa heitinn í atferð sinni, er þat varðveitir vel
man will not ill reputed in conduct his who that keeps well
í alla staði, er þá var rœtt. En ef þik forvitnar ok fýsir enn
in all places which then was talked But if you are-curious and desire still
nökkut framar þar um at spyrja, þá vil ek blíðliga svara, ef ek
somewhat further there about to ask then will I gently answer if I
kann; ok þóat þú vilir byrja aðra rœðu, þá vil ek gjarna svara,
can and though you will begin other talk then will I gladly answer
ef ek hefi fróðleik til, ok skaltu í leyfi spyrja slíks, er þik fýsir,
if I have learning to-it and shall-you in leave ask such as you desire
en slíkt verði til andsvara af minni hendi, sem guð gefr efni til.
but such become for answers on my hand as God gives matter to-it

SON Þá rœðu er næst heyrða ek yðr segja um kaupmanna
That talk which last heard I you tell about merchants'
iðrótt, þá var hon með glöggvara fróðleik framflutt í svörum
skill then was it with clearer learning brought-forward in answers

en í spurning, ok vil ek nú láta þá rœðu hvílask. Nú með
than in question and will I now let that talk rest Now with
því at ek ætla þeirrar iðróttar at freista með yðru leyfi, þá
that that I intend that skill to try with your leave then
kann þat at vera, at mjök langt verði millum okkarra funda;
can that to be that very long become between our meetings
en ef ek em yðr fjarri, þá er engi ván, at ek eiga kost
but if I am from-you far then is no expectation that I have choice
yðars ráðs at leita, þóat ek vilda, ef hugr girnisk nökkurs
of-your counsel to seek though I would-wish if (the)-mind desires some
annars ráðs ok iðróttar en vera kaupmaðr. En þóat vit
other counsel and skill than to-be merchant But though we-two
finnimk heilir at guðs vilja, þá sýnisk mér þó vel ráðit,
meet-each-other whole by God's will then seems to-me yet well counseled
at ek spyrja þeirra hluta, er forvitni mín beiðisk, meðan ek
that I ask of-those things which curiosity my asks while I
á vísan kost til orlausnar. En fyrir því er allra skyldast at
have certain choice for answer But for that is of-all most-binding to
nema úkunna hluti, meðan er þess er kostr, at eigi er víst,
learn unknown things while that of-it is choice that not is certain
hvárt þá er kostr at spyrja, er víst þœtti nauðsyn at
whether then is choice to ask when certainly would-seem need to
forvitnask. Nú ef svá kann at berask, at mér verðr kunnigr
be-curious Now if so can to happen that to-me becomes known
kaupmanna siðr eða úkunnra landa heimanför, ok fýsir mik
merchants' custom or of-unknown lands' journeying and desires me
til konungs at fara ok sjá þar meira ágæti í siðum en í
to (the)-king to go and see there greater excellence in customs than in
kaupförum sá ek, þá vilda ek gjarna heima nema af yðr
trading-voyages saw I then would-wish I gladly at-home learn from you
þá siðu, sem í konungs föruneyti væri nytsamligastir at
those customs which in king's company were most-useful to

kunna, þóat eigi sé víst, at ek þurfa þar til at taka. Nú ef
know though not be certain that I need there to to take Now if
yðr sýnisk eigi slík forvitni þarflausa, þá vilda ek at þér
to-you seems not such curiosity needless then would-wish I that you
gerðit mik fróðan af þeim siðum, er nu hefi ek um rætt.
made me learned of those customs which now have I about talked
FATHER Eigi má þat þarflausu kalla, at forvitnask þá
Not may-one that needless call to be-curious-about those
siðu, er með konungi eru ok hafa þarf, fyrir því at
customs which with (the)-king are and have needs-one for that that
þar er upphaf allra góðra siða ok kurteisi, ef eptir
there is (the)-beginning of-all good customs and courtesy if according-to
því ferr sem skyldi, ok fornt er upphaf til. En þó er varla
that it-goes as should and old is beginning to-it But yet is hardly
sem einfaldr sé siðr með konungi, þvíat þar eru margfaldar
as-if simple be custom with (the)-king because there are manifold
þjónostur ok embætti, ok eru þeir flestir allir í minni
services and offices and are they nearly all in less
siðargæzlu, er minni eru í þjónostu. Ok þeir er ágætir eru
custom-keeping who less are in service And those who excellent are
í þjónostu, þá skilr þá enn mikit um siðu eða atferðir,
in service then parts them still much in customs or conduct
ok er því verr, at optast verða þeir færri, er varðveita hina
and is the worse that most-often become they fewer who keep the
beztu siðu, heldr en hinir er meðalsiðarmenn eru eða
best customs rather than the-others who middling-mannered-men are or
varla svá. Nú veit ek eigi hvárra siðu er þik forvitnar, þeirra
hardly so Now know I not of-which customs that you are-curious of-those
er beztir siðarmenn eru eða hinna er fleiri verða saman.
who best mannered-men are or of-the-others who more become together

The son asks about the ranks of service at court and the manners proper to them, since many men come back from court no more courteous than those who never went. The father warns against those who, like an ignorant pilgrim or a dull schoolboy, learn only folly and think themselves wise. All the king's sworn men are house-carls; the lowest serve in his yard, without wages and without a place at his table.

SON Þat mundi mér vel gegna, ok hverjum þeim er
That would to-me well serve and to-each that-one who
forvitnask vill úkunna hluti, hvárt sem þat er um siðarnám
be-curious-about will unknown things whether that it is about custom-learning
eða annan fróðleik, at hverr nemi þat er bezt væri ok
or other learning that each learn that which best were and
nytsamligast, þvíat þeir eru færri meistararnir, er þat kunni
most-useful because they are fewer the-masters who that can
at kenna, ok alt er þat ok tornæmara, en hitt er fánýtt er
to teach and all is that also harder-to-learn than that which worthless is
eða með öllu engu nýtt. Nú með því at ek heyri þat, at á
or with all nothing useful Now with that that I hear that that in
hvárutveggja mun grein vera, á þjónostu manna ok svá á
either will distinction be in service of-men and so in
siðum í hirð konungs, þá vil ek nú þess biðja, at þér
customs in (the)-court of-(the)-king then will I now of-that ask that you
gerit mér kunna alla þá skipan, er þar er, ok skýrit fyrir
make to-me known all that order which there is and explain before
mér hver grein á þjónostu er, eða hvat hverri þjónostu
me what distinction in service is or what to-each service
fylgir; svá ok um siðu, hverir þeir eru, er yðr sýnask
belongs so also about customs which they are which to-you seem
góðir ok víst nauðsynligir at nema þeim, er konungi vill
good and surely necessary to learn for-him who (the)-king will

með sœmd þjóna, eða svá ok hverir víst eru viðrsjándi
with honor serve or so also which surely are to-be-guarded-against
ok hafnandi, ef maðr vill siðarsamr vera. Ok leita ek því
and to-be-shunned if a-man will well-mannered be And seek I for-that
svá vandliga eptir þessarri rœðu, at ek hefi sét marga þá
so carefully after this talk that I have seen many those
menn koma or konungs föruneyti, er ek hefi görla at
men come out-of king's company that I have fully at
hugt þeirra siðum, ok hafa mér sýnzk þeir flestir allir því
considered their customs and have to-me seemed they nearly all that
nær kurteisir, eða varla svá, sem hinir, er aldri kómu til
near courteous or hardly so as the-others who never came to
hirðar. Nú veit ek eigi, hvárt er heldr er, at ek kann enga
court Now know I not whether that rather is that I can no
skyn á hvat kurteisi er, eða er svá sem mér hefir sýnzk.
discernment in what courtesy is or is-it so as to-me has seemed
FATHER Ef þér verðr þess auðit at koma til hirðar, þá þarftu
If to-you becomes of-that granted to come to court then need-you
þat at varask, er þá hendir, er siðlausir koma til hirðar
that to beware which those befalls when unmannered come to court
ok hœveskulausir koma frá hirð, ef þú vilt bæði heita
and courtesy-less come from court if you will both be-called
siðgóðr ok hœveskr. En með því at þú hefir eptir leitat,
well-mannered and courteous But with that that you have after sought
hver grein á er þjónostum eða siðum í konungs hirð,
what distinction in is services or customs in king's court
þá skal þat nú skýra fyrir þér, ok svá hvat þeim veldr,
then shall that now explain before you and so what for-them causes
er úhœveskir koma þaðan ok illa siðaðir. Því er líkt, ef
who uncourteous come thence and ill mannered That is like if
skynlauss maðr ferr til hirðar, sem úfróðr maðr fari til
an-undiscerning man goes to court as-if an-unlearned man go to

Jórsala eða skilningarlauss komi í skóla góðan. Ef úfróðr
Jerusalem or understanding-less come into school good If an-unlearned
maðr ferr til Jórsala, þá trúir hann sjálfr, at hann sé fróðr,
man goes to Jerusalem then believes he himself that he be learned
ok segir ífrá sinni ferð, ok þat flest, er fróðum manni
and tells from his journey and that most which to-(a)-learned man
þykki enskis vert nema gabbs ok háðs. Svá gerir ok hinn
seems of-nothing worth except of-mockery and scorn So does also the
skilningarlausi, ef hann kemr frá skóla, þá hyggsk hann
understanding-less if he comes from school then thinks-himself he
þegar vera góðr klerkr, at verðr feginn ok görir af mikit
at-once to-be good clerk that becomes glad and makes of-it great
spott, ef hann finnr þann, er ekki kann með öllu; en ef
mockery if he finds that-one who not knows with all but if
hann finnr nökkurn þann, er klerkr er, þá veit hann sjálfr
he finds some that-one who clerk is then knows he himself
ekki. Svá verðr ok ef úsnotrir menn koma til konungs
nothing So becomes-it also if unwise men come to king's
hirðar, þá sœkja þeir þegar sína maka, ok nema þat af
court then seek they at-once their mates and learn that from
þeim, er þeim er auðnæmast, ok hann var áðr orðinn mest
them which to-them is easiest-to-learn and he was before become most
áskynja, en þat er ekki nema skammsýni ok heimska. En ef
aware but that is nothing except short-sightedness and folly But if
hann kemr frá hirð, þá verðr hann slíka kurteisi ok siðu
he comes from court then must he such courtesy and customs
at sýna öðrum, sem hann nam þar. En þó göra þat margir,
to show to-others as he learned there But yet do that many
þeir er af úkunnum stöðum koma, hvárt sem heldr eru
those who from unknown places come whether that rather are-they
af öðrum löndum eða hirðum, ok finna þeir þá, er áðr
from other lands or courts and find they those who before

hafa heima fyrir verit, at bera mörg tíðendi, ok hyggjask
have at-home before been to bear many tidings and think-themselves
þegar vera sannfróðir bæði um siðu ok tíðendi, er þeir
at-once to-be truly-learned both about customs and tidings when they
sjá úkunnar þjóðir eða önnur lönd, ok allra mest hendir
see unknown peoples or other lands and of-all most befalls
þat skammsýna menn. Nú varask þú, at eigi hendi þik slík
that short-sighted men Now beware you that not befall you such
úfræði, ef þú vilt vera vel siðaðr. En þar er þú leitaðir
ignorance if you will be well mannered But there where you asked
eptir, hver grein er væri á þjónostum manna í konungs
after what distinction that were in services of-men in king's
hirð, þá er þat skýranda, ok svá hvat hverri þjónostu fylgir.
court then is that to-be-explained and so what to-each service belongs
Allir þeir menn er handgengnir eru konungi, þá eru húskarlar;
All those men who in-service are to-(the)-king then are house-carls
en siðan greinisk tign ok vald með þeim, svá sem þeir kunnu
but afterward divides-itself rank and power among them so as they know
til at þjóna, ok konungr vill hverjum gefit hafa. Nú eru þeir
to-it to serve and (the)-king will to-each given have Now are those
einir húskarlar, er innan hirðar eru jafnan með konungi, ok
certain house-carls who within court are always with (the)-king and
eru þó eigi málamenn, ok eigi skulu þeir þar eta eða drekka,
are yet not wage-men and not shall they there eat or drink
sem hirð konungs matask. Þeir skulu ok þjóna í konungs
where (the)-court of-(the)-king takes-food They shall also serve in king's
garði alt þat er ræðismaðr krefr þá til, hvárt sem hann
yard all that which (the)-steward demands them for whether that he
krefr þá til ferða eða til annars verknaðar í konungs garði.
demands them for journeys or for other work in king's yard

The son asks what such men gain. The father answers that poor men of good kin find support and justice under the king that they cannot win at home, that men in trouble seek his protection, that for one of them slain the king takes forty marks, as for a thane, and a mark of gold more as a house-carl, and that the king often raises poor men high for bravery and loyalty, while the rich gain less.

SON Þess vil ek biðja yðr, herra! at eigi virði þér þetta mér
Of-that will I ask you lord that not reckon you this to-me
til bráðskeytis eða þess, at ek vilja stöðva rœðu yðra, þóat
for rashness or that that I would stop talk your though
ek spyrja með nökkurum orðum um þessarra manna þjónostu.
I ask with some words about these men's service
FATHER Meðan vit erum í þessarri rœðu, spyr slíks sem þér
While we-two are in this talk ask such as to-you
sýnisk, heldr en þik iðri eptir, ok gangir þú fyrir því úvíss
seems-good rather than you repent after and go you for that ignorant
þess, er þik forvitnar, at vanspurt sé af þinni hendi.
of-that which you are-curious-about that under-asked be from your hand
SON Með því at þessir menn, er nú hafi þér um rœtt, lifa með
With that that these men whom now have you about talked live with
starfi ok verknaði í konungs garði, ok lifa þar hœveskulausir,
toil and work in king's yard and live there courtesy-less
svá sem í heraði, hvern snúð sjá þeir sinn í því, at vera
so as in district what advantage see they their in that to be
heldr með konungi en vinna fyrir frændum sínum eða feðrum
rather with (the)-king than work for kinsmen their or fathers
í heraði, eða fara kaupförum ok afla sér svá heldr fjár.
in district or go on-trading-voyages and get for-themselves so rather wealth

FATHER Þar eru mörg tilgöng, at slíkir menn eru með
There are many reasons that such men are with
konungi heldr en í heruðum eða kaupförum. Þeir eru
(the)-king rather than in districts or trading-voyages They are
sumir, er fyrir því vilja heldr vera með konungi en í
some who for that will rather be with (the)-king than in
heruðum, þóat þeir vinni þar slík verk eða meiri, at þeir
districts though they work there such works or greater that they
eru svá fátœkir at fé, at eigi er kaupfarar kostr fyrir
are so poor in wealth that not is of-trading-voyage choice for
fátœktar sakar, ok eigu þeir þó margar góðar kynkvíslir; en
poverty's sake and have they yet many good kindreds but
ef þeir vinna í heruðum, þá eru þar margir fémeiri, er eigi
if they work in districts then are there many wealthier who not
eru meiri at kyni eða varla svá. En ef þeir eigu nökkuru at
are greater in kin or hardly so But if they have anything to
skipta, þá taka hinir auðgu traust af fé sínu, ok bægja
deal then take the rich support from wealth their and thrust-aside
þeim er félausir eru, svá at þeir megu eigi réttu ná í
those who wealthless are so that they may not right get in
þeirra viðrskiptum, ok þykki þeim betra at vinna í trausti
their dealings and seems to-them better to work in support
með konungi en traustlausir í heraði. En sumum ganga til
with (the)-king than supportless in district But to-some go to
vígaferði eða önnur vandræði, ok þurfu þeir fyrir vandræða
manslaying or other troubles and need they for troubles'
sakar leita sér trausts af konungs afli. Þeir eru ok
sake to-seek for-themselves support from king's might They are also
sumir, at þat þykkir skemtan at vera jafnan í fjölda, ok þó
some that that seems entertainment to be always in multitude and yet
jafnan mikit traust, hvat sem til handa kann at berask. Ok
always great support whatever that to hand can to happen And

ef þeir koma í herað, þar sem þeir þóttu áðr traustlausir
if they come into district there where they seemed before supportless
vera, þá þykkja þeir síðan vera hvers manns jafnmakar fyrir
to-be then seem they afterward to-be each man's equals for
trausts sakar, er þeir verða konungs menn; ok ef þeir verða
support's sake when they become king's men and if they become
drepnir í einvígum, þá tekr konungr 40 marka í þegngildi
killed in single-combats then takes (the)-king 40 marks in thane-payment
fyrir þá sem fyrir aðra þegna sína, ok mörk gulls umfram í
for them as for other thanes his and mark of-gold beyond in
húskarls gjöld, ef einnhverr verðr drepinn af hans húskörlum.
house-carl's payment if any becomes killed of his house-carls
Vit þú ok þat, at margir koma þeir til hirðar or heraði,
Know you also that that many come those to court out-of district
er þar þykki mönnum lítil tilkœmd at vera; en þat verðr
whom there seems to-men little worth-coming to be but that happens
þó iðuliga, at þeir fá mikil metorð af konungi sakar
yet frequently that they get great esteem from (the)-king for-sake-of
þjónostu sinnar, ef þeir kunnu til at gæta, er heima
service their if they know to-it to heed who at-home
váru lítils virðir í heraði. En þeir sem mikils þóttu verðir
were little valued in district But those who great seemed worthy
heima með kotkörlum, bæði fyrir fjár sakar ok frænda ok
at-home among cottagers both for wealth's sake and kinsmen's and
fóstbrœðra, þá verða þeir opt eigi meira virðir í hirðum
foster-brothers' then become they often not more valued in courts
með konungi en heima í heraði, eða stundum varla svá; ok
with (the)-king than at-home in district or at-times hardly so and
fá þeir opt minni metorð með konungi, er féríkir koma til
get they often less esteem with (the)-king who wealthy come to
hans, en hinir er fátœkir koma. En þeir er með litlum
him than the-others who poor come But those who with little

fjárhlut koma til konungs eða með öllu engan, ok eigu ekki
wealth come to (the)-king or with all none and have not
annars kost, en hafa slíkt sem konungr vill þá miskunnat
of-other choice than have such as (the)-king will them shown-mercy
hafa, þá hefr hann svá hátt bæði at ríki ok fjárhlutum, at
have then raises he so high both in power and wealth that
þeir eru yfir frændum sínum, þar sem þeir þóttu áðr eigi
they are over kinsmen their there where they seemed before not
vera jafnmakar frænda sinna, en þeir kœmi til konungs; ok
to-be equals of-kinsmen their than they came to (the)-king and
veldr því annattveggja hvatleikr þeirra í orrostum ok góðir
causes that either boldness their in battles and good
siðir í hirð, eða eru hánum tryggvir um alla hluti, ok
customs in court or are to-him faithful in all things and
rœkja vizku ok ástsemd við hann, ok hjálpar hann þeim
cherish wisdom and love toward him and helps he them
viðr ok hefr hátt, er hann sér, at við hann vilja sanna
on and raises high when he sees that toward him (they)-will true
ástsemd hafa ok með sannri vináttu vilja hánum þjóna. Nú
love have and with true friendship will him serve Now
valda slíkir hlutir því, at konungr hefr opt ok iðuliga þá
cause such things that that (the)-king raises often and frequently those
hátt af sinni miskunn, er fátœkir eru, ok hætta fyrir því
high from his mercy who poor are and venture for that
margir á at fara til konungs, at þess vænta allir, at þeir
many on-it to go to (the)-king that that expect all that they
muni þaðan sœmd ok mikil metorð fá ok sœmiliga uppreist.
will thence honor and great esteem get and honorable raising-up

The father describes more ranks. The guests, on half a retainer's wage, spy out the king's enemies throughout the realm, kill them, and keep their goods but the gold. House-carls who seldom come to court, whether farmers, merchants, or laymen, join the king's officers when called. Others hold grants of twelve ounces to three marks or more and live as men of rank in the districts, serving at sea, on embassies, and in trade. Many who spend years at court never learn its manners.

SON Nú þykkjumk ek hafa fengit gnóg svör ok sönn, svá
Now seem-to-myself I to-have gotten enough answers and true so
at mér þykkir úkynligt, at þessir menn, er nú hafit
that to-me seems unstrange that these men whom now have
þér um rætt, vili heldr vera konungsmenn en í heruðum,
you about talked will rather be king's-men than in districts
þóat þar verði með jafnþungu starfi eða þyngra en með
though there be with equally-heavy toil or heavier than among
bóndum. Ok vil ek nú þess biðja, at þér sýnit mér enn
farmers And will I now of-that ask that you show me still
fleiri þær þjónostur, er með konungi eru, svá at mér
more those services which with (the)-king are so that to-me
sé ekki þat úkunnigt af þeim, ef svá má vera.
be not that unknown of them if so may be
FATHER Þat má vel vera, með því at þik forvitnar slíkra
That may well be with that that you are-curious-about such
hluta, þá skal ek sýna þér þat sem ek veit þar af. Enn
things then shall I show you that which I know there of Still
eru þeir húskarlar konungs innan hirðar með konungi, er
are those house-carls of-(the)-king within court with (the)-king who
auknefni eigu með húskarla nafni, ok heita þeir gestir, ok
by-names have with house-carls' name and are-called they guests and
fá þeir þat nafn af fjölskyldri sýslu, því at þeir gista margra
get they that name from manifold duty because they visit many

manna híbýli, ok þó eigi allra með vináttu; en þessir menn
men's dwellings and yet not all-men's with friendship but these men
eru þo málamenn konungs ok taka hálfan hirðmanna mála.
are yet wage-men of-(the)-king and take half of-retainers' wage
En þessi sýsla fylgir þessarra manna þjónostu, at þeir eru
But this duty belongs to-these men's service that they are
skyldir at halda njósnir um alt ríki konungs, ok verða
bound to keep spyings about all (the)-realm of-(the)-king and become
varir, ef hann á nökkura úvini í ríki sínu; en ef úvinir verða
aware if he has any enemies in realm his but if enemies become
funnir, þá skulu gestir fyrirkoma þeim, ef þeir megu því á
found then shall guests do-away-with them if they can that on
leið koma; ok ef konungr vísar gestum at úvinum sínum, ok
way bring and if (the)-king directs (the)-guests to enemies his and
verða þeir drepnir, er at er vísat, þá eigu gestir fyrir starf
become they killed who to is directed then own (the)-guests for toil
sitt fjárhluti þeirra, þá er þeir flytja þat sinni brott með
their goods their those which they carry that time away with
sér, fyrir utan gull, þat á konungr, ok svá alt þat annat,
themselves before outside gold that owns (the)-king and so all that other
er gestir féngu eigi brott haft með sér. Ok hvar sem
which (the)-guests got not away had with themselves And wherever that
konungr verðr varr við úvini sína, þá er þat skyldarsýsla
(the)-king becomes aware of enemies his then is that duty
gesta at liggja á úvinum konungs, ok hreinsa svá ríki hans.
of-guests to lie on enemies of-(the)-king and cleanse so realm his
En þeim sinnum sem þeir eru innan hirðar staddir með
But those times when they are within court placed with
konungi, þá halda þeir ok allskyns vörðu yfir konungi, sem
(the)-king then hold they also all-kinds watch over (the)-king as
hverr annarra borðfastra manna í konungs garði, fyrir utan
each of-other table-fast men in king's yard before outside

höfuðvörð, hann halda þeir eigi, ok eigi skulu þeir í því húsi
head-watch it hold they not and not shall they in that house
yfir borð stíga til matar eða drykkjar, er konungr sitr eða
over table step for food or drink where (the)-king sits or
hirð, nema um jól ok páskir, þá skulu þeir eta ok drekka
(the)-court except at Yule and Easter then shall they eat and drink
í konungs höll með hirð hans, en eigi þess á millum. En
in king's hall with court his but not of-that on between But
ef einnhverr verðr drepinn af þeima mönnum í einvígi, þá
if any becomes killed of these men in single-combat then
tekr konungr slíkt eptir þessa menn, bæði í þegngildi ok
takes (the)-king such after these men both in thane-payment and
svá í húskarls gjöld, sem eptir hina, er fyrr var frá sagt.
so in house-carl's payment as after the-others which before was from told
Þá eru þeir enn einir húskarlar konungs, er eigi eru
Then are those still certain house-carls of-(the)-king who not are
borðfastir með hánum, ok sjaldan at eins koma til hirðar,
table-fast with him and seldom at only come to court
ok enga hluti þiggja þeir af konungi nema hald ok
and no things receive they from (the)-king except holding and
traust til réttmælis við aðra menn, ok eru þeir þó konungs
support for right-speaking with other men and are they yet king's
menn. Slíkt tekr ok konungr, húskarls gjöld með þegngildi,
men Such takes also (the)-king house-carl's payment with thane-payment
eptir þessa menn, ef þeir verða drepnir, sem eptir þá sína
after these men if they become killed as after those his
húskarla, er borðfastir eru með hánum. En þessir menn
house-carls who table-fast are with him But these men
verða hans menn af allskyns iðróttum, sumir bœndr, en
become his men from all-kinds trades some farmers but
sumir kaupmenn, ok sumir leikmenn. En þessa þjónostu eru
some merchants and some laymen But this service are

þeir skyldir konungi at veita umfram aðra þegna hans, at
they bound to-(the)-king to give beyond other thanes his that
hvarvetna þar sem konungs sýslumenn koma eptir hans
everywhere there where king's officers come according-to his
boði at flytja konungs mál eða sýslu, ok verða þessir
command to carry king's case or duty and become these
húskarlar fyrir staddir, er nú höfum vér um rœtt, þá eru
house-carls before placed whom now have we about talked then are
þeir skyldir til at fylla sýslumanna flokk, ok vinna þeim
they bound to-it to fill officers' troop and give them
slíkt föruneyti sem þeir eru til færir um öll konungs mál, en
such company as they are for able about all king's cases but
þeim á ok heimholt at vera traust af konungs mönnum
to-them ought also at-hand to be support from king's men
til allra réttmæla, þar sem þeir eigu málum at skipta; svá
for all right-speakings there where they have cases to deal so
ok ef þeir verða drepnir, þá eyksk slíku réttr konungs
also if they become killed then is-increased by-such (the)-right of-(the)-king
á þessum mönnum, sem á þeim er fyrr rœddum vér um.
in these men as in those whom before talked we about
Þá eru þeir enn einir húskarlar konungs, er hafa fé af
Then are those still certain house-carls of-(the)-king who have wealth from
konungi í veizlur, sumir tólf aura, en sumir tvær merkr, en
(the)-king in grants some twelve ounces but some two marks but
sumir þrjár merkr ok sumir meira, æ svá sem konungr sér
some three marks and some more ever so as (the)-king sees
afl ok traust af þeim verða. Þessir menn eru ekki borðfastir
strength and support from them to-become These men are not table-fast
innan hirðar með konungi, heldr eru þeir í heruðum svá sem
within court with (the)-king rather are they in districts so as
stjórnarmenn, þvíat þeir eru sumir lendra manna synir, en
governing-men because they are some landed men's sons but

sumir eru svá ríkir bœndr, at þeir þykkja vera lendra manna
some are so rich farmers that they seem to-be landed men's
ígildi. Þessir konungs húskarlar eru slíkt skyldir konungi at
equal These king's house-carls are such bound to-(the)-king to
þjóna, sem þeir er fyrr var um rœtt, ok því meira, at
serve as those who before was about talked and so-much more that
þeir eru til meira færir, ok þeir hafa ok meiri sœmd af
they are for more able and they have also greater honor from
konungi; ok svá nökkuru eyksk réttr konungs af þessum
(the)-king and so somewhat is-increased (the)-right of-(the)-king from these
mönnum, ef þeim verðr misþyrmt, sem fyrr var sagt. Nú allir
men if them becomes mistreated as before was said Now all
þessir konungsmenn, er vér höfum nú um rœtt, ok eigi eru
these king's-men whom we have now about talked and not are
borðfastir með hánum, þá má þó konungr krefja af þeim
table-fast with him then may yet (the)-king demand from them
slíkrar þjónostu, sem hánum sýnisk hverr þessarra vera til
such service as to-him seems each of-these to-be for
fallinn. Þeir verða sumir krafðir til at stýra langskipum í her
fitted They become some demanded to-it to steer longships in army
úti með konungi, en sumir verða görvir í sendifarar landa
out with (the)-king but some become made into embassies of-lands
á millum til útlenzkra konunga eða annarra höfðingja; sumir
on between to foreign kings or other chieftains some
verða ok sendir landa meðal í kaupfarar með fé konungs
become also sent of-lands between on trading-voyages with wealth of-(the)-king
eða með skipum hans. Nú eru þeir skyldir þessarra hluta
or with ships his Now are they bound of-these things
ok svá allra annarra þeirra sem konungs nauðsynjar bera til.
and so of-all others those which king's needs bear to-it

Nú hefi ek sagt þér frá nökkurum svá konungs
Now have I told you of some so king's
þjónostumönnum, ok mátt þú ætla með þér, hverir þér
service-men and may you reckon with yourself which to-you
þykki líkastir af þeim, er nú eru upptaldir, at vita allmikit
seem likeliest of them who now are counted-up to know very-much
af hœvesku eða þeim siðum, er í konungs hirð skyldi vera
of courtesy or those customs which in king's court should be
at réttu, ok eru þó allir þessir konungsmenn, ok máttu af
by right and are yet all these king's-men and may-you from
slíku marka, at eigi má hverr maðr vita þegar alla konungliga
such mark that not may each man know at-once all kingly
siðu eða tign, er hann sér konung eða hans menn, fyrir
customs or dignity when he sees (the)-king or his men for
því at sá maðr skal bæði vera siðnæmr ok þó vitr,
that that that man shall both be quick-to-learn-manners and yet wise
er hann er eina tólf mánaði í konungs hirð, ok væri hann
who he is only twelve months in king's court and were he
hvern dag innan hirðar með konungi, er hann skal þó
each day within court with (the)-king who he shall yet
vera vel siðaðr úhœveskr á tólf mánaða fresti. Nú skaltu
be well mannered uncourteous at twelve months' term Now shall-you
þat vita til sanns, at þeir eru fleiri með konungi, er þar
that know for truth that they are more with (the)-king who there
eru mikinn hlut æfi sinnar, ok eigu kost hvern dag at sjá
are great part of-life their and have choice each day to see
góða siðu, ok verða þó aldri hvárki vel siðaðir né kurteisir.
good customs and become yet never neither well mannered nor courteous

XXVIII · WHY RICH MEN TAKE THE KING'S NAME

The son asks why wealthy men take only the name of house-carl. The father explains that all men in the realm are bound to serve the king when called, farmers, clerks, and bishops alike, so it is better to stand in his full support and friendship and to lead one's fellows in obedience than to be a cottager under another's command. The name of king's house-carl is no shame but an honor.

SON Ef svá er mál með vexti, at nökkurir siðir eru svá
If so is (the)-matter with growth that some customs are so
tornæmir í konungs hirð, at bæði þarf við næmleik ok
hard-to-learn in king's court that both needs-one for-them quickness and
langa athygli, þá er þat víst, at þessir menn, er nú hafi þér
long attention then is that certain that these men whom now have you
um rætt, megu eigi vera mjök vísir af, hvat hœveska er eða
about talked may not be much wise of what courtesy is or
góðir siðir í konungs húsi, þóat þessir sé konungsmenn, með
good customs in king's house though these be king's-men with
því at þeir koma sjaldan at eins í þau konungs herbergi,
that that they come seldom at only into those king's lodgings
er helzt munu vera góðir siðir í hafðir. En þá eru enn
where most will be good customs in-them kept But then are still
þeir hlutir, er mik forvitnar um þessarra manna þjónostu,
those things which me make-curious about these men's service
er nú rœddut þér næstum um: hvat snúð sjá þeir menn
whom now talked you last about what advantage see those men
sér í konungs þjónostu, er bæði eigu yfrit fé ok kyn,
for-themselves in king's service who both have ample wealth and kin
at skylda sik til konungs þjónostu með húskarls nafni einu
to bind themselves to king's service with house-carl's name alone

saman? hví hafa þeir eigi þær nafnbœtr at heita hirðmenn
together why have they not those name-betterings to be-called retainers
eða elligar véla heima um sína kosti sem aðrir bœndr göra?
or else manage at-home about their means as other farmers do
FATHER Þessa þykki mér eigi fróðligast spurt vera af þinni
Of-this seems to-me not most-learnedly asked to-be from your
hendi; en þó með því at þú þykkisk eigi yfrit fróðr um
hand but yet with that that you seem-to-yourself not overly learned about
þat vera, þá kalla ek betra spurt en úviss vera, ok þarf
that to-be then call I better asked than ignorant to-be and needs-one
fyrir því at andsvara, at spurt er. En þar ganga margir
for that to answer what asked is But there go many
hlutir til, sem fyrr var sagt, at menn vilja vera konungsmenn
things to-it as before was said that men will be king's-men
heldr en heita kotkarlar at eins at nafni. Nú er þetta
rather than be-called cottagers at only in name Now is this
fyrst til andsvara, at konungrinn á alt ríkit, ok svá alt
first for answer that the-king owns all the-realm and so all
fólkit, er í er ríkinu, ok eru allir þeir menn, er í hans
the-people which in is the-realm and are all those men who in his
ríki eru, skyldir hánum til þjónostu, þegar hans nauðsynjar
realm are bound to-him to service when his needs
krefja; ok á konungr kost at krefja hvern bónda, er
demand and has (the)-king choice to demand each farmer who
hánum sýnisk til vera fallinn, annattveggja í sendifarar til
to-him seems to-it to-be fitted either into embassies to
útlenzkra höfðingja, ef nökkurir eru til færir fyrir mannvils
foreign chieftains if any are to-it able for wit's
sakir; svá ok ef konungr krefr bœndr til skipstjórnar í her
sake so also if (the)-king demands farmers to ship-steering in army
úti með sér, þá verðr hverr at fara, er til verðr nefndr,
out with himself then must each to go who to-it becomes named

þóat hann sé eigi handgenginn at öðru, en þegn hans. Ok
though he be not in-service in other than thane his And
þóat konungr krefi einnhvern klerk eða byskup or ríki
though (the)-king demand some clerk or bishop out-of realm
sínu í sendifarar til annarra konunga eða páva, ef svá vill
his into embassies to other kings or pope if so wills
hann, þá verðr sá at fara, er kvaddr er, nema hann vili
he then must that-one to go who summoned is unless he will
sæta fjándskap af konungi ok vera rekinn or ríki hans.
suffer enmity from (the)-king and be driven out-of realm his
Nú með því at allir menn eru skyldir með konung til
Now with that that all men are bound with (the)-king to
þjónostu, þeir sem í eru ríki hans, hví mun þá eigi
service those who in are realm his why will then not
hverjum vitrum manni þykkja mikill munr undir því vera,
to-each wise man seem great difference under that to-be
at hann sé í fullu konungs trausti ok hans vináttu, hvat
that he be in full king's support and his friendship whatever
sem til handa kann at berask við aðra menn um viðrskipti,
that to hand can to happen with other men about dealings
ok vera yfirmaðr fóstbræðra sinna ok stjórna til hlýðni við
and be over-man of-foster-brothers his and direct to obedience toward
konung sinn, ef þeir vilja eigi áðr hlýðnir vera, heldr en
king their if they will not before obedient be rather than
heita kotkarl ok vera æ undir annars stjórn, ok þá náliga
be-called cottager and be ever under another's direction and then nearly
skyldr sem áðr. Ok skalt þú þat víst vita, at eigi er þat
bound as before And shall you that surely know that not is that
nafn fyrirlitanda, svá sem svívirðingarnafn, at heita húskarlar
name to-be-despised so as disgrace-name to be-called house-carls
konungs, heldr er þat mikit sœmdarnafn hverjum er þat
of-(the)-king rather is that great honor-name to-each who that

nafn fær; þvíat bæði lendirmenn ok hirðmenn, ef þeir letjask
name gets because both landed-men and retainers if they hold-back
at herförum, ok vilja heldr elska bú í heruðum fyrir
from war-journeys and will rather love farms in districts for
nökkurs þungleiks sakir, þá vilja þeir þó eigi missa húskarls
some heaviness' sake then will they yet not lose house-carl's
nafns at heldr fyrir sœmdar sakar ok trausts. Nú með því
name the rather for honor's sake and support's Now with that
at þér þykki nökkurs vanspurt eða vansvarat um þetta
that to-you seems somewhat under-asked or under-answered about this
mál, þá megum vit enn auka þessa rœðu, ef þér sýnisk.
matter then may we-two still increase this talk if to-you it-seems

XXIX · THE RETAINERS

The father turns to the retainers, the hirðmenn. Their name means keepers and guardians: they guard the king's life day and night, eat and drink with him, keep justice and good manners in the realm, and should be chosen for kin, wealth, courage, and courtesy alike. Since envoys carry home tales of every court and kings meet one another with all their great men, a king is judged by his court, and a retainer who shames him may earn a shameful death.

SON Þessa máls er náliga yfrit spurt með eptirleitan, en þat
Of-this matter is nearly overly asked with inquiry but that
er nú svá skýrt fyrir mér með góðum ok gnógum svörum,
is now so explained before me with good and enough answers
at mér sýnisk sem eigi megi maðr missa konungs trausts,
that to-me it-seems as-if not may a-man do-without king's support
ef hann vill með öruggleik um sitt mál búa, með því at
if he will with security about his case arrange with that that
allr er fjöldinn mislyndr ok újafngjarn hverr við annan,
all is the-multitude fickle and unfair each toward other

nema þeir einir eigi, er bæði þiggja af guði mannvit ok
except those alone not who both receive from God wit and
sannsýni, en þat eru einkamenn en eigi alþýða. Nú
justice but those are individual-men but not (the)-common-people Now
með því at enn er nökkut vanrœtt um konungs þjónostu
with that that still is somewhat under-talked about king's service
eða siðu, þá fýsir mik enn framar yðarrar rœða til þess, at
or customs then desires me still further your talk for that that
ek mega eigi vera úfróðr um þá hluti, er mik forvitnar.
I may not be unlearned about those things which me make-curious
FATHER Um þá konungs húskarla er nú at rœða, er helzt verða
About those king's house-carls is now to talk who most become
áskynja, hvat góðir siðir eru í konungs föruneyti, ef þeir
aware what good customs are in king's company if they
vilja hug á leggja; en þeir verða þó hvárirtveggja, ok þeir þó
will mind on lay but they become yet both-sorts and they yet
færri optast, er fleiri skyldu. En þessir konungsmenn, er nú
fewer most-often who more should But these king's-men whom now
skulum vit um rœða, þá hafa þau aukanöfn með húskarla
shall we-two about talk then have those by-names with house-carls'
nafni, at þeir heita hirðmenn. En þat nafn verðr sumum
name that they are-called retainers But that name becomes to-some
rétt gefit, en mörgum er þat aukanafn. En þeir er þat skipuðu
rightly given but to-many is that by-name But those who that ordained
fyrir öndverðu, þá settu þat á góðan grundvöll, fyrir því at
at (the)-beginning then set it on good foundation for that that
hirðmaðr þýðisk svá sem hirzlumaðr ok gæzlu, ok skulu þeir
hirdman means so as keeping-man and of-guarding and shall they
er þetta nafn vilja með réttu eignask, vera réttir hirzlumenn
who this name will with right own be right keeping-men
ok gæzlumenn konungs ok alls konungdómsins. Þeir skulu
and guardians of-(the)-king and of-all the-kingdom They shall

gæta jafngirndar endimarka milli allra manna í ríkinu, þar
guard equity's bounds between all men in the-realm there
sem þeir verða nær staddir málum manna; þeir skulu ok
where they become near placed to-cases of-men they shall also
gæta hœveski ok góðrar atferðar ok allra nýtra siða; þvíat
guard courtesy and good conduct and all useful customs because
þeir eru jafnan næstir konungi um alla hluti, þeir gæta lífs
they are always nearest to-(the)-king in all things they guard (the)-life
konungs ok hans líkams bæði um nætr ok um daga, þeir eru
of-(the)-king and his body both in nights and in days they are
ok jafnan með konungi at áti ok at drykkju, á málstefnum
also always with (the)-king at eating and at drinking at meetings
ok öllum góðum samvistum, svá sem nábornir frændr.
and all good gatherings so as near-born kinsmen
Þessir menn eigu með réttu at heita herrar at nafni af öllum
These men ought with right to be-called lords in name by all
mönnum þeim, er lægri nöfn bera en þeir bera sjálfir; þvíat
men those who lower names bear than they bear themselves because
þeir eru svá sem landstjórnarmenn, ef þeir halda þeim siðum,
they are so as land-governing-men if they keep those customs
sem byrjar nafni þeirra. Þessir eigu at vera valdir af öllum
which befit name their These ought to be chosen of all
mönnum, eigi at eins af kyngöfgum ættum eða fésterkum,
men not at only from kin-noble families or wealth-strong
heldr eigu þeir sjálfir, er til þess nafns verða kosnir, at
rather ought they themselves who to that name become chosen to
vera algörvir at öllum hlutum, hvárttveggja at kyni, fé ok
be all-complete in all things both in kin wealth and
hjartaprýði ok hœveski, ok þó hinir siðsömustu. Þeir eigu
heart-splendor and courtesy and yet the most-mannerly They ought
ok at gæta allskyns ráðvendi umfram aðra menn, svá at
also to guard all-kinds integrity beyond other men so that

þeir kunni á því góða skilning, hverir hlutir elskandi eru
they know on that good understanding which things to-be-loved are
fyrir sœmdar sakar ok góðrar meðferðar, eða hverir hlutir
for honor's sake and good conduct or which things
hatandi eru fyrir úsœmdar sakar eða skemdar, fyrir því at
to-be-hated are for dishonor's sake or shame for that that
hvar sem þeir koma þá líta allra manna augu til þeirra
wherever that they come then look all men's eyes to their
siða ok meðferðar, ok allir hneigja sín eyru til þeirra orða,
customs and conduct and all incline their ears to their words
ok vænta þess allir, sem vera ætti, at þeir munu svá miklu
and expect that all as be ought that they will so much
framar vera en aðrir menn um siðu sína ok meðferðir,
further be than other men in customs their and conducts
sem þeir verða meiri návistarmenn konungs at þjónostu eða
as they become greater near-dwellers of-(the)-king in service or
yfirlæti en aðrir menn. Ok ef þessir menn vilja eignask þau
favor than other men And if these men will own those
nöfn, sem þeim eru gefin með húskarla nöfnum, þá verða
names which to-them are given with house-carls' names then must
þeir at flýja allan þorparaskap ok alla úhœvesku, ok verða
they to flee all churlishness and all uncourtesy and must
þeir frá mörgu at halda sik umfram aðra menn, því
they from much to hold themselves beyond other men that
er skammsýnilig girnd mun beiðask; þvíat margir hlutir
which short-sighted desire will ask because many things
verða hœveskum mönnum til skemdar bæði í orðum ok
become to-courteous men for shame both in words and
í verkum, ef þeir gæta eigi vel tungu sinnar ok meðferðar,
in deeds if they guard not well tongue their and conduct
er þorpurum verðr engi skömm í, þóat hann hafi frammi.
which to-churls becomes no shame in though he have forward

Svá kann ok optliga til at bera, at hœveskir sendimenn af
So can also often to to happen that courteous envoys from
öðrum löndum komi til konungs fundar ok hans hirðar, ok
other lands come to king's meeting and his court's and
hyggja þar því görr at hans þjónostu ok hœveski hans
consider there the more-fully at his service and courtesy his
ok hans hirðar ok öllum siðum í hans hirð, er þeir eru
and his court's and all customs in his court which they are
sjálfir hœveskari. Ok ef þeir koma heim aptr til síns lands,
themselves more-courteous And if they come home back to their land
þá segja þeir slíka siðu ok öll önnur tíðendi, sem þeir sá
then tell they such customs and all other tidings as they saw
eða heyrðu með þeim konungi, er þá váru þeir tilsendir.
or heard with that king whom then were they to-sent
En öll þau tíðendi, er til annarra landa koma ok flytjask
But all those tidings which to other lands come and are-carried
um höfðingja, ok verða þau með sönnu flutt, þá er þat
about chieftains and become they with truth carried then is that
optast, at þau snúask annathvárt til háðs ok gabbs eða til
most-often that they turn either to scorn and mockery or to
sœmdar. Þat kann ok optliga til handa at bera, at konungar
honor That can also often to hand to happen that kings
þurfu sjálfir at finnask, ok tala um skipan ok setning þá,
need themselves to meet and talk about order and settlement that
er vera á landa þeirra á meðal, ok verðr þat jafnan hinna
which be ought of-lands their on among and becomes that always of-the
beztu manna samfundr, þar sem konungar eigu stefnur sínar;
best men gathering there where kings have meetings their
þá koma með þeim til stefnu höfðingjar þeirra, erkibyskupar,
then come with them to meeting chieftains their archbishops
jarlar ok ljóðbyskupar, lendirmenn ok hirðmenn eða riddarar,
earls and diocesan-bishops landed-men and retainers or knights

ok verðr þá vandliga at hugt hœvesku eða siðum allra
and becomes then carefully at considered courtesy or customs of-all
þeirra, er þar koma saman, hinna ríku fyrst, ok því næst
those who there come together of-the mighty first and that next
allra annarra, þvíat þar skygnir hverr um annars athæfi.
of-all others because there peers each about another's conduct
Ok ef funninn verðr einnhverr konunganna úhœveskr, eða
And if found becomes any of-the-kings uncourteous or
einnhverr höfðingja annarra, þá verðr sá þegar fyrir spotti
any of-chieftains other then becomes that-one at-once for mockery
ok háði, ok svá haldinn sem einnhverr þorpari. Ok þóat
and scorn and so held as some churl And though
hirð einshvers konungs verði fundin úhœvesk eða eigi vel
(the)-court of-some king become found uncourteous or not well
siðug, eða allra helzt ef þjónosta hans verðr eigi hœveskliga
mannerly or of-all most if service his becomes not courteously
eða með fögrum siðum framflutt í hans herbergi, þá
or with fair customs carried-forward in his lodging then
verðr dœmdr úhœveskr konungr sjálfr, ok kalla svá allir, ef
becomes judged uncourteous (the)-king himself and say so all if
hann væri hœveskr sjálfr eða vel siðugr, at þá mundu allir
he were courteous himself or well mannerly that then would all
siðask af hánum. En svá kann þó til at bera, at hœveskr
take-manners from him But so can yet to to happen that a-courteous
höfðingi hljóti mikla skömm fyrir úhœvesks manns sakar ok
chieftain get great shame for an-uncourteous man's sake and
úsiðugs, ok væri fyrir því mikit undir, at þeir kynni góða
unmannerly and were for that much under-it that they knew good
skilning á öllu, hvárt vel bæri eða illa, er þess girnask at
understanding in all whether well bore or ill who that desire to
vera nágönglir konungi með fögru nafni ok sœmiligu; þvíat
be near-going to-(the)-king with fair name and honorable because

sá á eigi mikillar sœmdar ván af konungi síðan,
that-one has not of-great honor expectation from (the)-king after
er hann verðr hánum at úsœmd, þar sem margir koma
when he becomes to-him to dishonor there where many come
sœmdarmenn saman, ok hánum þótti mikit undir at halda
honorable-men together and to-him seemed much under-it to keep
sinni sœmd; en þat er í öllum stöðum, þvíat konungr á
his honor but that is in all places because (the)-king ought
hvergi úsœmd at bera; ok hagar þá siðleysa ok úgaumgæfi
nowhere dishonor to bear and suits then unmannerliness and carelessness
eigi vel fyrir manni, at hann láti með svívirðing ok
not well for a-man that he lose with disgrace and
fjándskap sœmiligt nafn sitt, gott yfirlæti ok fagra þjónostu,
enmity honorable name his good favor and fair service
þóat hann haldi lífi sínu eða limum; en verða má hann
though he keep life his or limbs but become may he
konungi sínum svá mjök at úsœmd, at hánum sé heimill
to-king his so much to dishonor that to-him be open
hæðiligr dauði fyrir, ok svá mörgum frændum hans. Nú
shameful death for-it and so to-many kinsmen his Now
eru slíkar greinir bæði á þjónostum ok nöfnum í konungs
are such distinctions both in services and names in king's
hirð, sem nú hefir þú heyrt. En ef þér þykkir nökkut
court as now have you heard But if to-you seems anything
vanspurt þar um, þá máttu nú fleira spyrja, ef þér sýnisk.
under-asked there about then may-you now more ask if to-you it-seems

XXX · HOW TO COME BEFORE THE KING

The son asks how to come before the king. The father bids him first befriend the men who carry suits to the king and choose a time when the king is gentle and nearly done eating. He should come well dressed, in browned hose, a colored kirtle, and short linen, with hair and beard trimmed in the court's fashion, leave his cloak with a servant, and enter bare-headed. He should greet the king, stand clear of the table with hands clasped, and let others speak for him. If granted, he becomes the king's sworn man; if put off, he waits among the best men at his own cost, never at others'.

SON Mér virðisk svá sem nú megi eigi án vera, at þessarri
To-me it-seems so as-if now may not without be that this
rœðu sé meir framhaldit, ok vil ek nú víkja minni rœðu eða
talk be more continued and will I now turn my talk or
spurning til einshvers upphafs þess, er mér verði enn ljósara
question to some beginning of-that which to-me become still clearer
fyrir augum, hversu maðr skal fyrir konungs andlit koma, ef
before eyes how a-man shall before king's face come if
hann vill sér sœmdar leita, eða hversu hann megi sik
he will for-himself honor seek or how he may himself
svá halda síðan, at hann öðlisk þessa hluti alla, er nú
so hold afterward that he obtain these things all which now
hafit ér um rœtt. Nú berr svá til, at mik fýsi þess at fara
have you about talked Now bears so to-it that me desires of-that to go
til konungs, ok vil ek hánum þjóna; með því at faðir minn
to (the)-king and will I him serve with that that father my
ok frændr hafa konungum þjónat fyrir mér, ok hafa aflat
and kinsmen have kings served before me and have gotten
sér sœmdar ok góðs yfirlætis af konungi með þjónostu
for-themselves honor and good favor from (the)-king with service
sinni, þá er líkligt at ek mun slíks girnask sem frændr
their then is likely that I will such desire as kinsmen

mínir höfðusk at fyrir mér. Nú með því at slíks er ván,
my had-themselves at before me Now with that that of-such is expectation
þá vil ek þess yðr biðja, at þér vísit mér nú svá til, hvert
then will I of-that you ask that you show me now so to-it what
upphaf ek skal hafa at mínu máli, þá er ek vil til konungs
beginning I shall have to my case then when I will to king's
fundar leita, svá skilvísliga, sem nú fylgði þér mér sjálfir til
meeting seek as clearly as-if now followed you me yourselves to
fundar við konung. Vísit mér á hvárttveggja um látgœði mitt
meeting with (the)-king Show me on both about bearing my
eða um klæðabúnað eða orðaskipan, ok alt annat athæfi þat,
or about clothing or word-arrangement and all other conduct that
er vel beri fyrir konungs augliti. Nú hefi ek spurt at sinni
which well bears before king's sight Now have I asked at (this)-time
sem mér sýnisk, en þóat eigi sé svá fróðliga spurt sem þurfti,
as to-me it-seems but though not be so learnedly asked as needed
þá verði þér nú göra svá sem fyrri, at ætla hvárttveggja,
then must you now do so as before to reckon both
spurningina af minni hendi en svörin af yðarri hendi.
the-question from my hand but the-answers from your hand
FATHER Ekki er þessa máls svá úfróðliga spurt, at eigi má
Not is of-this matter so unlearnedly asked that not may-one
vel svara, þvíat slíkar spurningar þurfti margir menn, ef þeir
well answer because such questions needed many men if they
vilja sín mál flytja láta við ríkismenn; ok leita færri svá
will their cases bring let before mighty-men and seek fewer so
vandliga eptir sínum málum sem þurfti. Nú vil ek því
carefully after their cases as needed Now will I therefore
lýsa fyrir þér um þessa hluti, er þú hefir spurt, sem mér
explain before you about these things which you have asked as to-me
sýnisk sannligast ok fróðligast. Nú kemr þú þar sem konungr
seems truest and most-instructive Now come you there where (the)-king

er fyrir staddr, með þeim erendum er þú vilt þýðask hann,
is before placed with those errands which you will approach him
þá skaltu spyrjask um vandliga, hverir þeir menn eru með
then shall-you inquire about carefully which those men are with
konungi, er optast eru vanir at flytja mál manna fyrir
(the)-king who most-often are wont to bring cases of-men before
konungi, svá at hánum líki bezt þeirra rœða. En þegar
(the)-king so that to-him please best their talk But as-soon
er þú verðr sannfróðr, hverir þeir eru, þá skaltu þá fyrst
as you become truly-informed which they are then shall-you them first
þýðask ok gera þér at vinum, en því næst sýna þeim þitt
approach and make for-yourself as friends but that next show them your
erendi, ok biðja þá þitt mál fram flytja. En ef þeir taka við
errand and ask them your case forward to-bring But if they take with
þínu máli, þá kunnu þeir bezt tíma ok stundar at leita til
your case then know they best time and hour to seek to
konungs fundar ok viðrœðu, er optast eru á tali við hann.
king's meeting and conversation who most-often are in talk with him
En ef þat verðr um þann tíma, er konungr sitr yfir borðum,
But if that happens at that time when (the)-king sits over tables
at þú skalt þá þíns máls leita, þá haf þú á því góða njósn,
that you shall then your case seek then have you on that good spying
at konungr sé þá í blíðu skapi ok í góðum hug. En ef þú
that (the)-king be then in gentle mood and in good mind But if you
verðr þess varr, at hugr hans sé nökkut úblíðr, eða er hann
become of-that aware that mind his be somewhat ungentle or is he
reiðr um nökkut mál, eða hefir hann nökkur skyldarmál þau
angry about some matter or has he some duty-matters those
at rœða, er þú ætlar eigi þitt mál rœða mega fyrir þá sök,
to talk which you think not your case talk may for that cause
þá lát þú hvílask þann dag þína rœðu, ok leita ef þú megir
then let you rest that day your talk and seek if you may

finna hann í betra tíma annan dag. En ef þú verðr þess varr,
find him in better time another day But if you become of-that aware
at konungr er í blíðu skapi, ok hann hefir engi nauðsynjamál
that (the)-king is in gentle mood and he has no need-matters
um at véla, þau er eigi megir þú flytja þitt erendi fyrir
about to handle those which not may you carry your errand for
þá sök, þá bið þú þó þess at, er hann er náliga mettr.
that cause then wait you yet of-that that when he is nearly sated
En klæðabúnaði þínum skaltu áðr hafa svá háttat, at þú sér
But clothing your shall-you before have so arranged that you be
klæddr öllum góðum gangvera, þeim sem þú hefir vildastan
clad with-all good apparel that which you have choicest
til, ver hosaðr ok skúaðr; eigi skaltu ok kyrtilslauss vera;
of be hosed and shoed not shall-you also kirtle-less be
þvílíka yfirhöfn ok, sem þú hefir vildasta til. Vel þér þau
such over-garment also as you have choicest of Choose you those
klæði jafnan til hosna, er brúnuð sé at lit; þat þykki ok
cloths always for hose which browned be in color that seems also
eigi illa bera, at maðr hafi svart skinn til hosna, en ekki
not ill to-bear that a-man have black skin for hose but not
önnur klæði nema skarlat sé. Kyrtil máttu ok hafa með
other cloths except scarlet be Kirtle may-you also have with
brúnuðum lit, eða með grœnum eða rauðum, ok þó góð
brown color or with green or red and yet good
klæði ok sœmilig. En línklæði þín þá skaltu láta gera af
cloths and seemly But linen-clothes your then shall-you let make of
góðu lérepti ok þó lítil efni í; ger stutta skyrtu þína ok
good linen and yet little material in-it make short shirt your and
öll línklæði létt vel. Ætla jafnan góðum mun styttri skyrtu
all linen-clothes light well Reckon always by-good measure shorter shirt
þína en kyrtil, þvíat engi maðr hœfeskr má sik prúðan
your than kirtle because no man courteous may himself fine

fá gört af hör eða hampi. Skegg þitt ok hár skaltu láta
get made from flax or hemp Beard your and hair shall-you let
virðuliga göra, aðr en þú gengr fyrir konung, eptir þeim
worthily do before than you go before (the)-king according-to those
siðum er þá eru í hirð, er þú leitar til hirðar. En er
customs which then are in court where you seek to court But when
ek var innan hirðar, þá var þat siðr í hirð, at hár var
I was within court then was that custom in court that hair was
skorit styttra en eyrnablöð, ok kembt svá síðan umhverfis,
cut shorter than ear-lobes and combed so afterward around
sem hvert hár vildi bezt falla, ok var síðan skorinn stuttr
as each hair would best fall and was afterward cut short
toppr yfir brúnum. En um skegg var þat siðr þá at
forelock over brows But about beard was that custom then to
göra stutt skegg ok snöggvan kamp, ok var síðan rakat
make short beard and short mustache and was afterward shaved
jaðarskegg á þýðversku; ok er eigi víst, at síðar komi sá
edge-beard in German-fashion and is not certain that later come that
siðr, er fegri sé eða betr sómi í herliði at hafa.
custom which fairer be or better befit in army to have
En nú berr svá at, at þú þykkisk búinn vera til konungs
But now bears so to-it that you seem-to-yourself ready to-be for king's
fundar, hvárttveggja at klæðabúnaði ok öðrum hlutum, ok
meeting both in clothing and other things and
kemr þú í góðan tíma, ok fær þú leyfi til inngöngu af
come you at good time and get you leave for entrance from
durverði, þá verðr þú svá at hátta þarkomu þinni, at þér
(the)-doorward then must you so to arrange coming-there your that you
fylgi nökkurr liðligr þjónostumaðr. En þóat þit fáit baðir
follow some handy service-man But though you-two get both
leyfi til inngöngu, þá láttu hann eigi fylgja þér lengra en
leave for entrance then let-you him not follow you farther than

innan dura, eða innar at stallara stóli hit lengsta, ok lát
inside doors or further-in to (the)-marshal's chair the longest and let
hann gæta skikkju þinnar; en þú gakk skikkjulauss inn fyrir
him keep cloak your but you go cloakless in before
konung, ok haf áðr kembt hár þitt slétt ok strokit skegg
(the)-king and have before combed hair your smooth and stroked beard
þitt vel. Hvárki skaltu hafa hött né húfu né kveif á höfði,
your well Neither shall-you have hood nor cap nor coif on head
heldr skaltu úhuldu hári ok berum höndum fyrir ríkismenn
rather shall-you with-uncovered hair and bare hands before mighty-men
ganga, með blíðu andliti ok hreinsuðum öllum líkama ok
go with gentle face and cleansed all body and
limum; þá menn skaltu ok hafa í göngu með þér, er þitt
limbs those men shall-you also have in going with you who your
mál skulu framflytja. Ven þik at bera höfuð þitt rétt, ok
case shall bring-forward Accustom yourself to bear head your straight and
svá allan líkam þinn þá ven þú vel réttan, þegar þú gengr;
so all body your then accustom you well straight when you go
ven þik gangprúðan vel, ok þó eigi einkar seint at ganga.
accustom yourself proud-of-gait well and yet not very slowly to go
En er þú kemr fyrir konung, þá skaltu hneigja hánum
But when you come before (the)-king then shall-you bow to-him
lítillátliga, ok heilsa hánum með þessum orðum: „Guð gefi
humbly and greet him with these words God give
yðr góðan dag, herra konungr!“ En ef konungr sitr yfir
you good day lord king But if (the)-king sits over
borði, þá er þú kemr fyrir hann, þá láttu þik eigi þat
table then when you come before him then let-you yourself not that
henda, er margan hendir skamvísan, at þú styðisk við
befall which many befalls short-witted that you lean on
konungs borð, enn síðr leggsk þú á sem úsiðug fól göra;
king's table yet less lay you on-it as unmannerly fools do

heldr nem þú staðar svá fjarri borði, at alla þá þjónostu,
rather take you stand so far from-table that all that service
er til konungs borðs byrjar, megi vel flytja at ærnu rúmi
which to king's table belongs may well be-carried at ample room
meðal borðs ok þín. En ef eigi eru borð fyrir konungi, þá
between table and you But if not are tables before (the)-king then
gakk þú svá nærri konungs sæti, at ærit sé rúm til allrar
go you so near king's seat that ample be room for all
þjónostu millum þín ok fótskemla þeirra, er fyrir eru
service between you and footstools those which before are
konungs sæti. Hendr þínar skaltu svá láta liggja, er þú
king's seat Hands your shall-you so let lie when you
stendr nærri konungi, at hin hœgri greip spenni um hinn
stand near (the)-king that the right grasp clasp about the
vinstra úlflið, ok lát síðan hendr þínar í tómi rekjask niðr
left wrist and let afterward hands your in ease stretch down
fyrir þik, sem þeim er hœgast. Því næst skulu þeir menn
before you as to-them is easiest That next shall those men
flytja erendi þitt fyrir konungi, er til þess eru ætlaðir. En
carry errand your before (the)-king who for that are intended But
ef þú berr svá gæfu til, at þat má þegar fremjask eptir
if you bear so luck to-it that it may at-once be-furthered according-to
þínum vilja, þá skaltu ganga til handa konungi, ok því næst
your will then shall-you go to hands for-(the)-king and that next
í löguneyti við hirð hans, eptir þeirri siðvenju sem þeir
into fellowship with court his according-to that custom which they
kenna þér, er þitt mál flytja. En ef konungr heitr þér ok
teach you who your case carry But if (the)-king promises you and
nefnir þér stefnudag, nær þat skal lúkask, þá verðr þar til
names you appointed-day when it shall be-ended then must-one there to
at standa. En ef konungr skýtr því máli á frest, ok mælir
to stand But if (the)-king shoots that case on delay and speaks

svá, sem eigi er minst ván, at „mér er þessi maðr eigi
so as not is least expectation that to-me is this man not
kunnr, hvárki at sýn né siðum, ok kann ek því máli eigi
known neither by sight nor customs and can I that case not
svá bráðliga at andsvara, fyrr en ek sé görr spekt hans
so quickly to answer before than I see more-fully wisdom his
ok aðrar meðferðir", þá er því máli lokit at sinni; en
and other conduct then is that case ended at (this)-time but
þú verðr at leita þíns máls at tómi ef þér sýnisk, ok vita
you must to seek your case at leisure if to-you it-seems and know
ef þú hittir eitthvert sinn í þann tíma, at vild þín megi
if you meet some time at that time that will your may
framganga. En þá hríð er þú vilt til konungs stunda, þá
go-forward But that while which you will to (the)-king attend then
þarftu víst þess við, at þýðask hina beztu menn ok hina
need-you surely of-that with to approach the best men and the
vitrustu, ok verða þeim í nánd optast kendr, er konungi
wisest and become to-them in nearness most-often known who to-(the)-king
eru kærastir, ok tak þó alla neyzlu, þá er þú þarft,
are dearest and take yet all consumption that which you need
af sjálfs þíns kostnaði, meðan þú ert lengst í þeirri raun,
from of-self your expense while you are longest in that trial
nema þér verði nökkuru sinni boðit af konungs hendi til
unless to-you become some time invited from king's hand to
hans borða. Ok láttu þó þik eigi þat henda, sem margan
his tables And let-you yet yourself not that befall which many
úfróðan hendir, at þú girnisk því meira annars kostnaðar,
unlearned befalls that you desire the more of-another's expense
sem þú sér, at þér verðr optar til boðit, at eigi beri svá
as you see that to-you becomes oftener to-it invited that not bear so
til, at ráðvandir menn virði þér til sinku ok offramsœkni,
to-it that honest men reckon you for stinginess and over-forwardness

ok verði þeir þá úvinir þínir, er áðr eru félagar þínir
and become they then enemies your who before are companions your
ok vinir. Nú verðu lastvarr ok athugall um slíka hluti, at
and friends Now be fault-wary and attentive about such things that
þeir eigi berisk þér til handa fyrir gáleysis þíns sakir.
they not happen to-you to hand for heedlessness your sake

XXXI · WHY GO CLOAKLESS

The son asks why it is courteous to go cloakless before great men, when in the countryside it would seem foolish. The father explains that the cloakless man shows himself ready to serve, while a man wrapped in his cloak seems to count himself the king's equal. The custom also guards the king against enemies who could hide weapons under a cloak, and since all observe it, none is singled out for suspicion.

SON Nú vil ek enn spyrja með leyfi fárra orða í þessarri
Now will I still ask with leave of-few words in this
rœðu. Hví sætir þat, er þér rœddut, at þat skal
talk Why is-the-reason that which you talked that it shall
þykkja vel bera fyrir ríkismönnum, at maðr sé berr ok
seem well to-befit before mighty-men that a-man be bare and
skikkjulauss, þegar hann gengr til tals við þá? En ef maðr
cloakless when he goes to talk with them But if a-man
gerði svá í heraði, þá mundi svá alþýða mæla, at
did so in district then would so (the)-common-people say that
sá maðr væri fól, er svá hlypi yfirhafnarlauss sem skiptingr.
that man were a-fool who so ran over-garment-less as changeling
FATHER Þat sagða ek þér litlu fyrr í okkarri rœðu, at því
That told I you little before in our talk that that
ganga margir menn úfróðir um, hvat er vel berr í konungs
go many men unlearned about what that well befits in king's

húsi, at þat þykkir mart heimskligt með kotkörlum, er
house that that seems much foolish among cottagers which
hœfeskligt þykkir með konungi eða með öðrum ríkismönnum.
courteous seems with (the)-king or with other mighty-men
Nú skaltu þat víst vita, at eigi berr þat þar at eins vel, at vera
Now shall-you that surely know that not befits it there at only well to be
yfirhafnarlauss, sem maðr kemr fyrsta sinni fyrir konung; heldr
over-garment-less when a-man comes (the)-first time before (the)-king rather
skaltu þat vita víst, at þat er í fleirum stöðum fyrir konungs
shall-you that know surely that it is in more places before king's
andliti, at jafnvel samir at bera yfirhöfn, sem at þarnask.
face that equally befits to bear over-garment as to go-without-it
En með því at þú spurðir, hver skynsemd væri til þess, at
But with that that you asked what reason were for that that
þat væri hœfeska at vera heldr skikkjulauss fyrir ríkismönnum,
it were courtesy to be rather cloakless before mighty-men
heldr en bera yfirhöfn, þá kœmi þó œrin svör í móti, at
rather than bear over-garment then came yet ample answers in against that
því væri svarat, at þat er hvervetna siðr, þar sem hœfeskir
it were answered that that is everywhere custom there where courteous
menn ganga fyrir ríkismanna auglit, at þeir eru skikkjulausir,
men go before mighty-men's sight that they are cloakless
ok er þar hverr kallaðr þorpari, er eigi kann þann sið.
and is there each called a-churl who not knows that custom
En þessir hlutir eru enn fleiri til andsvara: ef maðr gengr
But these things are still more for answer if a-man goes
svá fyrir höfðingja, at hann sveipar sik í skikkju sinni, þá
so before chieftain that he wraps himself in cloak his then
sýnir hann þat, at hann þykkisk vera jafn hinum, er fyrir
shows he that that he thinks-himself to-be equal to-him who before
sitr, þvíat hann er búinn allri algörvi svá sem höfðingjar,
sits because he is ready with-all complete-attire so as chieftains

ok þykkisk hann engum þurfa at þjóna. En ef hann leggr
and thinks-himself he no-one need to serve But if he lays
af sér yfirhöfn sína, þá sýnir hann þat, at hann er búinn
from himself over-garment his then shows he that that he is ready
til þjónostu nökkurrar, ef sá vill þekkjask, er til þess er
for service some if that-one will accept-it who for that is
fallinn, at þiggja þjónostu heldr en þjóna. Svá eru enn þessi
fitted to receive service rather than serve So are still these
dœmi, þau er opt þarf at varask, at konungar eigu
examples those which often needs-one to beware that kings have
marga öfundarmenn; en ef úvinr hans er djarfr ok áræðinn,
many enviers but if an-enemy his is bold and daring
þá má hann vel með huldum lífsháska ok váða ganga fyrir
then may he well with hidden life-danger and peril go before
konung, ef hánum er lofat skikkju at bera. En hann má
(the)-king if to-him is permitted cloak to bear But he may
eigi auðveldliga því framkoma, ef hann er skikkjulauss. Ok
not easily that accomplish if he is cloakless And
er því víst, at sá var vitr, er þat skipaði fyrsta
is therefore certain that that-one was wise who that ordained (the)-first
sinni til hœvesku, at maðr skyldi skikkjulauss ganga fyrir
time for courtesy that a-man should cloakless go before
ríkismenn, ok allra helzt fyrir konung; þvíat sá siðr hefir
mighty-men and of-all most before (the)-king because that custom has
síðan góðan vörð gefit móti leyndum flærðum, þeim er vel
since good guard given against hidden frauds those which well
mætti undir skikkju fela, ef hon væri borin. Sá siðr hefir
might-one under cloak hide if it were borne That custom has
ok síðan gört alla menn jafnhugaða ok samsátta, at allir
also since made all men equal-minded and agreed that all

menn hafa um þat einn rétt, ok verðr engi meir tortrygðr
men have about that one right and becomes no-one more mistrusted
eða rannsakaðr en annarr, síðan þat snerisk til siðar.
or searched than another since that turned to custom

XXXII · SPEAKING TO THE KING

The father adds that a man before the king must not talk with others, nor make the king repeat himself. If someone draws him into talk, he should say gently that he will answer after the king has spoken. He must address the king in the plural and himself in the singular, and if he misses a word, he should say neither "ha" nor "what" but only "Lord," or ask courteously what the king said.

SON Svá sem mér þótti þessi siðr undarligr, fyrr en ek heyrða
So as to-me seemed this custom wondrous before than I heard
þessa rœðu, þá virðisk mér nú sem hann sé vitrliga til
this talk then seems to-me now as-if it be wisely to-it
funninn, svá at eigi megi hans án vera, ok þurfu þér fyrir
found so that not may-one it without be and need you for
því enn fram á leið at tína fyrir mér ok sýna öll þau mál ok
that still forward on way to pick-out before me and show all those matters and
athæfi, er hafa þarf fyrir konungi eða öðrum ríkismönnum.
conduct which have needs-one before (the)-king or other mighty-men
FATHER Þat skalt þú ok vandliga leiða at huga, meðan þú
That shall you also carefully lead to mind while you
stendr fyrir konungi, at þú rœðir ekki við aðra menn meðan,
stand before (the)-king that you talk not with other men meanwhile
svá at þú gefir eigi góðan gaum at öllu því sem konungr
so that you give not good heed to all that which (the)-king
talar, at eigi berisk þér svá til handa, ef hann talar nökkut
speaks that not happen to-you so to hand if he speaks anything

til þín, at þú þurfir annat sinni at spyrja, hvat hann mælir,
to you that you need a-second time to ask what he says
þvíat þat þykki jafnan illa bera, at maðr sé svá gálauss, at
because that seems always ill to-befit that a-man be so heedless that
tvíklippa skal orð at hánum, áðr en hann heyri; en miklu
twice-clip shall-one words to him before than he hear but much
þykki þat þó verst bera ok heimskligast fyrir ríkum mönnum.
seems that yet worst to-befit and most-foolish before mighty men
En allopt kann þó svá til at bera, meðan maðr er staddr
But very-often can yet so to to happen while a-man is placed
fyrir ríkum mönnum, at aðrir menn þyrpask at manni, ok
before mighty men that other men throng to a-man and
spyrja mann þá margs meðan, ok má þar ganga til stundum
ask a-man then of-much meanwhile and may there go to-it at-times
skamsýni þeirra, er þat gera, stundum má ok þat til ganga,
short-wittedness of-those who that do at-times may also that to-it go
at þeim er þat gerir þœtti eigi þá verr, at nökkut væri
that to-him who that does would-seem not then worse that something were
þat, er at mætti finna fyrir þeim, er sitt mál þarf at flytja.
that which at might-one find before him who his case needs to carry
Nú ef þér kann þat til handa bera, at þú verðr svá staddr
Now if to-you can that to hand bear that you become so placed
fyrir konungi, at einnhverr vill meðan slásk á nökkurn
before (the)-king that some-one will meanwhile strike on some
spurdaga við þik eða nökkurar aðrar rœður, þá skalt þú hafa
inquiry with you or some other talks then shall you have
blíð orð í munni ok svara þó á þessa leið: „Bið litla hríð,
gentle words in mouth and answer yet in this way Wait little while
góðr maðr! meðan ek hlýði stund eina rœðu konungsins,
good man while I listen a-while one to-(the)-talk of-the-king
en ek vil síðan gjarna við þik rœða slíkt, er þér þykki
but I will afterward gladly with you talk such as to-you seems

sjálfum gott.“ En þóat hann hafi nökkur orð um síðan
yourself good But though he have some words about afterward
fleiri, þá ræð þú þó ekki at því sinni fleira við hann, fyrr
more then talk you yet not at that time more with him before
en konungr hefir lokit sinni ræðu. Nú kann svá til at bera,
than (the)-king has ended his talk Now can so to to happen
at konungr mælir til þín nökkur orð, þá skalt þú þat varask
that (the)-king speaks to you some words then shall you that beware
vandliga í andsvörum þínum, at eigi margfaldir þú engi þau
carefully in answers your that not multiply you none those
atkvæði er til þín horfa, þóat þú margfaldir, svá sem til
words which to you look though you multiply so as to-it
byrjar, öll þau atkvæði, er til konungs horfa. En enn heldr
befits all those words which to (the)-king look But yet rather
skaltu þat varask, sem fól kann stundum at henda, at eigi
shall-you that beware which a-fool can at-times to befall that not
margfaldir þú þau atkvæði, er til þín horfa, en þú einfaldir
multiply you those words which to you look but you singularize
þau, er til konungsins horfa. En ef svá kann til at verða,
those which to the-king look But if so can to-it to happen
at konungr mælir til þín nökkur orð, þau er þú nemir eigi,
that (the)-king speaks to you some words those which you catch not
ok þarftu annat sinni eptir at frétta, þá skalt þú hvárki segja
and need-you a-second time after to ask then shall you neither say
„há“ né „hvat,“ heldr skalt þú ekki meira um hafa, en kveða
ha nor what rather shall you not more about have than say
svá at orði: „herra!“ En ef þú vilt heldr spyrja með fleirum
so in word lord But if you will rather ask with more
orðum: „Herra minn! látit yðr eigi fyrir þykkja, at ek
words Lord my let yourself not amiss seem that I
spyrja, hvat þér mæltut til mín, þvíat ek nam eigi görla.“ Ok
ask what you spoke to me because I caught not fully And

lát þik þó sem fæstum sinnum þat henda, at konungr þurfi
let yourself yet as fewest times that befall that (the)-king need
optar en um sinn orð at herma fyrir þér, áðr en þú nemir.
oftener than at once words to repeat before you before than you catch

XXXIII · WHY THE PLURAL TO KINGS

The son asks why prayers to God use the singular while men address kings in the plural. The father answers that the singular in prayer shows faith in one true God, against the heathen who called on seven gods, keeps false gods from taking our prayers to themselves, and keeps short-sighted men from thinking there are many. The kings he leaves for his next answer.

SON Hver skynsemd er til þess, at þá er betr, at öll
What reason is for that that then is better that all
atkvæði sé margfölduð, þau er mæla skal til ríkismanna,
words be multiplied those which speak shall-one to mighty-men
heldr en einfölduð? En ef maðr biðr bœnar sinnar til guðs,
rather than singularized But if a-man prays prayer his to God
er öllum er fremri ok hærri, þá eru einfölduð í hverri
who to-all is superior and higher then are singularized in each
bœn öll þau atkvæði, er til hans horfa, ok kveðr svá at
prayer all those words which to him look and says so in
orði hverr, er sína bœn flytr við guð: „Þú dróttinn minn
word each-one who his prayer delivers to God You lord my
allsvaldandi guð! heyrðu bœn mína, ok miskunna mik betr
all-ruling God hear prayer my and have-mercy-on me better
en ek sjá verðr.“ En engan mann heyri ek svá taka til orðs:
than I be worthy But no man hear I so take to word
„Þér dróttinn minn! heyrit bœn mína, ok görit betr við mik
You lord my hear prayer my and do better by me

fyrir sakar miskunnar yðarrar en ek sjá verðr.“ Nú veit ek
for sake of-mercy your than I be worthy Now know I
eigi, at allfróðlig sé spurning mín, en þó með því at þér
not that very-learned be question my but yet with that that you
hafit lofat mér at spyrja slíks, sem mik forvitnar, þá vænti
have permitted me to ask such as me makes-curious then expect
ek þó góðrar orlausnar sem fyrr, þóat ek spyrja bernskliga.
I yet good answer as before though I ask childishly
FATHER Víst vil ek þat gjarna alt fyrir þér skýra, er ek
Surely will I that gladly all before you explain which I
em til fœrr; en eigi veit ek, hví þú forvitnar þetta mál
am for able but not know I why you are-curious-about this matter
svá görsamliga við mik, at fyrir þat skal skynsemd veita,
so thoroughly with me that for that shall-one reason give
hversu atkvæðum er skipat í helgum bœnum, þvíat lærifeðr
how words is ordered in holy prayers because teachers
várir mundu þar kunna betr svara um þá hluti, er til
our would there know better answer about those things which to
guðdómsins er, en ek. En með því at hver spurning lítr
the-Godhead is than I But with that that each question looks
jafnan til svara, þá vil ek skýra þetta mál fyrir þér með
always to answer then will I explain this matter before you with
skjótri rœðu, svá sem mér sýnisk vænligast, ok vil ek því
quick talk so as to-me seems likeliest and will I that
fyrst svara, er mér þykki ágætast vera. Nú ætla ek fyrir
first answer which to-me seems most-excellent to-be Now think I for
því svá skipat atkvæðum í helgum bœnum, at heldr sé
that so ordered words in holy prayers that rather be
einfaldat en margfaldat ákall guðligs nafns, at allir þeir,
singularized than multiplied (the)-calling of-divine name that all those
er á guð trúa, skili þat til fulls, at vér trúum á einn
who on God believe understand that to full that we believe in one

guð sannan, en eigi á marga falsguða, sem heiðnir menn
God true but not in many false-gods as heathen men
trúðu forðum á sjau guða; kölluðu svá, at einn guð stýrði
believed formerly in seven gods called so that one god ruled
himnaríki, en annarr himintunglum, hinn þriði þessum heimi
heaven-kingdom but another heavenly-bodies the third this world
ok ávöxtum jarðar, hinn fjórði höfum ok vötnum, en hinn
and (the)-fruits of-earth the fourth seas and waters but the
fimti vindum ok lopti, hinn setti mannviti ok málspeki,
fifth winds and air the sixth wit and eloquence
en hinn sjaundi helvíti ok dauða. Nú skulum vér fyrir því
but the seventh hell and death Now shall we for that
göfga einn guð, þann er allar skepnur þjóna, ok biðja til
worship one God that-one whom all creatures serve and pray to
hans með einföldu atkvæði, at eigi þýðisk flærðsamir guðar
him with single word that not approach deceitful gods
til várra ákalla, fyrir þat at vér margfaldim atkvæði, at fleiri
to our callings for that that we multiply words that more
væri guð en einn, í ákalli guðligs nafns. Þessir hlutir
were gods than one in (the)-calling of-divine name These things
ganga ok til, at skamsýnir menn mætti þat hyggja, at fleiri
go also to-it that short-sighted men might that think that more
væri guð en einn, ef með margfölduðu atkvæði væri á hans
were gods than one if with multiplied word were on his
nafn kallat; ok er þat réttliga tilskipat ok vitrliga, at einföld
name called and is that rightly ordained and wisely that single
trú ok heilög hafi ekki rúm eða villustig at ganga af réttri
faith and holy have no room or error-path to go from right
þjóðgötu. Nú ef þér skilsk eigi til fulls þessi rœða, þá
highway Now if to-you is-understood not to full this talk then
megum vit enn fleira til finna; en ef þessi rœða má þik
may we-two still more to-it find but if this talk may you

leiða til fullrar skilningar, þá megum vit vel víkja okkarri
lead to full understanding then may we-two well turn our
rœðu til andsvara um þá hluti aðra, er þú spurðir.
talk to answer about those things other which you asked

XXXIV · THE PLURAL OF HONOR

The father explains the plural used to great men: a chieftain bears care and answers for many, his fall is many men's loss, and he takes counsel with many wise men. A man must not use the plural of himself, nor talk at length before great men, for a short speech hides a poor speaker's faults. Many men at court never learn these things, as the son had noticed.

SON Þessir hlutir skiljask mér vel, ok þykki mér vera
These things are-understood to-me well and seem to-me to-be
bæði sannligir ok þó nauðsynligir, at fyrir því skal heldr
both reasonable and yet necessary that for that shall rather
einfaldask en margfaldask öll atkvæði til guðs, at hvárki
be-singularized than be-multiplied all words to God that neither
megi rétt trú spillask fyrir margfalt atkvæði, ok eigi megi
may right faith be-spoiled for multiple word and not may
slœgir úvinir undirþýðask þat ákall, er einföld trú ok
sly enemies creep-under that calling which single faith and
rétt vísar þeim ífrá. En ek vil nú, at þér skýrit þat fyrir
right directs them away But I wish now that you explain that before
mér, er ek spurða um veraldar ríkismenn, hví öll atkvæði
me which I asked about world's mighty-men why all words
þœtti betr til þeirra margfölduð en einfölduð.
would-seem better to them multiplied than singularized

FATHER Þar er þó ærnu fyrir svarat, at fyrir þá sök
There is yet amply for answered that for that cause
þykki betr vera mælt til ríkismanna með margföldu atkvæði
seems better to-be spoken to mighty-men with multiple word
heldr en einföldu, at hœveskir menn hafa þat funnit fyrir
rather than single that courteous men have that found at
öndverðu, ok hefir þat síðan snúizk til siðvenju með öllum
(the)-beginning and has that since turned to custom with all
vitrum mönnum ok hœveskum, þeim til sœmdar, sem við er
wise men and courteous for-them for honor who to is
mælt ok til þess er kominn at þiggja sœmdar atkvæði. En
spoken and to that-one who come to receive honor's word But
þetta efni funnu þeir til, er frá öndverðu skipuðu þessum
this matter found they to-it who from (the)-beginning ordained these
atkvæðum, at ríkismenn eru eigi sem einnhverr annarra,
words that mighty-men are not as any of-others
sá er fyrir sér einum berr áhyggju ok sínu hyski, ok
that-one who for himself alone bears care and his household and
á fyrir fá menn svör at veita; en höfðingjar bera áhyggju
has for few men answers to give but chieftains bear care
fyrir öllum þeim, er undir þeim eru at þjónostu eða at
for all those who under them are in service or in
veldi, ok hafa þeir eigi eins manns svör í munni, heldr
power and have they not one man's answers in mouth rather
eigu þeir fyrir marga svör at veita. Ok ef góðr höfðingi
have they for many answers to give And if good chieftain
fellr ífrá, þá er eigi sem eins manns missi, heldr er þat
falls away then is-it not as one man's loss rather is that
mikil missa öllum þeim, er af hánum tóku upphald eða
great loss to-all those who from him took support or
sœmdir, ok er sem allir verði minni fyrir sér síðan, er
honors and is as-if all become less for themselves after when

þeir missa höfðingja síns, en þeir váru meðan hann lifði,
they lose chieftain their than they were while he lived
nema því at eins, at sá komi annarr í stað, er þeim
except that at only that that-one come another in place who to-them
sé jafnvel viljaðr sem hinn, er frá féll. Nú með því at
be equally well-disposed as the-other who away fell Now with that that
höfðingjar halda upp með mörgum hvárttveggja sœmdum ok
chieftains hold up with many both honors and
andsvörum ok margfaldri áhyggju, þá er þat vel tilleggjanda
answers and manifold care then is that well to-be-applied
þeim til sœmdar, at kenna þá með margföldu atkvæði í
to-them for honor to address them with multiple word in
allri rœðu, frá því er til þeirra þarf at rœða, er smærri
all talk from that which to them needs-one to talk who smaller
eru ok minni fyrir sér. En þessir hlutir eru þeir enn,
are and less for themselves But these things are those still
er þá váru til funnir eða hugleiddir, er þetta var fyrsta
which then were to-it found or pondered when this was (the)-first
sinni til siðar tekit, at konungar eða aðrir ríkismenn, þá
time to custom taken that kings or other mighty-men then
eru eigi einir saman í ráðagerð sinni, heldr hafa þeir með
are not alone together in counsel-taking their rather have they with
sér marga aðra vitra menn ok göfga, ok mun þá svá
themselves many other wise men and noble and will then so
sýnask, ef til höfðingja verðr mælt með margföldu atkvæði,
seem if to chieftains becomes spoken with multiple word
at þá sé eigi til konungs eins mælt, heldr til allra þeirra,
that then be not to (the)-king alone spoken rather to all those
er í ráðagerð eru með hánum, ok hans eru ráðgjafar.
who in counsel-taking are with him and his are counselors

Ek gat þess ok nökkut í hinu fyrra orði, at þú skalt
I mentioned that also somewhat in the former word that you shall
við því sjá, at þú margfaldir önnur þau atkvæði, er til þín
against that look that you multiply other those words which to you
horfa, at eigi virðir þú þik jafnan hinum, er þú ræðir
look that not reckon you yourself equal to-the-one whom you talk
við, ok meiri er en þú. En þóat þú ræðir við jafnmaka
with and greater is than you But though you talk with equal
þinn eða minna mann en þú sér, þá berr þér ekki sjálfum
your or lesser man than you be then befits you not yourself
at virða þik með margfölduðu atkvæði. Þat skalt þú ok
to honor yourself with multiplied word That shall you also
varask, ef þú ert staddr fyrir ríkismönnum, at þú verðir eigi
beware if you are placed before mighty-men that you become not
símálugr í þinni ræðu, þvíat ríkir menn ok allir vitrir menn
ever-talking in your talk because mighty men and all wise men
reiðask við símælgi, ok þykkja leið vera ok enskis verð
grow-angry at chatter and it-seems loathsome to-be and of-nothing worth
nema heimsku. Svá ok ef þú skalt nökkura ræðu fram flytja,
except folly So also if you shall some talk forward bring
hvárt sem heldr varðar sjálfum þér eða öðrum mönnum,
whether that rather concerns self yourself or other men
þá flyt skilvísliga, ok þó með skjótri ræðu ok sem fæstum
then deliver clearly and yet with quick talk and as fewest
orðum; þvíat svá mikill málafjöldi kemr jafnan fyrir konung
words because so great multitude-of-cases comes always before (the)-king
ok aðra ríkismenn um margfaldar nauðsynjar manna, at eigi
and other mighty-men about manifold needs of-men that not
megu þeir, ok eigi fá þeir lunderni til, at með drjúgri eða
may they and not get they temper to-it that with lengthy or
langri ræðu sé talat um hit sama mál. Er ok þat sannast,
long talk be spoken about the same matter Is also that truest

ef maðr er snjallr ok tunguhvass, þá er hánum auðvelt
if a-man is eloquent and tongue-sharp then is to-him easy
at flytja sína rœðu með skjótu máli ok fám orðum, svá
to deliver his talk with quick speech and few words so
at hinum skilisk vel, er svara skal. En ef maðr er engi
that to-him is-understood well who answer shall But if a-man is no
mælskumaðr eða heldr úsnjallr at máli, þá er ok þess betr,
eloquent-man or rather ineloquent in speech then is also that-the better
er hann hefir skemra erendi í munni; þvíat gera má hann
that he has shorter errand in mouth because make may he
nökkur skil á fám orðum, ok leyna svá úsnild sinni fyrir
some account in few words and hide so ineloquence his before
þeim, er eigi er kunnigt; en ef hann görir langmælt,
those to-whom not is known but if he makes long-speech
þá mun hann þykkja því úsnjallari, sem hann talar lengra.
then will he seem the more-ineloquent as he speaks longer
Nú eru slíkir hlutir ok aðrir því um líkir, þeir er manni
Now are such things and others to-that about like those which to-a-man
væri nauðsynligir at verða vel áskynja ok nema heima, fyrr
were necessary to become well aware-of and learn at-home before
en hann gangi mjök fyrir stórhöfðingja í rœðu við þá,
than he go much before great-chieftains in talk with them
ef hann vill snotr heita. Ok máttu á slíku marka, hversu
if he will sensible be-called And may-you on such mark how
siðugir eða margvitrir þeir eigu at vera í sinni meðferð
mannerly or much-wise they ought to be in their conduct
ok hœvesku, er jafnan skulu vera nær konungi í öllum
and courtesy who always shall be near (the)-king in all
sœmiligum samvistum, þar sem vitrum mönnum sýnisk svá
honorable gatherings there where to-wise men it-seems so
sem maðr sé eigi vel fœrr at ganga fyrir konungs andlit,
as-if a-man be not well able to go before king's face

til þess at rœða við hann, nema hann kunni vel alla þessa
for that to talk with him unless he know well all these
hluti, er nú höfum vér um rœtt, nema hann sé með öllu
things which now have we about talked unless he be with all
þorpari, ok skyli hvárki telja hann né virða með hœveskari
a-churl and should neither count him nor reckon with more-courteous
mönnum en þorpurum réttum. En þó skaltu þat vita, at
men than churls right But yet shall-you that know that
margir verða þeir með konungi staddir marga vetr, er af
many become those with (the)-king placed many winters who of
þessum hlutum vitu annattveggja lítit eða alls ekki; ok
these things know either little or at-all nothing and
jafnvel hendir þá þat, er hirðmanna nöfn bera ok nærgönglir
equally befalls them that who retainers' names bear and near-going
skulu vera konungi, sem hina er smærri nöfn bera ok
shall be to-(the)-king as the-others who smaller names bear and
vásjaldan sjá konung; ok muntu um slíka rœtt hafa, sem
very-seldom see (the)-king and will-you about such talked have as
nú töluðum vit um, þá er þú svaraðir svá fyrr í okkarri
now spoke we-two about then when you answered so before in our
rœðu, at þér þóttu þeir ekki betr siðaðir eða hœveskari, er
talk that to-you seemed they not better mannered or more-courteous who
frá hirðum kómu, eða varla svá, sem hinir er ekki höfðu
from courts came or hardly so as the-others who not had
komit til hirðar; ok svaraða ek þér þá sönnu móti, at hverr
come to court and answered I you then (the)-true against that each
sá er vel vill vera í sinni meðferð, þá þarf at varask
that-one who well will be in his conduct then needs-be to beware
slíka fáfrœði, sem þeir hafa, er eigi vitu, hvat skömm er, eða
such ignorance as they have who not know what shame is or

hvat sœmd er eða hœveska, ok eigi nema góðra manna ok
what honor is or courtesy and not learn good men's and
hœveskra meðferðir, þóat þeir sé hvern dag fyrir augum sér.
courteous conducts though they be each day before eyes their

XXXV · YEAR-FAILURE IN THE REALM

The son asks why a courteous king keeps unmannerly men about him. The father compares a farmer forced in a bad year to mix chaff into his bread. Worse than any failure of crops or herds is a failure of the people's manners and wit, which no money can buy from other lands. Like the farmer who keeps his farm, the king cannot give up his realm and must make do, punishing some, entreating others, and teaching the rest until God sends better times.

SON Þat er víst, at ek mun þá funnit hafa, þóat þeir hafi frá
That is certain that I will those found have though they have from
hirðum komit, er annathvárt leyndu slíkum siðum, þóat þeir
courts come who either hid such customs though they
kynni, sem nú hafi þér um rœtt, eða elligar hefir svá verit
knew as now have you about talked or else has-it so been
sem ek sagða, at þeir hafa ekki orðit áskynja slíkra hluta. En
as I said that they have not become aware of-such things But
þat er þó ekki undarligt, at þeir er fáfrœðir eru heima ok
that is yet not wondrous that those who ignorant are at-home and
úspuralir, at þeir viti af slíkum hlutum fátt eða ekki. En þat
unquestioning that they know of such things little or nothing But that
er undarligra, er þér rœddut um hríð, at þeir sé margir
is more-wondrous which you talked about a-while that they be many
með konungi lengi, ok hánum nágönglir at þjónostu, ok verða
with (the)-king long and to-him near-going in service and become
þó eigi áskynja, hvat hœveski er eða hvat hirðsiðir eru; ok
yet not aware what courtesy is or what court-customs are and

vil ek fyrir því þess spyrja yðr, hvat því veldr, er þér buðut
will I for that of-that ask you what that causes which you bade
mér at varask þeirra fáfrœði, eða hví konungr mun hafa þá
me to beware their ignorance or why (the)-king will have those
nágöngla sér í þjónostu, er eigi vilja lifa með fögrum siðum,
near-going to-him in service who not will live with fair customs
ef hann er sjálfr hœveskr ok siðgóðr, þvíat ek hugða, ef
if he is himself courteous and well-mannered because I thought if
konungr væri siðgóðr ok hœveskr, at allir mundu siðask
(the)-king were well-mannered and courteous that all would take-manners
af hánum, ok hann mundi ekki mjök elska úsiðuga menn.
from him and he would not much love unmannerly men
FATHER Þat kann til bera, at sá bóndi, er vanr er góðu brauði
That can to-it bear that that farmer who wont is to-good bread
ok hreinni fœzlu, þurfi nökkut sinni at blanda agnar ok sáðir
and clean food need some time to mix chaff and husks
við brauð bæði sjálfs síns eða hjóna sinna, til þess at þá
with bread both of-self his or of-servants his for that that then
sé drjúgari fœzla en áðr, ok verðr þá nauðigr at taka með
be more-ample food than before and must then forced to take with
sömum þökkum slíka fœzlu sem þá fær hann, sem fyrr tók
same thanks such food as then gets he as before took
hann góða fœzlu ok hreina; ok veldr slíkum atburðum þröngvar
he good food and clean and causes such events pressing
nauðsynjar, þat er úáran. En árgalli verðr með mörgum
needs that is bad-year But year-failure becomes in many
háttum, þat er stundum, at úáran verðr á korni, ok gefr þó
manners that is at-times that bad-year becomes on grain and gives yet
jörð gras ok hálm, en stundum gefr hon hvárki. Þat er ok
earth grass and straw but at-times gives it neither It is also
stundum, at jörð gefr yfrinn ávöxt ok góðan, ok megu menn
at-times that earth gives ample fruit and good and may men

þó eigi njóta, þvíat úáran er í lopti, ok spilla veðr öllum
yet not enjoy because bad-year is in air and spoil weathers all
ávöxtum í þann tíma, er hirða skyldi; en stundum spillir
fruits at that time when gather should-one but at-times spoils
skjaðak, þóat ýrnir sé ávextir ok góð veðrátta. Svá kann ok
darnel though ample be fruits and good weather So can also
stundum verða, at allir ávextir jarðar standi með hinum bezta
at-times happen that all fruits of-earth stand with the best
blóma árgallalausir, ok sé þó mikit úáran í búi manns ok
bloom year-failure-less and be yet great bad-year in household of-man and
kvikfénaði eða í hafi eða í vötnum, eða allskyns veiði. Svá kann
livestock or in sea or in waters or all-kinds hunting So can
ok stundum at verða, ef eigi vill vel, at allir þessir árgallar
also at-times to happen if not will well that all these year-failures
berask í senn til handa, ok verðr þá með mönnum jafndýrar
happen at once to hand and becomes then among men equally-dear
sáðar eða dýrri en hreint korn, meðan ár er. Þessir allir
husks or dearer than clean grain while good-year is These all
árgallar er nú eru taldir, munu virðask mikil þröngsl hverju
year-failures which now are counted will seem great straits to-each
landi því, er þeir kunnu til at koma, ok náliga mun vera
land that where they can to-it to come and nearly will be
kallat lands auðn, ef allir koma í senn ok standa þrjá vetr.
called land's desolation if all come at once and stand three winters
Nú er sá enn útaldr árgalli, er miklu er þyngri einn
Now is that still untold year-failure which much is heavier alone
en allir þessir, er nú höfum vér talda, ef úáran kann at
than all these which now have we counted if bad-year can to
koma í fólkit sjálft, er byggvir landit, eða enn heldr, ef
come into the-people itself which inhabits the-land or still rather if
árgalli kemr í siðu þeirra ok mannvit eða meðferðir, er
year-failure comes into customs their and wit or conduct who

gæta skulu stjórnar landsins; fyrir því at mart liggr til
guard shall (the)-governance of-the-land for that that much lies to
ráðs at hjálpa því landi, er úáran er á, ef á þeim löndum
counsel to help that land which bad-year is on if in those lands
er gott, er íhjá liggja, ok véla vitrir menn um. En ef
is good which beside lie and handle wise men about-it But if
úáran verðr á fólkinu eða á siðum landsins, þá standa
bad-year becomes on the-people or on (the)-customs of-the-land then stand
þar miklu stœrstir skaðar af; þvíat þá má eigi kaupa
there much greatest harms from-it because then may-one not buy
af öðrum löndum með fé hvárki siðu né mannvit, ef þat
from other lands with wealth neither customs nor wit if that
týnisk eða spillisk, er áðr var í landinu. En þóat úáran
perishes or is-spoiled which before was in the-land But though bad-year
komi á bœ bónda, þann er áðr hefir verit góðr,
come on (the)-farm of-a-farmer that which before has been good
ok hann hefir lengi átt eða hans frændr fyrir hánum, þá
and he has long owned or his kinsmen before him then
mun hann eigi svá mikla leiðu göra sér eða reiði á bœ
will he not so great loathing make for-himself or anger at farm
sínum, at hann mun þegar segja hann sér afhendan,
his that he will at-once say it from-himself handed-over
ok hirða eigi hvat af verðr; heldr mun hann þat til ráðs
and care not what of-it becomes rather will he that for counsel
taka, at hirða jafnvirkiliga gras ok agnar, eða enn betr
take to gather equally-diligently grass and chaff or still better
en áðr hirti hann gott korn ok hreint, ok nœra svá sín
than before gathered he good grain and clean and nourish so his
híbíli, sem hann má, þar til sem guð vill, at betr verði.
household as he can there to as God wishes that better becomes
Með sama hætti verðr ok konungr at gera, ef hann verðr
In same manner must also (the)-king to do if he becomes

fyrir þeirri nauðsyn, at árgalli kemr í siðu landsins
before that need that year-failure comes into (the)-customs of-the-land
eða mannvit, þá fær hann eigi afhent sér sagt ríki
or wit then gets he not handed-over from-himself said realm
sitt, ok verðr heldr fyrir nauðsynja sakir láta jafnvel yfir
his and must rather for needs' sake act equally over
fávitrum, sem þá var látit yfir spekingum, meðan ríki
unwise as then was acted over sages while (the)-realm
stóð með beztum tíma ok siðum. Verðr at refsa sumt,
stood with best time and customs Must-one to punish some
sumt at biðja, en sumt at læra með kenningum ok nœra
some to ask but some to teach with teachings and nourish
alla vega sem má, þar til er guð vill at betr verði.
all ways as one-can there to when God wishes that better becomes

XXXVI · HOW A REALM IS RUINED

The son asks how such a failure comes. The father answers that God sends it for sins: wise chieftains die leaving young heirs, a king dies leaving a child, and young counselors replace old. Worst is when a realm is divided among several brothers made kings. Friends stir envy, quarrels grow into slayings, wrongdoers flee from one king to another, kinship and law fail, and the people grow lawless. At last God sends war and famine, and the realm lies waste until he frees it; even under a single king, a people schooled in fraud stays ill-mannered for a while.

SON Þetta skilsk mér nú vel, at marga vega megu nauðsynjar
This is-understood to-me now well that many ways may needs
mönnum til handa bera, jafnvel ríkum sem úríkum, svá
to-men to hand bear equally to-mighty as to-unmighty so
konungum sem kotkörlum. Nú með því at sakar dælleika ok
to-kings as to-cottagers Now with that that for-sake-of gentleness and

leyfis þess, er þér hafit mér gefit til spurningar í rœðu okkarri,
leave that which you have me given for question in talk our
þá vilda ek enn, at þér skilaðit þessa rœðu görsamligra fyrir
then would-wish I still that you made-clear this talk more-thoroughly before
mér, áðr en vit takim aðra. Hvat sýnisk yðr um þat, hversu
me before than we-two take another What seems to-you about that how
þess berr til, at svá stórir árgallar kunnu at koma á mannvit
of-that bears to that so great year-failures can to come on wit
manna, ok alt týnisk í senn, mannvit ok siðir landsins? Eða
of-men and all perishes at once wit and customs of-the-land Or
hvárt sú tjón kemr af fólkinu, er byggvir ríkit, eða af
whether that loss comes from the-people which inhabits the-realm or from
konungi ok því fólki, er stjórna skal ríkinu með hánum?
(the)-king and that people which govern shall the-realm with him
FATHER Þat er nú spyrr þú, þá kemr af ýmisum hlutum
That which now ask you then comes from various things
ok atburðum ok skaðasamligum, en sjaldan ætla ek þó,
and events and harmful but seldom think I yet
at þesskyns háskar komi með upphafi af alþýðu þeirri,
that of-that-kind dangers come with beginning from common-people that
er vinnr land eða byggvir, ef þeir væri ráðsnotrir, er gæta
which works land or inhabits if they were counsel-wise who guard
skyldu, ok væri konungr sjálfr vitr. En ef guð vill senda
should and were (the)-king himself wise But if God will send
þann bardaga á eitthvert land fyrir synda sakar fólksins,
that blow on some land for sins' sake of-the-people
at siðir skulu spillask eða mannvit, þá skipar hann því
that customs shall be-spoiled or wit then arranges he that
skjótt, þegar hann vill, með ýmisum atburðum. En þessi eru
quickly when he will with various events But these are
allmörg dœmi, at orðit hafa í ýmisum stöðum, þar sem
very-many examples which happened have in various places there where

eigi vildi vel, at sá einnhverr höfðingi, er bæði hefir verit
not would well that that some chieftain who both has been
vitr ok auðigr, ok hefir haft mikla sœmd með konungi, setit
wise and wealthy and has had great honor with (the)-king sat
hjá ráðagerðum hans ok átt mikinn hlut í landstjórnum
at counsels his and had great part in land-governings
með hánum, sá maðr hefir við þat frá fallit sínum híbílum,
with him that man has on that from fallen his dwellings
at hann hefir eptir sik átt fjóra sonu eða fimm, ok alla
that he has after himself had four sons or five and all
í mikilli œsku ok bernsku; þá verðr þegar mikill skaði
in great youth and childhood then becomes at-once great harm
konungi ok öllu ríkinu: þá hefir konungr mist góðs vinar,
to-(the)-king and all the-realm then has (the)-king lost good friend
margra hollræða, mikils hlífðarvápns; en auðr hans er því
many sound-counsels great shield-weapon but wealth his is that
næst skiptr í fimm staði, ok ruglat or stað allri
next divided into five places and thrown-into-confusion out-of place all
hans athöfn, ok smættisk þá með því hans hyski, at hverr
his activity and lessens then with that his household that each
sona hans hefir hinn fimta hlut á því afli, er hann tók
of-sons his has the fifth part of that strength which he took
af fé sínu, meðan er hann lifði; en fyrir bernsku sakar
from wealth his while that he lived but for childhood's sake
enn minna af mannviti hans eða athæfi. En þá verðr enn
still less of wit his or conduct But then becomes still
meiri munr, ef hann á engan son eptir sik, er hann
greater difference if he has no son after himself when he
fellr ífrá, ok þo jafnmargar dœttr sem nú hefi ek sonu
falls away and yet equally-many daughters as now have I sons
talda; en þá verðr enn mestr munr, ef hvárki er eptir synir
counted but then becomes still greatest difference if neither is after sons

né dœttr, ok kann svá til at bera, at auðr hans skiptisk
nor daughters and can so to-it to bear that wealth his divides-itself
smátt milli fjarborinna kvísla hans, ef engir lifa allnánir.
small between far-born branches his if none live very-near
Nú ef slíkir atburðir kunnu verða margir senn í einu
Now if such events can happen many at-once in one
konungs riki, þá mun brátt forðask afl ráðagerðar með
king's realm then will soon vanish (the)-strength of-counsel with
konungi, þóat hann sé vel vits eigandi sjálfr. En ef svá berr
(the)-king though he be well of-wit owner himself But if so bears
til, sem enn eru dœmi til jafnvel þessarra hluta, at konungr
to-it as still are examples to equally of-these things that (the)-king
sjálfr kann svá fráfalla, at hann eigi eptir sik ungan son,
himself can so fall-away that he have after himself young son
ok tekr sá til ríkis í bernsku sinni eptir föður sinn,
and takes that-one to realm in childhood his after father his
enda þá ungir ráðgjafarnir, er í stað þeirra ellimannanna
moreover then young the-counselors who in place of-those old-men
koma ok spekinganna, er fyrr höfðu verit, ok kunnu þessir
come and of-the-sages who before had been and can these
hlutir allir senn til at verða, er nú höfum vér rœtt, þá er
things all at-once to-it to happen which now have we talked then is
ofmikil ván, at árgalla geri á allri stjórn landsins,
too-great expectation that year-failure (it)-make on all governance of-the-land
ok bregðisk nökkut siðr landsins, ef stjórnin spillisk.
and fail somewhat (the)-custom of-the-land if the-governance is-spoiled
En nú eru eptir þeir einir atburðir; er miklu eru sýnstir
But now are left those certain events which much are most-visible
til þess úárans, er mestir standa höfuðglœpir af, ok er því
to that bad-year which greatest stand chief-crimes from and is the
verr, at eigi eru síðr dœmi til þeirra atburða en þessarra,
worse that not are less examples to those events than these

sem nú eru taldir. Ef svá berr til, at konungr hefir ríki
which now are counted If so bears to-it that (the)-king has realm
stjórnat ok fellr við þat ífrá ríki, at hann á eptir sik
governed and falls on that from realm that he has after himself
þrjá sonu eða fjóra, ok þeir allir œskufullir ok kapps,
three sons or four and they all youthful and of-zeal
er af þeim kynkvíslum eru komnir, er fyrr stjórnuðu
who from those kindreds are come who before governed
landráðum með konungi, ok hvárttveggja váru kyngóðir ok
land-counsels with (the)-king and both were kin-good and
þó fésterkir; nú ef svá illa berr einuhverju ríki til með
yet wealth-strong now if so ill bears to-some realm to-it with
þessum atburðum, er nú eru taldir, at mörg eru konunga
these events which now are counted that many are of-kings
efni, enda verðr svá ilt ráð tekit, at öll verða senn
makings moreover becomes so ill counsel taken that all become at-once
skrýdd konungligri tign eða nafni; þá má þat ríki kalla
adorned with-kingly dignity or name then may-one that realm call
hömlubarða eða auðnaróðal, ok má þat þá náliga virðask
hobbled or desolation-patrimony and may it then nearly seem
sem týnt ríki, þvíat þat er þá sáit með hinu mesta úárans
as lost realm because it is then sown with the greatest of-bad-year
fræi ok úfriðar korni. Þvíat þeir smákonungar, er þá hafa
seed and of-strife grain Because those petty-kings who then have
sundrslitit ríki, þá slíta þeir þegar í jafnmarga staði
torn-asunder (the)-realm then tear they at-once into equally-many places
ástundan fólksins, þess er byggvir landit, bæði hins ríka ok
(the)-zeal of-the-people that which inhabits the-land both of-the mighty and
hins úríka, ok dregr þá hverr þessarra höfðingja undir sik
of-the unmighty and draws then each of-these chieftains under himself
vini sem við má komask. Því næst hyggr hverr þeirra at
friends as on may-one get That next considers each of-them at

sínu ríki ok fjölmenni eða auðœfum, ok svá leiða þeir at
his realm and multitude or riches and so lead they to
huga hvat sá hafði, er næstr var þeim, ok þykkisk þá
mind what that-one had who next was to-them and thinks-himself then
hverr þeirra oflítit hafa. Þá taka ok vinir hvers þeirra at
each of-them too-little to-have Then begin also friends of-each of-them to
minnask á ok um at tala, hversu mikit sá konungr mátti
mention on and about to talk how much that king might
atfœrask, er fyrr stjórnaði ríki, hvárttveggja um fé eða
accomplish who before governed (the)-realm both about wealth or
fjölmenni, eða aðrar stórar athafnir, þær er hann hafðisk
multitude or other great deeds those which he occupied-himself
at, ok er næsta í hverri áminning, sem hverr eggi sinn
with and is nearly in each reminder as-if each egged his
höfðingja, at hann mætti meira undir sik koma, en þá
chieftain that he might more under himself bring than then
hefir hann. En eptir þat tekr hverr þessarra höfðingja at
has he But after that begins each of-these chieftains to
draga til sinnar féhirzlu þann auð, er minst er ríkisbót
draw to his treasury that wealth which least is realm-betterment
í, þat er öfund; ok því næst verða samanlesnar smár sakar
in that is envy and that next become gathered-together small charges
ok gör af mikil reiði, ok tekr þá frændsemi at spillask,
and made from-it great anger and begins then kinship to be-spoiled
ok er þar þá ætlaðr úþurftamaðr, sem fyrr var kallaðr
and is there then thought harmful-man who before was called
vin ok frændi, ok býr því næst hverr um grun við
friend and kinsman and dwells that next each with suspicion toward
annan. En þegar fœðask taka grunir ok kvittir, þá þykkir
another But when are-born begin suspicions and rumors then seems
úsiðarmönnum árvænt, ok bera þeir þá út plóga sína. Því
to-unmannerly-men good-year-likely and carry they then out plows their That

næst rennr upp úfriðar ávöxtr, vex ágirnd ok újafnaðr, dirfask
next runs up strife's fruit grows greed and injustice grow-bold
menn í manndrápum ok ágjarnligum ránum eða stuldum.
men in man-slayings and greedy robberies or thefts
En ef svá berr at, at einnhverr þessarra höfðingja vill refsa
But if so bears to-it that some of-these chieftains will punish
greinda úsiðu í sínu ríki, þá verðr flýit undir hendr öðrum
(the)-said misdeeds in his realm then becomes fled under hands of-another
höfðingja, ok kallask þeir koma sakalausir undir harða
chieftain and call-themselves they come guiltless under hard
reiði síns höfðingja, er fyrir úsiðar sakar flýðu heiman.
anger of-their chieftain who for misdeeds' sake fled from-home
Því næst veitir sá viðrtöku, er til verðr flýit, meir fyrir
That next gives that-one reception who to becomes fled more for
kapps sakar en mildi; þvíat hann vill leita við at gera
rivalry's sake than mildness because he will seek on to make
sér nökkura vini í annars ríki, þá er hánum yrði
for-himself some friends in another's realm those whom to-him became
traust í, en hinum yrði gagnstaðligir, ef þeir kunnu nökkut
support in but to-the-other became hostile if they can somewhat
úsáttir at verða. En þeir er flýit hafa fyrir úsiðar sakir ok
unreconciled to become But those who fled have for misdeeds' sake and
lögbrota, þá taka þeir ok fjándskapask þann höfðingja, er
law-breaks then take they also make-enemy that chieftain whom
þeir váru fyrr undir höndum, bera úvináttu millim hans ok
they were before under hands bear enmity between him and
þess, er þá eru þeir tilkomnir, alla þá er þeir megu;
that-one to-whom then are they to-come all those which they can
vinna ok hefndir brottferðar sinnar aptr í hans ríki með
work and vengeances of-departure their back in his realm with
manndrápum, með ránum eða stuldum, svá sem þeir væri
man-slayings with robberies or thefts so as-if they were

sakalausir, en hann hefði valdit öllum sökum. En því næst
guiltless but he had caused all charges But that next
taka úsiðir at margfaldask; þvíat guð hefnir svá reiði sinnar,
begin misdeeds to multiply because God avenges so anger his
at þar sem saman koma fjögur endimerki í ríki þessarra
that there where together come four end-marks in (the)-realm of-these
höfðingja, þá setr hann þar niðr hverfanda hvel, þat er
chieftains then sets he there down turning wheel that which
veltisk um á úróar axlir. Eptir þat týnir hverr frændsemi
rolls about on unrest's axles After that loses each kinship
við annan ok görisk sifjaspjall, ok þyrma menn engum
toward another and is-made incest and spare men no
leytum, þvíat hvervetna þess er eitt fólk er skipt í marga
degrees because everywhere of-that where one people is divided into many
staði með höfðingja ástundan, enda verða þeir sundrþykkir,
places with chieftains' zeal moreover become they discordant
þá dirfisk þegar alþýðan eptir sínum girndum, ok
then grow-bold at-once the-common-people after their desires and
brigða þá alugat öllum siðum landsins; þvíat þá görir sjálfr
break then utterly all customs of-the-land because then makes himself
hverr sér sið eptir sinni hugarlund, ok hræðisk engi
each for-himself custom after his mind and fears no
maðr refsing, þegar höfðingjar sundrþykkjask ok smættask.
man punishment when chieftains disagree and lessen
En þegar er hverr lítr á sjálfs síns list ok slœgð, þá verða
But as-soon as each looks on of-self his art and slyness then become
ofgangsi allskyns úgæfur í því landi, aukask manndráp ok
over-prevailing all-kinds misfortunes in that land increase man-slayings and
sakir; þá verða konur sumar hernæmdar ok nauðgar teknar,
charges then become women some war-captured and by-force taken
en sumar véltar með brögðum ok legorðum, ok börn görask
but some beguiled with tricks and seductions and children are-made

með hórdómum ok löglausum hjúskap; sumir taka frændkonur
with adulteries and lawless marriage some take kinswomen
eða sifkonur sínar, en sumir glepja manna konur frá
or in-law-women their but some seduce men's wives from
bóndum sínum, ok drýgjask með slíkum atburðum allskyns
husbands their and are-committed with such events all-kinds
hórdómar, ok smættask allar ættir, þær sem getnar verða með
adulteries and lessen all families those which begotten become with
slíkri úráðvendi. Þá verða ok framdar allskyns aðrar úgæfur:
such dishonesty Then become also committed all-kinds other misfortunes
bœndr ok alþýða gerask þá ríkisdjarfir ok úhlýðnir; sjá
farmers and common-people become then power-bold and disobedient look
illa við sökum, ok bœta fár, þóat margar verði görvar; eiga
ill against charges and amend few though many become done have
samveldisþing; líta á múga sinn ok höfðatal, ok kjósa
commonwealth-assemblies look on multitude their and head-count and choose
þeir þann kost til sín, er helzt gegnir vandræðum, þvíat
they that choice to themselves which best serves troubles because
þeir binda alla í eitt félag, spaka menn ok siðsama, ok
they bind all in one fellowship wise men and mannerly and
úsiðarmenn ok fól, ok fœra undan sökum heimska menn,
unmannerly-men and fools and carry off charges foolish men
ok þá er újafngjarnir eru, þóat þeir geri hvern dag til,
and those who unjust are though they do each day to-it
ok gera annathvárt, at sverja með þeim ranga eiða eða úsœr
and do either to swear with them wrong oaths or untrue
vitni, eða elligar halda með kappi ok sleitu á þingum
witness or else hold with zeal and chicanery at assemblies
sínum, svá at sakafullir svara engu konungsmönnum, þeim
their so that guilty answer nothing to-king's-men those
er gæta skulu landstjórnar undir konungi. Þvíat heimskr
who guard shall land-governance under (the)-king Because foolish

múgr virðir svá fyrir sér, at konungr sé þeim skipaðr
multitude reckons so for itself that (the)-king be to-them appointed
gagnstaðligr, ok þykkisk heimskr maðr í því vera vel
hostile and thinks-himself a-foolish man in that to-be well
sœmdr, ok metr sik mikils fyrir úsnotra manna augum,
honored and values himself much before unwise men's eyes
ef hann má nökkura stund sik í því halda, ok vera
if he may some while himself in that hold and be
fyrir utan konungs ríki eða lögligar setningar. Ok ef í
before outside king's realm or lawful ordinances And if in
nökkurum stað eigu þeir sjálfir málum at skipta sín
some place have they themselves cases to deal themselves
á millum, þá treysta fól hinn heimska, svá at hann skal
on between then strengthen fools the foolish so that he shall
ríkastr vera í þeirra viðrskipti, en hinn réttláti ok hinn
mightiest be in their dealing but the righteous and the
spaki verðr afsviptr sínum hlut. Ok ef hinn ágjarni ok hinn
wise becomes deprived of-his share And if the greedy and the
úspaki verðr drepinn fyrir sína ágirnd, þá virða svá heimskir
unwise becomes killed for his greed then reckon so foolish
frændr, þeir er eptir lifa, at þeim sé í því görr mikill
kinsmen those who after live that to-them be in that done great
skaði ok ættarskarð. Ok ef nökkurr hefir sá verit drepinn
harm and family-gap And if any has that-one been killed
fyrr or þeirri ætt, er bæði hefir verit spakr ok vitr, ok
before out-of that family who both has been wise and sensible and
mörgum hefir hans vit ok spekt at gagni orðit, ok ef sá
to-many has his wit and wisdom to benefit become and if that-one
hefir með fé verit aptr bœttr frændum, þá skal þvílíkra
has with wealth been back compensated to-kinsmen then shall such

bóta beiðask fyrir hinn heimska, sem fyrr váru teknar
compensations be-asked for the foolish as before were taken
fyrir hinn vitra, eða elligar skal hefna með manndrápi.
for the wise or else shall-one avenge with man-slaying
En þegar guð sér slíka misdœming görva með úráði ok rangri
But when God sees such misjudging done with folly and wrong
ásýn, þá snýr hann þeim újafnaði aptr á sjálfa þá, er ranga
view then turns he that injustice back on themselves those who wrong
ok újafna dóma hefja upp fyrir öndverðu; þvíat þegar er
and unjust judgments raise up at (the)-beginning because as-soon as
hinn heimski ok hinn ágjarni sér þat, at hann er vel virðr,
the foolish and the greedy sees that that he is well valued
betr en hinn vitri með spekt sína, ok er heimska hans ok
better than the wise with wisdom his and is folly his and
ágirnd snúit hánum til sœmdar ok upphafs, þá görir hann
greed turned to-him to honor and advancement then does he
svá sem náttúra er til ok siðvenja allra heimskra manna, at
so as nature is to-it and custom of-all foolish men to
falla því meir fram viðr ok koma því víðara niðr með sinni
fall the more forward on and come the wider down with his
ágirnd. En þegar er þat leggsk til frægðar ok sœmdar af
greed But as-soon as that lays-itself to fame and honor from
alþýðu, er illa er ok allir ætti at hata, þá nemr annarr
common-people which ill is and all ought to hate then learns another
ok hinn þriði ok því næst hverr eptir öðrum, til þess er
and the third and that next each after another to that when
þat leggsk undir almenniliga siðvenju, at sá einn þykkir
it lays-itself under general custom that that-one alone seems
vel vera, er ágjarn er ok nökkut má með röngu af annars
well to-be who greedy is and something may with wrong from another's
sœmd draga til síns hlutar. Því næst býr hverr við annan
honor draw to his share That next dwells each with another

með ágirnd, ok snýsk sú illska upp á sjálfa þá, er með
with greed and turns that wickedness up on themselves those who with
skamsýniligri illsku hófu þau rangendi upp fyrir öndverðu;
short-sighted wickedness raised those wrongs up at (the)-beginning
þvíat hverr býr um síðir í annars höfði, annathvárt með
because each dwells at last in another's head either with
áverka eða öðrum úfagnaði, ok falla svá niðr allar fornar ok
wound or other unpleasantness and fall so down all old and
lögligar setningar. En þó beiðask allir þess, at konungar ok
lawful ordinances But yet ask all that that kings and
stórhöfðingjar skuli þyrma lögum mjök með vægð, en engi
great-chieftains shall spare laws much with leniency but no-one
af alþýðunni vill hafa lög við annan, ok vill hverr langt
of the-common-people will have law with another and will each far
yfirstíga þat, sem fyrir öndverðu var til kominn. En þegar
overstep that which at (the)-beginning was to-it come But as-soon
er allar lögligar setningar eru niðrfallnar ok réttar refsingar,
as all lawful ordinances are fallen-down and right punishments
en úlög ok illskur koma í stað, ok þat verðr algangsi,
but lawlessness and wickednesses come in place and that becomes all-prevailing
svá at guði leiðisk, þá leitar hann þeirrar hefndar, er til
so that to-God is-wearisome then seeks he that vengeance which to
allra taki, svá sem afgerðirnar tóku. Þá kastar hann hatri ok
all take so as the-misdeeds took Then casts he hatred and
fjándskap niðr milli þeirra höfðingja, er fyrir þat ríki eru
enmity down between those chieftains who over that realm are
settir. Þar kann ok úáran at fylgja, ef eigi vill vel, ok taka
set There can also bad-year to follow if not will well and begin
þeir at þræta sín á milli, ok finnr hverr sök í annars
they to quarrel themselves on between and finds each charge in another's
ríki, til þess er þeir deila með manndrápum ok orrostum.
realm until that when they contend with man-slayings and battles

En þegar þat tekr at fylgjask ok dreifask yfir alla þá, er
But when that begins to follow and spread over all those who
ríkit byggva, úáran ok manndrápin ok orrostur, þá er þat
the-realm inhabit bad-year and the-man-slayings and battles then is that
ríki komit at auðn ok þrotum, ef sú æfi stendr nökkura
realm come to desolation and exhaustion if that age stands some
stund, ok ef nökkut hefir gætt verit eða haldit af lögum
while and if anything has kept been or held of laws
eða dugandi siðum um þær stundir, er fyrr váru taldar, þá
or doughty customs in those whiles which before were counted then
týnisk nú görsamliga, þegar slík æfi kemr, sem nú rœddum
perishes now thoroughly when such age comes as now talked
vér um, þvíat í orrostum týnask hinir beztu menninir, ok
we about because in battles perish the best the-men and
þeir sem kynbeztir eru. En úáran ok rán ok allskyns úfriðr,
those who best-born are But bad-year and robbery and all-kinds strife
sá er þá kann at verða, taka fjárhlutina frá þeim, er fyrr
that which then can to happen take the-goods from them who before
áttu ok með réttu höfðu fengit, ok hefir sá, er heldr má
owned and with right had gotten and has that-one who rather can
af öðrum grípa með ráni ok stuld. Ok þegar slík æfi kemr
from others grab with robbery and theft And when such age comes
yfir eitthvert land, þá hefir þat týnt hvárttveggja góðum
over some land then has it lost both good
siðum ok dugandi mönnum, fé ok frelsi ok allri gœzku,
customs and doughty men wealth and freedom and all goodness
svá lengi sem guð vill, at sá bardagi standi; en hann görir
so long as God wishes that that blow stand but he does
þat eptir sinni miskunn, þvíat hann á kost at frjálsa þat
that according-to his mercy because he has choice to free that
land, þegar hánum þykkir fólkit yfrit bart fyrir sínar syndir.
land when to-him seems the-people amply beaten for their sins

Nú mátt þú ætla, ef þat land frjálsisk með guðs miskunn, ok
Now may you think if that land is-freed with God's mercy and
kann síðan at koma undir einvaldskonung, hversu siðgott
can afterward to come under sole-ruling-king how well-mannered
fólk eða nytsamligt ríki þat mun þá vera hinar næstu stundir
people or useful realm that will then be the next whiles
eptir slíkan úróa, sem nú var um rætt, þar sem fyrr var
after such unrest as now was about talked there where before was
skipt ríkinu ok öllu fólkinu undir blandaðan siðafjölda ok
divided the-realm and all the-people under mixed multitude-of-customs and
ástundan margra höfðingja, ok leitaði við þat hverr, at nema ok
zeal of-many chieftains and sought on that each to learn and
mót öðrum snúa vélar ok svik, údyggleik ok allskyns illskur.
against others turn wiles and frauds faithlessness and all-kinds wickednesses

XXXVII · A RETAINER'S CONDUCT

The son asks how to conduct himself in the king's service whatever the times. The father bids him serve the lawful king, fear and love God, leave a good name behind, and love his lord without guile, shunning false oaths, whores, dice, bribes, and drunkenness. A retainer follows the king to church, stands within call, keeps his secrets, waits outside his chamber, and walks or rides about him in order. At table he talks quietly and neither eats nor drinks while the king drinks. He trains at riding, fencing, and throwing, fights bravely without boasting, and knows the weapons of a sea fight.

SON Þetta er víst auðsýnt, at ef þessir allir atburðir koma í
This is surely evident that if these all events come into
eitthvert ríki, þá týnisk þat at vísu, ef nökkura hríð stendr
some realm then perishes it for sure if some while stands
sú æfi; en þó munu víst dœmi til vera slíkra atburða, ok
that age but yet will surely examples to-it be of-such events and

er þess vís ván, at mikit ilt ok margföld úgæfa mun
is of-that certain expectation that great evil and manifold misfortune will
af standa, áðr en lúkisk, hvervetna er slíkir atburðir
from-it stand before than it-ends everywhere where such events
kunnu at verða. Þat er mér nú ok sýnt, ef með slíkri úgæfu
can to happen That is to-me now also shown if with such misfortune
týnask siðir eða lög í einuhverju ríki, sem nú hafi þér
perish customs or laws in some realm as now have you
rætt, þóat guð vili frjálsa þat um siðir af úfriði ok bardaga,
talked though God will free it at last from strife and battle
ok snúi því undir einn höfðingja eptir slíka úró, þá mun
and turn it under one chieftain after such unrest then will
þó fólkit alt, þat sem þá lifir eptir, úhœveskt ok siðlaust,
yet the-people all that which then lives after uncourteous and unmannerly
ok mun víst þurfa, svá sem þér sögðut fyrr, hvárttveggja
and will surely need so as you said before both
góðra kenninga, ok þó stundum mjök harðra refsinga; ok
good teachings and yet at-times very hard punishments and
þó mun sá er tekr við því ríki, þurfa langa stund ok
yet will that-one who takes with that realm need long while and
mikinn krapt ok harðendi, áðr en þat ríki komi aptr í
great strength and hardness before than that realm come back into
sama stað, er fyrr var, þóat hann sé vitr sjálfr, ef þat
same place where before was-it though he be wise himself if it
hafði ok nökkura dugandi siðu, áðr en slíkr úfriðr kœmi.
had also some doughty customs before than such strife came
Nú með því at ek hefi til þeirrar rœðu helzt forvitnazk,
Now with that that I have to that talk most been-curious
er ríki má mest spjall af taka, ok þat mun únytsamt
which a-realm may most damage from take and that will unprofitable
verða bæði fyrir siðartjón ok manntjón ok fjártjón, ef slíkir
become both for custom-loss and man-loss and wealth-loss if such

atburðir kunnu verða, enda hefi ek þar nú gnóg andsvör
events can happen moreover have I there now enough answers
fyrir fengit, hversu slíkir hlutir megu at berask, ef úgæfa
for gotten how such things may to happen if misfortune
vill til handa snúask; svá er mér ok þat ljóst orðit fyrir
will to hand turn so is to-me also that clear become before
augum, hversu stórir skaðar eða spjall megu verða af slíkum
eyes how great harms or damage may become from such
atburðum, ok þykki mér nú sú rœða helzti löng orðin, er
events and seems to-me now that talk all-too long become which
úhugnaðr má hverjum manni at vera, þeim er siðarmaðr
unpleasantness may to-each man to be to-that-one who mannered-man
vill heita, ok þess má hverr guð biðja, at eigi verði slík
will be-called and that may each God ask that not become such
æfi á hans dögum, hvárt sem hann er ríkr eða úrikr; af
age in his days whether that he is mighty or unmighty from
því vil ek nú þess biðja, sem ek hóf upp fyrir öndverðu,
that will I now of-that ask which I raised up at (the)-beginning
at þér sýnit mér þá siðu, er yðr sýnisk at mér beri
that you show me those customs which to-you seems that me befits
vel, ef ek staðfestumk í konungs þjónostu, hver æfi sem
well if I settle-myself in king's service whatever age that
þá kann til handa at bera; þó vilda ek þess guð biðja,
then can to hand to bear yet would-wish I of-that God ask
meðan mitt líf væri, at þá væri friðr ok ró ok góð æfi.
while my life were that then were peace and quiet and good age
FATHER Úkunnigt er þat öllum, hversu guð vill því til skipta,
Unknown is that to-all how God will that to divide
hvern tíma hverjum manni er auðit uppi at vera. En ef maðr
what time to-each man is granted up to be But if a-man
vill víst konungs maðr vera ok berr þat í þær stundir, er
will surely king's man be and bears that into those whiles which

útímar ok úgæfur vilja vera fyrir sakar margra höfðingja eða
bad-times and misfortunes will be for sake of-many chieftains or
nökkurs úfriðar, þá varðaði hánum þat miklu, at hann tœki
some strife then concerned him that much that he took
þann at þýðask, er lögligast væri til ríkis kominn ok þeirra
that-one to approach who most-lawfully were to realm come and those
siða vildi helzt gæta, er réttir konungar ok siðsamir höfðu
customs would most guard which right kings and mannerly had
áðr fyrir hánum sjálfir haldit. Þá á hann sízt ván
before before him themselves kept Then has he least expectation
háskasamligra svara fyrir sína fylgð, hvárt sem hann þarf til
of-dangerous answers for his following whether that he needs to-it
at taka annars heims eða þessa. En þar er þú spurðir
to take of-(the)-other world or this But there where you asked
þess, hverja siðu er þú skyldir hafa, er þú yrðir bundinn
that which customs that you should have when you became bound
í konungs þjónostu, þá má þat nú vel skýra fyrir þér.
in king's service then may that now well explain before you
Þat skalt þú hafa upphaf at siðum þínum, at þú lát aldrigi
That shall you have beginning to customs your that you let never
hug þinn utan guðs aga eða hrælzlu, ok elska hann
mind your outside God's discipline or fear and love him
umfram alla hluti, því næst elskaðu alla ráðvendi. Ven þik
beyond all things that next love-you all integrity Accustom yourself
at vera jafngjarnan, réttlátan ok hófsaman í öllum hlutum.
to be equally-eager righteous and moderate in all things
Lát þér jafnan í hug koma þinn endadag, ok ver sem
Let to-you always into mind come your end-day and be as
glœpvarastr. Minnsk þess, at margr lifir sá litla hríð,
crime-wariest Remember that that many lives that-one little while
er lengi lifir athæfi hans eptir hann, ok varðar þat miklu,
whose long lives conduct his after him and concerns that much

hvers minnask er eptir hann. Þvíat sumir verða frægir af
what is-remembered which after him Because some become famous from
góðum verkum, ok lifa þau jafnan eptir hann, ok er jafnan
good works and live they always after him and is always
hans sœmd lifandi, þóat hann sé sjálfr dauðr. Sumir verða
his honor living though he be himself dead Some become
frægir af illum hlutum, ok bera þeir jafnan lifandi skömm,
famous from evil things and bear they always living shame
þóat þeir sé sjálfir dauðir, þegar getit verðr þeirra athæfis,
though they be themselves dead when mentioned becomes their conduct
ok svá frændr þeirra ok allr afspringr, sá er af þeim
and so kinsmen their and all offspring that which from them
kemr eptir þeirra daga, þá bera þessa skömm. En sá er
comes after their days then bear this shame But that is
mestr fjöldi, er svá fellr niðr sem búfé, at hvárki verðr
greatest multitude which so falls down as livestock that neither becomes
getit at illu né góðu, ok skalt þú þat víst vita, at þat
mentioned for evil nor good and shall you that surely know that that
er eigi at réttu mannsins óðal; þvíat öll skepna önnur var
is not by right man's patrimony because all creation other was
sköpuð manninum til viðrvistar ok skemtanar, en maðrinn var
created for-man for presence and entertainment but man was
bæði skapaðr til veraldligra gersima ok svá til annars heims
both created for worldly treasures and so for other world's
gersima, ef hann vill öðlask þat sem hann er til skapaðr. Ok
treasures if he will obtain that which he is for created And
skyldi því hverr við þat leita, meðan hann lifði, at leifa
should therefore each on that seek while he lived to leave
þá nökkura hluti eptir sik, er hans væri at góðu getit,
then some things after himself which his were with good mentioned
þegar hann felli ífrá; en allra helzt er þat skylt konungum
when he fell away but of-all most is that binding on-kings

ok öðrum stórhöfðingjum ok öllum þeim, er þá þýðask ok
and other great-chieftains and all those who them approach and
í þeirra embætti bindask; fyrir því at maðr verðr eigi virðr
in their office are-bound for that that a-man becomes not valued
síðan sem kotkarl, heldr er hann virðr sem landstjórnarmaðr
afterward as cottager rather is he valued as land-governing-man
eða einnhverr höfðingi, ok svá á hann at vera, ef hann
or some chieftain and so ought he to be if he
vill þeim siðum fylgja, er hánum ok hans nafni hœfir.
will those customs follow which him and his name befit
Sé við því, at görask tvíslœgr í vináttu höfðingja milli,
Look against that to become double-sly in friendship of-chieftains between
þvíat þat gera einarðarlausir menn, ok er engi sá öruggr
because that do inconstant men and is no-one that-one secure
um sína dáðsemi, er þat gerir. Elska höfðingja þinn vel fyrir
about his valor who that does Love chieftain your well before
utan allar flærðir, meðan þú vilt hánum þjónat hafa, ok drag
outside all frauds while you will him served have and draw
aldri þýðu eða samræði til hans úvina, ef þú vilt dáðrakkr
never friendliness or intimacy to his enemies if you will valor-brave
vera. Guð einn skalt þú elska umfram höfðingja þinn, en
be God alone shall you love beyond chieftain your but
engan mann. En þessir hlutir eru þeir, er þú skalt framarliga
no man But these things are those which you shall foremost
varask, at þú verðir eigi við kendr: eiðar úsœrir ok lygivitni,
beware that you become not with known oaths untrue and lie-witness
pútnahús eða samsætisdrykkjur, fyrir utan í konungs húsi
whore-house or company-drinkings before outside in king's house
eða at samkundum réttum, tenningakast um silfr, mútugirni
or at gatherings right dice-throwing for silver bribe-greed
ok alla aðra ranga fégirni; þvíat þessir hlutir eru hverjum
and all other wrong money-greed because these things are to-each

konungsmanni mikil skömm þessa heims, en hann hlýtr
king's-man great shame of-this world but he gets
af sálutjón annars heims, ef hann verðr í þessum
from-it soul-loss of-(the)-other world if he becomes in these
hlutum tekinn. Hvar sem þú ert staddr, þá ger þik aldrigi
things taken Where that you are placed then make yourself never
drukkinn, þvíat iðuliga má svá at berask, at þú sér þá kallaðr
drunk because frequently may so to happen that you be then called
til mála manna ok til yfirsjónar, eða elligar þurfir þú um þín
to cases of-men and to oversight or else need you about your
vandamál at væla; ok ef slíkir hlutir kunnu manni meðan
trouble-matters to handle and if such things can to-(a)-man meanwhile
til handa at bera, er hann er drukkinn, þá er hann til enskis
to hand to bear while he is drunk then is he for nothing
færr; ok hœfir fyrir því hverjum manni við ofdrykkju at sjá,
able and befits for that to-each man against over-drinking to look
allra helzt konungsmönnum, ok þeim er siðarmenn vilja heita,
of-all most to-king's-men and those who mannered-men will be-called
þvíat þeir verða optast til kallaðir yfir mál manna at sjá eða
because they become most-often to-it called over cases of-men to look or
til annarra nauðsynja; enda skulu þeir hverjum manni góð
to other needs moreover shall they to-each man good
dœmi gera, ef nökkurr vildi eptir þeirra siðum nema at lifa.
examples make if any would after their customs learn to live
Þessi vanyfli skalt þú ok hafa at þínum hag ok athæfi
These duties shall you also have to your condition and conduct
ok eigi gleyma, ef þú ert konungsmaðr. Þú skalt opt vera
and not forget if you are king's-man You shall often be
kendr í nánd höfðingja þínum. Snemma um morna skalt þú
seen in nearness to-chieftain your Early in mornings shall you
hánum til kirkju fylgja, ef hann fylgir því athæfi, er hann
him to church follow if he follows that conduct which he

á með réttu at hafa, ok hlýða athugasamliga tíðum þínum,
ought with right to have and listen attentively to-hours your
meðan þú ert at kirkju staddr, biðja þér miskunnar við
while you are at church placed ask for-yourself mercy from
guð með áhyggju. En þegar er konungr gengr frá kirkju,
God with care But as-soon as (the)-king goes from church
þá fylg þú hánum ok ver svá nökkur nær hánum staddr, at
then follow you him and be so somewhat near him placed that
þú sér í hans augliti, at hann megi kost eiga at krefja þik
you be in his sight that he may choice have to demand you
til einnahverra hluta, ef hann vill þik til hafa kallat; en eigi
for some things if he will you to have called but not
skalt þú svá nærgöngull gerask hánum, at hánum virðisk sem
shall you so near-going become to-him that to-him it-seems as-if
þröngð sé at þinni návist, ef hann vill annattveggja tala við
crowding be in your presence if he will either talk with
þá menn, er hann heimtir á mál við sik, eða einahverja
those men whom he summons to speech with himself or some
þá hluti frammi hafa, er hann vill at leyndarmál sé. Enga
those things forward have which he wishes that secret be No
hluti skalt þú þá forvitna við höfðingja þinn, er þú sér,
things shall you then be-curious-about with chieftain your which you see
at hann vill at leyniligir sé, nema hann kalli þik til vitorðs
that he wishes that secret be unless he call you to knowledge
með sér. En ef þeir hlutir görask nökkurir, er höfðingi
with himself But if those things happen some which chieftain
þinn hefir þik at trúnaðarmanni, ok hann vill at leyndir sé,
your has you for confidant and he wishes that secret be
þá hirð þú þá vandliga með vitrligri haldinyrði, ok gersk eigi
then keep you them carefully with wise discretion and become not
uppskár um þá hluti, er undir þínum trúnaði eru fólgnir.
revealing about those things which under your trust are hidden

Því skalt þú ok venja þik, at þú vitja árla um morna
That shall you also accustom yourself that you visit early in mornings
konungs herbergis, áðr en hann sé uppstaðinn, ok ver þú þó
king's lodging before than he be up-risen and be you yet
þveginn ok vaskaðr ok búinn allri atgervi, ok bíð hans
washed and cleaned and ready with-all accomplishment and wait for-him
í nánd herbergi, þar til er hann vill hafa uppstaðit. Gakk
in nearness to-(the)-lodging there to when he will have up-risen Go
því at eins inn í herbergi konungs, at hann láti kalla þik.
that at only in into lodging of-(the)-king that he let call you
En í hverjum stað sem konungr lætr þik til sín kalla, þá
But in whatever place that (the)-king lets you to himself call then
gakk þú yfirhafnarlauss til hans. En ef þat er svá árla um
go you over-garment-less to him But if it is so early in
morna, at þú hefir hann eigi fyrr funnit, þá bjóð hánum
morning that you have him not before found then bid him
góðan dag með þeim orðum, er ek hefi þér fyrr sagt, en
good day with those words which I have you before told but
þú gakk þó hánum eigi nærri en hann hafi yfrit rúm at
you go yet to-him not nearer than he have ample room to
tala við þá, er næstir hánum eru, ok nem þá staðar fyrir
talk with those who nearest him are and take then stand before
hánum. En ef hann heimtir þik nærri sér ok vill tala við
him But if he summons you near himself and will talk with
þik leyniliga, þá sezk þú á kné fyrir hánum svá nærri,
you secretly then set-yourself you on knee before him so near
at þú megir vel hlýða hans einmælum, ok þá skikkjulauss.
that you may well hear his private-speech and then cloakless
En ef hann biðr þik sitja, þá mátt þú leggja yfir þik
But if he bids you sit then may you lay over yourself
skikkju þína, ef þú vilt, ok sitja þar sem hann býðr þér.
cloak your if you will and sit there where he bids you

Nú berr svá at, at konungr gengr at skemta sér, hvárt
Now bears so to-it that (the)-king goes to amuse himself whether
sem þat er í kaupstað eða í heraði, eða hvar sem hann er
that it is in market-town or in district or wherever that he is
staddr, ok fylgir þú hánum ok þínir lögunautar, hvárt sem
placed and follow you him and your fellows whether that
þér erut vápnaðir eða vápnlausir, þá er svá fegrst fylgð yður,
you are armed or weaponless then is so fairest following your
at þér gangit jafnmargir á hváratveggja hlið hánum, ok þó
that you go equally-many on either side of-him and yet
hvárgir með böllúttum flokki. Efnit svá til, at hann verði
neither with ball-shaped troop Arrange-you so to-it that he be
í miðju yðru föruneyti staddr, þar sem þér gangit, ok
in (the)-middle-of your company placed there where you go and
þér verðit jafnmargir á hváratveggja hlið hánum eða fram ífrá
you be equally-many on either side of-him or forward from
hánum sem á bak; en engi yðarr gangi svá nær hánum, at
him as on back but no-one of-you go so near him that
hann hafi eigi yfrit rúm at tala við þá menn, er hann vill
he have not ample room to talk with those men whom he will
til sín hafa kallat, hvárt sem hann vill tala við þá í hæð
to himself have called whether that he will talk with them in loudness
eða í leynd. En þóat hann kalli engan mann á tal við sik,
or in secret But though he call no man to talk with himself
þá látit hann ganga millum yðar, svá at hann hafi jafnan
then let-you him go between you so that he have always
mikit rúm alla vega um sik. En ef konungr ríðr at skemta
great room all ways about himself But if (the)-king rides to amuse
sér ok fylgir þú hánum ok þínir lögunautar, þá háttit
himself and follow you him and your fellows then arrange-you
hina sömu lund reið yðarri, sem ek hefi áðr sagt um
the same way riding your as I have before said about

göngu yðra, ok því þá fjarmeir, at engi saurr stökkvi af
going your and the then farther that no dirt splash from
yðrum hestum ok á konunginn, þóat þér ríðit mjök hart.
your horses and onto the-king though you ride very hard
Nú kallar konungr á þik með ákveðnu nafni, þá varask
Now calls (the)-king on you with appointed name then beware
þú þat, at þú kveðir hvárki hú né há eða hvat á móti,
you that that you say neither hoo nor ha or what on against
tak heldr svá til orðs: „Já, herra, ek heyri gjarna.“ Varask
take rather so to word Yes lord I hear gladly Beware
þú þat ok vandliga, at þú hlaupir eigi snemma í át eða
you that also carefully that you run not early into food or
drykkju um morna með þeim mönnum, er gjómenn eru eða
drink in morning with those men who gluttons are or
úsiðarmenn. Bíð siðsamliga konungs borða, ok gakk til borða
unmannerly-men Wait mannerly for-king's tables and go to tables
með konungi hverju sinni, er þú ert innan hirðar staddr. En
with (the)-king each time when you are within court placed But
þá er konungr gengr til borðs með hirð sína, þá eigu allir
then when (the)-king goes to table with court his then ought all
hirðmenn hans at fylgja góðum siðum ok fagri skipan, at
retainers his to follow good customs and fair order that
eigi hlaupi hverr fyrir annan fram sem siðlausir menn, heldr
not run each before another forward as unmannerly men rather
á þá hverr at vita sína rétta göngu ok samsætismann, ok
ought then each to know his right going and table-fellow and
hafa þá hina sömu skipan í göngu sinni, sem þeir eigu
have then the same order in going their as they ought
síðan at hafa í sætum sínum. Ganga tveir ok tveir saman
afterward to have in seats their Go two and two together
sessar eða samsætismenn laugar at taka, hvárt sem laugar
bench-mates or table-fellows washings to take whether that washings

verða gefnar úti eða inni, ok ganga svá síðan til borða
become given outside or inside and go so afterward to tables
hverr eptir sinni skipan, svá sem hann veit sitt rúm skipat
each after his order so as he knows his room ordered
fyrir öndverðu. Svá eigu hirðmenn hljóðir at vera yfir borðum,
at (the)-beginning So ought retainers quiet to be over tables
at ekki orð heyri þeir, er á tvær hendr þeim sitja, er við
that no word hear those who on two hands of-them sit who with
talask; svá tali hverr lágt við sinn sessa, at engi heyri
talk-to-each-other so talk each low with his bench-mate that no-one hear
nema þeir er við rœðask, þá er bæði gótt hljóð ok góðir
except those who with talk-together then is both good quiet and good
siðir í konungs húsi. En þat spillir eigi siðum þínum, at
customs in king's house But that spoils not customs your that
þú neytir matar þíns vel ok skjótt eptir þinni nauðsyn, ok
you take food your well and quickly according-to your need and
svá drykkjar yfir borðum. En við því skalt þú jafnan sjá,
so drink over tables But against that shall you always look
at gera þik drukkinn. Því skalt þú augum jafnan leiða til
to make yourself drunk That shall you eyes always lead to
konungs sætis, at sjá hvat fram ferr um hans þjónostu, ok
king's seat to see what forward goes about his service and
ver varr um þat jafnan, er þú sér at konungr hefir drykk
be aware about that always when you see that (the)-king has drink
á munni, þá et þú eigi meðan hann neytir drykkjar síns;
at mouth then eat you not while he takes drink his
ok þóat þú hafir drykk í hendi, þá set þú niðr ker þitt ok
and though you have drink in hand then set you down cup your and
neyt eigi þíns drykkjar. Slíka hina sömu tign skalt þú veita
take not your drink Such the same dignity shall you give
dróttningu, sem þú veitir konungi í öllum stöðum, eptir
to-(the)-queen as you give to-(the)-king in all places according-to

því sem nú hefi ek sagt. En ef konungr hefir yfir borði með
that which now have I said But if (the)-king has over table with
sér þann gest, er slíka tign á at þiggja, annattveggja
himself that guest who such dignity ought to receive either
konung eða jarl, eða erkibyskup eða ljóðbyskup, þá skalt þú
king or earl or archbishop or diocesan-bishop then shall you
gæta hins sama siðar, er áðr hefi ek sagt þér. En ef mikill
keep the same custom which before have I told you But if great
er fjöldi ríkra manna yfir borði með konungi, þá
is (the)-multitude of-mighty men over table with (the)-king then
þarftu eigi, nema þú vilir, fleirum mönnum þenna sið at
need-you not unless you will to-more men this custom to
veita um drykk þinn, nema konungi ok dróttningu, nema því
give about drink your except to-(the)-king and queen except that
at eins at konungr sé nökkurr annarr yfir borði með hánum.
at only that king be some other over table with him
Nú berr svá til, at konungs hirð sitr í konungs herbergi,
Now bears so to-it that king's court sits in king's lodging
ok er eigi borð frammi, ok koma inngangandi þeir höfðingjar
and is not table forward and come walking-in those chieftains
er konungr vill sjálfr með tign fagna, þá eigu allir menn
whom (the)-king will himself with dignity welcome then ought all men
eigi síðr at rísa upp í móti þeim, en í móti sínum
not less to rise up in against them than in against their
höfðingja, ok fagna þeim blíðliga, eptir því sem þeir vitu,
chieftain and welcome them gently according-to that which they know
at konungs er vili til. En þessa tign á hverr lögunautr
that king's is will to-it But this dignity ought each fellow
öðrum at veita, ef sá kemr inn farandi, er áðr hefir
to-another to give if that-one comes in going who before has
úti verit, ok gengr þar til sætis síns, sem hann á gang
outside been and goes there to seat his where he has going

réttan ok skipan, þá eigu þeir tveir upp at rísa móti hánum,
right and order then ought those two up to rise against him
er næstir hánum sitja á sína hönd hvárr, ok fagna hánum
who nearest him sit on his hand each and welcome him
blíðliga ok biðja hann vel kominn með sér. Hvárt sem
gently and bid him well come with themselves Whether that
konungsmenn eru staddir í samsæti, eða eru þeir í fylgð
king's-men are placed in company or are they in following
með konungi, eða ganga þeir allir saman til sinnar skemtanar,
with (the)-king or go they all together to their amusement
þar sem þeir verða mjök fyrir augum annarra manna, þá eigu
there where they become much before eyes of-other men then ought
þeir jafnan heldr at vera í hljóðara lagi ok siðprúðir í
they always rather to be in quieter manner and well-mannered in
látœði sínu, fagryrðir, ok sjá við öllu saurmæli. Slíka hluti
bearing their fair-spoken and look against all foul-speech Such things
alla sem nú hefi ek þér sagða, þá eigu allir konungsmenn
all as now have I you told then ought all king's-men
at hafa ok fylgja, ef þeir vilja siðprúðir heita. En hversu
to have and follow if they will well-mannered be-called But however
sem aðrir gera, þá gættu þó þessa vel, er nú hefi ek
that others do then keep-you yet this well which now have I
sagt, ok kenn hverjum holliga, þeim er af þér vill nema.
said and teach to-each faithfully that-one who from you will learn
Nú berr svá at, at lögunautar þínir vilja til skemtanar ok
Now bears so to-it that fellows your will to amusement and
drykkju ganga frá konungs herbergi, þú tekr ok leyfi af
drinking go from king's lodging you take also leave from
konungi til skemtanargöngu, þá skalt þú þessa skemtan elska,
(the)-king for amusement-walk then shall you this amusement love
sem nú vil ek þér kunna gera. Ef þú ert staddr þar sem
which now will I to-you known make If you are placed there where

hestum má ríða, ok átt þú þér sjálfr hest, þá stíg þú á
horses may-one ride and have you for-yourself self horse then step you onto
hest þinn með þungum vápnum, ok tem þik til, hversu þú
horse your with heavy weapons and train yourself to-it how you
megir þess sitja á hesti þínum, er bæði sé fegrst ok fastast.
may of-that sit on horse your which both be fairest and firmest
Ven fót þinn at þrýsta fast ístöðum með réttum leggjum,
Accustom foot your to press fast stirrups with straight legs
ok lát hæl þinn nökkut svá síga lægra en tær, nema því at
and let heel your somewhat so sink lower than toes except that at
eins, at þú þurfir framan at varask álaga, ok ven þik þó
only that you need in-front to beware attacks and accustom yourself yet
fast at sitja með þrýstundum leggjum. Hyl vel brjóst þitt ok
fast to sit with pressing legs Cover well breast your and
alla limu þína með loknum skildi. Ven þú hina vinstri hönd
all limbs your with closed shield Accustom you the left hand
vel at gæta beizls ok mundriða, en hina hœgri hönd ven þú
well to keep bridle and reins but the right hand accustom you
at hœfa vel glefju álagi með fulltingjanda brjóstafli. Ven
to aim well (the)-lance's thrust with helping breast-strength Accustom
þú hest þinn góðan um at kasta á hlaupanda skrefi, ok haf
you horse your good about to turn at running pace and have
hann hvárttveggja vel at holdum ok hreinan, skúa þú hann
him both well in flesh and clean shoe you him
vel ok fastliga með sterkjum ok fögrum öllum hestbúnaði.
well and firmly with strong and fair all horse-gear
En ef þú ert staddr í kaupstað eða einumhverjum þeim
But if you are placed in market-town or some that
stað, er eigi má hesta nýta til skemtanar, þá skalt þú
place where not may-one horses use for amusement then shall you
þessa skemtan elska, at ganga til herbergis þíns ok búa
this amusement love to go to lodging your and dress

þik þungum vápnum; leita þér ok þess félaga, er með
yourself with-heavy weapons seek for-yourself also that fellow who with
þér vili leik fremja, ok þú veizt at vel er til þess lærðr
you will play perform and you know that well is for that taught
at berjask undan skildi eða buklara, hvárt sem heldr er
to fight from-under shield or buckler whether that rather is-it
útlenzkr eða hérlenzkr. Tak þú ok jafnan til þessa leiks
foreign or native Take you also always for this play
þung vápn, annattveggja brynju eða þungan panzara ok haf
heavy weapons either mail-coat or heavy gambeson and have
í hendi þér annattveggja þungan skjöld eða buklara ok
in hand your either heavy shield or buckler and
þungt sverð. Í þeim leik skalt þú við leita at nema hœfilig
heavy sword In that play shall you on seek to learn fitting
högg ok nauðsynlig ok haldkœmlig ok góð viðrslög. Kenn
blows and necessary and holding-useful and good parries Teach
þér ok at hylja þik vel með þínum skildi, ok þat at þú
yourself also to cover yourself well with your shield and that that you
mættir þessa hluti vel varazk fá, ef þú átt við úvin þinn
might these things well guarded get if you have with enemy your
at skipta. Ef þér þykkir nökkut undir at vera vel lærðr af
to deal If to-you seems anything under-it to be well taught in
þessarri iðrótt, þá haf þenna leik tysvar um dag, ef þú mátt
this skill then have this play twice in day if you may
við komask; en engan dag lát þú svá allan út ganga, at
on get but no day let you so all out go that
þú leikir eigi þenna leik einu sinni, nema heilagt sé, þvíat
you play not this play one time except holy be-it because
þessi iðrótt er sœmilig at kunna hverjum konungsmanni, ok
this skill is honorable to know for-each king's-man and
þó nauðsynlig, ef til þarf at taka. Ef þú verðr móðr af
yet necessary if to-it needs-one to take If you become weary from

þessum leik, ok fýsir þik at drekka, þá drekk þú smám ok
this play and desires you to drink then drink you in-small-sips and
tíðum, svá at þik þyrsti eigi; en sé við því, at þú drekkir
often so that you thirst not but look against that that you drink
þik brúnskarpan í þessum leik, en enn síðr drukkinn.
yourself brow-sharp in this play but yet less drunk
En ef mann fýsir ýmisra leika eða skemtan frammi at hafa,
But if a-man desires various plays or entertainment forward to have
þá eru þeir leikar, er maðr má vel úti fremja, ef hánum
then are those plays which a-man may well outside perform if to-him
sýnisk þat skemtanarsamligra. Þar til skalt þú gera þér
it-seems that more-entertaining There to shall you make for-yourself
eitt skapt, ok heldr þyngra en spjótskapt, ok reis síðan
one shaft and rather heavier than spear-shaft and raise afterward
mark bakka millim, svá sem skottein, þar við mátt þú nema,
mark banks between so as target there by may you learn
hversu langt eða beint þú mátt spjóti skotit fá, svá at skot
how far or straight you may with-spear shot get so that shot
þitt verði haldkœmt. Þat er ok góð iðrótt ok þó skemtan at
your become holding-useful That is also good skill and yet entertainment to
ganga með boga sinn í skotbakka með öðrum mönnum. Sú
go with bow his to shooting-bank with other men That
skemtan er ok góð ok haldkœm, ef maðr venr sik at kasta
entertainment is also good and holding-useful if a-man accustoms himself to throw
af slöngu hvárttveggja langt ok þó beint, bæði af stafslöngu
from sling both far and yet straight both from staff-sling
ok handslöngu, eða vápnsteini vel at kasta. En forðum var sá
and hand-sling or weapon-stone well to throw But formerly was that
siðr, at allir þeir menn, er fullkomnir vildu vera í þesskyns
custom that all those men who perfect would be in such
iðróttum, at vera vel lærðir til vápna ok riddaraskaps, þá
skills to be well taught to weapons and knighthood then

vöndu þeir báðar hendr jafnkringar í öllu vápnaskipti til
accustomed they both hands equally-deft in all weapon-exchange to-it
at grípa, ok við þat leitaðu, ef þú þykkisk þat finna, at þú
to grip and on that seek-you if you think-yourself that to-find that you
hefir til þess náttúru; þvíat þeir eru bezt at sér görvir í
have to that nature because they are best at themselves made in
þeirri iðrótt ok hættastir sínum úvinum, er svá eru lærðir.
that skill and most-dangerous to-their enemies who so are taught
Ger þér sem leiðust öll manndráp, ok ver skjarr
Make for-yourself as most-loathsome all man-slayings and be shy
við, fyrir utan réttar refsingar eða almenniligar orrostur. En
at-them before outside right punishments or general battles But
í almenniligri orrostu eptir réttu boði höfðingja þíns,
in general battle according-to right command of-chieftain your
þá skalt þú eigi meir skirrask manndráp heldr en eitthvert
then shall you not more shun man-slaying rather than some
verk þat annarra, er þú veizt at gott verk er ok rétt. Sýn
work that of-others which you know that good work is and right Show
þik í orrostu djarfan ok úfælinn; veg þá með hœfiligum
yourself in battle bold and unfearful strike then with fitting
höggum ok haldkœmum, eptir því sem fyrr hafðir þú
blows and holding-useful according-to that which before had you
numit, svá sem af góðu skapi ok þó drjúgligri reiði. Eigi
learned so as from good mood and yet steady anger Not
skaltu berjask með ljúgandi höggum eða þarflausum lögum,
shall-you fight with lying blows or needless thrusts
eða með skjálgum skotum, svá sem felmtandi maðr. Gá
or with squinting shots so as panicking man Heed
þú þess, at þú kunnir at varask annars vígkœni. Gerstu
you that that you know to beware another's war-skill Make-yourself
í öllum orrostum góðr þrautar, en eigi áhleypinn, ok allra
in all battles good of-endurance but not rushing and of-all

sízt hœlinn. Hygg þú jafnan at því, at aðrir megi bera þér
least boastful Consider you always at that that others may bear you
gott vitni, en ekki hœl þú sjálfr verkum þínum, at eigi
good witness but not boast you yourself works your that not
berisk svá til, at eptir liðnar stundir verði á þik hefnda
happen so to-it that after passed whiles become on you vengeance
leitat eptir fráfall þeirra manna, er mikill þótti skaði at
sought after (the)-fall of-those men who great seemed loss to
vera, ok sé á þér hefnt sakar tilteygingar sjálfs þíns orða.
be and be on you avenged for-sake-of (the)-lure of-self your words
Ef þú ert staddr í orrostu á landi, ok skal á fœti berjask,
If you are placed in battle on land and shall-one on foot fight
ok ert staddr í belti svínfylktrar fylkingar, þá varðar þat
and are placed in (the)-ball of-swine-arrayed battle-line then concerns that
miklu, at vel verði gætt í öndverðri vápnasamankvámu, at
much that well be kept in (the)-first weapons'-meeting that
eigi taki hliðask eða rof á gerask bundinni skjaldborg; ok
not begin give-way or breach on happen bound shield-wall and
þarftu þat at varask, at þú bindir aldrigi þína hina fremri
need-you that to beware that you bind never your the front
skjaldarrönd undir skildi annars. Þat skalt þú ok víst varask,
shield-rim under shield of-another That shall you also surely beware
at aldrigi látir þú spjót þitt í fylkingu laust, nema þú hafir
that never let you spear your in battle-line loose unless you have
tvau, þvíat betra er eitt spjót í fylkingu á velli en tvau sverð
two because better is one spear in battle-line on field than two swords
til bardaga. En ef á skipum er barzk, þá vel þú þér tvau
for fighting But if on ships is fought then choose you for-yourself two
spjót, þau er þú skjótir eigi frá þér, annat þat sem langskept
spears those which you shoot not from you one that which long-shafted
sé, svá at vel taki skipa meðal, en annat þat sem skamskept
be so that well reach ships between but (the)-other that which short-shafted

sé, ok þú megir vel neyta, er þú leitar til uppgöngu. Misjöfn
be and you may well use when you seek for boarding Uneven
skotvápn skal á skipum hafa, hvárttveggja þunga pálstafi
missile-weapons shall-one on ships have both heavy bolts
ok létt fleygigaflök. Leitaðu með þungum pálstafi í skjöld
and light throwing-darts Seek-you with heavy bolt into (the)-shield
annars, en síðan ef skjöld berr af hánum, þá leitaðu á sjálfan
of-another but afterward if shield bears off him then seek-you on himself
hann léttu fleygigaflaki, ef þú mátt eigi lagi ná á hann með
him with-light throwing-dart if you may not thrust get on him with
langskeptu spjóti. Svá skal á skipi berjask sem á landi með
long-shafted spear So shall-one on ship fight as on land with
góðu gefnageði ok með hœfiligum öllum höggum, en hvergi
good spirit and with fitting all blows but nowhere
skalt þú eyða vápnum þínum með hégómligu brottvarpi.
shall you waste weapons your with vain throwing-away
Margskyns vápn má þau vel neyta á skipi, er maðr
Many-kinds weapons may-one those well use on ship which a-man
kemr eigi við á landi at hafa, nema því at eins, at hann
gets not at on land to have except that at only that he
sé í borg eða í kastala. Á skipi eru góðir langorfsljár ok
be in town or in castle On ship are good long-handled-scythes and
langskeptar skeggexar, slagbrandar ok stafslöngur, skeptiflettur
long-shafted beard-axes battle-clubs and staff-slings shaft-flails
ok allskyns annat vápngrjót; lásbogar ok handbogar eru þar
and all-kinds other weapon-stones crossbows and hand-bows are there
góðir ok allskyns önnur skotvápn; en kol ok brennusteinn
good and all-kinds other missile-weapons but coal and brimstone
er höfuðvápn allra þeirra, er nú hefi ek nefnt. Blýsteyptir
is chief-weapon of-all those which now have I named Lead-cast
hersporar ok góðir atgeirar eru ok góð vápn á skipi.
caltrops and good halberds are also good weapons on ship

Húnkastali er ok góðr at nýta með öllum þessum vápnum
Top-castle is also good to use with all these weapons
ok mörgum öðrum, ok húndreginn fjórmyntr slagbrandr með
and many others and top-drawn four-mouthed battle-club with
stálhörðum fleinum. Róðrgöltr er góðr í skipaorrostu með
steel-hard points Rowing-boar is good in ship-battle with
járnuðum múla. En því þurfu menn sik áðr vel at læra
ironed snout But therefore need men themselves before well to teach
til slíkra hluta, fyrr en þeir þurfi til at taka, þvíat eigi vitu
for such things before than they need to to take because not know
þeir stund eða tíma, nær þeir þurfu hvers vápns at neyta. En
they hour or time when they need of-which weapon to use But
gá þú þess, at þú samna sem flestum vápnum, meðan þú
heed you that that you gather as most weapons while you
þarft þeirra eigi, þvíat þat er sœmd at eiga jafnan góð vápn,
need them not because that is honor to have always good weapons
ok góð féhirzla í nauðsynjum, ef til þarf at taka. En þann
and good treasury in needs if to-it needs-one to take But that
umbúnað þarf á skipi at hafa til varnar: víggyrðla vel ok
equipment needs-one on ship to have for defense war-girdles well and
vígæsa ramliga, leggja hátt viður ok gera undir viðu fjögur
war-ramparts strongly lay high beams and make under beams four
gagnskeytilig hlið svá mikil, at einn maðr eða báðir tveir
counter-shooting gates so great that one man or both two
megi rúmliga hlaupa með öllum vápnum sínum gögnum; en
may roomily run with all weapons their through but
gera með bryggjum utan tvá vega slétt stræti til ástigs hjá
make with gangways outside two ways smooth street for boarding beside
viðum. Þenna umbúnað þarf at remma vel ok fastliga, at
beams This equipment needs-one to brace well and firmly that
eigi skjoplisk, þóat skjótliga sé áhlaupit. Breiðir skildir eru á
not it-shift though quickly be the-attack Broad shields are on

skipi góðir til hlífðar ok allskyns brynjur, en þó eru panzarar
ship good for protection and all-kinds mail-coats but yet are gambesons
höfuðvápn til hlífðar á skipum, görvir af blautum léreptum
chief-weapon for protection on ships made of soft linens
ok vel svörtuðum; góðir hjálmar ok hangandi stálhúfur. Mörg
and well blackened good helmets and hanging steel-caps Many
vápn eru þau enn önnur, er nýta má á skipi, ok þykki
weapons are those still other which use may-one on ship and seems
mér eigi nauðsyn af fleirum at telja en nú hefi ek uppnefnt.
to-me not need of more to count than now have I up-named

XXXVIII · FIGHTING ON HORSEBACK

The son asks about fighting on land. The father describes how to arm a horse with a strong saddle and girths, a padded covering under horse-mail, a strong bridle, and a linen mask, and a rider with padded hose, mail hose and breeches, knee guards, a breastplate, mail, two swords, a helmet, a shield, and a lance. A horn bow or a light crossbow may also be used from the saddle.

SON Með því at vér höfum þá rœðu í munni, er helzt
With that that we have that talk in mouth which most
lærir þat, hversu maðr skal við sókn eða vörn búask móti
teaches that how a-man shall for attack or defense make-ready against
úvinum sínum, þá sýnisk mér svá sem enn þurfi nökkut at
enemies his then seems to-me so as-if still need somewhat to
rœða um þat, hversu á landi skal berjask, annattveggja
talk about that how on land shall-one fight either
á hestum eða borgir at verja eða til at sœkja, ok ef yðr
on horses or towns to defend or to-it to attack and if to-you
sýnisk þar nökkut um at rœða, þá vil ek gjarna til hlýða.
it-seems there something about to talk then will I gladly to-it listen

FATHER Sá maðr er á hesti skal berjask, þá verðr hann þess
That man who on horse shall fight then must he that
vel gæta, er fyrr höfum vér sagt, at vera vel lærðr til allrar
well keep which before have we said to be well taught to all
vígkœni á hesti. En þenna umbúnað þarf hann um hest
war-skill on horse But this equipment needs he about horse
sinn at búa: hann þarf at vera vel skúaðr ok ramliga; svá
his to prepare he needs to be well shod and strongly so
þarf hann ok um söðul sinn at búa ramliga, at hann sé
needs he also about saddle his to prepare strongly that it be
sterkr ok hábogaðr ok búinn með sterkum gjörðum ok öllu
strong and high-bowed and furnished with strong girths and all
öðru söðulreiði, ok öruggr suzingull yfir miðjan söðul,
other saddle-gear and secure surcingle over (the)-middle-of saddle
ok svá brjóstgjörð fyrir framan. Hest þarf svá at búa,
and so breast-girth before in-front Horse needs-one so to equip
bæði fyrir framan söðul ok aptan, at ekki sé hann hættr
both before in-front-of saddle and behind that not be he exposed
fyrir vápnum, hvárki fyrir spjótum eða höggum eða öðrum
to weapons neither to spears or blows or other
vápnaburð; þarf hann ok kovertúr gott at hafa, görr sem
weapon-bearing needs he also covering good to have made as
panzari, af blautum léreptum ok vel svörtuðum, þvíat þat er
gambeson of soft linens and well blackened because that is
gott við öllum vápnum til varnar, með hverjum hætti sem
good against all weapons for defense in whatever manner that
þat er utan skrýtt, ok síðan þar yfir góða hestbrynju. Með
it is outside adorned and afterward there over good horse-mail With
þessum umbúnaði þarf vel hest at hylja bæði um höfuð
this equipment needs-one well horse to cover both about head
ok um lend ok brjóst ok um kvið, ok allan hest, svá
and about loins and breast and about belly and all horse so

at eigi megi maðr með falsamligum vápnum at hestinum
that not may a-man with treacherous weapons at the-horse
komask, þóat maðrinn sé á fœti. Með sterku beizli þarf
get though the-man be on foot With strong bridle needs
hestr búinn at vera, þat sem örugt sé til halds, bæði upp
horse furnished to be that which secure be for holding both up
at halda með, ef þarf, ok svá um at kasta, ef þess þarf
to hold with if needs-one and so about to turn if of-that needs
hann við. En utan yfir beizli ok um alt höfuð hestsins
be with But outside over bridle and about all head of-the-horse
ok um háls framan til söðuls, þá skal vera gríma gör
and about neck in-front to saddle then shall be mask made
á panzara lund af stirðu lérepti, svá at engi maðr megi at
in gambeson's way of stiff linen so that no man may at
komask at taka beizl hans eða hest hans með engarri list.
get to take bridle his or horse his with no art
En þenna umbúnað þarf maðrinn sjálfr at hafa: góðar hosur
But this equipment needs the-man himself to have good hose
ok linar, görvar af blautu lérepti ok vel svörtuðu, ok taki
and soft made of soft linen and well blackened and reach
þær alt til brókabeltis; en utan yfir þær góðar brynhosur svá
they all to breeches-belt but outside over them good mail-hose so
hávar, at maðr megi gyrða þær um sik tvíföldum sveip;
high that a-man may gird them about himself with-twofold wrap
en utan yfir þat þá þarf hann at hafa góðar brynbrœkr,
but outside over that then needs he to have good mail-breeches
görvar með lérepti, at þeim hætti sem fyrr hefi ek sagt; en
made with linen in that manner which before have I said but
þar um utan þarf hann at hafa góðar knébjargir, görvar með
there about outside needs he to have good knee-guards made with
þykku járni ok með stálhörðum nöddum. En upp ífrá þarf
thick iron and with steel-hard rivets But up from needs

hann at hafa næst sér blautan panzara, þann er eigi taki
he to have next himself soft gambeson that which not reach
lengra en á mitt lær, en þar næst þarf hann at hafa góða
farther than to mid thigh but there next needs he to have good
brjóstbjörg, görva af góðu járni, þá er taki millim geirvartna
breast-guard made of good iron that which reach between nipples
ok brókabeltis, en yfir þat góða brynju, en yfir brynju góðan
and breeches-belt but over that good mail-coat but over mail-coat good
panzara, görvan með sama hætti sem áðr var sagt, ok þó
gambeson made in same manner as before was said and yet
ermalausum. Tvau sverð þarf hann at hafa, annat þat er
sleeveless Two swords needs he to have one that which
hann er gyrðr með, en annat þat er hangir við söðulboga,
he is girded with but (the)-other that which hangs by saddle-bow
ok góðan brynknif. Hjálm góðan þarf hann á höfði at hafa
and good mail-knife Helmet good needs he on head to have
görvan af góðu stáli ok búinn með allri andlitsbjörg, en
made of good steel and furnished with all face-guard but
góðan skjöld ok þykkvan á hálsi, ok þó búinn með greligum
good shield and thick on neck and yet furnished with handy
skjaldarfetli, en síðan góða glafju ok hvassa af góðu stáli
shield-strap but afterward good lance and sharp of good steel
ok vel skepta. Eigi þykki mér þurfa fleira um at rœða þeirra
and well shafted Not seems to-me need more about to talk of-those
manna umbúnað, er á hesti skulu berjask. Þó eru fleiri
men's equipment who on horse shall fight Yet are more
vápn, er nýta má á hesti, ef vill, sem annathvárt er
weapons which use may-one on horse if one-wishes as either is
hornbogi eða lásbogi veykr, svá at maðr megi vel uppdraga,
horn-bow or crossbow weak so that a-man may well up-draw
þóat hann á hesti siti, ok enn eru fleiri vápn, ef hafa vill.
though he on horse sit and still are more weapons if have one-wishes

The father describes the weapons for attacking and defending a castle: trebuchets, the ram, the sow, wheeled towers, and ladders for the besiegers; and for the defenders, padding of hurdles and sacks against the ram, hanging battlements, the hedgehog, the mail-bramble, rolling millstones, the shooting-wagon, clay shot that bursts, boiling water and molten lead, glowing plowshares with pitch and brimstone, and hidden pits filled with tinder. Chief of all is the fire-spitting shield-giant.

SON Með því at yðr sýnisk svá, sem þér hafit nefnt flestöll
With that that to-you seems so as-if you have named nearly-all
þau vápn, er viðrkœmilig eru at hafa á skipum eða á
those weapons which suitable are to have on ships or on
hestum í orrostum, þá vil ek nú þess beiðask, at þér
horses in battles then will I now of-that ask that you
rœðit nökkurum orðum um þau vápn, er yðr sýnisk at
talk with-some words about those weapons which to-you seems to
hafa til þess at sœkja kastala með eða verja.
have for that to attack castle with or defend

FATHER Öll þessi vápn er nú höfum vér áðr um rœtt, er
All these weapons which now have we before about talked which
hvárttveggja er haft á skipum eða á hestum, þá má nýta
both is had on ships or on horses then may-one use
bæði til þess at sœkja kastala með ok svá verja, ok þó enn
both for that to attack castle with and so defend and yet still
mörg önnur vápn. Sá er kastala skal sœkja með þeim vápnum,
many other weapons He who castle shall attack with those weapons
er nú eru töld, þá þarf hann ok víst at hafa valslöngur
which now are counted then needs he also surely to have trebuchets
með, sumar sterkar valslöngur til þess at slöngva stóru
with-him some strong trebuchets for that to sling great
grjóti á steinvegg, ok freista steinveggjar, ef ofan mætti fella
stone at stone-wall and try (the)-stone-wall if down might-one fell

með stórum áköstum; en linar valslöngur til þess at slöngva
with great casts but soft trebuchets for that to sling
yfir steinvegg ok brjóta ofan hús, er í eru kastala. En ef
over stone-wall and break down houses which in are castle But if
með sterkum valslöngum fær eigi steinvegg ofan brotit eða
with strong trebuchets gets-one not stone-wall down broken or
sundrskelfðan, þá má þess freista at leita til þessarar vélar
shattered then may-one that try to seek to this engine
veðr með járnuðu enni, þvíat hans höggum standask fáir
ram with ironed forehead because its blows withstand few
steinveggir. En með því at steinveggr vill eigi við þessa vél
stone-walls But with that that stone-wall will not at this engine
sundr skjálfa eða ofan brotna, þá má grafsvín til þessar
asunder shake or down break then may-one dig-sow to this
vélar leiða, ef vill. Kastali sá er á hjólum er görr, hann
engine lead if one-wishes Castle that which on wheels is made it
er góðr at vinna annan kastala með, ok er hann með þeim
is good to win other castle with and is it in that
hætti görr, at hann sé hærri görr en hinn, er hann á
manner made that it be higher made than that-one which it has
viðr, þóat eigi sé meiri munr en sjau álna; en hann er æ
against though not be greater difference than seven ells but it is ever
þeim mun betri at vinna annan kastala með, sem hann er
by-that difference better to win other castle with as it is
hærri sjálfr görr. Stegar þeir sem á hvelum standa, ok bæði
higher itself made Ladders those which on wheels stand and both
má draga frá ok til, ok þildir neðan vel ok góð handrif
may-one draw from and to and boarded below well and good hand-rails
tveim veginn, þeir eru ok góðir til þessarrar vélar. En þat
on-two ways they are also good for this engine But that
er þó skjótast at segja af þessarri list, at öll kyn vápna
is yet quickest to tell of this art that all kinds of-weapons

má til þess vel nýta at vinna kastala; en þat er vitanda
may-one for that well use to win castle but that is to-be-known
hverjum er í þessu vill hlut eiga, at hann kunni vel at
to-each who in this will share have that he know well to
vita, nær er hann þarf hvert vápn ok í hvern tíma at hafa.
know when that he needs each weapon and at what time to have
En þeir er kastala skulu verja, þá megu þeir ok flestöll
But those who castle shall defend then may they also nearly-all
þau vápn nýta, er nú eru töld, ok mörg önnur, bæði
those weapons use which now are counted and many others both
valslöngur smár ok stórar, handslöngur ok stafslöngur.
trebuchets small and great hand-slings and staff-slings
Lásbogar eru þeim ok einkum góð vápn ok allir aðrir
Crossbows are for-them also especially good weapons and all other
handbogar ok öll önnur kyn skotvápna, spjót ok pálstafir,
hand-bows and all other kinds of-missile-weapons spears and bolts
hvárttveggja þung ok létt. En á móti valslöngum eða
both heavy and light But on against trebuchets or
grafsvini eða þeirri vél, er menn kalla veðr, þá er gott at
dig-sow or that engine which men call ram then is good to
styrkja alt steinvirki innan með stórum eikiviði; en ef ærin
strengthen all stonework inside with great oak-timber but if ample
er jörð til eða leir, þá er þat bazt at hafa. Þat gera menn
is earth to-it or clay then is that best to have That do men
ok þeir er kastala vilja verja, at gera flaka með stórum
also those who castle will defend to make hurdles with great
eikivöndum ok hylja alla steinveggi með þeim þríföldum eða
oak-rods and cover all stone-walls with them threefold or
fimföldum, ok þó skulu þeir flakar vera vel varðir með góðu
fivefold and yet shall those hurdles be well protected with good
leiri ok seigu. Þat hafa menn ok gört móti árásum veðrs
clay and tough That have men also done against attacks of-(the)-ram

at fylla sekki stóra með heyi eða með ögnum, ok látit síga
to fill sacks great with hay or with chaff and let sink
fyrir andlit veðrs með léttum járnrekendum, þar sem
before (the)-face of-(the)-ram with light iron-chains there where
hann vill at steinveggi koma. Þat kann ok vera, at svá
it wishes to stone-walls come That can also be that so
mikil áskot verði ok komi í kastala, at eigi megi menn í
great shooting become and come into castle that not may men in
vígskörðum vera; þá er gott at gera hengivígskörð af léttum
battlements be then is good to make hanging-battlements of light
flökum, ok þurfu þau at vera tveim álnum hærri en kastala
hurdles and need they to be by-two ells higher than castle
vígskörð sjálf, ok þrimr álnum síðari; svá þurfu þau ok
battlements themselves and by-three ells longer so need they also
fjarri hanga, at menn megi vel vega með öllum vápnum
far-out hang that men may well fight with all weapons
niðr millim kastala ok vígskarða sjálfra ok hengivígskarða.
down between castle and battlements themselves and hanging-battlements
En þau skulu hanga á léttum ásum þeim, sem þegar megi
But they shall hang on light beams those which at-once may-one
þau til sín draga, er vill, ok svá út aptr hengja.
them to themselves draw when one-wishes and so out back hang
Ígulköttr er ok gott vápn þeim, er kastala skal verja, görr
Hedgehog is also good weapon for-him who castle shall defend made
af stórum trjám ok þungum, byrstr með eikitinduðu baki,
of great trees and heavy bristled with oak-tined back
ok skal binda utan við vígskörð, ok láta falla á fólk, ef
and shall-one bind outside by battlements and let fall on folk if
nærri verðr gengit kastala. Slagbrandar görvir af löngum rám
near becomes gone to-castle Battle-clubs made of long beams
ok þungum, hvasstentir með harðri eik, reistir á enda nær
and heavy sharp-toothed with hard oak raised on end near

vígskörðum, svá at þá megi þegar á menn fella, er nær
battlements so that then may-one at-once on men fell when near
er gengit kastala. Brynklungr er ok gott vápn, görr af góðu
is gone to-castle Mail-bramble is also good weapon made of good
járni með stálhörðum þornum ok bjúgum; ok skal agnór
iron with steel-hard thorns and curved and shall barb
vera á hverjum þorni; en hann þarf svá at gera, at festr
be on each thorn but it needs-one so to make that rope
sú er hánum er næst, ok menn megu ná á upp sem
that which to-it is nearest and men may reach on up as
lengst, þá skal gör vera með tinduðum járnrekendum, at
farthest then shall made be with tined iron-chains that
hvárki megi höggvit fá né haldit á; en upp ífrá þá má
neither may-one hewn get nor held on-it but up from then may-one
hafa slíkt reip, sem fallit þykki, þegar örugt er til styrkjar;
have such rope as fitting seems when secure is for strength
en til þess er hann góðr at kasta niðr manna millim, ok
but for that is it good to throw down men between and
vita ef hann mætti nökkurn mann veitt fá, hvárt sem heldr
know if it might any man caught get whether that rather
verðr einn eða fleiri, ok draga síðan upp til sín. Hleypihvel
becomes one or more and draw afterward up to oneself Running-wheel
er ok gott vápn þeim, er kastala skal verja, ok skal görr
is also good weapon for-him who castle shall defend and shall made
vera af tveim kvernsteinum, en öxull skal millim vera, görr
be of two millstones but axle shall between be made
af seigri eik, síðan skal leggja út yfir vígskörð ráshöll
of tough oak afterward shall-one lay out over battlements sloping
borð, ok skulu þessi hjól þar á hlaupa ok svá út á fólkit.
boards and shall these wheels there on run and so out on the-folk

Skotvagn er ok gott vápn, hann skal gera sem annan
Shooting-wagon is also good weapon it shall-one make as other
vagn, hvárt sem heldr vill á fjórum hvelum eða tveim;
wagon whether that rather one-wishes on four wheels or two
en hann skal svá búa, at hlass hans megi vera, hvárt
but it shall-one so prepare that load its may be whether
sem vill, af heitu grjóti eða köldu. Svá skal ok búa
that one-wishes of hot stone or cold So shall-one also prepare
hann, at tvær festar megi á hánum hafa, sína með hvárri
it that two ropes may on it have one with each
síðu, ramligar ok sterkar, þær er örugt haldi hánum, þegar
side strong and sturdy those which securely hold it when
hann hefir yfrit langt rúm; en hann skal renna á ráshöllum
it has ample long room but it shall run on sloping
borðum, ok skal þó svá til ætla, at hvel hans missi eigi
boards and shall-one yet so to-it reckon that wheels its miss not
borðsins. En þegar er festarnar taka at hepta rás hans, þá
the-board But as-soon as the-ropes begin to check course its then
skýtr hann af sér hlassi sínu ok út á fólkit. Því betra er
shoots it from itself load its and out on the-folk The better is
ok hlass hans, er misjafnara grjót er í borit, sumt stórt
also load its which more-uneven stone is in-it borne some great
en sumt smátt. Þat gera ok þeir menn, er vitrir eru ok
but some small That do also those men who wise are and
kastala skulu verja, at þat grjót er þeir vilja slöngva at
castle shall defend that that stone which they will sling at
fylkingum eða skjöldum, þá gera þeir af leiri, ok láta innan
battle-lines or shields then make they of clay and let inside
í smágrjót hart, bæði flettugrjót ok aðra harða steina, ok
in small-stone hard both slab-stone and other hard stones and
brenna síðan leirit svá hart um utan, at þat þoli vel flaug,
burn afterward the-clay so hard about outside that it bear well flight

meðan því er kastat; en hvar sem þat kemr niðr, þá springr
while it is thrown but where that it comes down then bursts
þat alt í sundr, ok verðr því þá eigi aptr slöngt. En til þess
it all in pieces and becomes it then not back slung But for that
skal hafa harða steina ok stóra, at brjóta veggi stóra niðr.
shall-one have hard stones and great to break walls great down
Svá ok er þú kastar or steinkastala ok at trékastala þeim
So also when you throw out-of stone-castle and at wood-castle that
sem móti þér er, eða at öxultrjám þeim, sem undir hvelum
which against you is or at axle-trees those which under wheels
eru gör, eða undir kastala, eða undir stegum eða grafsvínum
are made or under castle or under ladders or dig-sows
eða einnihverri annarri þeirri vél, er á hjólum er gör, þá
or some other that engine which on wheels is made then
er þess betr, er þar er stœrra grjót ok harðara til haft.
is that-the better which there is greater stone and harder to-it had
Vellanda vatn ok heitt gler eða heitt blý þat er ok gott
Boiling water and hot glass or hot lead that is also good
vápn í kastala. En ef grafsvín eða einhver önnur vél er
weapon in castle But if dig-sow or some other engine is
dregin at kastala, svá at eigi má þeim heitt vatn granda,
drawn to castle so that not may them hot water harm
ok er þó lægra en kastala veggir, þá er gott at gera
and is yet lower than castle walls then is good to make
til vápns þar á móti ása, þá er vel eru skúaðir neðan
for weapon there on against beams those which well are shod below
með járni, en síðan gera til bæði hvöss ok stór glóandi
with iron but afterward make to-it both sharp and great glowing
plógjárn ok skjóta síðan öllu saman niðr í trévirkit, svá
plowshares and shoot afterward all together down into the-woodwork so

at plógjárn standi eptir, en ásar sé upphafðir. Þar
that (the)-plowshares stand behind but (the)-beams be raised-up There
skal ok fylgja bik ok brennusteinn, eða elligar veld tjara.
shall also follow pitch and brimstone or else boiled tar
Tæligrafir eru ok góð vápn, er görvar eru umhverfis kastala,
Trap-pits are also good weapons which made are around castle
ok þess betr er þær eru görvar djúpari ok mjórri, ok meiri
and that-the better that they are made deeper and narrower and greater
fjöldi er at, þar sem menn draga á hjólum nökkurar vélir
multitude is at there where men draw on wheels some engines
til kastala. Svá skulu tæligrafir allar görvar vera, at þær skulu
to castle So shall trap-pits all made be that they shall
hafa marga glyggi ok smá ok alla skaraða þó, svá at eigi
have many openings and small and all covered yet so that not
megi á jörðu sjá; en síðan skulu þær fyldar vera með þeim
may-one on earth see but afterward shall they filled be with that
viði, er eldfimastr er, annattveggja með tyrvi eða öðrum
wood which most-flammable is either with pitch-pine or other
eldfimum viði. En þá er menn berjask um nætr til kastala
flammable wood But then when men fight at nights to castle
annattveggja or tréköstulum eða or stegum, eða einnihverri
either out-of wood-castles or out-of ladders or some
þeirri list, er á hjólum stendr, þá skal stela mönnum
that art which on wheels stands then shall-one steal men
or kastalanum, at þeir mætti eldi komit í tæligrafir.
out-of the-castle that they might fire brought into trap-pits
Nú berr svá at, at grjóti verðr slöngt svá ákafliga yfir
Now bears so to-it that stone becomes slung so fiercely over
vígskörð, at menn megu eigi úti vera eða kastala verja,
battlements that men may not outside be or castle defend
þá er gott at reisa upp góða stólpa af digri eik, ok síðan
then is good to raise up good posts of thick oak and afterward

þar yfir leggja stórar syllr ok ramligar, ok eptir þat þilja hit
there over lay great sills and strong and after that board the
efra með góðum eikiviði, ok bera síðan á þat þili mikla
upper with good oak-timber and bear afterward onto that boarding much
jörð, svá at eigi sé úþykkra en þriggja álna eða fjögurra,
earth so that not be thinner than of-three ells or four
ok láta þar grjót á falla. Svá hit sama skal ok gera mót
and let there stone on fall So the same shall-one also do against
trékastala þeim, sem mót steinkastala vill berjask, at gera
wood-castle that which against stone-castle will fight to make
stólpa góða ok trausta, góðum mun hærri en trékastali sé.
posts good and trusty by-good measure higher than wood-castle be
En allra þeirra lista er nú höfum vér um rœtt, þá er þó
But of-all those arts which now have we about talked then is yet
höfuðvápn bjúgr skjaldjötunn ryptandi með eldligum loga.
chief-weapon (the)-curved shield-giant belching with fiery flame
En með því lúkum vér vápn at telja til varnar or kastala,
But with that end we weapons to count for defense out-of castle
at þar má öll kyn vápna nýta, þeirra er skjóta skal
that there may-one all kinds of-weapons use of-those which shoot shall-one
eða kasta, eða höggva með eða leggja, ok allar þær kynkvíslir
or throw or hew with or thrust and all those kinds
vápna, er annathvárt má með hlífask eða sœkja.
of-weapons which either may-one with protect-oneself or attack

The son asks what else a man at court must know. The father names three things: courtesy, good manners, and wit. Courtesy is speech fit to each rank of men and women, fit dress, posture, and table manners, and the shunning of mockery. Good manners is moderation, honesty, cleanliness, and the shunning of dice, whores, oaths, pride, and envy, with the love of God at its head. Neither can be had without wit, the understanding of speech, custom, and law. Wit grows like a tree whose branches fall to men unequally; it is the true wealth, beside which gold is rust, and it begins in the fear and love of God.

SON Með því at yðr sýnisk œrit um vápn rœtt vera,
With that that to-you seems amply about weapons talked to-be
hvárttveggja um sóknir eða varnir, eða hversu gör skulu vera
both about attacks or defenses or how made shall be
eða vaxin, eða i hvern tíma hvers vápns skal neyta, enda
or shaped or at what time of-which weapon shall-one use moreover
skiljask mér ok vel þessir hlutir eptir yðarri tilvísan, þá vil
are-understood to-me also well these things after your direction then will
ek enn þess spyrja ok forvitna, ef nökkurir hlutir eru þeir, er
I still of-that ask and be-curious if some things are those which
yðr þykki þurfa um at rœða, þeir sem til þeirra siða horfi,
to-you seems to-need about to talk those which to those customs look
at þarf at hafa með ríkismönnum eða í konunga hirðum.
which needs-one to have with mighty-men or in kings' courts
FATHER Enn eru þeir hlutir mjök margir, er eigi má missa
Still are those things very many which not may-one miss
um at rœða ok athuga leiða, ef maðr skal með konungum
about to talk and attention lead if a-man shall with kings
eða öðrum ríkismönnum staddr vera, ok þar sœmdarmaðr
or other mighty-men placed be and there honorable-man
heita. Þat er þrifalt atkvæði, er náliga er þó sem alt sé
be-called That is a-threefold word which nearly is yet as-if all be

eitt raunar, er maðr þarf vandliga at gæta, þat er mannvit
one in-fact which a-man needs carefully to heed that is wit
ok siðgœði ok hœveska. En þat er hœveska at vera blíðr
and good-manners and courtesy But that is courtesy to be gentle
ok léttlátr, ok þjónostufullr ok fagryrðr; kunna at vera
and light-mannered and service-full and fair-spoken know to be
góðr félagi í samsæti ok í viðrœðu við aðra menn; kunna á
good fellow in company and in conversation with other men know on
því góða skilning, ef maðr talar við konur, hvárt sem eru
that good understanding if a-man talks with women whether that they-are
ungar eða meir aldri orpnar, ríkar eða nökkut úríkari, at
young or more into-age thrown mighty or somewhat less-mighty that
þau orð kunni hann til þeirra at mæla, er þeirra tigund
those words know he to them to speak which their rank
hœfi, ok þeim sami vel at heyra, ok manni sami vel at
befit and to-them befits well to hear and to-(the)-man befits well to
mæla. Svá ok ef maðr talar við karlmenn, hvárt sem eru
speak So also if a-man talks with men whether that they-are
ungir eða gamlir, ríkir eða úríkir, þá hœfir ok vel at kunna
young or old mighty or unmighty then befits also well to know
hœfiliga orðum at skipa, hver orð er hverjum þeirra samir
fittingly words to arrange which words is to-each of-them befits
at þiggja. En ef þat skal gamanyrði heita, þá gegnir þat, at
to receive But if that shall jesting-words be-called then serves that that
þau sé hvárttveggja fögr ok sœmilig. Þat er ok hœveska, at
they be both fair and seemly That is also courtesy that
hann kunni grein orða sinna, hvar hann skal margfalda
he know distinction of-words his where he shall multiply
eða hvar hann skal einfalda til þeirra manna, er hann mælir
or where he shall singularize to those men whom he speaks
við, eða hversu hann skal haga klæðum sínum, bæði at lit
with or how he shall arrange clothes his both in color

ok öðrum hlutum, svá ok nær maðr þarf at standa eða sitja,
and other things so also when a-man needs to stand or sit
eða nær réttr standa eða nær á kné. Þat er ok hœveska at
or when straight stand or when on knee That is also courtesy to
kunna vita, nær er hann þarf hendr sínar niðr fyrir sik at
know know when that he needs hands his down before himself to
rakna láta, ok kyrrar hafa, eða nær er hann má sínar hendr
stretch let and still have or when that he may his hands
hrœra til einnarhverrar þjónostu, annathvárt sjálfum sér eða
move for some service either to-self himself or
öðrum at veita, eða hvert hann skal andliti sínu snúa ok
to-others to give or whither he shall face his turn and
brjósti, eða hversu hann skal snúa baki eða herðum. Svá ok
breast or how he shall turn back or shoulders So also
at kunna góða skilning á því, nær hann má skikkju sína í
to know good understanding on that when he may cloak his in
frelsi bera eða hött eða kveif, ef hann hefir, eða nær hann
freedom bear or hood or coif if he has or when he
skal þarnask. Svá ok er hann sitr yfir borði, nær hann þarf
shall go-without So also when he sits over table when he needs
augum at leiða fyrir hœvesku sakar ríkra manna matarneyzlu,
with-eyes to lead for courtesy's sake of-mighty men's food-taking
eða nær hann má síns matar eða drykkjar vel neyta, svá at
or when he may his food or drink well take so that
þat þykki vel bera, ok viðrkœmiliga. Þat er ok hœveska at
it seems well to-befit and suitably That is also courtesy to
halda sik frá spotti öllu ok háðungargabbi, ok kunna vel
keep himself from mockery all and scorn-jesting and know well
at skilja, hvat þorparaskapr er, ok flýja hann allan vandliga.
to understand what churlishness is and flee it all carefully

En þat er siðgœði at görask samþykkr öðrum mönnum ok
But that is good-manners to become agreeable to-other men and
eigi einlyndr, hœfilátr í öllu gefnageði sínu; gangprúðr ef hann
not self-willed moderate in all temper his proud-of-gait if he
gengr, gæta vel lima sinna, hvert sem hann gengr, at hverr
walks guard well limbs his whither that he walks that each
þeirra fari réttr vel ok þó eptir sinni náttúru. Þat er ok
of-them go straight well and yet according-to its nature That is also
siðgœði, ef maðr gengr í kaupstöðum milli úkunnra manna,
good-manners if a-man walks in market-towns among unknown men
at vera fálátr ok eigi margyrðr, flýja gjó ok alla hégomliga
to be reserved and not many-worded flee sensuality and all vain
drykkju, refsa rán ok stuldi, ok allar aðrar heimsligar
drinking punish robbery and thefts and all other worldly
úspektir. Þat er ok siðgœði, at sjá vel við munneiðum
disorders That is also good-manners to look well against mouth-oaths
ok bölbœnum eða gauðrifi ok öllu öðru tunguskœði. Svá sjá
and curses or barking and all other tongue-harm So look
ok við því, at vera orðvarpsmaðr fyrir heimska menn ok
also against that to be word-thrower for foolish men and
úráðvanda, en enn síðr veita þeim fylgð til sinnar fólsku, ok
dishonest but yet less give them following to their folly and
vera heldr hatandi alla úraðvendi. Þat er ok siðgœði at flýja
be rather hating all dishonesty That is also good-manners to flee
tafl ok teningakast, portkvenna hús eða eiða úsœra, lygivitni
chess and dice-throwing whores' house or oaths untrue lie-witness
eða aðra gjó eða saurlífi. Þat er ok siðgœði at hafa sik
or other sensuality or lechery That is also good-manners to have himself
hreinliga hvárttveggja at mat ok klæðum, vera rakkr at húsum,
cleanly both in food and clothes be trim in houses
ef hann á, eða skipum, eða hestum eða vápnum; vera ok
if he has or ships or horses or weapons be also

forsjáll, en eigi áhleypinn, ok þó hugrakkr í nauðsynjum; vera
provident but not rushing and yet bold in needs be
eigi áburðarsamr eða yfirgjarn eða öfundsjúkr; flýja dramb ok
not slanderous or overbearing or envious flee pride and
allan ofmetnað. En þat er höfuð allrar siðgœði at elska guð
all arrogance But that is (the)-head of-all good-manners to love God
ok heilaga kirkju, hlýða tíðum vandliga, vera iðinn á helgum
and holy church listen to-hours carefully be diligent at holy
bœnum, ok biðja sér miskunnar ok öllu kristnu fólki.
prayers and ask for-himself mercy and for-all Christian people
Þessir allir hlutir, er nú höfum vér talda, hvárttveggja um
These all things which now have we counted both about
hœvesku ok siðgœði, þá má engi eignask, nema hann hafi
courtesy and good-manners then may no-one own unless he have
mannvit með, ok eigu þessir hlutir mannviti at fylgja:
wit with-them and ought these things wit to follow
orðhegi ok snild ok skilning allra siða, kunna vel at
word-skill and eloquence and understanding of-all customs know well to
marka, hvat góðir siðir eru, eða hvat siðir eru kallaðir
mark what good customs are or what customs are called
eptir atkvæði heimskra manna, ok eru þó úsiðir. Þat
according-to (the)-word of-foolish men and are yet bad-customs That
er ok mannvit, ef maðr er staddr á fjöldafundi manna á
is also wit if a-man is placed at crowd-meeting of-men at
þingum eða á stefnum, ok heyrir hann þar orð manna ok
assemblies or at meetings and hears he there words of-men and
erendi, at kunna á því góða skilning, hver orð eða erendi
errands to know on that good understanding which words or errands
eru þau þar mælt, er tekin eru af mannvits grundvelli,
are those there spoken which taken are from wit's foundation
eða hvat mælt er af skjótu tunguvarpi eða skamsýniligu
or what spoken is from quick tongue-throw or short-sighted

varraskrapi. Þat er ok mannvit, at kunna skilja vandliga,
lip-scraping That is also wit to know understand carefully
ef dómar falla á mál manna, hversu þat var mælt, at eigi
if judgments fall on cases of-men how that was spoken that not
verði með orðum aukit eða vanat, ef maðr þarf annat sinni
become with words increased or lessened if a-man needs a-second time
með sjálfum sér at sanna. Þat er ok mannvit, at halda alla
with self himself to prove That is also wit to hold all
hluti með athugasamligu minni, þá sem mæltir verða eða
things with attentive memory those which spoken become or
görvir manna millim. Þat er ok mannvit at kunna vel lög
done men between That is also wit to know well laws
ok kunna á því góðar skilningar, hvat lög eru rétt, eða hvat
and know on that good understandings what laws are right or what
lög eru kölluð ok er þó ekki nema lögkrókar ok sleitur.
laws are called and is yet nothing except law-hooks and chicanery
Þat er ok mannvit, ef maðr vill beiðask einnahverra hluta, at
That is also wit if a-man will ask some things to
kunna skilning á því, hverra hluta hann beiðisk, þeirra er
know understanding on that which things he asks of-those which
viðrkœmiligir sé ok hinum er vel veitanda; svá ok ef hann
suitable be and to-the-other are well to-be-granted so also if he
er sjálfr nökkurra hluta beðinn, at kunna þat vel at sjá, hverir
is himself some things asked to know that well to see which
hlutir er hánum eru vel veitandi, eða hverir viðrsjándi,
things that to-him are well to-be-granted or which to-be-guarded-against
at hann játti eigi þeim hlutum fyrir sik eða fyrir hina, er
that he grant not those things for himself or for those who
eptir hann koma, er hánum sé síðan heldr til svívirðingar
after him come which to-him be afterward rather to disgrace
snúit heldr en til upphafs. Svá er ok þat mannvit at gerask
turned rather than to advancement So is also that wit to become

eigi fasthendr á þeim hlutum, er hánum eru vel veitandi,
not tight-fisted on those things which to-him are well to-be-granted
at eigi snúisk hánum sín festi eða sinka til svívirðingar.
that not turn to-him his tightness or stinginess to disgrace
Hóf alt ok sannsýni er ok mikit mannvit. Fróðleikr allr ok
Moderation all and justice is also great wit Learning all and
skilning öll ok góð forsjó, sú er hafa þarf til hœvesku
understanding all and good foresight that which have needs-one to courtesy
eða siða, landsbyggingar eða lagagœzlu eða landsgœzlu, þat
or customs land-settling or law-keeping or land-keeping that
er ok mikit mannvit; ok þarft þú fyrir því vandliga þessa
is also great wit and need you for that carefully these
hluti at nema, ef þú vilt sœmdarmaðr heita með konungum
things to learn if you will honorable-man be-called with kings
eða öðrum stórhöfðingjum, at þeir menn eru vel látnir allir
or other great-chieftains that those men are well liked all
með ríkismönnum, er þessa hluti kunnu; þeir megu ok lifa
with mighty-men who these things know they may also live
sér til mikillar sœmdar ok mörgum öðrum til gagns,
to-themselves for great honor and to-many others for benefit
er þessa hluti kunnu vel. En mannvit er með mörgum
who these things know well But wit is in many
háttum, þvíat þat stendr á margkvísluðum rótum, ok vex
manners because it stands on many-branched roots and grows
af mannvits rótum hinn sterkasti stólpi, er vera má,
from wit's roots the strongest pillar which be may
ok kvíslask síðan með stórum greinum ok margfölduðum
and branches-itself afterward with great branches and multiplied
limum ok með misjöfnum kvistafjölda; eru sumir smáir, en
limbs and with uneven twig-multitude are some small but
sumir stœrri, ok skiptask svá síðan manna í millum,
some bigger and divide-themselves so afterward of-men in between

hljóta sumir smærri, en sumir stœrri, ok er sá auðr svá sem
get some smaller but some bigger and is that wealth so as
hann er elskaðr til. Sá er mjök vill elska þenna auð
it is loved to That-one who much will love this wealth
ok örliga veita, þá hlýtr hann mikit af, þvíat þessi auðœfi
and generously give then gets he much of-it because these riches
hafa þá náttúru, at þau dragask þeim mest til handa, er
have that nature that they draw-themselves to-those most to hand who
mest elskar þau, ok þeirra neytir með mestum örleik; ok ef
most loves them and of-them partakes with most generosity and if
menn kunnu at sjá ok meta þessi auðœfi eptir réttendum,
men knew to see and value these riches according-to rights
þá myndi svá sýnask hvárttveggja gull ok silfr, sem þat væri
then would so seem both gold and silver as-if it were
ryðr eða mold eða aska hjá þessum auðœfum; ok sá er
rust or mold or ash beside these riches and that-one who
eignask vill þessi auðœfi þá skal hann þat upphaf at hafa,
own will these riches then shall he that beginning to have
at hræðask almáttkan guð ok elska hann umfram hvetvetna.
to fear almighty God and love him beyond everything

XLI · MODERATION IN FORTUNE

The son asks how to win the branches of wit. The father counsels moderation: weigh a charge and its truth before taking revenge; bear the loss of wealth calmly, since no one takes it from the world; bear the death of a friend by remembering death is natural; rejoice at a foe's death less than at being kept from sin. Honor from the king is God's trial and must be received with measure, for God brings pride down, and the man raised must help those weaker than he.

SON Þetta er víst vel ráðit, at þessi spurning var aukin, fyrir
This is surely well counseled that this question was increased for
því at þar er nú bæði nákvæm svör fengin ok haldkœm, ok
that that there is now both precise answers gotten and holding-useful and
mun hvern mann, er nökkura skilning hefir fengit, þessi rœða
will each man who some understanding has gotten this talk
draga til meiri nærkœmi um sína skilning, en fyrr hafði hann,
draw to greater nearness about his understanding than before had he
ok eru þeir fleiri, er smá vöndu hljóta af mannvits kvistum
and are they more who small wands get of wit's twigs
heldr en stórar greinir; sumir hljóta hina smæstu kvisti, en
rather than great branches some get the smallest twigs but
sumir ekki nema lauf eitt, en fáir eru þeir er með öllu hljóta
some nothing except leaf one but few are they who with all get
ekki. Því vil ek enn biðja fram á leið, at þér mættit enn
nothing Therefore will I still ask forward on way that you might still
læra mik til þess hagleiks, at ek kynna þá kvistu helzt til mín
teach me to that skill that I knew those twigs most to me
venda ok at velja, er mér væri til nytsemdar, ok svá öðrum.
turn and to choose which to-me were for usefulness and so to-others
FATHER Þessir hlutir er nú hefi ek sýnda þér, vaxa helzt
These things which now have I shown you grow most
af mannvits greinum, ok kvíslask síðan með mörgum
from wit's branches and branch-themselves afterward with many
góðum limum ok kvistum út ífrá. En þessir eru þeir limir,
good limbs and twigs out from But these are those limbs
er haldkœmir eru: sannsýni öll ok hóf alt, kunna
which holding-useful are justice all and moderation all know
þat vel at sjá með mundangshófi, hvat maðr á hverjum
that well to see with balance's-measure what a-man ought to-each
at gjalda. Ef þú ert einumhverjum reiðr fyrir nökkurskonar
to pay If you are with-some angry for some-kind

fjándskap eða sakar, þá rannsaka vandliga í hugþokka
enmity or charges then examine carefully in mind
þínum, fyrr en þú leitir hefnda, hversu mikil sök er eða
your before than you seek vengeance how great charge is or
hversu mikillar hefndar sú sök er verð. Ver um þat varr,
of-how great vengeance that charge is worthy Be about that aware
ef þú heyrir af annarra manna orðum þær sakar, er þik
if you hear from other men's words those charges which you
angrar mjök, at þú leitir fyrri eptir með vitrligri athygli,
vex much that you seek first after with wise attention
hvárt sakir eru sannar eða lognar; en ef þær sannask ok
whether charges are true or lied but if they are-proved and
kemr til þín hefndir fyrir at vinna, þá hefn með hófi
comes to you vengeances for to work then avenge with moderation
ok sannsýni, en eigi með illgjarnligri ákefð. Heyrir þú ok
and justice but not with malicious fierceness Hear you also
nökkur þau tíðendi sögð, er þér þykkja skaðasamlig um
some those tidings told which to-you seem harmful about
sjálfan þik eða þinn varnað, annathvárt um fjártjón eða
self you or your goods either about wealth-loss or
mannatjón, þá skalt þú ok þat með hófi bera ok góðu
man-loss then shall you also that with moderation bear and good
gjafnageði. Láttu þér því þykkja minstan skaða um
temper Let to-you therefore seem least harm about
fjártjón, at þú skalt þat láta þér í hug koma, at þó er
wealth-loss that you shall that let to-you into mind come that yet is
synd at þjóna fénu eða elska mjök, at þat elski manninn
sin to serve the-wealth or love much that it love the-man
á mót ok snúisk vel til handa hánum; en þá er víst synd
on against and turn-itself well to hand for-him but then is surely sin
í ok þó sorg, at elska mjök féit, ef þat vill frá snúask
in-it and yet sorrow to love much the-wealth if it will from turn

manninum, ok enga elsku móti leggja. Lát þér þat ok í
the-man and no love against lay Let to-you that also into
hug koma, at allir koma félausir í heiminn, svá skiljask ok
mind come that all come wealthless into the-world so part also
allir við heiminn, at engum fylgir féit or heiminum;
all from the-world that to-no-one follows the-wealth out-of the-world
þó skalt þú þess gá, at engu týnir þú fyrir vanrœktar sakir
yet shall you that heed that nothing lose you for negligence's sake
eða vangæzlu. Ger þik aldrigi svá úglaðan eptir fenginn
or carelessness Make yourself never so unglad after gotten
skaða, at þú látir þik eigi jafnmjök hugga góða ván.
harm that you let yourself not equally-much comfort good hope
En ef þú verðr fyrir manntjónum, þá ber þú ok þann skaða
But if you become for man-losses then bear you also that harm
með góðu hófi ok ger þat í hug þér, at hverr drýgir
with good moderation and make that in mind your that each fulfills
í því mannliga náttúru, at hann deyr or heiminum; því at
in that human nature that he dies out-of the-world because
engi er til þess skapaðr, at jafnan skuli lifa í heiminum. Lát
no-one is for that created that always shall live in the-world Let
þik meir þat úgleðja, ef þinn kunningi deyr við þat, at hann
you more that sadden if your acquaintance dies on that that he
hefir eigi vel lifat í heiminum, eða með nökkurri skömm frá
has not well lived in the-world or with some shame from
skilzk, en allra helzt, ef þú hræðisk hánum nökkurn sáluháska,
parts but of-all most if you fear for-him some soul-danger
þá eru slíkir hlutir harmandi heldr en sá, at hann drýgi
then are such things to-be-grieved rather than that that he fulfill
mannliga náttúru í dauða sínum. En ef hann lifir sómasamliga,
human nature in death his But if he lives honorably
meðan hann var í veröldunni, ok deyr hann við þat, at hann
while he was in the-world and dies he on that that he

gerði góða forsjá fyrir sál sinni, þá skalt þú huggask við
made good provision for soul his then shall you comfort-yourself with
góðan orðskvið, er eptir hann lifir, en allra helzt við góðan
good saying which after him lives but of-all most with good
fagnað, er þú væntir hánum af guði annars heims.
joy which you expect for-him from God of-(the)-other world
Sömu lund skalt þú stýra hug þínum með hófi ok góðu
Same way shall you steer mind your with moderation and good
gjafnageði, ef þeir hlutir bera þér til handa, er þinn hug veki
temper if those things bear you to hand which your mind wake
til fagnaðar ok gleði, ok þér þykkja góðir vera, annathvárt
to joy and gladness and to-you seem good to-be either
um þeirra manna fráfall, er þér var fjándskapr á, eða um
about of-those men's fall whom to-you was enmity on or about
einahverja þá hluti aðra, er þér þykkir fagnaðr á vera.
some those things other which to-you seems joy on to-be
En ef þat kann at henda, at þú spyrr þeirra manna líflát,
But if it can to befall that you learn of-those men's life-loss
er þér var áðr fjándskapr á, ok þú vildir víst öfundarverk
whom to-you was before enmity on and you would surely envy-work
á vinna, ef þú ættir kost á, þá skalt þú meir gleðjask við
on work if you had choice on-it then shall you more be-glad at
þat, er guð hefir þik frelstan af þrefaldri synd, en þú skalt
that that God has you freed from threefold sin than you shall
gleðjask við dauða hans, er frá er fallinn, ok skalt þú því
be-glad at death his who from is fallen and shall you that
fagna, at guð hefir frjálsat hendr þínar af syndligu verki
rejoice that God has freed hands your from sinful work
því, er þú hafðir ætlat at gera, en hug þinn af langri
that which you had intended to do but mind your from long
reiði ok öfund, er þú hafðir við hann, meðan hann lifði.
anger and envy which you had toward him while he lived

Svá ok ef þú þiggr af konungi eða einumhverjum öðrum
So also if you receive from (the)-king or some other
ríkismanni sœmd ok metnað, þá varðar þat miklu, at þú
mighty-man honor and esteem then concerns that much that you
kunnir þat með mundangshófi at þiggja, ok lát þik þat
know that with balance's-measure to receive and let yourself that
eigi henda, sem margan hendir úsnotran; þvíat þat hendir
not befall which many befalls unwise because that befalls
margan þann, sem eigi er vitr, ef hann fær eitthvert upphaf
many that-one who not is wise if he gets some advancement
af ríkismönnum, at hann hefr sik svá hátt með sínu
from mighty-men that he raises himself so high with his
drambi ok ágirnd, at hánum þykki engi jafnmaki sinn vera;
pride and greed that to-him seems no-one equal his to-be
en slíkt upphaf verðr hverjum til niðrfalls, er þat görir;
but such advancement becomes to-each for downfall who that does
þvíat þat er náttúra guðs at lægja ofmikit dramb með helgu
because that is nature of-God to lower too-great pride with holy
lítillætti, ok á hverr þess vísa ván, er ágjarnliga gengr
humility and has each of-that certain expectation who greedily goes
fram með ofmiklu drambi, þá hefir hann jafnan guð móti
forward with too-great pride then has he always God against
sér. Nú ef þér verðr þess auðit, at þú fær upphaf af
himself Now if to-you becomes of-that granted that you get advancement from
konungi eða af öðrum ríkismönnum, þá lát þú þér þat
(the)-king or from other mighty-men then let you to-yourself that
í hug koma, at þat er guðs ráð ok hans freistni, þvíat
into mind come that that is God's counsel and his trial because
hann hefir sér í hendi hug ok hjarta stórhöfðingja, at
he has for-himself in hand mind and heart of-great-chieftains to
skjóta þeim í hug þá menn upp at hefja með sœmd ok
shoot to-them into mind those men up to raise with honor and

metorði, ef hann vill, ok er þat hverjum skyldarembætti móti
esteem if he wishes and is that to-each duty-office against
því, at vera hjálpsmaðr þeirra, er minna megu en hann. Ger
that to be helper of-those who less may than he Make
þat í hug þér, ef guð hefr þik upp til nökkurrar sœmdar,
that in mind your if God raises you up to some honor
at þat skal allra manna gagn vera, þeirra er minna megu
that that shall of-all men benefit be of-those who less may
en þú, fyrir utan þá menn er hata siðu ok ráðvendi;
than you before outside those men who hate manners and integrity
þeirra á þat mein at vera, ef dugandi maðr fær afl ok
to-them ought that harm to be if doughty man gets power and
styrk. En ef guð gefr þér mannvit ok góða skilning, ok
strength But if God gives you wit and good understanding and
verðr þér þess auðit þar með, at þú verðr með nökkurri
becomes to-you of-that granted there with that you become with some
sœmd upphafðr af ríkismönnum, þá eru þessir hlutir þeir,
honor raised-up by mighty-men then are these things those
er þú þarft mjök at varask, drambsamligan metnað ok
which you need much to beware proud ambition and
mútugjarnliga fésníkni eða gleymisamligar úrœktir um
bribe-greedy wealth-grabbing or forgetful neglects about
nauðsyn annarra manna, þeirra er minna megu en þú. Lát
(the)-need of-other men those who less may than you Let
þér jafnan fyrir augum vera til viðrsýnar úfarar þeirra,
to-you always before eyes be for warning (the)-misfortunes of-those
er háðuliga féllu fyrir sakar ofmikils drambs. Lát þér ok
who shamefully fell for sake of-too-great pride Let to-you also
í hug koma til góðrar vánar þeirra meðferðir, er jafnan
into mind come for good hope their conducts who always
féngu sœmdir fyrir staðfastligt réttlæti ok lítillæti.
got honors for steadfast righteousness and humility

The son asks for examples. The father tells of Joseph, raised by Pharaoh for his faithfulness after a false charge; of Vashti, deposed for pride, and Esther set in her place; of Haman, hanged on the cross he built for Mordecai; and of Constantine and Helena, who let the heathen judges Craton and Zenophilus decide between Christians and Jews. God turns the hearts of kings as he will, and these examples are written so that men may follow the good and shun the bad.

SON Þetta skilsk mér vel, at guð görir því menn misjafna
This is-understood to-me well that God makes therefore men uneven
hvárttveggja at ríki ok mannviti, at hann vill svá freista,
both in power and wit that he will so try
með hverju hófi hverr kann þess at gæta, er hann gefr,
with what moderation each can that to keep which he gives
hvárttveggja um áburðarsamligan metnað við sjálfan sik ok
both about haughty ambition toward self himself and
um hófsamligan örleik við þá, er hans þurfu ok eigi hafa
about moderate generosity toward those who of-him need and not have
slíkar gjafir af guði fengit. Ok fyrir því vil ek þess biðja
such gifts from God gotten And for that will I of-that ask
yðr, at þér sýnit mér með nökkurum dœmum, hvárttveggja
you that you show me with some examples both
þá er sœmdir hafa hlotit af sannsýni ok lítillæti, eða hina
those who honors have got from justice and humility or the-others
er skaðasamliga hluti hafa hlotit af drambsamligri yfirgirnd.
who harmful things have got from proud covetousness
FATHER Svá mikill er fjöldi dœma þeirra, at vér þurfum
So great is (the)-multitude of-examples of-those that we need
með mikilli lengð vára rœðu at auka, ef vér skulum allra
with great length our talk to increase if we shall all
þeirra minnask at hvárritveggja tölu, er vér vitum dœmi
of-them remember in either number which we know examples

til, at slíkir atburðir hafa til handa komit, ok munum vér
to that such events have to hand come and will we
fyrir því fárra geta, ok þó nökkurra af hvárumtveggja, þvíat
for that few mention and yet some of both because
þat er meiri skyndir langrar rœðu. Þessi eru þau dœmi, er
that is greater hastener of-long talk These are those examples which
forn eru ok góð á at minnask. Þá er Joseph var seldr út
old are and good on to remember Then when Joseph was sold out
á Egiptaland, þá keypti hann einn ríkr höfðingi; en síðan
into Egypt then bought him one mighty chieftain but after
hann hafði keyptan hann, þá fann hann þat á hánum, at
he had bought him then found he that in him that
hann var vitr maðr, ok hóf hann Joseph til sœmdar umfram
he was wise man and raised he Joseph to honor beyond
alla aðra sína þjónostumenn, hvárttveggja þá er auðgir váru
all other his service-men both those who wealthy were
fyrir hánum, ok þóat frjálsir frændr væri, ok seldi hánum í
before him and though free kinsmen were and gave to-him into
hendr til gæzlu fjárhluti sína ok auðœfi, hús ok híbíli ok
hands for keeping goods his and riches house and dwellings and
allan sinn varnað. En fyrir því at Joseph var fríðr maðr
all his property But for that that Joseph was handsome man
at áliti ok hófsamr í meðferð sinni ok lítillæti, en vitr í
in looks and moderate in conduct his and humility but wise in
orðlagi, þá tók hann elsku ek vingan af öllum þeim, er
speech then took he love and friendship from all those who
kunnu hann ok undir þeim höfðingja váru, er hans herra var.
knew him and under that chieftain were who his lord was
Kona þess hins ríka manns elskaði Joseph umfram
(The)-wife of-that the mighty man loved Joseph beyond
mundangshóf, þvíat hon vildi hóra bónda sinn með illri
measure because she would cuckold husband her with evil

girnd sakar ástar þeirrar, er hon hafði við Joseph, ok
desire for-sake-of love that which she had toward Joseph and
eigi skamdisk hon þess, með djarfligri girnd at sýna hánum
not was-ashamed she of-that with bold desire to show him
þat er henni var í skapi. En þá er hann fann vilja
that which to-her was in mind But then when he found will
hennar, þá svaraði hann þessa leið: „Vit megum eigi vera
her then answered he this way We-two may not be
jafnkomin saman, þvíat þú ert lafdi mín, en ek em þræll
equally-come together because you are lady my but I am thrall
þinn; ok er þér þat ofmikil skömm at leggjask undir mik,
your and is to-you that too-great shame to lay-yourself under me
en mér er þat ofmikil dirfð ok dramb at veita þér þá
but to-me is that too-great boldness and pride to give you that
úscemd, en allra verst er sakar údyggleiks þess, er ek hefi
dishonor but of-all worst is for-sake-of faithlessness that which I have
við herra minn, ef ek skal svá gjalda hánum sína gœzku
toward lord my if I shall so repay him his goodness
sem svikafullr þræll, þvíat hann hefir mér í hendr selt auð
as treacherous thrall because he has to-me into hands given wealth
sinn ok allan ríkdóm til gæzlu svá sem tryggr höfðingi, ok
his and all riches for keeping so as trusty chieftain and
má ek eigi svíkja lánardróttin minn með níðsamligri skömm,
may I not betray lord my with shameful disgrace
nema ek vilja sanna orðskvið þann, sem mælt er, at ilt er at
unless I will prove saying that which said is that ill is to
eiga þræl at einka vin.“ En þegar er kona þessi sá þat, at
have thrall for close friend But as-soon as woman this saw that that
Joseph var góðr maðr ok vildi tryggr vera, þá þótti henni
Joseph was good man and would trusty be then seemed to-her
skömm, at hann skyldi vita údyggleik hennar, ok vildi hon
shame that he should know faithlessness her and would she

þá gjarna fyrirkoma hánum, ef hon mætti, með fjándskap
then gladly do-away-with him if she might with enmity
en eigi sannsýni. Hon sagði bónda sínum, at Joseph beiddi
but not justice She told husband her that Joseph asked
hana úsœmdar, ok kvað hon þat vera ofdramb einum þræli
her of-dishonor and said she that to-be over-pride for-one thrall
at mæla slíka dirfð við lafdi sína. Henni var trúat sem góðri
to speak such boldness to lady his To-her was believed as good
konu, ok var Joseph kastaðr í dýblissu með digrum fjötrum
woman and was Joseph thrown into dungeon with thick fetters
ok þungum járnrekendum, ok var þat ætlat, at hann skyldi
and heavy iron-chains and was that intended that he should
svá líf sitt enda, at rotna þar kvikr fyrir ofdramb sitt ok
so life his end to rot there alive for over-pride his and
útryggleik. En því at guð elskar jafnan réttendi ok lítillæti,
faithlessness But for-that that God loves always rights and humility
ok hann sá tryggleik Josephs ok vissi hann saklausan,
and he saw (the)-faithfulness of-Joseph and knew him guiltless
þá skipaði hann svá til, at Josephi varð gagn at þeirri
then arranged he so to-it that to-Joseph became benefit from that
fordœming, er hann varð saklauss fyrir; þvíat guð frelsti
condemnation which he became guiltless for because God freed
hann með því or þeirri dýblissu, at hann var hafðr til
him with that out-of that dungeon that he was had for
miklu meira ríkis síðan en áðr, ok skaut guð því í hug
much greater power afterward than before and shot God that into mind
Pharao konungi, at Josephr var görr höfðingi ok dómari yfir
to-Pharaoh (the)-king that Joseph was made chieftain and judge over
öllu Egiptalandi næst konunginum sjálfum, ok hélt hann þeirri
all Egypt next the-king himself and held he that
sœmd síðan æ til ellidaga sinna, ok meðan hann lifði.
honor afterward ever to old-age-days his and while he lived

Þessi atburðr gerðisk enn í öðrum stað þvílíkr nökkuru
This event happened still in another place such somewhat
síðar, at einn ágætr konungr, sá er réð fyrir mörgum
later that one excellent king that-one who ruled over many
ríkjum, hann var nefndr með þreföldu nafni, ok voldi því
realms he was named with threefold name and caused that
grein tungna þeirra, er hann var konungr yfir; var
(the)-difference of-tongues of-those which he was king over was
hann í einum stað kallaðr Artaserxes, en í öðrum stað var
he in one place called Artaxerxes but in another place was
hann kallaðr Scirus; ok svá segja sumir menn, at guð mælti
he called Cyrus and so say some men that God spoke
þar vel til hans fyrir munn propheta síns: Christo meo
there well to him through (the)-mouth of-prophet his to-anointed my
Sciro, cujus apprehendi dexteram, ut subjiciam ante faciem
Cyrus whose I-have-grasped right-hand that I-may-subdue before face
ejus gentes et dorsa regum vertam etc.; en sumir segja,
his nations and backs of-kings I-may-turn etc but some say
at þat var annarr Scirus, er sú ritning er um gör, ok
that that was another Cyrus whom that scripture is about made and
dœmum vér því ekki lengra um þat, at vér vitum eigi
judge we therefore not longer about that that we know not
til víss, hvárt þat er ritat um þenna Scirum eða annan. En
for certain whether it is written about this Cyrus or another But
í hinum þriðja stað var þessi konungr kallaðr Assverus. En
in the third place was this king called Abasuerus But
fyrir því at hann var ríkr sjálfr ok ágætr, þá átti hann ok
for that that he was mighty himself and excellent then had he also
ríka konu, þá er dróttning hans var, ok hét sú Vastes.
mighty wife her who queen his was and was-called she Vashti
En meðan konungr hafði farit langa herför at víðlenda
But while (the)-king had gone long war-journey to widen

ríki sitt, þá hafði hann skipat Vastes dróttning fyrir at
realm his then had he appointed Vashti queen before to
gæta þess hluta ríkis, er helzt var höfuðsæti hans í.
keep that part of-(the)-realm which most was chief-seat his in
Ok þá er hann var heim aptr til hennar kominn með
And then when he was home back to her come with
fengnum ríkdómi, þá gerði hann mikla veizlu til fagnaðar
gotten riches then made he great feast for welcome
öllum höfðingjum sínum, þeim sem hánum höfðu fylgt í
to-all chieftains his those who him had followed in
þessarri herför; en Vastes dróttning gerði aðra veizlu sínum
this war-journey but Vashti queen made another feast for-her
höfðingjum, þeim sem heima höfðu verit til ríkisgæzlu með
chieftains those who at-home had been for realm-keeping with
henni. Þá lét konungrinn svá umbjóða, at Vastes dróttning
her Then let the-king so command that Vashti queen
skyldi ganga til fundar hans í höll hans ok bera alla fegrð
should go to meeting his in hall his and bear all beauty
dróttningar skrúðs með allri tign, ok fagna svá heimkvámu
of-queen's adornment with all dignity and welcome so homecoming
hans, ok sœma í því veizlu hans. En Vastes dróttning
his and honor in that feast his But Vashti queen
neikvæddi boðorði konungs, ok kvazk eigi mega ganga
refused (the)-command of-(the)-king and said-of-herself not may go
frá sinni veizlu, þar sem hon hafði til sín kallat marga góða
from her feast there where she had to herself called many good
höfðingja. En þá er konungrinn sá ofmetnað hennar ok
chieftains But then when the-king saw arrogance her and
dramb, þá skildi hann þat, at hon mat sik eigi minna af
pride then understood he that that she valued herself not less for
kyrrsæti sínu ok ríkis gæzlu, þess er hann hafði henni í
quiet-sitting her and realm's keeping that which he had her into

hendr fengit, heldr en hon mat konunginn af háskasamligu
hands given rather than she valued the-king for dangerous
starfi, því er hann hafði, meðan hann gerðisk víðlendr.
toil that which he had while he made-himself wide-landed
Fyrir þetta hennar ofdramb varð konungr svá reiðr, at hann
For this her over-pride became (the)-king so angry that he
sagði Vastes af dróttningardómi ok öllu því ríki, er hon
deposed Vashti from queenship and all that realm which she
hafði, en hann tók eina hertekna mey af Israels fólki, sú
had but he took one war-captured maid of Israel's folk she
er þar var þá í ánauð í hans ríki, þóat hon væri komin
who there was then in bondage in his realm though she were come
af göfgum frændum, þar sem hon var borin; en sú hét
of noble kinsmen there where she was born but she was-called
Ester at nafni. Þessa hina sömu setti konungrinn í sæti
Esther by name This the same set the-king in (the)-seat
Vastes, ok gaf henni alt þat ríki, er áðr hafði Vastes,
of-Vashti and gave her all that realm which before had Vashti
ok skipaði þá at vera Ester dróttning yfir öllu ríki sínu.
and appointed then to be Esther queen over all realm his
Enn gerðisk fám dögum síðar annarr atburðr með þeim sama
Still happened few days later another event with that same
konungi. Aman hét einn ríkr höfðingi ok ágætr, sá
king Haman was-called one mighty chieftain and excellent that-one
er var með Assvero konungi. Konungrinn mat hann svá
who was with Ahasuerus (the)-king The-king valued him so
mikils, at öll þjóð skyldi hánum hlýða, ok til hans hníga
much that all people should him obey and to him bow
svá sem konungi sjálfum. En Mardocheus hét einn, sá
so as to-(the)-king himself But Mordecai was-called one that-one
er hertekinn var af Israels fólki, hann var föðurbróðir Ester
who war-captured was of Israel's folk he was father's-brother of-Esther

dróttningar, en fyrir því at hann sá sik bæði fátœkan ok
queen but for that that he saw himself both poor and
ánauðgan, þá þorði hann eigi þat at birta, at hann var
in-bondage then dared he not that to reveal that he was
svá skyldr dróttningu, ok ekki þorði dróttningin ok meira
so related to-(the)-queen and not dared the-queen also more
yfirlæti hánum at veita en einumhverjum öðrum úkunnum
favor to-him to give than to-some other unknown
þjónostumanni. Þá gerðisk svá til einnhvern dag, at Aman
service-man Then happened so to-it some day that Haman
höfðingi var kominn til konungs fundar, ok þá er hann fór
chieftain was come to king's meeting and then when he went
heim aptr, þá bar veg hans þar í nánd, sem Mardocheus
home back then bore way his there in nearness where Mordecai
sat. En Mardocheus var áhyggjufullr um ánauð, þá er
sat But Mordecai was anxious about bondage that which
hann var í staddr ok Israels fólk alt, þat sem hertekit var
he was in placed and Israel's folk all that which war-captured was
or Israels landi; en fyrir sakar þessarrar áhyggju, þá gáði
out-of Israel's land but for sake of-this anxiety then heeded
hann eigi, at Aman fór svá nær hánum, ok stóð hann
he not that Haman went so near him and stood he
fyrir því eigi upp at lúta hánum. En Aman varð við þat
for that not up to bow to-him But Haman became at that
svá reiðr, at einn útlenzkr þræll vildi eigi lúta hánum, at
so angry that one foreign thrall would not bow to-him that
hann lét þegar reisa kross einn hávan heima í garði sínum,
he let at-once raise cross one high at-home in yard his
er hann kom heim, ok ætlaði þar at festa Mardocheum
when he came home and intended there to fasten Mordecai
á þann kross. Hann lét ok skrá um alt konungsríkit,
on that cross He let also write about all the-kingdom

at hverr maðr skyldi slíkan rétt gefa Israels fólki sem
that each man should such right give to-Israel's folk as
vildi, sá ræna þá er þat vildi, en sá í ánauð ok
would that-one rob them who that would but that-one into bondage and
þrældóm taka, er þat vildi, en sá drepa, er þat vildi.
thralldom take who that would but that-one kill who that would
En þá er Mardocheus varð varr við þessi tíðendi, þá
But then when Mordecai became aware of these tidings then
þröngði hann nauðsyn til meiri dirfðar við dróttningina, ok
pressed him need to greater boldness toward the-queen and
kom hann til fundar við hana ok féll til fóta henni, ok sagði
came he to meeting with her and fell to feet her and told
þessi tíðendi með miklum harmi hugar. Sem dróttningin
these tidings with great grief of-mind When the-queen
heyrði, at alt þat fólk var fyrirdœmt, er hon var af komin,
heard that all that folk was condemned which she was from come
þá bað hon sér til guðs með öllu hjarta; því næst gékk
then prayed she for-herself to God with all heart that next went
hon til konungs fundar búin með öllu hátíðligu dróttningar
she to king's meeting dressed with all festive queen's
skrúði ok féll til fóta hánum lítillátliga. En þá er
adornment and fell to feet his humbly But then when
dróttningin var þangat komin, ok konungr sá, at hon var þar
the-queen was thither come and (the)-king saw that she was there
komin með svá mikit lítillæti ok fölnanda andliti, þá skildi
come with so great humility and paling face then understood
hann, at hon hafði svá mikit stórmæli til hans fundar, at
he that she had so great great-matter to his meeting that
hon þurfti at taka dirfð af hans blíðu til framflutningar
she needed to take boldness from his gentleness for bringing-forward
sinna nauðsynja, ok tók hann í hönd henni ok reisti hana
of-her needs and took he in hand her and raised her

upp, ok setti hana í sæti hjá sér með blíðum orðum, ok
up and set her in seat beside himself with gentle words and
bað hana birta fyrir sér skilvísliga alla þessa atburði um sitt
bade her reveal before him clearly all these events about her
erendi. Ester dróttning gerði sem konungrinn bauð, ok sýndi
errand Esther queen did as the-king bade and showed
hánum allan þenna atburð, eptir því sem til hafði görzk,
him all this event according-to that which to-it had happened
ok bað hann síðan skipa eptir konungligri miskunn
and asked him afterward arrange according-to kingly mercy
meir, heldr en eptir hóflausri reiði Amans. En þá er
more rather than according-to measureless anger of-Haman But then when
konungrinn sá hóflausa yfirgirnd ok drambsamliga reiði
the-king saw (the)-measureless covetousness and proud anger
Amans, þá lét hann festa sjálfan Aman á þann kross, er
of-Haman then let he fasten himself Haman on that cross which
hann hafði áðr ætlat Mardocheum á, ok bauð um alt sitt
he had before intended Mordecai on and bade about all his
ríki, at Israels fólk skyldi búa í fullu frelsi, eptir því
realm that Israel's folk should dwell in full freedom according-to that
sem setning var heilagra laga Israels fólks; en hann gaf
which (the)-settlement was of-holy laws of-Israel's folk but he gave
allan ríkdóm Mardocheo, þann sem Aman hafði hafðan áðr.
all riches to-Mordecai that which Haman had had before
Nú skaltu á slíku marka, at guð vill með skyldu heimta
Now shall-you on such mark that God will with duty demand
hóf ok sannsýni, lítillæti ok réttlæti ok tryggleik af
moderation and justice humility and righteousness and faithfulness from
þeim, sem hann hefr til sœmdar; fyrir því at Joseph fékk,
those whom he raises to honor for that that Joseph got
sem fyrr sögðum vér, ágæta sœmd ok mikit upphaf fyrir
as before told we excellent honor and great advancement for

sinn tryggleik ok lítillæti, þar sem hann var með verðaurum
his faithfulness and humility there where he was with price-money
keyptr þræll til úkunnra þjóða, ok hóf guð hann síðan með
bought thrall to unknown peoples and raised God him afterward with
konungsins skipan, at vera lávarðr ok hinn hæsti dómari
the-king's arrangement to be lord and the highest judge
næstr konunginum sjálfum yfir öllu Egiptalandi. Þar má ok
next the-king himself over all Egypt There may-one also
marka, hversu þat er mjök móti guði gört, at hefja sik sjálfr
mark how that is much against God done to raise oneself self
upp með drambsamligum metnaði, þar sem Vastes dróttning
up with proud ambition there where Vashti queen
týndi dróttningardómi sínum ok öllu ríki sínu á einum degi
lost queenship her and all realm her in one day
fyrir ofmetnaðar sakir, en í hennar sæti var síðan tekin
for arrogance's sake but in her seat was afterward taken
fémær af úkunnum þjóðum; eða svá ok þar sem Aman
a-bought-maid from unknown peoples or so also there where Haman
týndi á einum degi öllum sínum ríkdómi fyrir sakar úhófs
lost in one day all his riches for sake of-immoderation
ok ofmetnaðar, en í ríki hans var settr einn útlenzkr þjónn
and arrogance but into realm his was set one foreign servant
hertekinn. Nú ef þér verðr sœmdar auðit af stórhöfðingjum,
war-captured Now if to-you becomes of-honor granted from great-chieftains
þá varask þú slíka atburði af þessum dœmum, sem nú
then beware you such events from these examples as now
hefir þú heyrt, þvíat mörg eru þvílík til, ok drag þér
have you heard because many are such to-it and draw to-yourself
til nytja þau dœmi, er fyrr sagða ek þér um Joseph.
for use those examples which before told I you about Joseph

Nú eru enn ein þau dœmi, er löngu urðu síðan um
Now are still one those examples which long happened later in
daga Constantinus keisara, þvíat guð hafði hann skipaðan
(the)-days of-Constantine emperor because God had him appointed
höfðingja yfir öllum heimi, ok snerisk hann til réttlætis ok
chieftain over all world and turned he to righteousness and
kristni, þegar hann fékk skilning heilagrar trúar. Hann
Christianity as-soon-as he got understanding of-holy faith He
hafði gefit Elenu dróttning mœðr sinni ríki fyrir austan
had given Helena queen mother his realm to-the east
haf í Gyðinga veldi; en með því at hon hafði stjórn
of-(the)-sea in Jews' power but with that that she had governance
ok forsjó þar, þá skildisk henni þat, at engi mundi
and foresight there then was-understood to-her that that no would
önnur vera trú rétt til guðs, nema sú er Gyðingar
other be faith right toward God except that which (the)-Jews
höfðu. En þá er bréf fóru þeirra á millim, keisarans
had But then when letters went of-them on between of-the-emperor
sonar hennar ok dróttningarinnar, þá tók þeim þat kunnigt
son her and of-the-queen then took to-them that known
at gerask, at grein var á trú þeirri, er hvárt þeirra hafði
to become that difference was in faith that which each of-them had
til guðs. Þá bauð keisarinn svá, at dróttningin skyldi
toward God Then bade the-emperor so that the-queen should
koma austan um haf með sínum lærðum mönnum ok
come from-the-east over sea with her learned men and
spekingum ok mörgum öðrum höfðingjum, ok skyldi fundr
sages and many other chieftains and should meeting
þeirra vera í Rúmaborg, ok láta þar rannsaka sannendi
their be in Rome and let there examine truth
heilagrar trúar. En þá er dróttningin kom þar með því
of-holy faith But then when the-queen came there with that

liði, þá hafði konungrinn saman samnat mörgum byskupum
host then had the-king together gathered many bishops
með Silvestro páva ok mörgum spekingum, hvárttveggja
with Silvester pope and many sages both
kristnum ok heiðnum. En at settri stefnu ok skipuðu
Christian and heathen But at appointed meeting and ordered
þingi millim keisarans ok dróttningarinnar, þá þóttusk
assembly between the-emperor and the-queen then thought-themselves
þau bæði þat finna, at þar mundi verða kappsamlig þræta
they both that find that there would become zealous dispute
milli kristinna byskupa ok lærðra manna Gyðinga ok annarra
between Christian bishops and learned men of-Jews and other
spekinga þeirra, sem dróttninginni fylgðu austan, með því
sages of-those who the-queen followed from-the-east with that
at hvárirtveggja mundu framdraga athugasamlig dœmi af
that both-sides would bring-forward weighty examples from
sínum bókum móti öðrum til sannenda ok staðfestu síns
their books against others for truth and confirmation of-their
fróðleiks ok heilagrar trúar; þá sá þau þat til víst, at þess
learning and of-holy faith then saw they that to certainly that of-that
mátti eigi missa á þeirri stefnu, at réttlátir dómarar væri
might-one not miss at that meeting that righteous judges were
skipaðir yfir, þeir er með hófi ok sannsýni dœmdi öll
appointed over they who with moderation and justice judged all
þau mál, er þar yrði framborin af hvárratveggja hendi.
those cases which there became brought-forward from either hand
En fyrir því at keisarinn var gæzlumaðr heilagrar kristni
But for that that the-emperor was guardian of-holy Christianity
með pávanum ok kristnum byskupum, en dróttningin
with the-pope and Christian bishops but the-queen
hlífiskjöldr Gyðinga trúar, þá sýndisk þeim báðum, at
shield-of-protection of-Jews' faith then seemed to-them both that

þat væri eigi fallit at leiða þau í þá freistni, at þau væri
that were not fitting to lead them into that temptation that they were
dómarar yfir þessarri þrætu; ok létu þau fyrir því rannsaka
judges over this dispute and let they for that examine
með allri eptirleitan millim allra spekinga, ef nökkurir mætti
with all inquiry among all sages if any might
þeir finnask í þeirra fjölda, er svá öruggir væri at mannviti,
they be-found in their multitude who so secure were in wit
eða at réttlæti eða sannsýni, at allir þeir sem þar váru
or in righteousness or justice that all those who there were
komnir mætti trúa þeim til réttdœmis um þessa þrætu.
come might trust them for right-judgment about this dispute
En þá er allr fjöldi var rannsakaðr, þá funnusk eigi
But then when all (the)-multitude was examined then were-found not
fleiri þeir menn en tveir, er menn þorðu sér til
more those men than two whom men dared for-themselves as
dómara at kjósa yfir þessum stórmælum; en þeir menn váru
judges to choose over these great-matters but those men were
báðir heiðnir, ok váru hvárki bundnir í kristinna manna lög
both heathen and were neither bound in Christian men's laws
né í Gyðinga trú. Annarr þeirra hét Craton, hann var
nor in Jews' faith One of-them was-called Craton he was
spekingr mikill ok vel lærðr til alls mannvits, vin var hann
sage great and well taught to all wit friend was he
ríkra manna, ok fal sik vel þeim á hendi, en aldri
of-mighty men and committed himself well to-them into hand but never
elskaði hann meir jarðlig auðœfi, en hann þurfti til klæða
loved he more earthly riches than he needed for clothes
ok sinnar fœzlu; en þóat ríkismenn gæfi hánum meira en
and his food but though mighty-men gave him more than
hann þurfti, þá gaf hann þat alt fram á leið þeim, sem
he needed then gave he that all forward on way to-those who

þurftigir váru, ok af gékk hans neyzlu. Þat var ok hans
needy were and beyond went his consumption That was also his
náttúra, at hann var fálátr ok sannmæltr, ok eigi vissu
nature that he was reserved and true-spoken and not knew
menn, at í hans munni væri lygi funnin, ok sýndisk svá
men that in his mouth were lie found and seemed so
öllum, at makligleikr mannvits ok góðrar náttúru, er hann
to-all that (the)-worthiness of-wit and good nature which he
hafði, mætti vel kjósa hann til at vera dómari yfir slíku
had might well choose him to-it to be judge over such
stórmæli. En annarr sá er til dómara var kosinn, var
great-matter But (the)-other that-one who for judge was chosen was
kallaðr Zenophilus at nafni; hann var einn ríkr hertogi ok
called Zenophilus by name he was one mighty duke and
ágætr; en þar sem hann hafði ríkisgæzlu, þá vissi engi maðr
excellent but there where he had realm's-keeping then knew no man
dœmi til, at hann hefði hallat réttum dómi. Hann var
example to-it that he had inclined right judgment He was
mikill snildarmaðr at mælsku ok vel lærðr til alls mannvits,
great eloquent-man in eloquence and well taught to all wit
blíðr maðr í viðrœðu ok lítillátr, þóat hann væri ríkr, ok
gentle man in conversation and humble though he were mighty and
eigi máttu menn muna, at lygi væri í hans munni funnin.
not could men remember that lie were in his mouth found
En at kosnum þessum dómurum af allra manna hendi, þá
But at chosen these judges from all men's hand then
settisk þing kristinna manna ok Gyðinga, ok dœmdu þeir
was-set assembly of-Christian men and of-Jews and judged they
um allar þeirra þrætur, svá sem þeir váru til kosnir, ok váru
about all their disputes so as they were for chosen and were
þar svá funnir sem fyrr, at þeir hölluðu hvergi réttum dómi.
there so found as before that they inclined nowhere right judgment

En ek sagða þér fyrir því þessi dœmi, at þú skildir
But I told you for that these examples that you understood
hvárttveggja lítillæti keisarans ok réttlæti ok svá
both (the)-humility of-the-emperor and righteousness and so
dróttningarinnar, þar sem þau váru höfðingjar yfir öllum
of-the-queen there where they were chieftains over all
heiminum, enda létu sér þó sama at sitja undir hlýðni
the-world moreover let to-themselves yet befit to sit under obedience
kosinna dómara, þeirra er miklu váru minni fyrir sér bæði
of-chosen judges those who much were less for themselves both
at valdi ok at ríki, ok at öllum öðrum hlutum, en þau váru
in might and in power and in all other things than they were
sjálf. Svá skaltu ok þat skilja, hversu mikla sœmd þessir
themselves So shall-you also that understand how great honor these
menn hlutu af mannviti sínu ok réttlæti, þar sem þeir váru
men got from wit their and righteousness there where they were
báðir heiðnir ok váru þó yfir öllum heimi um skilning
both heathen and were yet over all world about understanding
heilagrar trúar ok nauðsynjar alls heimsins, ok mátt þú nú
of-holy faith and needs of-all the-world and may you now
þat þekkja, sem fyrr sagða ek þér í okkarri rœðu, at þat
that recognize which before told I you in our talk that that
skiptir miklu máli, hvat hverr maðr leifir til dœma eptir sik.
matters great matter what each man leaves for examples after himself
Joseph var fyrir burð várs herra Jesu Krists, ok keyptr með
Joseph was before (the)-birth of-our lord Jesus Christ and bought with
verðaurum á Egiptaland svá sem útlenzkr þræll, en tryggleikr
price-money into Egypt so as foreign thrall but faithfulness
hans ok lítillæti líkaði svá vel guði, at hann var næst
his and humility pleased so well God that he was next
konunginum yfirmaðr allra þeirra, er þá váru bornir í því
to-the-king over-man of-all those who then were born in that

landi ok þar áttu fé ok frændr, hvárt sem váru ríkir eða
land and there owned wealth and kinsmen whether that they-were mighty or
úríkir. Mörgum hundruðum vetra var Joseph sjálfr dauðr, ok
unmighty Many hundreds of-winters was Joseph himself dead and
er þó enn lifandi sœmd hans ok hvern dag getit millim allra
is yet still living honor his and each day mentioned among all
vitra manna um allan heim. Vastes dróttning var löngu dauð
wise men about all world Vashti queen was long dead
fyrir burð guðs, eða Aman höfðingi, ok er enn sú skömm
before (the)-birth of-God or Haman chieftain and is still that shame
lifandi, er þau féngu fyrir heimsku sína ok ofmetnað. Í dag
living which they got for folly their and arrogance In day
berr enn Ester dróttning lifandi sœmd, þá er hon fékk fyrir
bears still Esther queen living honor that which she got for
sitt lítillæti, þar sem hon var hertekin ambátt til Indíalands,
her humility there where she was war-captured bondmaid to India-land
ok var þó síðan dróttning yfir mörgum ríkjum ok stórum,
and was yet afterward queen over many realms and great
ok sett í þat sæti, er Vastes dróttning var or rekin.
and set in that seat which Vashti queen was out-of driven
En þóat þessi dœmi, er síðar gátum vér um Constantinum
But though these examples which later mentioned we about Constantine
keisara ok Elenu dróttning móður hans, væri eptir burð
emperor and Helena queen mother his were after (the)-birth
guðs, þá var þat þó svá löngu, at engi maðr má þat fyrir
of-God then was that yet so long-ago that no man may that for
elli sakar muna, ok bera þeir enn í dag skínandi sœmd.
age's sake remember and bear they still in day shining honor
Craton ok Zenophilus þóat þeir sé sjálfir dauðir, þá eru
Craton and Zenophilus though they be themselves dead then are
þeir þó virðir fyrir réttlæti sitt ok mannvit, þar sem þeir
they yet valued for righteousness their and wit there where they

váru báðir heiðnir menn, ok váru þeir þó kosnir til dómara
were both heathen men and were they yet chosen for judges
náliga millim allra þeirra manna, er í váru heiminum, ok
nearly among all those men who in were the-world and
var þeim trúat af allra manna hendi, bæði kristinna manna
was to-them believed from all men's hand both of-Christian men
ok Gyðinga, at dœma um þau lög, er hvárgi þeirra hélt
and of-Jews to judge about those laws which neither of-them held
sjálfr, ok lágu þó alls heims nauðsynjar viðr. Nú skalt þú
himself and lay yet of-all world needs on-it Now shall you
á slíku marka, at guð sjálfr hefir í hendi þann hjálmurvöl,
on such mark that God himself has in hand that tiller
er hann hneigir ok víkr með hjörtum stórhöfðingja, ok
which he inclines and turns with (the)-hearts of-great-chieftains and
hrœrir alla stjórn hugar þeirra eptir sínum vilja, þegar
moves all governance of-mind their according-to his will when
hann vill; þvíat Pharao konungr hóf Joseph til höfðingjaskaps
he will because Pharaoh (the)-king raised Joseph to chieftainship
yfir höfuð öllum ríkismönnum, þeim er áðr váru í hans
over head of-all mighty-men those who before were in his
ríki; en Assverus rak brott Vastes af dróttningardómi sínum,
realm but Ahasuerus drove away Vashti from queenship her
er þar var áðr bæði rík ok stórborin, ok setti í stað
who there was before both mighty and high-born and set in place
Ester dróttning. Hann krossfesti ok Aman ágætan höfðingja,
Esther queen He crucified also Haman excellent chieftain
ok gaf síðan alt hans ríki Mardocheo, er áðr hafði verit
and gave afterward all his realm to-Mordecai who before had been
hertekinn þræll af úkunnu landi. En Constantinus keisari
war-captured thrall from unknown land But Constantine emperor
skipaði Cratonem ok Zenophilum í dómarasæti, tveim
appointed Craton and Zenophilus into judge's-seat two

heiðnum mönnum, ok trúði þeim at dœma um sannendi ok
heathen men and trusted them to judge about truth and
um skilning heilagrar trúar. Nú skaltu þat víst vita, at
about understanding of-holy faith Now shall-you that surely know that
allir þessir atburðir urðu með guðs forsjá ok leyniligum
all these events happened with God's providence and secret
hans boðorðum; en því eru þessir hlutir skráðir fram
his commands but therefore are these things written forward
á leið manna milli til minnis, at allir skyldu nema ok
on way men between for memory that all should learn and
sér i nyt fœra öll góð dœmi, en varask hin dáligu
to-themselves into use bring all good examples but beware the wretched
dœmi. Nú ef þér verðr auðit at verða konungsmaðr, þá
examples Now if to-you becomes granted to become king's-man then
mun þú þessi dœmi, er nú eru þér sögð, þvíat mikill
remember you these examples which now are to-you told because great
fjöldi er annarra slíkra dœma, þóat vér hafim eigi getit
multitude is of-other such examples though we have not mentioned
í þessarri rœðu; en þó þýzk þú sjálfr öll þau, er þú
in this talk but yet approach you yourself all those which you
sér at þér megi at nytjum verða.
see that to-you may to uses become

XLIII · THE KING'S DUTY

The son thanks his father and asks now about the king himself: what customs befit a king and how he should spend his days, since he is honored on earth like God and holds every man's life in his hand. If killing in a king's service or in battle is no sin, though a slayer otherwise does heavy penance, the king must be wise and just. The father answers that a king must be learned in all examples, and is honored like God because he bears God's name and sits in the highest judgment seat; Christ himself paid tribute to Caesar through Peter's fish.

SON Guð launi yðr, herra minn! at þér vilit gefa yðr
God reward you lord my that you will give yourselves
til þess stund ok tóm með mikilli þolinmœði, at svara svá
to that time and leisure with great patience to answer so
nytsamliga öllum spurningum mínum, þvíat þessar rœður
usefully all questions my because these talks
munu mik leiða til meiri nærkœmi um minn athuga en fyrr
will me lead to greater nearness about my attention than before
hafða ek; þat kann ok at vera, at þeir verði enn nökkurir
had I it can also to be that they become still some
fram á leið at skynja þessa fróðleiks rœðu, er héðan af
forward on way to perceive this learning's talk who hence from
megi enn hvárttveggja nema, mannvit ok góðar skilningar eða
may still both learn wit and good understandings or
aðra dugandi siðu. En ek girnumk enn fram á leið at spyrja
other doughty customs But I desire still forward on way to ask
fleiri hluta þeirra, er ek hefi mér í hug til minnar forvitni;
more things of-those which I have to-me in mind for my curiosity
ok vil ek þess biðja yðr, at þér látit yðr enn eigi leiðask
and will I of-that ask you that you let yourselves still not weary
mik at læra fram á leið, fyrir því at yðart leyfi dirfir mik
me to teach forward on way for that that your leave emboldens me
enn til þeirra dælleika við yðr, at láta ekki þat eptir liggja,
still to those familiarities with you to let nothing that behind lie
er hugr minn forvitnar. En ek þykkjumk þat sjá, at svá
which mind my is-curious-about But I seem-to-myself that to-see that so
horfir þessi rœða til, at enn munu þeir margir hlutir eptir
looks this talk to-it that still will those many things left
vera, er þeim manni mun nauðsyn at vita ok verða vel
be which for-that man will need to know and become well

áskynja, er sœmdarmaðr vill með konungum vera, eða öðrum
aware-of who honorable-man will with kings be or other
stórhöfðingjum, ok stunda ek enn til þeirrar rœðu fram á leið.
great-chieftains and strive I still to that talk forward on way
En ek vil þó nú enn at sinnsökum forvitnask um stœrri
But I will yet now still at this-time be-curious about greater
menn heldr, en þá er þjóna skulu undir þeim er ríkir
men rather than those who serve shall under those who mighty
eru; þvíat mér skilsk þat, at þeir eru skyldir til, er
are because to-me is-understood that that they are bound to-it who
þjónostumenn eru, at gæta hvárstveggja, hinna beztu siða
service-men are to guard both the best customs
eða fróðleiks, eða mannvits ok allrar ráðvendi; þá mun
or learning or wit and all integrity then will
allmikil skylda á þykkja um hina, er höfðingjarnir skulu
very-great duty on-it seem about the-others who the-chieftains shall
yfir vera, ok allir aðrir skulu til þjóna, at þeir sé bæði fróðir
over be and all others shall to serve that they be both learned
ok vitrir, ok allskylt mun þeim at elska aðra ráðvendi,
and wise and very-binding will-be to-them to love other integrity
þar sem þeir eigu kost á öllum öðrum til refsingar, þeim
there where they have choice over all others for punishment those
sem eigi eru ráðvandir. Fyrir því vil ek nú þess spyrja
who not are honest For that will I now of-that ask
með yðru leyfi, hverja siðu konungrinn sjálfr skal hafa, þá
with your leave which customs the-king himself shall have those
er hánum beri vel í sínum konungdómi? Segit mér svá
which to-him befit well in his kingship Tell me so
skilvísliga, at ek mega skilja, hvat hans er skyldarembætti
clearly that I may understand what his is duty-office
eða athæfi snimma um morna, eða hverir hlutir síðan eigu
or conduct early in mornings or which things afterward ought

at fylgja hans athæfi á öllum deginum, þvíat hann er svá
to follow his conduct in all the-day because he is so
mjök miklaðr ok tignaðr á jörðu, at allir skulu svá lúta ok
much magnified and honored on earth that all shall so bow and
hníga til hans sem til guðs. Hann hefir ok svá mikit veldi,
incline to him as to God He has also so great power
at hann ræðr hvers lífdögum, þess er í hans ríki er, svá
that he rules each-one's life-days of-him who in his realm is so
sem hann vill, lætr þann drepa, er hann vill, en þann
as he wishes lets that-one kill whom he wishes but that-one
lifa, er hann vill. En þat hefi ek sét, ef maðr verðr manns
live whom he wishes But that have I seen if a-man becomes man's
bani, at allir ráðvandir menn hafa hann síðan í styggleik,
slayer that all honest men have him afterward in abhorrence
svá sem heiðinn mann, ok er þat kallat mikil synd at drepa
so as heathen man and is that called great sin to kill
mann, ok tekr sá er þat görir stórar skriptir ok mikit
a-man and takes that-one who that does great penances and great
meinlæti, áðr en kristnir menn vili hann aptr taka í sína
mortification before than Christian men will him back take into their
samneyzlu. En þér gátut fyrr í yðarri rœðu, at ek skylda
communion But you mentioned before in your talk that I should
skirrask öll manndráp, ok létu þér þat fylgja, at öll þau
shun all man-slayings and let you that follow that all those
manndráp, er með konungs boði væri eða í orrostum,
man-slayings which with king's command were or in battles
þá skylda ek þau ekki meir skirrask en eitthvert þat annat
then should I them not more shun than some that other
verk, er gott væri. Nú ef konungrinn hefir svá mikit vald
work which good were Now if the-king has so great power
af guði fengit, at þau eru öll syndalaus manndráp, er
from God gotten that they are all sinless man-slayings which

eptir hans boði eru gör, þá hugða ek þat, at hann
according-to his command are done then thought I that that he
mundi eiga allvitr at vera ok forsjáll ok réttlátr í öllu
would ought very-wise to be and provident and righteous in all
sínu athæfi, ok þarf ek fyrir því, at þér skýrit inniliga fyrir
his conduct and need I for that that you explain closely before
mér þessa hluti, sem nú hefi ek spurða, ef yðr sýnisk svá,
me these things which now have I asked if to-you it-seems so
at þat sé eigi til heimskliga spurt, eða mér sé eigi ofmikil
that it be not too foolishly asked or to-me be not too-great
dirfð í at forvitnask um athæfi svá stórra manna.
boldness in-it to be-curious about (the)-conduct of-so great men
FATHER Ekki er þessarra hluta svá heimskliga spurt, at eigi
Not is of-these things so foolishly asked that not
má jafnvel um þat rœða, hvat iðrótt konungrinn á at hafa
may-one equally about that talk what skill the-king ought to have
í sínum konungdómi eða meðferðum sem aðrir menn. En þat
in his kingship or conducts as other men But that
er hans víst skyldarembætti at nema mannvit ok fróðleik, ok
is his surely duty-office to learn wit and learning and
á hann víst at vera margfróðr um öll dœmi, þau er verit
ought he surely to be much-learned about all examples those which been
hafa, at hann megi þaðan skilning af taka til allrar stjórnar,
have that he may thence understanding from take for all governance
þeirrar er hann þarf at hafa í sínum konungdómi. En þat
that which he needs to have in his kingship But that
er þú gazt þess, at hann er tignaðr ok miklaðr á jörðu,
which you mentioned that that he is honored and magnified on earth
ok allir lúta til hans sem til guðs, þá eru þau þar tilgöng,
and all bow to him as to God then are those there reasons
at konungrinn merkir guðliga tign; þvíat hann berr nafn
that the-king signifies divine dignity because he bears (the)-name

sjálfs guðs, ok sitr hann í hinu hæsta dómsæti á jörðu,
of-himself of-God and sits he in the highest judgment-seat on earth
ok er þat svá at virða, sem maðr tigni guð sjálfan, þá er
and is that so to reckon as-if a-man honor God himself then when
hann tignar konung fyrir nafns þess sakar, er hann hefir af
he honors (the)-king for name's that sake which he has from
guði. Ok sýndi guðs son þessi dœmi, þá er hann var sjálfr
God And showed God's son these examples then when he was himself
á jörðu, at allir eigu konung at tigna ok alla hlýðni at veita;
on earth that all ought (the)-king to honor and all obedience to give
þvíat hann bauð svá Petri postola sínum, at hann skyldi draga
because he bade so Peter apostle his that he should draw
fiska af undirdjúpum vatna, ok opna þess fisks munn, er
fishes from under-deeps of-waters and open of-that fish (the)-mouth which
fyrstan tœki hann, ok kvað hann þar mundu penning undir
first took he and said he there would penny under
liggja, ok bað hann þann penning keisara í skatt gjalda
lie and bade him that penny to-(the)-emperor in tribute pay
fyrir þá báða. Nú skal í þessu merkja, at hverr maðr á
for them both Now shall-one in this mark that each man on
jörðu er til þess skyldr at sœma ok tigna konungligt nafn,
earth is to that bound to honor and revere kingly name
þat sem jarðligr maðr heldr af guði; þvíat sjálfr guðs son
that which earthly man holds from God because himself God's son
lét sér sama at tigna svá mjök konungligt nafn, at hann
let to-himself befit to honor so much kingly name that he
gerði sjálfan sik skattgildan, konungdóminum til sœmdar,
made self himself tributary to-the-kingship for honor
ok þann lærisvein sinn, er hann skipaði at vera höfðingja
and that disciple his whom he appointed to be chieftain
yfir öllum postolum sínum ok allri kennimannligri tign.
over all apostles his and all priestly dignity

The son asks why God made himself tributary to an earthly king. The father answers that Christ came as a guest and would take nothing from earthly kingship, and that every man must first honor the king, God's anointed. The king is yet God's servant and must be gentle to good men so that none fears to bring him their needs. At night, once rested, he should ponder how to govern his realm, how to hold back the mighty and raise the poor, and how to punish neither too softly nor too harshly.

SON Hér er nökkurr sá hlutr, er ek þarf nú sem fyrr
Here is some that thing which I need now as before
yðarrar orlausnar við, þvíat mér verðr þetta eigi ljóst
of-your answer for because to-me becomes this not clear
fyrir augum. Þér gátut þess er mér þykki líkligt, at
before eyes You mentioned that which to-me seems likely that
konungrinn hefir heldr háleitt nafn at tign ok sœmd af
the-king has rather lofty name in dignity and honor from
guði sjálfum, en þat má mér eigi ljóst fyrir augum verða,
God himself but that may to-me not clear before eyes become
hví guð sjálfr gerði sik skattgildan jarðligum konungi,
why God himself made himself tributary to-earthly king
þar sem ek hygg, at hann mundi vera yfir öllum öðrum
there where I think that he would be over all other
konungum, þvíat hann ræðr bæði himnesku ríki ok jarðligu.
kings because he rules both heavenly realm and earthly
FATHER Í því skalt þú þat marka, at guð tignaði sjálfr jarðligan
In that shall you that mark that God honored himself earthly
konungdóm, at þá er hann steig af hinni hæstu hæð
kingship that then when he stepped from the highest height
himins ok til jarðríkis, þá virði hann sik hér svá kominn
of-heaven and to earth-realm then reckoned he himself here so come
vera með mönnum, sem gest, ok vildi hann ekki af jarðligum
to-be among men as guest and would he nothing from earthly

konungdómi taka, þóat hann ætti kosti, ok fyldi hann þau
kingship take though he had choices and fulfilled he those
orð, er David hafði mælt: „Dróttinn ræðr himnaríki, en
words which David had spoken (The)-Lord rules heaven-kingdom but
hann hefir at sönnu gefit sonum manna jarðligt ríki.“ Nú
he has in truth given to-sons of-men earthly realm Now
vildi guð heldr sœma jarðligan konung ok konungdóm, meðan
would God rather honor earthly king and kingship while
hann var á jarðríki, en með nökkurum frádrætti hafa; þvíat
he was in earth-realm than with some subtraction have because
guð vildi ekki þat frá jarðligu ríki taka, er hann hafði áðr
God would not that from earthly realm take which he had before
jarðligum höfðingjum gefit at stjórna, ok sýndi guð sik í
to-earthly chieftains given to govern and showed God himself in
fullri hlýðni við keisarann. Svá skaltu ok þat marka, at þar
full obedience toward the-emperor So shall-you also that mark that there
sem guð bauð Petri postola sínum at rannsaka þann fyrsta
where God bade Peter apostle his to search that first
fisk, er hann upp drœgi, ok taka þar penning or munni
fish which he up drew and take there penny out-of mouth
hans, ok eigi vildi guð at hann rannsakaði annan fisk eða
its and not wished God that he searched another fish or
hinn þriðja, nema heldr hinn fyrsta, at hverr maðr skal í
the third but rather the first that each man shall in
öllum hlutum fyrst sœma konung ok konungliga tign, þvíat
all things first honor (the)-king and kingly dignity because
guð sjálfr kallar konung vera krist sinn, ok hverr konungr
God himself calls (the)-king to-be anointed his and each king
er fulla konungs tign berr, þá heitir hann með réttu kristr
who full king's dignity bears then is-called he with right anointed
dróttins. Svá mælti ok postoli guðs í læringum sínum, þá
of-(the)-Lord So spoke also (the)-apostle of-God in teachings his then

er hann lærði fólk til réttrar trúar: „Hræðizk þér guð ok
when he taught folk to right faith Fear you God and
tignit konung yðarn,“ náliga sem hann kvæði svá at orði,
honor king your nearly as-if he said so in word
at sá hræðisk eigi guð, er eigi veitir konungi fulla tign.
that that-one fears not God who not gives to-(the)-king full dignity
Nú á því konungr hverr, sem þú gazt, víst at vera
Now ought therefore king each as you mentioned surely to be
vitr ok margfróðr ok þó góðviljaðr, at hánum hœfir sjálfum
wise and much-learned and yet good-willed that to-him befits himself
at kunna á því góða skilning, at hann er þó sjálfr þjónn
to know on that good understanding that he is yet himself servant
guðs, þóat hann sé svá mjök miklaðr ok tignaðr í háleitri
of-God though he be so much magnified and honored in lofty
guðs þjónostu, at allir hníga til hans svá sem til guðs; þvíat
God's service that all bow to him so as to God because
allir þjóna guði í því, ok helgu nafni er hann berr, en eigi
all serve God in that and holy name which he bears but not
sjálfum hánum. Fyrir því er þat upphaf í konungs náttúru, at
himself him For that is that beginning in king's nature that
allir bera af hánum ógn mikla ok hrælzlu, svá at engi er fyrir
all bear from him terror great and fear so that no-one is before
utan aga, er hann heyrir nefndan: en hann á sjálfr sik
outside awe who him hears named but he ought himself himself
at sýna léttlátan ok blíðan öllum góðum mönnum, at engi
to show light-mannered and gentle to-all good men that no-one
hafi svá mikla ógn af hánum, at hann bleyðisk at bera öll
have so great terror of him that he grows-timid to bear all
nauðsynjamál sín fram fyrir konung fyrir hans grimleiks sakar.
need-matters his forward before (the)-king for his fierceness' sake

Þetta á um nætr at vera hans skyldar reiða eða sýsla,
This ought at nights to be his duty's business or occupation
þegar hann er saddr af svefni, at bera áhyggju fyrir öllu ríki
when he is sated with sleep to bear care for all realm
sínu, hversu hann skal þess skipa eða siða, er guði megi
his how he shall it order or discipline that to-God may
helzt líka sú hans áhyggja, er hann berr þar fyrir, ok svá
best please that his care which he bears there for and so
ok hversu hánum sjálfum megi ríkit verða nytsamligast til
also how to-him himself may the-realm become most-useful for
allrar hlýðni við sik; henda glöggþekkliga þat hóf, hversu
all obedience toward himself to-grasp clearly that measure how
stríðliga hann skal hinum ríka aptr halda, at hann verði eigi
strictly he shall the mighty back hold that he become not
ofágjarn við hinn fátœka, svá ok með mundangshófi fram
too-greedy toward the poor so also with balance's-measure forward
at draga hinn fátœka, at hann görisk eigi ofdjarfr við hinn
to draw the poor that he become not too-bold toward the
ríka, ok þarf hann þat sannyndasamliga at skipa ok skygna,
mighty and needs he that truthfully to arrange and look-to
at hverr sé mundangsmaðr í þeirri tigund, sem hann er í
that each be moderate-man in that rank which he is in
skipaðr. Þat þarf hann ok vandliga at hugleiða við sjálfan sik,
placed That needs he also carefully to ponder with self himself
ef hann þarf refsingar við þá, er eigi vilja því una, er
if he needs punishments toward those who not will that be-content-with which
guð hefir þá til skipaða, at hann sé í sinni refsing hvergi
God has them to appointed that he be in his punishment nowhere
svá blauðr, at fyrir ofmikillar bleyði hans sakar skyli hverjum
so soft that for too-great softness his sake shall to-each
dælt þykkja at brjóta þat, er standa á eptir réttri
easy seem to break that which stand ought according-to right

skipan. Eigi sé hann ok svá stríðr í sínum refsingum, at
order Not be he also so harsh in his punishments that
guði virðisk svá eða sannsýnum mönnum, at hann refsi meir
to-God it-seems so or to-just men that he punish more
fyrir grimleiks sakar en réttynda. Nú þarf konungrinn fyrir því
for fierceness' sake than rights' Now needs the-king for that
þessa hluti ok marga aðra hugleiða um nætr, þegar hann er
these things and many others ponder at nights when he is
fullsœfti, at þá koma færri hlutir á úvaran hann um daginn
fully-slept that then come fewer things at unawares him through the-day
þann tíma, er lands nauðsynjar verða fyrir hann bornar.
that time when land's needs become before him borne

XLV · THE FOUR SISTERS

The son asks for examples of measured punishment. The father tells how God gave Adam and Eve Paradise, forbidding only the tree of knowledge, and set four maidens, Truth, Peace, Justice, and Mercy, to watch the covenant. Tempted by the serpent, Eve and then Adam eat and hide in shame. God questions them; Adam blames the woman and Eve the serpent. The sisters judge: Justice decrees death, and Mercy pleads that Adam keep hope while he repents. The four agree and embrace, and the king must so blend them that his judgments are neither too harsh nor too weak.

SON Hér þykki mér at því koma, sem fyrr gátut þér
Here seems to-me to that come which before mentioned you
í yðarri rœðu, at hvárttveggja mun við þurfa mikit
in your talk that both will with-it need great
hóf ok þó sannsýni, ef konungrinn skal á því hitta
moderation and yet justice if the-king shall on that hit
mundangshóf, at hann sé hvárki í refsingum ofstríðr né
balance's-measure that he be neither in punishments too-harsh nor

ofblauðr; ok vil ek nú þess spyrja, ef þau eru nökkur
too-soft and will I now of-that ask if those are some
dœmi, er hann megi siðvendi taka af þeim til þessa
examples which he may manners take from them to this
hófs, með því ok at þér gátut þess, at konungrinn
moderation with that also that you mentioned that that the-king
hverr ætti allfróðr at vera um öll þau dœmi, er til væri.
each ought very-learned to be about all those examples which to-it were
FATHER Þess get ek enn sem þá, at engi maðr ætti at vera
That mention I still as then that no man ought to be
margfróðari eða vitrari um alla hluti en konungr, þvíat þat
more-learned or wiser about all things than (the)-king because that
er sjálfs hans nauðsyn mikil ok svá alls fólksins, er undir
is of-self his need great and so of-all the-people which under
hánum er. En sá sem allfróðr er um dœmin, þá munu
him is But that-one who very-learned is about the-examples then will
allfáir þeir hlutir manninum til handa bera, er hann má
very-few those things to-the-man to hand bear which he may
eigi dœmi til finna. En þessi dœmi váru árla skipuð, er
not example to find But these examples were early ordained which
hverr konungr á sér opt fyrir augum at hafa, ok þaðan
each king ought for-himself often before eyes to have and thence
af þau mörk henda, hversu hann skal sínu ríki stjórna.
from those marks grasp how he shall his realm govern
Þá er guð hafði skapaðan allan heim ok skrýddan hann
Then when God had created all world and adorned it
hvárttveggja með grösum ok öðru blómi, svá ok með
both with grasses and other blossom so also with
kykvendum eða fuglum, þá skipaði hann tveim mönnum til,
creatures or birds then appointed he two people to-it
karlmanni ok konu, at gæta allra þessarra hluta, ok leiddi
man and woman to keep all these things and led

hann þau bæði Adam ok Evu yfir hæð Paradísar, ok
he them both Adam and Eve over (the)-height of-Paradise and
sýndi þeim alla fugla ok öll kykvendi, blómstr ok alla fegrð
showed them all birds and all creatures blossoms and all beauty
í Paradísu. Þá mælti guð við Adam ok Evu: „Þessa hluti
in Paradise Then spoke God to Adam and Eve These things
alla, er nú sé þit, þá gef ek ykkr til viðrlífis ok
all which now see you-two then give I to-you-two for sustenance and
forræða, ef þit vilit halda lög þau, sem nú set ek vár á
disposal if you-two will keep laws those which now set I us on
milli; en þessi eru lög þau, er þit skulut vandliga gæta,
between but these are laws those which you-two shall carefully keep
ef þit vilit þeim gjöfum halda, er nú hefi ek gefit
if you-two will those gifts keep which now have I given
ykkr: Tré þat hit fagra, er þit sét, at stendr í miðri
to-you-two Tree that the fair which you-two see that stands in mid
Paradísu með girniligum eplum, þat heitir vísendatré, en aldin
Paradise with desirable apples it is-called knowledge-tree but fruit
þat er tré þat berr, þá heita þau fróðleiks epli; á því tré
that which tree that bears then are-called they learning's apples of that tree
skulut þit ekki taka ok ekki neyta af þeim eplum, er
shall you-two not take and not partake of those apples which
þat berr, þvíat þit munut deyja, þegar þit etit af því; en
it bears because you-two will die when you-two eat of it but
alt annat þat sem nú sé þit; þá skulu þit í leyfi neyta
all other that which now see you-two then shall you-two in leave partake
eptir ykkrum girndum.“ Til þessa sáttmáls váru kallaðar
according-to your-two's desires To this covenant were called
fjórar systr, guðligar meyjar, þær er heyra skyldu setning
four sisters divine maidens those who hear should (the)-settlement
þessarra laga, ok vita alt skilorð þessa sáttmáls; ein þeirra
of-these laws and know all (the)-terms of-this covenant one of-them

hét sannendi, önnur friðsemi, hin þriðja réttvísi, hin
was-called truth (the)-second peace the third justice the
fjórða miskunn; ok mælti guð svá við þessar meyjar: „Yðr
fourth mercy and spoke God so to these maidens You
býð ek um at skygna, at Adamr brjóti eigi lög þau, er nú
bid I about to look-to that Adam break not laws those which now
eru sett okkar á milli, fylgit hánum vel ok gætit hans æ
are set us-two on between follow him well and keep him ever
vel, meðan hann heldr þessa hluti, er nú eru mæltir; en ef
well while he keeps these things which now are spoken but if
hann brýtr, þá skulut þér í dómi sitja mót hánum með
he breaks then shall you in judgment sit against him with
feðr yðrum, með því at þér erut dœttr dómarans sjálfs."
father your with that that you are daughters of-the-judge himself
At lokinni rœðu hvarf guð af augliti Adams, en Adamr
At ended talk vanished God from (the)-sight of-Adam but Adam
gékk at skygna um alla fegrð Paradísar. En með því at
went to look about all beauty of-Paradise But with that that
ormr er öllum kykvendum slœgri ok mjúklátari, þá kom
(the)-serpent is than-all creatures slyer and softer-mannered then came
hann á þeirri stundu til Evu, konu Adams, með meyligu
he at that hour to Eve wife of-Adam with maidenly
andliti, ok mælti við hana mikilli blíðu: „Sæll er bóndi
face and spoke to her with-great gentleness Blessed is husband
þinn ok svá sjálf þú, með því at guð hefir gefit alla hluti
your and so self you with that that God has given all things
undir ykkart vald, ok eigu nú öll kykvendi at hlýða ykkru
under your-two's power and ought now all creatures to obey your-two's
boði, með því at Adamr er várr lávarðr, en þú ert vár
command with that that Adam is our lord but you are our
lafdi. Ok vil ek nú þess spyrja þik, hvárt guð hefir nökkurn
lady And will I now of-that ask you whether God has any

hlut undan tekit ykkrum forræðum, þann er á jörðu er,
thing out taken from-your-two's disposal that which on earth is
eða skulu þit alla hluti neyta, sem þit vilit fyrir utan
or shall you-two all things partake as you-two wish before outside
alla viðrsýn.“ Eva svaraði: „Alla hluti þá er guð skapaði á
all caution Eve answered All things those which God created on
jörðu gaf hann í okkur forræði, nema tré þat, er stendr
earth gave he into our-two's disposal except tree that which stands
í miðri Paradísu, þat bað hann okkr eigi neyta, ok sagði
in mid Paradise that bade he us-two not partake and said
hann, at vit mundim deyja, ef vit ætim þar af.“ Enn
he that we-two would die if we-two ate there of Again
mælti ormrinn við Evu: „Óhó! lafdi mín, hann vildi eigi, at
spoke the-serpent to Eve Oho lady my he wished not that
þit værit svá fróð, at þit vissit bæði gott ok ilt, þvíat
you-two were so learned that you-two knew both good and evil because
hann sjálfr veit alla skilning millim illra hluta ok góðra,
he himself knows all understanding between evil things and good
en þit vitit ekki nema góða hluti eina, en þegar þit
but you-two know nothing except good things alone but when you-two
etit fróðleiks epli, þá munu þit vera guði lík, ok vera
eat learning's apples then will you-two be to-God like and be
eigi úfróðari um illa hluti en góða.“ En þegar ormrinn
not more-unlearned about evil things than good But when the-serpent
hvarf ífrá augliti Evu, þá kallaði hon Adam bónda sinn til
vanished from (the)-sight of-Eve then called she Adam husband her to
sín, ok sagði hánum alla þessa rœðu; því næst tók hon tvau
herself and told him all this talk that next took she two
fróðleiks epli, ok át annat sjálf, en annat fékk hon Adami.
learning's apples and ate one herself but (the)-other gave she to-Adam
En þegar er þau höfðu þessi epli etit, þá óx fróðleikr
But when that they had these apples eaten then grew learning

þeirra til illra hluta, svá sem ormrinn hafði sagt, ok tóku
their to evil things so as the-serpent had said and took
þau þá um at skygna vöxt allra kykvenda, svá fugla ok
they then about to look-at (the)-form of-all creatures so of-birds and
trjá, ok svá um þat, hversu sjálf þau váru sköpuð. Þá
trees and so about that how themselves they were created Then
mælti Adamr: „Skamliga stöndum vit nökkvið hjún, þviat
spoke Adam Shamefully stand we-two naked couple because
limi okkra hylr ekki; hylr öll kykvendi hár eða hali, en
limbs our-two's covers nothing covers all creatures hair or tail but
fugla hylja fjaðrar, en tré hylja kvistir ok lauf, en vit
birds cover feathers but trees cover twigs and leaf but we-two
tvau ein stöndum með skamnöktum limum." Því næst tóku
two alone stand with shame-naked limbs That next took
þau sér breitt lauf af viði, ok huldu limi sína, þá
they for-themselves broad leaf from tree and covered limbs their those
sem þau skömdusk mest at berir væri. Þá kom friðsemi
which they were-ashamed most that bare were Then came peace
framgangandi ok mælti við Adam ok Evu: „Nú hafi þit
forward-walking and spoke to Adam and Eve Now have you-two
brotit lög ok sáttmál við guð, ok vil ek eigi halda ykkr
broken law and covenant with God and will I not keep for-you-two
frelsi lengr í opinberri víðáttu, sem fyrr höfðu þit; en ek
freedom longer in open expanse as before had you-two but I
mun halda ykkr frelsi í leyniligu fylsni, þar til er
will keep for-you-two freedom in secret hiding-place there to when
dómr fellr á mál ykkart, ok til þess vil ek ykkr frelsi
judgment falls on case your-two's and for that will I for-you-two freedom
halda, at þit skulut eiga kost at hafa svör fyrir ykkr;
keep that you-two shall have choice to have answers for yourselves
en þit gefit gaum at því sjálf, at svör ykkur verði
but you-two give heed to that yourselves that answers your-two's become

ykkr haldkœm ok heldr til fulltings en úliðs.“ Sannendi
to-you-two holding-useful and rather for help than harm Truth
gékk fram ok mælti við Adam: „Hygg þú at því, ef rœða
went forward and spoke to Adam Consider you at that if talk
þarf mál þitt, at þú ljúg ekki, þá em ek í vitnisburð
needs case your that you lie not then am I in witness
með þér; seg svá frá öllum hlutum, sem verit hafa; þvíat
with you tell so from all things as been have because
þegar er þú lýgr nökkut, þá em ek í vitnisburð móti þér.“
as-soon as you lie anything then am I in witness against you
Réttvísi gékk fram ok mælti: „Þat er mitt skyldarembætti
Justice went forward and spoke That is my duty-office
at skygna um þat, at þú verðr eigi dœmdr með röngum
to look-to about that that you become not judged with wrong
dómi; en því gagnstaðligri verð ek þér, sem þú verðr meir
judgment but the more-hostile become I to-you as you become more
við lygi kendr ok ranglæti.“ Miskunn gékk fram ok mælti
with lie known and injustice Mercy went forward and spoke
við Adam: „Líkn ok hjálp mun ek veita þínu máli, ef þú
to Adam Comfort and help will I give your case if you
heldr vel alla þessa hluti, er systr mínar hafa lærðan þik.“
keep well all these things which sisters my have taught you
En er Adamr var hræddr orðinn, þá fór hann at fela
But when Adam was afraid become then went he to hide
sik millim trjá, at hann skyldi eigi nökkviðr sénn verða.
himself among trees that he should not naked seen become
En at miðs dags tíma gékk guð at sjá yfir fegrð Paradísar
But at mid day's time went God to look over (the)-beauty of-Paradise
ok gæzlu Adams; en með því at hann sá eigi Adam
and (the)-keeping of-Adam but with that that he saw not Adam
staddan á sléttri víðáttu, þá kallaði hann Adam til sín,
placed on level expanse then called he Adam to himself

ok spurði hvar hann var? Adamr svaraði. „Því fal ek mik,
and asked where he was Adam answered Therefore hid I myself
dróttinn, at ek skömdumk at vera nökkviðr í þínu augliti."
lord that I was-ashamed to be naked in your sight
Guð svaraði hánum: „Hvaðan af kunnir þá nú heldr at
God answered him Whence from could-you then now rather to
skammask þess, at þú vart nökkviðr en fyrrmeir í okkarri
be-ashamed of-that that you were naked than earlier in our-two's
rœðu, nema þú hefir brotit lög ok etit af fróðleiks eplum
talk unless you have broken law and eaten of learning's apples
þeim, sem ek hafða bannat at neyta." Adamr svaraði svá sem
those which I had forbidden to partake Adam answered so as
verjandi sína sök: „Kona þessi er þú gaft mér, hon eggjaði
defending his case Woman this whom you gave me she egged
mik þess úráðs; hefða ek einn saman vélt um mitt ráð,
me to-that folly had I alone together handled about my counsel
ok hefðir þú eigi þessa konu mér gefna til ráðagerðar með
and had you not this woman to-me given for counsel-taking with
mér, þá munda ek haldit hafa skipat lögmál ok eigi brotit
me then would I kept have appointed law and not broken
þín boðorð." Þá mælti guð við Evu: „Fyrir hví kendir þú
your commands Then spoke God to Eve For why taught you
bónda þínum þetta úráð, at hann skyldi lögbrot gera?" Eva
husband your this folly that he should law-break do Eve
svaraði sem verjandi sína sök: „Ormr þessi hinn orðslægi
answered as defending her case Serpent this the word-sly
réð mér þetta úráð, hefði hann eigi verit skapaðr eða
counseled me this folly had he not been created or
til míns fundar komit, þá munda ek eigi þetta úráð tekit
to my meeting come then would I not this folly taken
hafa." Þá mælti guð: „Með því at lögbrot eru nú gör, þá
have Then spoke God With that that law-breaks are now done then

vil ek nú, at þær meyjar er ek setta til gæzlu um okkart
wish I now that those maidens whom I set for keeping about our-two's
sáttmál sé í dómi með oss.“ Þá svaraði sannendi: „Þat
covenant be in judgment with us Then answered truth That
er mitt skyldarembætti at sýna sök Adams, með því at
is my duty-office to show (the)-guilt of-Adam with that that
hann leyndi með lygi því, er mest var sök til ok lögbrot
he hid with lie that which most was guilt to-it and law-break
af hans hendi. En þessi var sök mest til af ykkarri
from his hand But this was guilt most to-it from your-two's
hendi, at eplin váru fögr ok girnilig ok sæt at bergja, en
hand that the-apples were fair and desirable and sweet to taste but
þit girntusk mjök at vera fróðari en ykkr var lofat,
you-two desired much to be more-learned than to-you-two was permitted
ok drýgðu þit í þessu stuld, er þit hugðusk leyniliga
and committed you-two in this theft where you-two thought secretly
taka, en ágjarnligt rán, þar sem þit tókut fyrir leyfi, en
take but greedy robbery there where you-two took before leave but
metnaðarsamligt dramb, þar sem þit vildut guði lík vera
arrogant pride there where you-two would to-God like be
í fróðleik ykkrum um þat fram, sem ykkr var lofat.“
in learning your-two's about that forward which to-you-two was permitted
Þá mælti guð við friðsemi, at hon skyldi með nökkurum
Then spoke God to peace that she should with some
orðum dœma um þetta mál; en friðsemi svaraði á þessa
words judge about this case but peace answered in this
leið: „Með því at þú settir mik til þess, at varðveita Adami
way With that that you set me to that to keep for-Adam
frelsi til handa, meðan úgör váru lögbrot, þá vil ek enn
freedom to hand while undone were law-breaks then will I still
til bjóðask at varðveita hánum til handa því minna frelsi,
to-it offer-myself to keep him to hand the less freedom

at hann kunni eigi þess at gæta, er áðr hafði hann mikit
that he knew not that to keep which before had he much
fengit." Þá mælti guð við réttvísi, at hon skyldi dœma; en
gotten Then spoke God to justice that she should judge but
hon svaraði á þessa leið: „Með því at Adamr kunni eigi
she answered in this way With that that Adam knew not
at gæta frelsis þess, er friðsemi gætti til handa hánum,
to keep freedom that which peace kept to hand for-him
þá hafi hann nú fyrir þat vesöld ok nauð. En fyrir því at
then have he now for that misery and need But for that that
hann forvitnaði fróðleik til illra hluta, þá þoli hann nú
he was-curious-about learning toward evil things then bear he now
ilt móti góðu. En fyrir því at hann vildi líkja sik guði
evil against good But for that that he would liken himself to-God
í fróðleik sínum umfram leyfi, ok kendi guði völd um sín
in learning his beyond leave and laid-on God blame for his
lögbrot með lygiligri sakarvörn, þá þoli hann fyrir þat þann
law-breaks with lying defense then bear he for that that
dauða, er hánum var heitinn, áðr en hann gerði lögbrot."
death which to-him was promised before than he did law-break
Þá mælti guð við miskunn, at hon skyldi nökkut dœma
Then spoke God to mercy that she should somewhat judge
um þetta lögbrot. Miskunn svaraði með þessum orðum:
about this law-break Mercy answered with these words
„Með því at þat er mín náttúra, at leita nökkurrar líknar ok
With that that that is my nature to seek some comfort and
vægðar í öllum hlutum, þá vil ek þess beiðask, at eigi sé
leniency in all things then will I of-that ask that not be
Adamr með líknarlausum dauða týndr; nú með því at hann
Adam with comfortless death lost now with that that he

má iðrask úráðs, meðan hann lifir, þá eigi hann ván hjálpar
may repent folly while he lives then have he hope of-help
ok líknar í dauða sínum, æ meðan hann örvilnask eigi.“
and comfort in death his ever while he despairs not
Þá var um þat rætt, ef hann ætti sonu, hvárt þeir skyldu
Then was about that talked if he had sons whether they should
gjalda hans lögbrota, eða skyldu þeir njóta þeirra gjafa ok
pay for-his law-breaks or should they enjoy those gifts and
óðala, er Adamr var útlægr frá rekinn ok guð hafði
patrimonies which Adam was outlawed from driven and God had
hánum gefit fyrir öndverðu. Réttvísi svaraði: „Hversu megu
him given at (the)-beginning Justice answered How may
synir hans, þeir er getnir verða í útlegð, njóta þeirra gjafa,
sons his those who begotten become in outlawry enjoy those gifts
er hann var útlagr frá rekinn fyrir lögbrot sín? fylgi synir
which he was outlawed from driven for law-breaks his follow sons
hans hánum til dauða. En með því at hann skal eiga ván
his him to death But with that that he shall have hope
líknar ok miskunnar ok aptrkvámu til þeirra óðala, er
of-comfort and mercy and return to those patrimonies which
nú glatar hann, þá sé synir hans með hánum aptr kallaðir
now loses he then be sons his with him back called
með nýju sáttmáli.“ En þá er dómr var fallinn á mál
with new covenant But then when judgment was fallen on (the)-case
Adams, ok allar þessar systr tóku at samþykkjask með blíðu
of-Adam and all these sisters began to agree with gentle
sáttmáli, svá at miskunn ok sannendi lögðusk í faðma,
covenant so that mercy and truth laid-themselves in embraces
en réttvísi ok friðsemi kystusk með blíðum hálsföngum.
but justice and peace kissed-each-other with gentle neck-claspings

Nú skal konungrinn hverr sem einn hafa þessi dœmi opt
Now shall the-king each as one have these examples often
fyrir augum, hversu guð tók hér at stilla reiði sinni fyrir
before eyes how God began here to restrain anger his for
brotit lögmál við karl ok konu, eða hverja dómara hann hafði
broken law with man and woman or which judges he had
með sér, at refsing hans væri eigi ofstríð fyrir líknarleysis
with himself that punishment his were not too-harsh for comfortlessness'
sakar. Nú dœmir konungrinn ok rétt öllum mönnum, þegar
sake Now judges the-king also right to-all men when
hann dœmir rétt karli ok konu; en með því skal hann
he judges right man and woman but with that shall he
jafnan íhuga sína dóma, þá er til refsinga horfa, at
always ponder his judgments those which to punishments look that
hann hafi þessar systr með sér ok göri þær sáttar, svá at
he have these sisters with himself and make them reconciled so that
þær kyssisk ok faðmisk; ok verða þá allir hans dómar
they kiss-each-other and embrace and become then all his judgments
hvárki ofstríðir né ofveikir. Þat þarf konungrinn ok vandliga
neither too-harsh nor too-weak That needs the-king also carefully
at rannsaka, at hann kunni vel at blanda geði þessarra
to examine that he know well to blend (the)-temper of-these
systra; þvíat svá berr sæti þeirra til í öllum dómum, at
sisters because so bears seat their to-it in all judgments that
þær sitja sér saman annan veg í dómi sannendi ok
they sit themselves together on-one way in judgment truth and
réttvísi, en þær annan veg at dómi friðsemi ok miskunn.
justice but they on-the-other way at judgment peace and mercy
Nú skulu jafnan þær sáttar vera ok samþykkar á hverjum
Now shall always they reconciled be and agreed at each
dómi. En iðuliga berr svá til, at friðsemi ok miskunn skýtr
judgment But frequently bears so to-it that peace and mercy shoot

öllum dómi undir sannendi ok réttvísi, ok samþykkjask
all judgment under truth and justice and agree
þó dómi eigi at síðr; stundum er ok þat, at hver
yet to-(the)-judgment not the less at-times is also that that each
þeirra systra hafa fullan rétt í dómi eptir tali réttu; en
of-those sisters have full right in judgment according-to count right but
stundum kann svá til at bera, at meiri hlutr dóms víkr
at-times can so to to happen that greater part of-judgment turns
undir friðsemi ok miskunn, ok samþykkjask þó allar systr í
under peace and mercy and agree yet all sisters in
dómi eigi at síðr; þat hefir ok stundum hent at skipuðum
judgment not the less that has also at-times happened that at-ordered
dómi ok staðfestum, þá hefir friðsemi ok miskunn veitta
judgment and confirmed then has peace and mercy given
líkn fyrir bœnarorð ok iðran þess, er þurft hefir líknar.
comfort for prayer-words and repentance of-him who needed has comfort

XLVI · JUDGMENTS WITHOUT MERCY

The son asks for examples of the different judgments. The father answers that the world is so old that hardly anything happens without precedent. The first judgment given wholly to Truth and Justice, without leniency, fell on Lucifer, cast down with all his companions for betraying his lord.

SON Nú virðisk mér svá sem þetta sé enn meira vandendamál
Now seems to-me so as-if this be still greater difficult-matter
en ek hugða fyrr, þvíat þar mun mikit vit ok skynsemd
than I thought before because there will great wit and reason
við þurfa, at blanda svá geði þessarra systra, at þær
with-it need to blend so (the)-temper of-these sisters that they
skulu jafnan samsáttar vera, ok veltr þó dómr stundum
shall always all-reconciled be and rolls yet judgment at-times

meir í annan stað en annan; þvíat þér gátut þess í yðarri
more in one place than another because you mentioned that in your
rœðu, at stundum veltr allr dómr undir sannendi ok réttvísi
talk that at-times rolls all judgment under truth and justice
fyrir utan allar vægðir, en stundum veltr meiri hluti dóms
before outside all leniencies but at-times rolls greater part of-judgment
undir friðsemi ok miskunn; þess gátut þér ok, at stundum
under peace and mercy that mentioned you also that at-times
hafi brigð á verit gör skipuðum dómi ok staðfestum. Nú ef
have change on been made to-ordered judgment and confirmed Now if
hér væri dœmi til þessarra hluta, með því at þér sögðut til
here were examples to these things with that that you said to
flestra hluta dœmi mega finna, ef at væri leitat, þá vilda
most things examples may-one find if at were sought then would-wish
ek nú gjarna heyra þessi dœmi, at mér væri þetta ljósara
I now gladly hear these examples that to-me were this clearer
fyrir augum, ok svá öðrum þeim er heyrði; allra skyldast
before eyes and so to-others those who heard of-all most-binding
mun konungum vera at vita hér góð skil á, sem öllum
will to-kings be to know here good account on as all
öðrum hlutum, þvíat þeir munu optast slíkra hluta við þurfa.
other things because they will most-often of-such things with need
FATHER Svá er nú mikil fyrnd at heiminum, at varla munu
So is now great age to the-world that hardly will
nú þeir hlutir kunna til at verða, er eigi munu dœmi til
now those things can to to happen which not will examples to
finnask, at fyrri hafa orðit, ok munu því varla þeir hlutir
be-found that before have happened and will therefore hardly those things
kunna til handa bera, er eigi mun fróðr maðr dœmi til
can to hand bear which not will learned man example to
finna. En til þessa hlutar eru þau dœmi, er svá árla urðu,
find But to this thing are those examples which so early happened

at ek veit engi fyrri hafa verit, at allr dómr valt undir
that I know none earlier to-have been that all judgment rolled under
sannendi ok réttvísi fyrir utan allar vægðir. Þá er Lucifer
truth and justice before outside all leniencies Then when Lucifer
engill í himnum var dróttinsviki ok gerði niðingsverk mót
angel in heavens was lord-traitor and did villain's-deed against
sínum herra, þá dœmdi sannendi hann ok réttvísi með
his lord then judged truth him and justice with
skyndiligu niðrfalli án allar líknligar vánir. Í þessum dómi
sudden down-fall without all comforting hope In this judgment
féllu með hánum allir hans félagar ok ráðunautar. Þessi
fell with him all his companions and counselors These
váru þau lögbrot, er guð refsti með vægðarlausum dómi.
were those law-breaks which God punished with leniency-less judgment

XLVII · LUCIFER AND THE SERPENT

The son asks whether the serpent could speak. The father answers that only man was given speech. Lucifer, fairest of the angels, set his throne in the north and was cast with his followers into hell. Envying the man created for the realm he had lost, Lucifer armed himself with seven vices, entered the serpent, then upright and maiden-faced, and deceived Eve. God cursed the spirit, foretelling a maiden's victory over him, and then the serpent; Adam's excuse only increased his guilt. God set the punishments of Adam and Eve, while Adam trusted to mercy.

SON Þess vilda ek nú biðja yðr, at þér létit eigi leiðask
Of-that would-wish I now ask you that you let not weary
yðr, þóat yðr þœtti spurning mín bernslig verða ok
you though to-you would-seem question my childish to-become and
úfróðlig, sú er mik fýsir at spyrja yðr; ok með því at ek
unlearned that which me desires to ask you and with that that I

skil eigi til fulls þá hluti, er ek ætla nú eptir at spyrja,
understand not to full those things which I intend now after to ask
þá kann þat at vera, at margir sé þeir aðrir, er eigi skili
then can that to be that many be those others who not understand
heldr en ek; en þat er um orminn er þér sögðut at kom
rather than I but that is about the-serpent which you said that came
til Evu ok mælti við hana sem maðr, ok eggjaði hana at
to Eve and spoke to her as man and egged her to
göra lögbrot; ok vil ek nú þess spyrja, hvárt ormrinn var svá
do law-break and will I now of-that ask whether the-serpent was so
skapaðr, at hann mælti heldr en önnur kykvendi? eða mæltu
created that he spoke rather than other creatures or spoke
fleiri kykvendi í þann tíma, þóat nú sé öll dumba? eða
more creatures at that time though now be all dumb or
hver sök til var, at ormrinn vildi konuna leiða til lögbrota?
what cause to-it was that the-serpent would the-woman lead to law-breaks
FATHER Vit höfum mjök langa rœðu í munni hafða, ok
We-two have very long talk in mouth had and
ef vit skulum hana glósa alla, þá verðr þat auki mikill
if we-two shall it gloss all then becomes that increase great
langrar rœðu; þvíat þat er allvíst, at fá orð munu þau
of-long talk because that is very-certain that few words will those
vera í okkarri rœðu, er eigi mun þurfa at glósa, ef allfróðr
be in our-two's talk which not will need to gloss if very-learned
maðr kemr til, sá er gerla kann at skilja allar þessar
man comes to-it that-one who fully can to understand all these
rœður; ok þykki mér þat sannligra, at vér takim réttan
talks and seems to-me that truer that we take right
framgangsveg upphafðrar rœðu, en vér hirðim öðrum þat
forward-going-way of-begun talk but we leave to-others that
starf at glósa okkrar rœður, þeir er síðar heyra, ok þat starf
toil to gloss our-two's talks those who later hear and that toil

vilja eiga með margsmogalli athygli. En með því at hver
will have with much-searching attention But with that that each
spurning lítr til nökkurrar orlausnar ok andsvara, þá er þat
question looks to some answer and reply then is that
rétt, at ek lúka upp nökkut þessarri rœðu fyrir þér, at þér
right that I open up somewhat this talk before you that to-you
verði ljósari fyrir augum, eða þeim öðrum, er eigi skilja
become clearer before eyes or to-those others who not understand
heldr en þú; ok mun ok þó fara um þat fám orðum, fyrir
rather than you and will also yet go about that in-few words for
því at ek vil eigi vera mjök kraför at glósa mína rœðu.
that that I will not be much required to gloss my talk
En þar er þú spurðir þess, hvárt ormr eða önnur kykvendi
But there where you asked that whether (the)-serpent or other creatures
váru sköpuð til máls í þann tíma, er Adamr var skipaðr
were created for speech at that time when Adam was appointed
gæzlumaðr í Paradísu, þá skalt þú þat vita víst, at engi
keeper in Paradise then shall you that know surely that no
líkamlig skepna var sú, er mál var gefit, nema manninum.
bodily creature was that-one which speech was given except to-man
En þar er þú leitar eptir því, hví ormrinn fékk mál, eða
But there where you seek after that why the-serpent got speech or
hví ormrinn leiddi konuna til lögbrota, þá er nú skýranda
why the-serpent led the-woman to law-breaks then is now to-be-explained
þat. En þat er upphaf þeirrar skýringar, at guð hafði fyrri
that But that is (the)-beginning of-that explanation that God had before
skapat engla en menn. Þeir váru allir skapaðir með mikilli
created angels than men They were all created with great
fegrð, údauðligir andar án allan líkamligan breyskleik, þó
beauty immortal spirits without all bodily frailty yet
váru þeir skapaðir með mikilli fegrð undir þessarri lagagæzlu,
were they created with great beauty under this law-keeping

at þeir skyldu halda hlýðni ok ástsemd við skapara sinn
that they should keep obedience and love toward creator their
með lítillæti án alla flærð. Var þeim því heitit, at þeir
with humility without all falsehood Was to-them therefore promised that they
skuldu halda allri fegrð ok allri annarri sœmd, þeirri er
should keep all beauty and all other honor that which
hann hafði gefit þeim, æ meðan þeir gætti þessarra laga; þó
he had given them ever while they kept these laws yet
gaf hann þeim frjálsligt sjálfræði, at þeir skyldu mega göra
gave he them free self-rule that they should may do
lögbrot, ef þeir vildi, ok mælti svá guð við þá: „Með því at
law-break if they would and spoke so God to them With that that
þér várut allir í senn skapaðir, ok engi af öðrum getinn,
you were all at once created and no-one from another begotten
þá skal hverr yðarr fyrir sjálfum sér gera, en engi fyrir
then shall each of-you for self himself do but no-one for
öðrum, hvárt sem heldr verðr gætt þeirra laga, sem nú hefi
another whether that rather becomes kept those laws which now have
ek sett, eða verða þau brotin. En ef nökkurir eru þeir, er
I set or become they broken But if some are those who
þau brjóta, þá skulu þeir vera reknir or þessu sældarlífi; en
them break then shall they be driven out-of this bliss-life but
þeir er gæta, þá hafa þeir jafnan úþrotliga sælu ok endalaust
those who keep then have they always unending bliss and endless
líf í sœmiligri þjónostu minni. En því gef ek yðr öllum
life in honorable service my But therefore give I you all
sjálfræði á, hvárt er þér vilit heldr brjóta þessi lögmál eða
self-rule on whether that you will rather break this law or
halda, at þeir er halda, þá eru þeir valdir mér til kosinna
keep that those who keep then are they chosen to-me for chosen

gersima, en þeir er brjóta, þá verða þeir fyrir hatri ok
treasures but those who break then become they for hatred and
reknir til kvalsamligrar ánauðar ok úvingjarnligrar þjónostu.“
driven to torturous bondage and unfriendly service
Þessir englar váru allir fagrir, ok þó var einn fegri öllum
These angels were all fair and yet was one fairer than-all
þeim, ok var hann fyrir því Lucifer kallaðr, ok var hann
them and was he for that Lucifer called and was he
skipaðr höfðingi yfir mörgum englum, ok hneig mikill fjöldi
appointed chieftain over many angels and inclined great multitude
engla til hans með þjónostu ok allri vináttu. En þá er
of-angels to him with service and all friendship But then when
guð hafði lokit þessarri rœðu, þá hvarf Lucifer svá sem í
God had ended this talk then turned Lucifer so as into
norðr frá guði með öllum sínum fylgjurum, ok mælti svá:
(the)-north from God with all his followers and spoke so
„Hví skulum vér þola hót af guði fyrir þjónostu vára, þar
Why shall we bear threats from God for service our there
sem vér höfum sjálfir yfrinn krapt ok fegrð ok fjölda at
where we have ourselves ample strength and beauty and multitude to
halda várri sœmd? Nú mun ek setja mér annat hásæti líkt
keep our honor Now will I set for-myself another high-seat like
guði í nörðra hlut himins, ok varðveita með ágætligri
to-God in (the)-northern part of-heaven and keep with excellent
stjórn annan helming himins eða meira.“ Þá svaraði guð
governance (the)-other half of-heaven or more Then answered God
ok mælti við Lucifer: „Með því at þú hefir lögbrot gört með
and spoke to Lucifer With that that you have law-break done with
svikligri uppreist, þá máttu enga staðfestu hafa lengi með
treacherous uprising then may-you no steadfastness have long with
oss; ok með því at þú vilt ríkisgæzlu hafa, þá far þú nú til
us and with that that you will realm-keeping have then go you now to

ríkis, er þér er búit, ok skalt þú nú hafa nauð fyrir
(the)-realm which for-you is prepared and shall you now have distress for
frelsi ok vesöld fyrir sælu, hverskyns harm án alla huggan.
freedom and misery for bliss every-kind grief without all comfort
Fylgi þeir þér allir, er eigi váru gagnstaðligir þinni ráðagerð."
Follow they you all who not were opposed to-your counsel-taking
En þá er guð leit til þeirra reiðuliga, þá skulfu himnar
But then when God looked at them angrily then shook heavens
allir í augliti guðs, en úvinir hans flýðu með ógurligu
all in (the)-sight of-God but enemies his fled with terrible
niðrvarpi, ok gerðu leiðiligt litaskipti með brottorpinni
down-throwing and made loathsome change-of-color with thrown-away
fegrð. Því næst hittu þeir alla þá staði, er þeim var
beauty That next found they all those places which to-them was
til vísat, ok dreifðusk þeir um allar helvítis holur, skipaðir
to directed and scattered they about all hell's holes appointed
með ýmisligu embætti, ok skildisk með því myrkr frá ljósi.
with various office and parted with that darkness from light
En eptir þat er guð hafði mann skapaðan, ok hann var
But after that when God had man created and he was
skipaðr í sældarlífi í Paradísu, þá mælti Lucifer til sinna
placed in bliss-life in Paradise then spoke Lucifer to his
félaga: „Þessum mun guð hafa ætlat ríki þat, er hann
companions To-this will God have intended realm that which he
rak mik ífrá, ef hann gerir eigi misbrigði í gegn hans
drove me from if he does not misstep in against his
vilja. En þóat hann skipaði öðrum englum í várt ríki, þá
will But though he appointed other angels in our realm then
mættim vér þat aldri þola, ef vér féngim nökkut at gört;
might we that never bear if we got anything to done
en þetta er oss ofmikil skömm, at maðr sá er görr var
but this is to-us too-great shame that man that who made was

af leiri eða saurgu jarðar dupti, skal vera leiddr í þá eilífa
of clay or filthy earth's dust shall be led into that eternal
sælu, er vér várum frá reknir. Fyrir því skulum vér jafnan
bliss which we were from driven For that shall we always
berjask við hvern þeirra, er þannug stundar, ok hefna
fight against each of-them who thither strives and avenge
várs skaða með grimligri heipt á öllum þeim, er vér fám
our loss with fierce hatred on all those whom we can
sigrat. Fyrir því skal ek við leita at vinna sigr á hinum
conquer For that shall I on seek to win victory over the
fyrsta manni, er guð hefir skapat, at þá megi aðrir mínir
first man whom God has created that then may other my
félagar vinna sigr á hinum, er síðar koma.“ Því næst
companions win victory over those who later come That next
skrýddisk hann með sjau höfuðvélum, þeim er hann vænti
adorned-himself he with seven chief-engines those which he expected
sér fulltings af: ein var eitrlig öfund, önnur brennandi
for-himself help from one was poisonous envy (the)-second burning
heipt, þriðja villusamlig slægð, fjórða glyssamlig flærð,
hatred third erring slyness fourth glittering falsehood
fimta drambsamlig yfirgirnd, setta ágjarnlig sinka, sjaunda
fifth proud covetousness sixth greedy stinginess seventh
bergisamlig lostasemi. Því næst mælti hann við sjálfan sik:
gluttonous lust That next spoke he to self himself
„Með því at ek em nú úsýniligr andi, þá má ek eigi
With that that I am now invisible spirit then may I not
sýniliga koma í tal við líkamligan mann, nema ek skrýða
visibly come into talk with bodily man unless I adorn
mína hina ljótligu ásjón með nökkurri líkamligri fegrð. Nú
my the loathsome face with some bodily beauty Now
mun ek ganga inn í orm þenna, er guð hefir skapaðan
will I go in into serpent this which God has created

með meyligu andliti, ok líkastr er mannligri fegrð, ok mun
with maidenly face and likest is to-human beauty and will
ek tala með hans munni við Evu konu Adams, ok vita
I speak with his mouth to Eve wife of-Adam and know
af henni, hvárt þau eru sköpuð í fullu frelsi fyrir utan
from her whether they are created in full freedom before outside
alla lagagæzlu, eða hefir guð nökkut lögmál skipat þeim,
all law-keeping or has God some law appointed them
svá at ek mætta þaðan af spilla þeirra sætt við hann."
so that I might thence from spoil their peace with him
Því næst hitti sá hinn öfundfulli andi orm þann, er nú
That next met that the envious spirit serpent that which now
er kallaðr Aspis, er í þann tíma gékk á tveim fótum með
is called Aspis who at that time went on two feet with
uppréttum líkam, svá sem maðr, ok meyligu andliti, svá sem
upright body so as man and maidenly face so as
fyrr sögðum vér. En þá er sá hinn illgjarni andi kom
before told we But then when that the malicious spirit came
til fundar við Evu huldr með líkami þess orms, þá neytti
to meeting with Eve hidden with (the)-body of-that serpent then used
hann vélar þeirrar, er kölluð er glyssamlig flærð, þar er
he engine that which called is glittering falsehood there where
hann mælti við Evu með flærðsamligri blíðu, þá er hann
he spoke to Eve with false gentleness then when he
kvað svá at orði: „Sæll er bóndi þinn, ok svá sjálf þú." Þetta
said so in word Blessed is husband your and so self you This
lof veitti hann þeim eigi af gœzku, heldr lofaði hann fyrir
praise gave he them not from goodness rather praised he for
því þeirra sælu, at hann vildi draga þau til vesaldar með
that their bliss that he would draw them to misery with
heipt ok öfund. En þar neytti hann villusamligrar slœgðar,
hatred and envy But there used he erring slyness

er hann bað Evu segja sér, hvárt guð hefði gefit þeim
where he bade Eve tell him whether God had given them
Adami forræði ok neyzlu fyrir utan alla viðrsýn á öllum
Adam disposal and partaking before outside all caution over all
hlutum. En þegar er hann fékk vísendasvör af Evu fyrir
things But as-soon as he got knowledge-answers from Eve for
blíðyrði sín, ok hann heyrði at þeim var dauða heitit, ef
gentle-words his and he heard that to-them was death promised if
þau gerði lögbrot, þá varð hann feginn, ok neytti hann þá
they did law-break then became he glad and used he then
drambsamligrar yfirgirndar, er hann sagði þat Evu, at þau
proud covetousness when he said that to-Eve that they
mundu í þessum hlutum guði líkjask í fróðleik sínum, at
would in these things to-God become-like in learning their to
vita alla grein millim góðra hluta ok illra. En þar neytti
know all distinction between good things and evil But there used
hann bergisamligrar lostasemi, er hann bað hana freista
he gluttonous lust where he bade her try
hversu sætt væri eða vel þefjat fróðleiks epli, þat er henni
how sweet were or well smelling learning's apple that which to-her
var bannat. En í því neytti hann yfirgjarnligrar sinku, er
was forbidden But in that used he covetous stinginess where
hann kom Evu til þess, at eignask þat er guð hafði áðr
he brought Eve to that to own that which God had before
bannat henni; þvíat guð hafði gefit alt annat í vald
forbidden her because God had given all other into (the)-power
Adams ok Evu, utan þetta tré eigi, ok síngirndusk þau eptir
of-Adam and Eve except this tree not and craved they after
at hafa þetta fyrir utan leyfi, þar sem alt annat var í þeirra
to have this before outside leave there where all other was into their
vald gefit. Þessa eina grein vissu þau millim góðra hluta ok
power given This one distinction knew they between good things and

illra, at betra var gott en ilt, at þau hræddusk þann dauða,
evil that better was good than evil that they feared that death
er þeim var heitinn. En fyrir því at þau höfðu enga beisku
which to-them was promised But for that that they had no bitterness
illra hluta bergða, þá kunnu þau eigi at vita þat, hversu
of-evil things tasted then could they not to know that how
mikla vesöld er þau mundu þola fyrir lögbrot, heldr þótti
great misery which they would bear for law-break rather seemed
þeim mikit upphaf í, ef þau væri lík guði í fróðleik
to-them great advancement in-it if they were like to-God in learning
sínum, at þau vissi alla grein millim góðra hluta ok illra.
their that they knew all distinction between good things and evil
En þá er ormrinn eggjaði Evu at eta af fróðleiks eplum, þá
But then when the-serpent egged Eve to eat of learning's apples then
hræddisk hon dauða, ok mælti svá við orminn: „Ek hræðumk,
feared she death and spoke so to the-serpent I fear
ef ek et, at ek deyja, með því at guð hét mér því. Nú
if I eat that I die with that that God promised me that Now
et þú fyrri, svá at ek sjá, ok ef þú deyr eigi, þá mun ek
eat you first so that I see and if you die not then will I
eta, þvíat þetta aldin mun jafnvel öðrum kykvendum skapat
eat because this fruit will equally to-other creatures created
til bana sem mér, ef þat hefir dauðligan krapt með sér." En
for bane as to-me if it has deadly power with itself But
andinn sá er leyndisk í orminum, þá svaraði með sjálfum
the-spirit that which hid-itself in the-serpent then answered with self
sér: „Ek má vel eta eplit, þvíat ek em ekki at sekari né
himself I may well eat the-apple because I am not the guiltier nor
dauðligri, þar sem ek em áðr í fullri reiði guðs." En þessi
more-deadly there where I am before in full anger of-God But these
orð heyrði Eva eigi. Því næst tók Eva eitt epli ok lagði í
words heard Eve not That next took Eve one apple and laid in

munn orminum, ok hann át þat þegar. Ok er hon sá, at
mouth to-the-serpent and he ate it at-once And when she saw that
hann sakaði ekki, þá tók hon þegar annat epli ok át sjálf,
him harmed nothing then took she at-once another apple and ate herself
ok þótti vera afar sœtt, sem ormrinn hafði sagt henni.
and seemed to-be exceedingly sweet as the-serpent had told her
Því næst hvarf ormrinn frá augliti Evu; en hon kallaði
That next vanished the-serpent from (the)-sight of-Eve but she called
Adam bónda sinn, ok sagði hánum þessa hluti. En með því
Adam husband her and told him these things But with that
at hann hræddisk ok dauða, sem guð hafði heitit hánum,
that he feared also death as God had promised him
þá vildi hann eigi eta, nema hann sæi sjálfr, at Eva æti fyrir
then would he not eat unless he saw himself that Eve ate before
hánum, ok tók þá enn Eva tvau epli, ok át þegar annat
him and took then still Eve two apples and ate at-once one
sjálf djarfliga, þvíat hon hafði kent áðr sœtleik eplisins, ok
herself boldly because she had tasted before (the)-sweetness of-the-apple and
girndi hana optar at bergja á, heldr en hon skemdisk þess,
desired her oftener to taste on-it rather than she was-ashamed of-that
er hon hafði áðr gört. En þegar Adamr sá, at hana sakaði
which she had before done But when Adam saw that her harmed
ekki, heldr þekti hann lystiligan sœtleik í munni hennar,
nothing rather recognized he delightful sweetness in mouth her
þá tók hann við því epli, er hon bauð hánum, ok át eigi
then took he with that apple which she offered him and ate not
síðr en hon. Sem þau höfðu eplit etit, þá lukusk upp
less than she When they had the-apple eaten then opened-themselves up
augu þeirra til meira fróðleiks en þau höfðu áðr, svá sem
eyes their to greater learning than they had before so as
ormrinn sagði; þvíat þá kunnu þau þegar at skammask nöktra
the-serpent said because then could they at-once to be-ashamed of-naked

lima, þar sem þau sá fugla líkami hulda vera með fjöðrum,
limbs there where they saw birds' bodies covered to-be with feathers
en dýra líkami með hári, en þau sá sjálfra sinna líkami
but beasts' bodies with hair but they saw of-selves their bodies
nekta vera, ok skömdusk þau þess mjök; en allra mest voldi
naked to-be and were-ashamed they of-that much but of-all most caused
þat þessarri skömm, at þau vissu sik í sökum við guð
that this shame that they knew themselves in guilt toward God
fyrir brotit lögmál, ok þáru þau allan hræddan líkam sinn,
for broken law and bore they all frightened body their
ok skömdusk nöktra lima. Því næst fóru þau at fela sik
and were-ashamed of-naked limbs That next went they to hide themselves
millim trjá, ok gáfu oss dœmi sinnar dulrænu, þvíat þau gáðu
among trees and gave us example of-their foolishness because they heeded
þess eigi, at guði váru svá kunn handaverk sín ok alt smíði,
that not that to-God were so known handiworks his and all craft
þat sem hann hafði gört, at eigi mundi hrís eða skógar
that which he had made that not would brush or woods
fela þau fyrir hans augliti, þar sem leyniligar róar helvítis
hide them before his sight there where secret corners of-hell's
fylsna eru berar ok sýniligar í hans augliti á hverri stundu.
hiding-places are bare and visible in his sight at every hour
En meðan er Adamr var í fylsnum, þá mælti guð við
But while that Adam was in hiding-places then spoke God to
andann, er leyndisk í orminum: „Með drambi ok illsku
the-spirit which hid-itself in the-serpent With pride and wickedness
hóft þú upp hit fyrsta lögbrot, ok var engi annarr at tæla
raised you up the first law-break and was no other to entice
þik, nema sjálfs þíns dramb ok öfund; fyrir því œsisk reiði
you except of-self your pride and envy for that rages anger
mín móti þér fyrir utan alla várkynd, ok glataðir þú eilífri
my against you before outside all excuse and lost you eternal

sælu án allar vánir þinnar aptrkvámu. En þóat þú hafir
bliss without all hope of-your return But though you have
annat sinni minn hug vaktan til reiði fyrir þessi lögbrot, er
a-second time my mind waked to anger for these law-breaks which
nú eru gör, þá mun Adamr taka refsing fyrir sín lögbrot,
now are done then will Adam take punishment for his law-breaks
ok eiga þó vánir aptrkvámu ok miskunnar, þvíat hann kom
and have yet hope of-return and mercy because he came
í mína reiði fyrir þinnar illsku sakar ok flærðsamligra
into my anger for your wickedness' sake and false
pretta. Ok svá sem þú vant sigr á konu Adams, þeirri
tricks' And so as you won victory over (the)-wife of-Adam her
er enn er mær, svá skal ein af hennar dœtrum, sú er mær
who still is maiden so shall one of her daughters she who maiden
er, sigr á þér vega. Ok svá sem þú þykkisk nú leitt
is victory over you win And so as you think-yourself now led
hafa Adam með herfangi eða hans kyn í þitt veldi, svá
to-have Adam with plunder or his kin into your power so
skal einn af hans sonum rannsaka allar þínar féhirzlur, ok
shall one of his sons search all your treasuries and
taka allar gersimar frá þér með herfangi, leiða Adam undan
take all treasures from you with plunder lead Adam away-from
þínu valdi ok allar hans dyggvar kynslóðir með dýrum sigri,
your power and all his worthy generations with dear victory
ok skipa hánum sœmiliga millim sinna sona í því ríki, er
and set him honorably among his sons in that realm which
þú týndir makliga. Ok svá sem grœnt tré bar þat aldin, er
you lost deservedly And so as green tree bore that fruit which
þú vant nú sigr með, svá skal þurt tré bera þat aldin, er
you won now victory with so shall dry tree bear that fruit which
þinn sigr skal týnask með." Því næst mælti guð við orminn,
your victory shall be-lost with That next spoke God to the-serpent

þann er andinn hafði leynzk í: „Bölvaðr verð þú fyrir öll
that which the-spirit had hidden-itself in Cursed be you before all
kykvendi á jörðu, þvíat þú tókt við mínum úvin ok leyndir
creatures on earth because you took with my enemy and hid
hánum fyrir augliti Evu, til þess at hann mætti or þínu
him from (the)-sight of-Eve for that that he might out-of your
fylsni sigr vega á mannligu kyni; fyrir þat skalt þú
hiding-place victory win over human kind for that shall you
skipta ásýn þeirri, er þú bart í meyligu andliti, ok skalt
change appearance that which you bore in maidenly face and shall
þú nú bera ljótt andlit ok grimt ok andstygt mannligu kyni,
you now bear ugly face and fierce and hateful to-human kind
hverfi þeir fœtr, er báru þinn réttan líkam, ok gakk þú
vanish those feet which bore your upright body and go you
héðan ífrá á kviði þínum ok á brjósti. Beisk mold ok saurig
hence from on belly your and on breast Bitter earth and filthy
skal vera matr þinn, fyrir því at þú ázt sœtt epli, þat er
shall be food your for that that you ate sweet apple that which
þú tókt or hendi Evu. Þú skalt vera sjálfgört kerald eitrs
you took out-of (the)-hand of-Eve You shall be self-made vessel of-poison
ok dauða, til vitnisburðar at þú falt eitrliga öfund í þínum
and death for witness that you bid poisonous envy in your
líkam. Segi ek sundr sætt millim þín ok allra mannligra
body Say I asunder peace between you and all human
kyna; skal höfuð þitt ok háls gegna manna fótum ok þeirra
kinds shall head your and neck meet men's feet and their
ástigum í hefnd þeirra svika, er menn hlutu af þinni
treadings in vengeance of-those betrayals which men got from your
flærð ok blíðu. En með því at þú vart manninum til þess
falsehood and gentleness But with that that you were to-the-man for that
at gera lögbrot með munninum ok með ætni sinni, þá skal
to do law-break with the-mouth and with eating his then shall

mannsins hráki, sá er flýgr af fastanda manns munni,
the-man's spittle that which flies from fasting man's mouth
verða þér at jafnhættu eitri við líf þitt, ef þú bergir
become to-you as equally-dangerous poison to life your if you taste
á, sem manninum er eitr þitt, ef hann bergir á því."
on-it as to-the-man is poison your if he tastes on it
Því næst kallaði guð á þau Adam ok Evu, ok spurði hvar
That next called God on them Adam and Eve and asked where
þau væri. En Adamr svaraði: „Vit fálum okkr fyrir því,
they were But Adam answered We-two hid ourselves for that
dróttinn, at vit skömdumsk nökkvið at vera fyrir þínu
lord that we-two were-ashamed naked to be before your
augliti." Í fyrsta orði er Adamr svaraði guði, þá laug
sight In (the)-first word which Adam answered to-God then lied
hann at hánum, þvíat þau vissu sik sakafull vera fyrir
he to him because they knew themselves guilty to-be for
lögbrot ok fálu þau sik fyrir þá sök, ok leyndi Adamr
law-break and hid they themselves for that cause and hid Adam
því í þeim andsvörum, er hann svaraði guði. Þá mælti
that in those answers which he answered to-God Then spoke
guð við Adam: „Hví kunnu þit nú heldr at skammask
God to Adam Why could you-two now rather to be-ashamed
en næstum í várri viðrœðu, at þit erut nökkvið, nema
than last in our conversation that you-two are naked unless
fróðleikr ykkarr hafi svá aukizk, at þit hafit etit af þeim
learning your-two's have so increased that you-two have eaten of those
eplum, er ek bannaða ykkr." En þegar er Adamr heyrði þat,
apples which I forbade you-two But as-soon as Adam heard that
at eigi mundi leynask, at þau hefði lögbrot gör, þá leitaði
that not would be-hidden that they had law-break done then sought
hann þegar athygli ok at annarr bæri ávít fyrir þá sök,
he at-once attention and that another bore blame for that cause

heldr en hann sjálfr, þvíat hann kvað svá at orði: „Hefða
rather than he himself because he said so in word Had
ek einn vélt um mitt ráð, ok hefðir þú eigi gefit mér
I alone handled about my counsel and had you not given me
konu þessa til ráðagerðar með mér, þá munda ek hafa haldit
woman this for counsel-taking with me then would I have kept
skipat lögmál, ok eigi brotit þín boðorð." Þessi orð jóku
appointed law and not broken your commands These words increased
mjök sök Adams í augliti guðs, þvíat hann leitaði heldr
much (the)-guilt of-Adam in (the)-sight of-God because he sought rather
sakarvarnar en miskunnar. En ef hann hefði þessi orð mælt:
defense than mercy But if he had these words spoken
„Minnsk nú, dróttinn minn, at ek em görr af ústyrku efni
Remember now lord my that I am made of unstrong matter
svá sem breyskr leirpottr, ok þarf ok meir miskunsamligrar
so as frail clay-pot and need also more of-merciful
vægðar þinnar, heldr en verðleikr sakar minnar mun beiðask,
leniency your rather than (the)-worth of-guilt my will ask
þvíat ek ústyrkr féll í miklar sakir við þik, dróttinn minn,
because I unstrong fell into great guilt toward you lord my
fyrir lögbrot mitt;" þá hefði þegar minkat sök Adams
for law-break my then had at-once lessened (the)-guilt of-Adam
í augliti guðs, þvíat þá væri leitat miskunnar, en eigi
in (the)-sight of-God because then were sought mercy but not
sakarvarnar. En þá er guð heyrði, at Adamr svaraði sem
defense But then when God heard that Adam answered as
verjandi sína sök, þá mælti hann svá sem með reiði: „Eigi
defending his guilt then spoke he so as with anger Not
skalt þú mér fyrir þat sök gefa, at ek skapaða konuna;
shall you to-me for that blame give that I created the-woman
þvíat til hjúskapar ok yndis gaf ek þér konuna, en eigi til
because for marriage and delight gave I to-you the-woman but not for

þess, at þú skyldir með hennar ráði lögbrot gera. Varaða ek
that that you should with her counsel law-break do Warned I
þik við, at þú skyldir lögbrot gera, ok sagða ek þér sakar
you against that you should law-break do and told I you of-guilt
ván, ef þú gerðir lögbrot; hví fylgðir þú heldr veilræðum
expectation if you did law-break why followed you rather ill-counsels
konu þinnar en heilræðum mínum, nema þú gerðir fyrir
of-wife your than sound-counsels mine unless you did for
drambs sakar ok yfirgirndar, at þú vildir vera jafnfróðr sem
pride's sake and covetousness that you would be equally-learned as
ek, ok forvitnaðir þú fyrir því þat er þér var eigi lofat.“
I and were-curious-about you for that that which to-you was not permitted
Því næst mælti guð við Evu: Hví eggjaðir þú bónda þinn,
That next spoke God to Eve Why egged you husband your
at þit skyldut gera lögbrot?“ En Eva vildi gjarna, at
that you-two should do law-break But Eve would gladly that
annarr bæri ávít fyrir sök hennar, heldr en sjálf hon, þvíat
another bore blame for guilt her rather than herself she because
hon kvað svá at orði: „Ormr þessi hinn orðslœgi réð
she said so in word Serpent this the word-sly counseled
mér þetta úráð; hefði hann eigi skapaðr verit eða til míns
me this folly had he not created been or to my
fundar komit, þá hefða ek eigi lögbrot gört, né bónda minn
meeting come then had I not law-break done nor husband my
eggjat at göra lögbrot.“ Þá er guð heyrði sakarvörn Evu,
egged to do law-break Then when God heard (the)-defense of-Eve
þá mælti hann reiðr: „Svá sýnisk mér, sem þit vilit mér
then spoke he angry So seems to-me as-if you-two will me
kenna bæði, at þit gerðut lögbrot; þvíat hann gaf mér
blame both that you-two did law-break because he gave me
sök fyrir þat, at ek hafða þik skapaða til ráðagerðar við
blame for that that I had you created for counsel-taking with

hann, en nú gefr þú mér þá sök, at ek hefi orminn skapat.
him but now give you me that blame that I have the-serpent created
Svá skapaða ek orminn sem öll önnur kykvendi á jörðu;
So created I the-serpent as all other creatures on earth
en eigi gaf ek hann þér til ráðgjafa, heldr lagða ek hann
but not gave I him to-you for counselor rather laid I him
undir ykkart vald, sem öll önnur kykvendi á jörðu. Varaða
under your-two's power as all other creatures on earth Warned
ek ykkr bæði við, at þit skyldut eigi lögbrot gera, ok
I you-two both against that you-two should not law-break do and
sagða ek ykkr ván dauða fyrir. Nú eru ekki betri verk
told I you-two expectation of-death for-it Now are not better works
ykkur orðin í sakarvörn ykkarri, en áðr váru í lögbrotum;
your-two's become in defense your-two's than before were in law-breaks
fyrir því skulu þit þola þann dauða, er ek hét ykkr.
for that shall you-two bear that death which I promised you-two
Þóat þit fallit eigi þegar dauð niðr, þá skulu þit þó
Though you-two fall not at-once dead down then shall you-two yet
langar hefndir taka í ykkrum dauða fyrir ykkart lögbrot, ok
long vengeances take in your-two's death for your-two's law-break and
engar kynkvíslir skulu þær af ykkr koma, er eigi skulu
no kindreds shall those from you-two come which not shall
svara þessum lögbrotum. En þá stund er þit lifit á jörðu,
answer for-these law-breaks But that while that you-two live on earth
þá skulu þit þola sorgsamligar nauðir í stað þess er
then shall you-two bear sorrowful distresses in place of-that that
þit kunnut eigi at gæta frjálsligrar sælu. En fyrir þat at
you-two could not to keep free bliss But for that that
þú gerðir fyrri lögbrot en Adamr, þá margfalda ek þessar
you did earlier law-break than Adam then multiply I these
nauðir þínar umfram þat, er þit skulut bæði kenna: þú
distresses your beyond that which you-two shall both feel you

skalt undir vera orpin veldi bónda þíns ok öllum hans
shall under be thrown (the)-power of-husband your and all his
forræðum, ok sýnask hvarvetna minni fyrir þér ok lægri í
disposals and seem everywhere less before you and lower in
augliti sona ykkarra. Börn þau er þú getr í lostasamligri
(the)-sight of-sons your-two's Children those which you beget in lustful
girnd, þau skalt þú framleiða með sótt ok nálgandisk
desire them shall you bring-forth with sickness and approaching
lífsháska; þú skalt ok skyld at veita börnum ykkrum alla
life-danger you shall also bound to give to-children your-two's all
þjónostu með starfi ok sorgsamligri önn í uppfœði þeirra."
service with toil and sorrowful labor in upbringing their
Þá mælti guð: „Nú er Adamr orðinn svá fróðr sem
Then spoke God Now is Adam become so learned as
einnhverr várr, vitandi góða hluti ok illa. Varizk þér,
one of-us knowing good things and evil Guard-yourselves you
at eigi neyti hann af lífstré fyrir utan leyfi, svá sem
that not partake he of life-tree before outside leave so as
hann neytti af fróðleiks eplum, at eigi lifi hann eilífliga í
he partook of learning's apples that not live he eternally in
sínum sektum." Því næst skipaði guð Cherubin at varðveita
his guilts That next appointed God Cherubim to guard
þann veg, er liggr til lífstrés með eldligu sverði, þat er
that way which lies to life-tree with fiery sword that which
jafnan svipar allan veg með eldbitrum eggjum, svá at engi
always flicks all way with fire-bitter edges so that no-one
megi þár fram koma fyrir utan leyfi. Því næst mælti guð
may there forward come before outside leave That next spoke God
við Adam: „Fyrir því at þú hlýddir meir úráði konu
to Adam For that that you obeyed more (the)-folly of-wife
þinnar heldr en heilræðum mínum, ok neyttir kviðjaðan
your rather than sound-counsels mine and partook-of forbidden

ávöxt jarðar, fyrirbölvask jörð í verki þínu, sú er þér gaf
fruit of-earth be-cursed earth in work your she who to-you gave
allan girniligan ávöxt, svá sem með móðurligri mildi. Nú
all desirable fruit so as with motherly mildness Now
skal hon synja þér ávaxta þeirra, er þér sé sœmiligir til
shall she refuse you fruits those which to-you be seemly for
neyzlu, svá sem hryggliga reið: þistla ok illgresi skal hon
partaking so as grievously angry thistles and weeds shall she
gefa þér í ávöxt, nema þú fágir hana með verknaði, svá at
give you in fruit unless you polish her with work so that
hon drekki sveita þinn; því at héðan ífrá skalt þú með
she drink sweat your because that hence from shall you with
starfi afla þér matar á jörðu." Því næst gaf guð þeim
toil get for-yourself food on earth That next gave God them
Adami ok Evu skinnkyrtla, ok mælti við þau: „Með því at
Adam and Eve skin-kirtles and spoke to them With that that
þit skömduzk nöktra lima, þá hylit ykkr nú með starfs
you-two were-ashamed of-naked limbs then cover yourselves now with toil's
ísmottum ok úgleðisklæðum, ok farit nú á víðáttu jarðar
ice-mantles and gloom-clothes and go now onto (the)-expanse of-earth
með annsamligu starfi, ok leitit ykkr fœzlu. Þó skulu
with laborious toil and seek for-yourselves food Yet shall
þit hvílask í dauðligu faðmlagi jarðar ok snúask aptr
you-two rest in deadly embrace of-earth and turn back
náttúrulig í dauðlig efni, þar er þit várut af tekin
naturally into deadly matter there where you-two were from taken
fyrir öndverðu." Þá mælti Adamr: „Miskunn ok réttdœmi
at (the)-beginning Then spoke Adam Mercy and right-judgment
þakka ek þér, dróttinn minn, þvíat ek skil görla stórar
thank I you lord my because I understand fully great
afgerðir mínar; svá þekta ek ok miskunn þína, þvíat ek
misdeeds my so recognized I also mercy your because I

mun eigi týnask líknarlauss sem Lucifer. Hryggr mun ek
will not perish comfortless as Lucifer Grieving will I
stíga niðr til dauðligra helvítis skugga, þó mun ek jafnan
step down to deadly hell's shadows yet will I always
gleðjask í ván aptrkvámu minnar, þvíat þess vænti ek til
be-glad in hope of-return my because that expect I toward
þín, dróttinn minn, at þú munt enn sýna mér lifanda geisla
you lord my that you will still show me living ray
í dauða myrkri; ok til þess mun ek jafnan stunda, at sá er
in death's darkness and to that will I always strive that he who
nú gleðsk af mínum úförum svá sem af fengnum sigri, hann
now is-glad at my misfortunes so as at gotten victory he
mun enn hryggvask af várri aptrkvámu, svá sem yfirstiginn
will still grieve at our return so as overcome
ok sigri týnt.“ Þá mælti Eva: „Svá sem nú skiljumsk
and victory lost Then spoke Eve So as now part
vér sorgfull, dróttinn minn, fyrir stóran várn tilverka, svá
we sorrowful lord my for great our deeds so
munum vér enn fagna miskunsamligri huggan þinni í
will we still rejoice-in merciful comfort your in
nauðsynjum várum.“ Því næst hvarf guð af augliti þeirra,
needs our That next vanished God from (the)-sight of-them
en þau bjoggusk fyrir á jörðu, sem guð bauð þeim.
but they made-ready-themselves for on earth as God bade them
Nú hefi ek gört sem þú beiddisk, at lokit upp með
Now have I done as you asked to opened up with
nökkurum orðum fyrir þér, hví ormrinn mælti við konuna,
some words before you why the-serpent spoke to the-woman
eða hver sök til var, at hann eggjaði konuna til lögbrota;
or what cause to-it was that he egged the-woman to law-breaks
ok hefi ek þó haft sem léttast efni í þessa rœðu, þvíat ek
and have I yet had as lightest matter in this talk because I

vil öðrum þat starf spara, at glósa várar rœður með djúpligri
will to-others that toil spare to gloss our talks with deep
áhyggju; en vit takim heldr réttan framgangsveg upphafðrar
care but we-two take rather right forward-going-way of-begun
rœðu, með því at vit höfum eigi tóm til hvárstveggja.
talk with that that we-two have not leisure for both

XLVIII · GLOSSES AND THEIR ROOTS

The son asks how, if the father's account of Lucifer and Adam is new, he could defend it to a doubter. The father compares the glosses of a talk to the branches of a tree, each traced back to its trunk and roots. The son has heard Lucifer's boast reported but never God's answer; whoever reckoned the one, says the father, could reckon the other, since God conceived the whole vengeance at once, and what he has thought he has in effect spoken. Those with the spirit of understanding, as David's and the evangelists' glossators had, perceive the words of the thought behind the words of the lips; whoever traces each branch back to its roots can tell a right gloss from a wrong one.

SON Nú skilsk mér þat, at yðr þykki orlausn þeirrar
Now is-understood to-me that that to-you seems (the)-answer of-that
spurningar, er ek spurða næstum, heldr vera glósur ok
question which I asked last rather to-be glosses and
þýðing þeirra rœðna, er fyrr töluðum vit um, heldr en
interpretation of-those talks which before spoke we-two about rather than
þat sé framgangsvegr upphafðrar rœðu, ok hræðumk ek þat,
that be forward-going-way of-begun talk and fear I that
ef ek spyr nökkut lengra um þessar skýringar, at yðr virðisk
if I ask anything longer about these explanations that to-you seems
spurning mín eigi fróðlig. En fyrir dælleika sakir þess, at
question my not learned But for familiarity's sake of-that that
þér hafit lofat mér at spyrja þeirra hluta, er forvitni mín
you have permitted me to ask those things which curiosity my

girnisk, þá mun ek þó enn tilhætta at spyrja, þvíat ek vænti
desires then will I yet still venture to ask because I expect
enn góðra svara fyrir sem fyrrmeir, þóat ek spyrja bernskliga.
still good answers for-it as earlier though I ask childishly
Nú hafi þér skýrt fyrir mér, hví ormrinn mælti við konuna
Now have you explained before me why the-serpent spoke to the-woman
með þeim hætti, at andinn mælti með munni ormsins; svá
in that manner that the-spirit spoke with (the)-mouth of-the-serpent so
skýrðu þér ok fyrir mér, at konan var eggjuð at gera lögbrot,
explained you also before me that the-woman was egged to do law-break
at þat var fyrir þeirrar öfundar sakir, at Lucifer fyrirmundi
that it was for that envy's sake that Lucifer begrudged
manninum at koma til þess ríkis, er hann var or rekinn;
to-the-man to come to that realm which he was out-of driven
ok höfðu þér nökkura þá rœðu í þeirri skýring um þessa
and had you some that talk in that explanation about these
dóma guðs, hvárttveggja um Lucifer ok svá um Adam, er
judgments of-God both about Lucifer and so about Adam which
eigi er víst, at áðr sé opt heyrð. En ef ek hefða minni til
not is certain that before be often heard But if I had memory to
þeirrar rœðu, ok bæra ek eptir því fram, sem ek heyrða yðr
that talk and bore I after that forward as I heard you
rœða, ok kvæði einnhverr svá at orði sá er heyrði, at hann
talk and said some-one so in word that-one who heard that he
kallaðisk eigi þessa rœðu fyrr hafa heyrða, þá vilda ek
declared-himself not this talk before to-have heard then would-wish I
þess biðja yðr, at þér sýndit mér, hver efni ek skylda hafa
of-that ask you that you showed me what matters I should have
í andsvör mín, at eigi sýnimk ek þegar fallinn með úfróðleik
in answers my that not seem I at-once fallen with ignorance

frá mínu máli, heldr mætta ek þá hjálp til finna at fulltingja
from my case rather might I then help to-it find to support
mínu máli með, er öllum litisk heldr sannlig en lygilig.
my case with which to-all looks rather true-like than lie-like
FATHER Svá eru glósur hverrar rœðu sem limir eða kvistir af
So are glosses of-each talk as limbs or twigs of
einuhverju tré. Þar vex fyrst upp einn bulr af rótunum ok
some tree There grows first up one trunk from the-roots and
kvíslask síðan með mörgum greinum ok limum; ok hvern
branches-itself afterward with many branches and limbs and whichever
er þú tekr liminn ok rannsakar með réttri athygli, þá er þat
that you take the-limb and examine with right attention then is it
jafnan fast við bulinn, þann er upp er vaxinn fyrir öndverðu
always fast to the-trunk that which up is grown at (the)-beginning
af rótunum, ok njóta allir limirnir ok kvistirnir þeirra rótanna,
from the-roots and enjoy all the-limbs and the-twigs those roots
er sjálft tréit stendr á. En ef þú höggr af einnhvern liminn
which itself the-tree stands on But if you hew off some limb
ok kastar langt brott frá trénu, ok finnr sá einnhverr á,
and throw far away from the-tree and finds that-one some on-it
er úkunnigt er, hvar staðit hefir, þá þykki hánum slíkr
to-whom unknown is where it-stood has then seems to-him such
sá kvistr, sem einnhverr annarra, sá er hann finnr á sínum
that twig as some of-others that which he finds on his
veg, þvíat hann veit ekki til, hvar hverr hefir staðit. En ef
way because he knows not to-it where each has stood But if
hann berr aptr til hins sama stofns, er af hjó, ok leggr
he bears back to the same stock which from hewed-it and lays
þar við, þá berr kvistrinn sjálfr vitni um, af hverjum rótum
there by then bears the-twig itself witness about from which roots
hann er upprunninn. Nú er með sama hætti um skýring
it is up-sprung Now is in same manner about (the)-explanation

rœðu hverrar; sá er góða skýring hefir til þess, at rœðan
of-each talk that-one who good explanation has to-it that that the-talk
fari rétt, þá hefir hann ok skilning til þess, at skýringin
go right then has he also understanding to that that the-explanation
fari rétt. En með því at ek heyrða, at sumir hlutir hafa þeir
go right But with that that I heard that some things have those
verit í þessarri skýring, er eigi hafa opt verit heyrðir, þá
been in this explanation which not have often been heard then
vil ek nú stundum spyrja, með því at optar hefi ek svarat
will I now at-times ask with that that oftener have I answered
en spurt; ok vil ek nú þess spyrja, hvárt nökkurir hlutir
than asked and will I now of-that ask whether some things
eru þeir, er þú hefir áskynja orðit í þessarri rœðu fyrr?
are those which you have aware become in this talk before
SON Eru þeir sumir hlutir, ok þó eigi margir. Þat hefi ek heyrt
Are those some things and yet not many That have I heard
hermt frá orðum Luciferi, at hann kvazk vilja setja
reported from (the)-words of-Lucifer that he said-of-himself to-will set
sæti sitt jafnhátt guði; en engi hefi ek heyrt fyrri andsvör
seat his equally-high to-God but none have I heard before answers
skýrð, þau er guð veitti þar á mót, en nú skýrðu þér.
explained those which God gave there on against but now explained you
FATHER Enn vil ek framar spyrja: hvern ætlar þú þann
Still will I further ask whom think you that-one
hermt hafa orð Luciferi, er hjá stóð ok heyrði þessi
reported to-have (the)-words of-Lucifer who beside stood and heard these
svikafull drambyrði?
treacherous pride-words

SON Þess nafn er eigi skýrt fyrir mér, ok eigi þykki
Of-that-one's name is not explained before me and not seems
mér víst, at sá hafi einnhverr frá sagt, er heyrt hefir
to-me certain that that-one have some from told who heard has
fyrir öndverðu.
at (the)-beginning

FATHER Þat skalt þú þó til víss vita, ef sá hefir hermt frá
That shall you yet for certain know if that-one has reported from
orðum Luciferi, er heyrði þau fyrir öndverðu, þá mundi
(the)-words of-Lucifer who heard them at (the)-beginning then would
hann at vísu heyra þessi andsvör guðs, sem nú hefi ek frá
he for sure hear these answers of-God which now have I from
sagt, ok mætti hann skýra hváratveggja rœðu, ef hann vildi,
told and might he explain both talks if he would
þvíat annattveggja mundi hann heyra báðar eða hvárga. En
because either would he hear both or neither But
ef hann hefir eptir ætlan hermt sviklig drambyrði
if he has according-to reckoning reported (the)-treacherous pride-words
Luciferi, þá mætti hann vel eptir ætlan skýra sannlig
of-Lucifer then might he well according-to reckoning explain (the)-true
andsvör guðs til hefndarinnar; þvíat annathvárt hefir orðin
answers of-God to the-vengeance because either have the-words
sönn hvártveggja eða hvárgi; þvíat á þeirri sömu stundu, er
true both or neither because at that same hour when
Lucifer gerði lögbrot, annathvárt með hugrenningum eða með
Lucifer did law-break either with thoughts or with
orðum, þá hugði guð þegar alla hefndina, þá er vera skyldi
words then thought God at-once all the-vengeance that which be should
frá hinni fyrstu stund ok til hinnar efstu; þvíat svá er mikil
from the first hour and to the last because so is great
gnótt guðligs mannvits ok ætlanar, at forsjá guðligrar
abundance of-divine wit and reckoning that (the)-providence of-divine

glöggþekni grípr í einu augabragði alla þá hluti, er verða
discernment grips in one eye-blink all those things which happen
skulu frá hinni fyrstu stund ok til hinnar síðustu; en síðan
shall from the first hour and to the last but afterward
gætir hann með guðligri þolinmœði alla þá hluti, er hann
keeps he with divine patience all those things which he
vill fram láta koma til þess, er hœfiligar stundir koma,
will forward let come until that when fitting hours come
ok hann vill þá hluti alla láta framgengna verða, er hann
and he will those things all let gone-forward become which he
hefir áðr ætlaða. Ok ef guð hefði einumhverjum svá mikla
has before intended And if God had to-some-one so great
skilning eða fróðleik gefit, at hann mætti þekt fá þá
understanding or learning given that he might perceived get those
hluti alla, er guð hafði hugða, ok svá segja ífrá, at guð
things all which God had thought and so tell from-it that God
hefði alla þá hluti með orðum skýrða eða rœðum, þá lygi
had all those things with words explained or talks then lied
eigi sá á hann því at heldr; þvíat alla þá hluti er
not that-one on him for-that the more because all those things which
guð hefir hugða, þá hefir hugrinn mælt við sjálfan hann,
God has thought then has the-mind spoken to himself him
hvárt sem varrarnar hafa nökkura rœðu þar um gört eða eigi.
whether that the-lips have some talk there about made or not
En svá segir Páll postoli frá, at guð hefir gefit mönnum
But so says Paul apostle from-it that God has given to-men
helgan anda sinn með skipuðum iðróttum ok embætti; hljóta
holy spirit his with appointed skills and office get
sumir spáleiks anda, en sumir mannvits anda ok spektar, en
some prophecy's spirit but some wit's spirit and wisdom's but
sumir mælsku anda; sumir skilningar anda, en sumir hagleiks
some eloquence's spirit some understanding's spirit but some craft's

anda; hljóta sumir mikla gnótt af þessum gjöfum, en
spirit get some great abundance of these gifts but
sumir minna; sumir hljóta eina þessa gjöf, sumir tvær, sumir
some less some get one this gift some two some
þrjár, en sumir allar, slíkt hverr sem guð vill gefit hafa.
three but some all such each as God will given have
En þeir er bæði hljóta skilningar anda ok mælsku sem
But those who both get understanding's spirit and eloquence's as
David konungr hlaut, þá hafa hætt til þess at setja rœður
David (the)-king got then have ventured to that to set talks
saman ok bœkr til þess görvar, at þær rœður skyldu eigi
together and books for that made that those talks should not
með tjónum verðask. Hefir David rœtt í sumum stöðum
with losses perish Has David talked in some places
um ætlan guðs, en í sumum stöðum um orð guðs,
about (the)-intent of-God but in some places about (the)-words of-God
en í sumum stöðum um verk hans; en þeir er glósat
but in some places about works his but those who glossed
hafa psaltarann fram á leið, er David gerði, þá hafa
have the-psalter forward on way which David made then have
þeir fleira rœtt um þat hvat David hugði meðan, heldr
they more talked about that what David thought meanwhile rather
en um orðin, er hann hefir mælt; þvíat þeir hafa langar
than about the-words which he has spoken because they have long
skýringar um þat gört með hverju orði, hvat David hugði,
explanations about that made with each word what David thought
meðan hann mælti þat orð; ok sýna þeir þær með rœðum,
while he spoke that word and show they them with talks
til hverrar skýringar hugr Davids sá með hverju orði,
to each explanation (the)-mind of-David saw with each word
er hann mælti í psaltaranum. Með sama hætti hafa þeir
which he spoke in the-psalter In same manner have they

gört, er skýrt hafa rœður guðspjallamanna, þá hafa þeir
done who explained have talks of-evangelists then have they
þat mart mælt, er guðspjallamenninir hafa þagt yfir,
that much spoken which the-evangelists have kept-silent over
ok hafa þeir í því þat sýnt, at þeir hafa þar skýrt orð
and have they in that that shown that they have there explained words
hugrenningarinnar, sem eigi váru orð varranna; ok er sjá
of-the-thought where not were words of-the-lips and is this
náttúra at þeirri gjöf, þar sem guð hefir fullan skilningar
nature in that gift there where God has full understanding's
anda gefit, at sá er hann heyrir fá orð varranna,
spirit given that that-one who he hears few words of-the-lips
þektir hann mörg orð hugrenningarinnar. En því glósaði
perceives he many words of-the-thought But therefore glossed
eigi David sjálfr psaltarann, at hann vildi öðrum þat starf
not David himself the-psalter that he would to-others that toil
ætla, at skýra með orðum alla þá hluti, er hann hugði
assign to explain with words all those things which he thought
með sjálfum sér skýringina, þá er hann ritaði rétta
with self himself the-explanation then when he wrote right
framgangsrœðu upphafðra psálma. Ok svá göra allir þeir, er
forward-talk of-begun psalms And so do all those who
þá rœðu hafa í munni, er glósa þarf, þá ætla þeir öðrum
that talk have in mouth which gloss needs then assign they to-others
þat starf at skýra þat með orðum, er þeir hafa í huga
that toil to explain that with words which they have in mind
sér, meðan þeir gera framgangsveg upphafðrar rœðu. Þó
their while they make forward-going-way of-begun talk Yet
skalt þú þat vita, at engi hefir sá glósat rœðu Davids,
shall you that know that no-one has that-one glossed talk of-David
er hjá hánum sat, meðan hann gerði psaltarann, ok spurði
who beside him sat while he made the-psalter and asked

hvat hann hugði meðan; ok skalt þú fyrir því þat skilja,
what he thought meanwhile and shall you for that that understand
at miskunn skilningar andans leiðir þá til þeirrar athygli,
that (the)-mercy understanding's spirit leads them to that attention
at rannsaka grundvöllu rœðnanna, þeirra sem þeir heyra; því
to examine (the)-foundations of-the-talks of-those which they hear that
næst skygna þeir um, hversu margkvíslóttar eru rœtr undir
next look they about how many-branched are roots under
þeirri rœðu; þat hugleiða þeir ok vandliga, hversu margar
that talk that consider they also carefully how many
greinir vaxa á þeirri rœðu; því næst hugsa þeir þat, hversu
branches grow on that talk that next think they that how
margir kvistir fylgja hverri grein. At því gefa þeir ok miklar
many twigs follow each branch To that give they also great
geymdir, hverja grein sem þeir taka, at þeir megi hana
heeds whichever branch that they take that they may it
réttliga aptr leiða til þeirra róta, er hon var upp af runnin
rightly back lead to those roots which it was up from sprung
frá öndverðu. Ok ef þú nemr þetta skilvísliga ok rannsakar
from (the)-beginning And if you learn this clearly and examine
þú þat, er þú heyrir mælt, með margsmogalli athygli, þá
you that which you hear spoken with much-searching attention then
ferr þú þess ekki villr, hvárt þær glósur verða rangar eða
go you of-that not astray whether those glosses become wrong or
réttar, er þú heyrir, ef guð hefir þann anda þér gefit,
right which you hear if God has that spirit to-you given
at þú kunnir rétt at skilja; þvíat sá maðr hverr, er góða
that you know right to understand because that man each who good
skilning fær ok kemr hann á réttan farveg í upphafinu,
understanding gets and comes he onto right course in the-beginning
þá má hann vel þekta alla vegu líkleikanna fram á leið, ok
then may he well perceive all ways of-the-likelihoods forward on way and

hver orðalög er makligust eru, at fylgja hverju tilviki.
which word-arrangements which most-fitting are to follow each occasion
Nú les þú af þessum hlutum slíka hluti, er þú mátt,
Now gather you from these things such things as you may
til skilningar; en eigi sýnisk mér, hér lengra um at rœða.
for understanding but not seems to-me here longer about to talk

XLIX · KINGS UNDER JUDGMENT

The son asks for more examples of God's judgments. The father names Pharaoh, Dathan and Abiram, Jericho, and Amalek, where Saul drew God's anger for not doing all he had been bidden, and Judas, judged without leniency. Each time all four sisters sat in judgment and agreed.

SON Guð launi yðr, herra minn! at þér berit þolinmœði
God reward you lord my that you bear patience
við at svara þeim hlutum, er ek spyr; ok finn ek þó
with to answer those things which I ask and find I yet
nú þat, at yðr þykki bernsliga reika spurning mín, þvíat
now that that to-you seems childishly to-wander question my because
ek kann eigi at gæta efnis upphafðrar rœðu, ok kemr
I can not to keep (the)-matter of-begun talk and comes
því hér ok hvar niðr spurning mín, sem ván er at
therefore here and there down question my as expectation is from
úfróðum œskumanni. En þó virðisk mér sjálfum, at betra
unlearned youth But yet seems to-me myself that better
sé spurt en eigi þeirra hluta, er ek spurða næstum, hversu
be asked than not of-those things which I asked last how
marka skyldi glósur, hvárt þær yrði réttar eða eigi. En
mark should-one glosses whether they became right or not But
nú skilsk mér þat vel, er þér sögðut mér, at sá maðr
now is-understood to-me that well which you said to-me that that man

lygi eigi á guð, er hann segir ætlan hans svá sem rœður
lied not on God who he tells intent his so as talks
hans; fyrir því at alt þat er hann hefir ætlat í hug sér,
his for that that all that which he has intended in mind his
þá hefir þat hugrinn áðr mælt við sjálfan hann, hvárt sem
then has that the-mind before spoken with himself him whether that
hann hefir með vörrunum framtalat eða eigi, ok má fyrir
he has with the-lips spoken-forth or not and may-one for
því þá hluti skýra svá sem framtalda rœðu, þvíat alt þat
that those things explain so as spoken-forth talk because all that
hefir hugrinn mælt við sjálfan hann. Þat skilsk mér nú
has the-mind spoken with himself him That is-understood to-me now
ok vel, þóat engi mætti geta til þess, hvat guð hugði fyrir
also well though no-one might guess to that what God thought at
öndverðu, þá hefir hann nú þat sjálfr skýrt, þar sem hann
(the)-beginning then has he now that himself explained there where he
hefir látit þá hluti framkoma, er hann hefir áðr hugða
has let those things come-forth which he has before thought
ok ætlaða; þvíat víst vil ek mér láta skiljask þat, at allir
and intended because surely will I to-me let be-understood that that all
þeir hlutir er guð hefir fram látit fara, þá hefir hann þá
those things which God has forth let go then has he those
hluti alla áðr hugleidda, ok með skynsemd skipaða í hug
things all before pondered and with reason ordered in mind
sér, fyrr en þeir hafi framkomit. Svá skilsk mér ok þat
his before than they have come-forth So is-understood to-me also that
vel, at þeir er skýrðar hafa rœður Davids með glósum, eða
well that those who explained have (the)-talks of-David with glosses or
annarra þeirra manna er rœður hafa samansett ok í bœkr
of-other those men who talks have put-together and into books
fœrt, þá hafa þeir með þessu efni skýringar görvar, at
brought then have they with this matter explanations made that

hugleitt hverr grundvöllr eða hvert efni hefir fyrir öndverðu
pondered which foundation or what matter has at (the)-beginning
verit undir rœðunni. Síðan leiða þeir þat með athuga
been under the-talk Afterward lead they that with attention
vitrliga, hversu sannliga líkligleikr megi greiða hvern lim eða
wisely how truly likelihood may unravel each limb or
kvist þeirrar rœðu, svá at úraskat verði efni rœðunnar.
twig of-that talk so that undisturbed become (the)-matter of-the-talk
Nú með því at mér taka at birtask nökkut þessir hlutir, þá
Now with that that to-me begin to brighten somewhat these things then
kann þat vera, at ek hugleiði slíka hluti fram á leið, ef guð
can that be that I ponder such things forward on way if God
gefr mér skilning til. En fyrir því at ek skil, at yðr
gives me understanding to-it But for that that I understand that to-you
þykki mœðing ok fjölskyldi at svara hvárutveggja, upphafðri
seems toil and duties to answer both begun
rœðu ok svá skýringum þeim, sem þar hœfa til, þá vil ek
talk and so explanations those which there befit to-it then will I
nú þess beiðask, at vit hverfim aptr til upptekinnar rœðu,
now of-that ask that we-two turn back to taken-up talk
ok sýnit mér fram á leið fleiri dœmi um dóma guðs,
and show-you me forward on way more examples about judgments of-God
hvar hann hefir þá látit stríðliga fram fara með dómi
where he has then let harshly forward go with judgment
réttvísi ok sannendi, eða hvar hann hefir þeim meir vægt.
of-justice and truth or where he has them more spared
FATHER Þessi dœmi váru löngu síðar með hinum sama hætti,
These examples were long later in the same manner
er Pharao konungr varð fyrir á Egiptalandi, þvíat hann
which Pharaoh (the)-king became for in Egypt because he
tapaðisk í dómi réttvísi ok sannendi fyrir utan alla vægð.
perished in judgment of-justice and truth before outside all leniency

Abiron ok Dathan týndusk með réttum dómi. En þá er
Abiram and Dathan perished with right judgment But then when
Josve leiddi inn Israels fólk í land þat, er guð hafði þeim
Joshua led in Israel's folk into land that which God had them
heitit, þá bauð guð svá harða refsing yfir fólk þat, er
promised then bade God so hard punishment over folk that which
bygði stað, þann er Jericho heitir, at hvetvetna skyldi þat
inhabited place that which Jericho is-called that everything should-one that
drepa, er kvikt væri. Þat var ok löngu síðar, þá er Saul
kill which alive were That was also long later then when Saul
konungr fór herför í Amalech, þá bauð guð hánum svá,
(the)-king went war-journey into Amalek then bade God him so
at hvetvetna skyldi drepa, þat sem kvikt væri; ok fyrir því
that everything should-he kill that which alive were and for that
fékk Saul reiði af guði, at hann fyldi eigi þat, sem hánum
got Saul anger from God that he fulfilled not that which to-him
var boðit. En þessi eru þau, er löngu urðu síðar, er Judas
was bidden But these are those which long happened later which Judas
varð fyrir, einn af postolum guðs; þvíat sannendi ok réttvísi
became for one of apostles of-God because truth and justice
dœmðu hann án vægð fyrir níðvirki ok dróttinsvik. Mörg
judged him without leniency for villainy and lord-treachery Many
eru þvílík önnur dœmi, þóat vér hafim þessi sýnt; ok fyrir
are such other examples though we have these shown and for
langrar rœðu sakar megum vér eigi öll dœmi í eina rœðu
long talk's sake may we not all examples into one talk
setja, þau sem vér vitum þessum lík verit hafa. En þá er
set those which we know to-these like been have But then when
guð dœmdi allar þessar refsingar, er nú höfum vér frá sagt,
God judged all these punishments which now have we from told
þá hafði hann allar þessar systr í dómi með sér, sannendi
then had he all these sisters in judgment with himself truth

ok réttvísi, friðsemi ok miskunn, ok samþyktusk þó allar
and justice peace and mercy and agreed yet all
systr með hánum, svá at þær föðmuðusk ok kystusk.
sisters with him so that they embraced-each-other and kissed-each-other

L · JUDGMENTS OF MERCY

The son asks for the opposite examples, where mercy weighed more. The father gives them: Aaron and Hur, forgiven the golden calves at Moses' prayer; David, forgiven for taking Uriah's wife and contriving his death; the adulteress Christ would not condemn; Peter, forgiven his denial; and the thief on the cross promised Paradise.

SON Víst mun hér svá sýnask í þessum stöðum, sem nú er
Surely will here so appear in these places as now is
frá sagt, at meiri hlutr dóms hefir legit undir sannendi ok
from told that greater part of-judgment has lain under truth and
réttvísi, heldr en undir friðsemi ok miskunn. En í því má
justice rather than under peace and mercy But in that may
engi maðr ifask, at þessar systr munu samþykkjar hafa verit
no man doubt that these sisters will agreeing have been
í þessum dómum; þvíat þat er víst, at guð dœmir aldri
in these judgments because that is certain that God judges never
miskunnarlausan dóm, ok þarf fyrir því slíka hluti mjök at
merciless judgment and needs-one for that such things much to
hugleiða með mikilli athygli ok nærkœmri vizku, þvíat guðs
ponder with great attention and near-coming wisdom because God's
dómar eru mjök fólgnir fyrir mönnum. Þó vil ek þess biðja yðr,
judgments are much hidden from men Yet will I of-that ask you
at nú sýnit þér mér þau dœmi, er meiri hlutr dóms hefir
that now show you me those examples where greater part of-judgment has

voltit undir friðsemi ok miskunn, at ek mega hvárratveggja
rolled under peace and mercy that I may of-both
áskynja verða, með því at til hvárratveggja má dœmi finnask.
aware become with that that to both may examples be-found
FATHER Hvártveggja eru mörg dœmi, svá at eigi megum vér
Of-both are many examples so that not may we
þeim öllum dœmum í eina rœðu koma, en þó megum vér
them all examples into one talk bring but yet may we
nökkut af þeim sýna til þess, at þá verðr hvárutveggja máli
some of them show for that that then becomes to-both matter
svarat. Þessi eru þau dœmi, er mjök löngu urðu, þá er
answered These are those examples which very long-ago happened then when
Aaron byskup ok Ur syndguðusk mót guði með svá miklum
Aaron bishop and Hur sinned against God with so great
glœp, at þeir féngu fólki guðs tvau naut steypt saman af
crime that they got for-(the)-folk of-God two oxen cast together of
gulli, ok viltisk alt fólk í trú sinni, þvíat fólkit kallaði þessi
gold and strayed all folk in faith their because the-folk called these
naut guð Israels, ok ofruðu þar fórnum til svá sem guði. En
oxen god of-Israel and offered there sacrifices to so as to-God But
þá er Moyses kom farandi til fólksins — hann hafði áðr
then when Moses came going to the-folk he had before
verit í fjalli því, er hann hafði talat við guð sjálfan —
been on mountain that where he had talked with God himself
þá runnu byskuparnir mót Moysi ok iðruðusk ákafliga glœps
then ran the-bishops against Moses and repented fiercely crime
síns, ok féllu til fóta Moysi ok báðu, at hann skyldi biðja
their and fell to feet of-Moses and asked that he should pray
fyrir þeim til guðs, at guð reiddisk þeim eigi eptir
for them to God that God be-angry with-them not according-to
verðleika. En þá er guð sá fulla iðran byskupanna, þá
deserts But then when God saw full repentance of-the-bishops then

heyrði hann bœn Moyses, ok héldu byskuparnir sœmd
heard he (the)-prayer of-Moses and kept the-bishops honor
sinni, þeirri sem áðr höfðu þeir, ok bœttu glœp sinn með
their that which before had they and amended crime their with
iðran. Þessi eru ein dœmi af þeim, er nú eru sögð,
repentance These are some examples of those which now are told
at meiri hlutr dóms valt undir friðsemi ok miskunn, ok
that greater part of-judgment rolled under peace and mercy and
samþyktisk þó réttendi ok sannendi þessum dómi, ok váru
agreed yet justice and truth to-this judgment and were
þó byskuparnir dauða verðir fyrir sökina, ef eigi géngi meir
yet the-bishops of-death worthy for the-guilt if not went more
vægð miskunnar fyrir en verðleikar. Þessi eru önnur dœmi
leniency of-mercy before than deserts These are other examples
þvílík, er urðu löngu síðar. David konungr féll í sök
such which happened long later David (the)-king fell into guilt
svá mikla, at hann hóraði konu Urias ok réð sjálfum
so great that he lay-with (the)-wife of-Uriah and contrived himself
hánum dauða síðan; en eptir dauða Urias tók David konu
him death afterward but after (the)-death of-Uriah took David wife
hans ok hafði sér at konu, ok var hann víst dauða verðr
his and had for-himself as wife and was he surely of-death worthy
fyrir þessa sök; en hann iðraðisk svá ákafliga verks síns fyrir
for this guilt but he repented so fiercely work his before
guði, ok bað sér lítillátliga vægðar fyrir viðrgengna glœpi;
God and asked for-himself humbly leniency for committed crimes
en guð heyrði bœn hans ok staðfesti ríki hans heldr en
but God heard prayer his and confirmed realm his rather than
hann tœki af hánum, þóat hann hefði slíka glœpi görva.
he took from him though he had such crimes done

Þessi eru þau dœmi, er löngu urðu síðar á þeirri stundu,
These are those examples which long happened later at that hour
er dróttinn Jesus Kristr var með mönnum á jörðu, þá
when (the)-Lord Jesus Christ was among men on earth then
gerðusk hánum gagnstaðligir byskupar Gyðinga ok allir aðrir
became to-him hostile bishops of-Jews and all other
lærðir menn með þeim, ok leituðu jafnan þess, at þeir
learned men with them and sought always that that they
mætti nökkura þá hluti finna, er ávítsamligar sakar snerisk
might some those things find which reproachful charges turned
til handa hánum. Þá tóku þeir konu eina, þá er legit
to hand for-him Then took they woman one that-one who lain
hafði opinberliga í hórdómi, svá at hon var dauða fyrir verð
had openly in adultery so that she was of-death for worthy
eptir lögum Moyses. Þessa konu leiddu þeir fyrir Jesum,
according-to (the)-laws of-Moses This woman led they before Jesus
ok sögðu hánum sök hennar, ok svá sögðu þeir ok þat,
and told him guilt her and so told they also that
at lög dœmdu hana til bana; spurðu hann, hvern dóm
that (the)-laws judged her to death asked him what judgment
hann legði á mál hennar. Jesus svaraði svá, at sá þeirra
he laid on case her Jesus answered so that that-one of-them
skyldi fyrsta steini at henni kasta, er eigi hefði syndir
should first with-stone at her throw who not had sins
görvar. Þeir hurfu skjótliga í brott ok treystusk eigi framar
done They turned quickly off away and dared not further
at spyrja, þvíat þeir vissu sik allir synduga vera. Þá mælti
to ask because they knew themselves all sinful to-be Then spoke
Jesus við konuna: „Með því, kona, at engi þessarra, er þér
Jesus to the-woman With that woman that none of-these who you
gaf sakir, lagði dóm á mál þitt, þá vil ek eigi dœma þér
gave charges laid judgment on case your then will I not judge you

dauða; far þú nú frjáls, ok sé við syndum héðan ífrá.“ Þau
death go you now free and look against sins hence from Those
eru enn ein dœmi, er lík eru þeim, sem fyrr gat ek,
are still some examples which like are to-those which before mentioned I
er urðu þá nótt, er Jesus var tekinn. Petr postoli hans
which happened that night when Jesus was taken Peter apostle his
hafði staðfestzk með ofrmælum, at hann skyldi aldrigi
had confirmed-himself with over-words that he should never
skiljask við hann, þóat allir aðrir skildisk við hann; ok
part from him though all others parted from him and
kvazk fyrri dauða skyldu þola með Jesu en hann skyldi
said-of-himself sooner death should bear with Jesus than he should
fyrir bleyði sakar skiljask við hann. En á þeirri sömu nótt,
for cowardice's sake part from him But on that same night
er Jesus var tekinn, þá níkvæddi Petr þrysvar sinnum hans
when Jesus was taken then denied Peter three times his
föruneyti, ok hit þriðja sinn sannaði hann með eiðum, at
company and the third time affirmed he with oaths that
hann kvazk eigi Jesu maðr verit hafa; ok við þat hvarf
he said-of-himself not of-Jesus man been have and at that turned
hann út or garði þeim, er Jesus var haldinn, ok iðraðisk
he out out-of yard that where Jesus was held and repented
þó þegar glœps síns ok allra orða sinna, ok grét ákafliga. En
yet at-once crime his and all words his and wept fiercely But
þó fyrirgafsk Petri sú sök eptir upprisu Jesu, svá at hann
yet was-forgiven to-Peter that guilt after (the)-resurrection of-Jesus so that he
hélt allri þeirri sœmd, er hánum var áðr heitin. Enn eru
kept all that honor which to-him was before promised Still are
þessi dœmi, er fám dögum urðu síðar; þá er várr herra
these examples which few days happened later then when our lord
var krossfestr. Þá váru krossfestir með hánum tveir þjófar, á
was crucified Then were crucified with him two thieves on

sína hönd hvárr; þeir váru báðir teknir í einskyns glœpum,
his hand each they were both taken in of-one-kind crimes
hvárrtveggja í manndrápum ok í stuldum. En meðan þeir
both in man-slayings and in thefts But while they
héngu á krossinum, þá mintisk annarr þeirra at iðrask, ok
hung on the-cross then remembered one of-them to repent and
beiddisk þó miskunnar af Jesu, þóat hann héngi á krossi
asked yet mercy from Jesus though he hung on cross
svá sem þjófarnir. Hánum váru svá sínar sakar fyrirgefnar,
so as the-thieves To-him were so his guilts forgiven
at hánum var á þeim sama degi heitit Paradísar vist;
that to-him was on that same day promised Paradise's dwelling
en annarr hans félagi dœmdisk eptir sínum tilverka.
but (the)-other his companion was-judged according-to his deeds

LI · WHY THE JUDGMENTS DIFFERED

The son asks why charges that look alike ended in harsh punishment in the first examples and in leniency in the later ones. The father answers that Pharaoh broke his promises, Dathan and Abiram never repented, and Jericho and Amalek took up arms instead of offering amends, while Aaron, Hur, and David confessed, asked leniency, offered amends, and promised never to sin again.

SON Ef jarðligir konungar eða aðrir höfðingjar, þeir sem yfir
If earthly kings or other chieftains those who over
dóma eru skipaðir, skulu sína dóma líkja eptir þessum
judgments are appointed shall their judgments liken after these
dœmum, er nú hafit ér sýnt, þá mundi þeim þat miklu máli
examples which now have you shown then would to-them that much matter
skipta, at þeir skildi vandliga grundvöllinn undir sökunum,
concern that they understood carefully the-foundation under the-charges

með því at hér mun svá sýnask í mörgum þessum dœmum,
with that that here will so appear in many these examples
at sakarnar sé heldr líkar at athuga, ok ultu þó allir dómar
that the-charges be rather like in consideration and rolled yet all judgments
í hinum fyrrum dœmum til stríðrar refsingar; en í þessum
in the former examples to harsh punishment but in these
síðurum dœmum ultu allir til vægðar ok líknar. Fyrir því vil ek
later examples rolled all to leniency and comfort For that will I
nú þess spyrja, fyrir hví Pharao týndisk fyrir utan alla vægð,
now of-that ask for why Pharaoh perished before outside all leniency
eða Dathan ok Abiron, eða fólk þat er Jericho bygði, eða
or Dathan and Abiram or folk that which Jericho inhabited or
svá þeir í Amalech, er urðu fyrir refsing Sauls konungs?
so those in Amalek who became for (the)-punishment of-Saul (the)-king
FATHER Þessir hlutir urðu allir með dómi réttvísi ok
These things happened all with judgment of-justice and
sannendi, þó með samþykki friðsemi ok miskunnar; þvíat
truth yet with (the)-agreement of-peace and mercy because
Moyses gerði margar ok stórar jartegnir hvern dag fyrir
Moses did many and great signs each day before
Pharao konungi, ok bauð hánum laust at láta guðs fólk, ok
Pharaoh (the)-king and bade him loose to let God's folk and
átti hann kost at láta laust, ef hann vildi, svá at hann féngi
had he choice to let loose if he would so that he got
engan skaða af, ok iðuliga hét hann því, at svá skyldi
no harm from-it and frequently promised he that that so should
vera, ok hélt hann eigi orð sín eða heit. Nú var þat rétt,
be and kept he not words his or promises Now was that right
at hann félli í staðfesti ranglætis síns ok illsku, með því
that he fell in (the)-steadfastness of-injustice his and wickedness with that
at hann þektisk aldrigi vægð né líkn, þóat hann ætti kost.
that he accepted never leniency nor comfort though he had choice

Abiron ok Dathan, þá er þeir heyrðu þat af Moysi, at
Abiram and Dathan then when they heard that from Moses that
þeir höfðu misgört, þá urðu þeir reiðir á mót ok iðruðusk
they had misdone then became they angry on against and repented
eigi, ok féllu þeir því vægðarlaust, at þeir leituðu engrar
not and fell they therefore leniency-less that they sought no
vægðar. Þeir er bygðu Jericho eða Amalech, þá höfðu þeir
leniency Those who inhabited Jericho or Amalek then had they
marga daga þat heyrt, at þeir höfðu illa gört hvárttveggja
many days that heard that they had ill done both
móti vilja guðs ok svá fólki hans; en aldri buðu þeir
against (the)-will of-God and so folk his but never offered they
yfirbœtr, heldr buðu þeir at halda varnir með vápnum fyrir
amends rather offered they to hold defenses with weapons for
sér, ok urðu þeir með því sigraðir at vægðarlausri hefnd.
themselves and became they with that conquered to leniency-less vengeance
En þeir er í hinum síðurum dœmum sýnda ek þér,
But those whom in the later examples showed I you
um Aaron ok Ur eða David, eða allir aðrir þeir er í
about Aaron and Hur or David or all others those whom in
þeim dœmum gat ek, þá duldu þeir ekki illvirkja sinna,
those examples mentioned I then hid they not evil-deeds their
géngu svá við sínar afgerðir, sem þær váru, beiddusk fyrir
went so to their misdeeds as they were asked for
því vægðar ok líknar, at þeir væntu þess, at þeir mundi
that leniency and comfort that they expected that that they would
fá, ok buðu hans dóm til yfirbóta, er þeir vissu at vald
get and offered his judgment for amends who they knew that power
átti á dóminum, ok hétu því, at aldri síðan mundi þeir
had over the-judgment and promised that that never afterward would they
í þær sakar falla, ef þeir kœmi þá í fullar sættir.
into those guilts fall if they came then into full reconciliations

The son asks why Peter and Judas, whose guilt seems alike and who both repented, fared so differently. The father answers that Judas betrayed his lord for greed, despaired, and judged himself, while Peter, who denied him from sudden fear, wept, asked mercy, and waited for God's judgment. So too one thief asked mercy and the other mocked.

SON Nú vil ek þess spyrja, hví svá mikit skildi með þeim Petri
Now will I of-that ask why so much differed between them Peter
ok Juda, ok mun þó sýnask sakir þeirra líkar vera. Judas hvarf
and Judas and will yet seem charges their like to-be Judas turned
aptr með penningum þeim, er hann hafði fengit, ok iðraðisk
back with pennies those which he had gotten and repented
úráðs síns, ok gékk ígegn at hann hafði selt saklausan herra
folly his and owned up that he had sold guiltless lord
sinn, ok kastaði á braut þeim fjárhlut, ok kvazk eigi hafa
his and threw on away that wealth and said-of-himself not to-have
vilja, er hann hafði svá rangliga at komizk. Nú týndisk hann,
will which he had so wrongly at got Now perished he
þóat hann iðraðisk. En Petr tók þegar líkn fyrir iðran sína.
though he repented But Peter took at-once comfort for repentance his
FATHER Judas féll fyrir öndverðu í sökina fyrir sinku sakar
Judas fell at (the)-beginning into the-guilt for stinginess's sake
ok fésníkni, ok tók mútu til at svíkja herra sinn, ok
and money-grabbing and took bribe to-it to betray lord his and
iðraðisk hann með því at hann vænti sér engrar líknar,
repented he with that that he expected for-himself no comfort
ok engrar vægðar beiddisk hann, nema refsti sér sjálfr
and no leniency asked he except punished himself himself
með bráðum dauða; en Petr grét ákafliga í iðran sinni
with sudden death but Peter wept fiercely in repentance his

ok beiddisk vægðar ok vænti sér líknar. Enda hafði
and asked leniency and expected for-himself comfort Moreover had
Judas sök meiri, þvíat hann seldi herra sinn; en þóat hann
Judas guilt greater because he sold lord his but though he
iðraðisk, þá beiddisk hann ekki líknar, þvíat hann beið eigi
repented then asked he not comfort because he awaited not
guðs dóms, nema dœmdi sik þegar sjálfr. En Petr níkvæddi
God's judgment but judged himself at-once himself But Peter denied
herra sínum fyrir bráðrar hrælzlu sakar, ok iðraðisk þegar með
lord his for sudden fear's sake and repented at-once with
miklum harmi hugar, ok bauð sik undir guðs dóm ok
great grief of-mind and offered himself under God's judgment and
beið hans at, en eigi dœmdi hann sik sjálfr sem Judas. Ok
awaited it at but not judged he himself himself as Judas And
með hinum sama hætti bar til þjófunum á krossinum; þóat
in the same manner bore to-it to-the-thieves on the-cross though
báðir játaði viðrgengna glœpi, þá beiddisk annarr miskunnar
both confessed committed crimes then asked one mercy
ok líknar, en annarr beiddisk engarrar líknar, heldr mælti
and comfort but (the)-other asked no comfort rather spoke
hann sem af gabbi ok spotti, heldr en fyrir bœnar sakar
he as from mockery and scorn rather than for prayer's sake
eða staðfestu. Fyrir því frelstusk þessir allir, er nú höfum
or steadfastness For that were-freed these all whom now have
vér nefnda, með vægiligum dómi friðsemi ok miskunnar,
we named with lenient judgment of-peace and mercy
ok samþyktusk þó þær dómi sannendi ok réttvísi.
and agreed yet they to-(the)-judgment truth and justice

The son asks for examples of God changing a judgment already set. The father tells how Moses talked God out of destroying Israel for its adulteries, then softened God's anger by killing thousands himself; how Nineveh repented at Jonah's preaching and was spared; how Hezekiah's prayer won him fifteen more years; and how Christ raised Lazarus after four days in the grave.

SON Með því at þessir hlutir taka nú at lýsask fyrir augum
With that that these things begin now to light-up before eyes
mér ok birtask, hver tilgöng er til þess hefir verit, at
my and brighten what reason is to that has been that
stundum hefir hinn meiri hluti dóms voltit undir réttvísi
at-times has the greater part of-judgment rolled under justice
ok sannendi, en stundum meiri undir friðsemi ok miskunn;
and truth but at-times more under peace and mercy
ok vil ek nú þess beiðask, at þér sýnit mér þau dœmi,
and will I now of-that ask that you show me those examples
er fyrr gátut þér, at guð hefir brigð á gör skipuðum
which before mentioned you that God has change on fully ordered
dómi, svá ok hver tilgöng þar hafa til leitt.
judgment so also what reasons there have to-it led

FATHER Þessi eru þau dœmi er mjök löngu urðu á þeirri
These are those examples which very long-ago happened at that
sömu stundu, er Moyses var í fjalli því, er Mons Synai
same hour when Moses was on mountain that which Mount Sinai
heitir, þá syndgaðisk fólkit flestalt svá ákafliga, at þat féll
is-called then sinned the-folk nearly-all so fiercely that it fell
í hórdómum, ok blönduðusk við þær konur, er af heiðnum
into adulteries and mingled with those women who of heathen
þjóðum váru. En þat var svá ríkt bannat af guði, at hverr
peoples were But that was so strictly forbidden by God that each

var dauða fyrir verðr, er í þá synd félli. Þá mælti guð við
was of-death for worthy who into that sin fell Then spoke God to
Moysen: „Nú skalt þú hætta at tala við mik meir, ok gef mér
Moses Now shall you cease to talk with me more and give me
tóm til at reiði mín œsisk móti fólki þessu, er ek hafða
leisure for that anger my rage against folk this which I had
þik fyrir skipat; þvíat þeir hafa í svá mikinn glœp fallit
you over appointed because they have into so great crime fallen
móti lögmáli mínu, at ek vil öllum þeim týna fyrir með
against law my that I will all them destroy for-it with
stríðri reiði, ok vil ek fá þér fólk annat bæði miklu betra
harsh anger and will I get you folk other both much better
ok þó sterkara ok meira." Í þessum stað mun náliga sýnask
and yet stronger and greater In this place will nearly appear
sem skipaðr dómr hafi komit á mál þessa fólks; en þó
as-if ordered judgment have come on (the)-case of-this folk but yet
beiddisk Moyses leyfis at svara nökkurum orðum fyrir fólk
asked Moses leave to answer some words for (the)-folk
Israels. En at fengnu leyfi þá mælti Moyses þessi orð: „Þess
of-Israel But at gotten leave then spoke Moses these words Of-that
bið ek þik, dróttinn minn, at þú vægir nökkut reiði þinni,
ask I you lord my that you spare somewhat anger your
at eigi týnir þú fólki þínu, þóat þat hafi illa gört. Gef eigi
that not destroy you folk your though it have ill done Give not
Egiptamönnum þau dœmi, at þeir segi þat, at þú leiddir
to-Egyptians those examples that they say that that you led
fólk þitt til þess af Egiptalandi undan þeirra höndum, at
folk your to that from Egypt from-under their hands that
þú vildir týna því hér í fjöllum eða eyðimörkum; eða þeir
you would destroy it here in mountains or deserts or they
megi þat mæla, at þú sér vanafli til at leiða fólk þitt
may that say that you be lacking-in-strength to-it to lead folk your

inn í þat land, er þú hafðir heitit þeim fyrir öndverðu.
in into that land which you had promised them at (the)-beginning
Minnsk heldr, dróttinn minn, þræla þinna Abrahams ok
Remember rather lord my thralls your Abraham and
Ysaacs ok Jacobs, ok týn eigi þeim ættum, er getnar hafa
Isaac and Jacob and destroy not those families which begotten have
verit af ætt Israels ok þú hézt sjálfr at margfalda á
been of (the)-family of-Israel and you promised yourself to multiply on
jörðu, ok leiða þá með staðfestu í þat land, er nú sitja
earth and lead them with steadfastness into that land where now sit
úvinir þínir yfir.“ Guð heyrði bœn Moysis ok vægði reiði
enemies your over God heard (the)-prayer of-Moses and spared anger
sinni ok drap eigi alt fólk sitt þat, sem hann hafði heitazk,
his and killed not all folk his that which he had threatened
heldr seldi hann þessa refsing í hendr Moysi ok bauð
rather gave he this punishment into hands to-Moses and bade
hánum, at þó skyldi eigi refsingalaust vera, þóat eigi væri
him that yet should not punishment-less be though not were
svá stríð refsing, sem guð hafði áðr heitit. Moyses gékk
so harsh punishment as God had before threatened Moses went
skyndiliga til fólksins, ok kom þar farandi með œstum hug
quickly to the-folk and came there going with raging mind
ok mikilli reiði ok drap margar þúsundir manna á þeim
and great anger and killed many thousands of-men on that
degi, ok hógværði með þeim hætti reiði guðs. Nú eru
day and softened in that manner (the)-anger of-God Now are
þessi þau dœmi er þat sýna, at guð skipti til hógværi
these those examples which that show that God changed to gentleness
ákveðinn dóm, þá er hann vægði reiði sinni fyrir bœn
appointed judgment then when he spared anger his for (the)-prayer
Moyses; en þar sýnir þat, at engi þeirra systra þarnaðisk
of-Moses but there shows that that none of-those sisters lacked

síns réttar í þessum dómi, sannendi eða réttvísi, þar sem
her right in this judgment truth or justice there where
Moyses drap mikinn her manna til þess at hógværa reiði
Moses killed great host of-men for that to soften (the)-anger
guðs; en þar höfðu þær sinn rétt friðsemi ok miskunn,
of-God but there had they their right peace and mercy
sem minna var atgört en mælt var fyrir öndverðu.
where less was done than spoken was at (the)-beginning
Þessi eru önnur dœmi er þat sýna, at guð gerði brigð á
These are other examples which that show that God made change on
skipuðum dómi. Hann sendi Jonas propheta í Ninive, ok bauð
ordered judgment He sent Jonah prophet to Nineveh and bade
hánum at segja konunginum ok öllu fólkinu í borginni, at
him to tell the-king and all the-people in the-city that
innan 30 daga skyldi Ninive týnask, ok alt þat sem í henni
within 30 days should Nineveh perish and all that which in her
væri. Jonas gerði sem guð bauð hánum, sagði þessa hluti
were Jonah did as God bade him told these things
sem sönn tíðendi. En er konungrinn varð varr við, at þeir
as true tidings But when the-king became aware of that they
urðu með sannendum fyrir guðs reiði, þvíat þat fólk var fult
came with truths before God's anger because that people was full
hórdóms ok allskyns ranglætis, þá gékk konungrinn or hásæti
of-adultery and all-kinds of-injustice then went the-king out-of high-seat
sínu ok lagði niðr konungligt skrúð, ok iðraðisk ok fastaði,
his and laid down kingly attire and repented and fasted
ok svá bauð hann at allir menn skyldu gera í borginni, hvárt
and so bade he that all men should do in the-city whether
sem váru ungir eða gamlir. En er guð sá, at þeir iðruðusk
that they-were young or old But when God saw that they repented

illsku sinnar með meinlætum ok allskyns staðfestum, þá vægði
wickedness their with mortifications and all-kinds steadfastness then spared
hann þeim, ok týndi hvárki borginni né fólkinu er í var.
he them and destroyed neither the-city nor the-people which in-it was
Þessi eru enn þau dœmi, er sýna hit sama mál. Ezekias
These are still those examples which show the same matter Hezekiah
hét einn góðr konungr í Israels fólki, en hann fékk sótt
was-called one good king in Israel's folk but he got sickness
ok íhugaði hann um mál sitt, hvárt guð mundi vilja, at
and pondered he about case his whether God would wish that
hann stœði upp or sótt þeirri, eða mundi hann vilja láta
he stood up out-of sickness that or would he will let
hann deyja. Þá sendi guð til hans Isaiam propheta, ok sagði
him die Then sent God to him Isaiah prophet and said
guð prophetanum, at Ezekias skyldi deyja or sótt þeirri.
God to-the-prophet that Hezekiah should die out-of sickness that
Isaias gékk til konungsins ok mælti við hann: „Sé fyrir
Isaiah went to the-king and spoke to him Look before
þér vel, ok skipa híbílum þínum ok öllu hyski þínu, þvíat
yourself well and order dwellings your and all household your because
guð segir svá, at þú skalt or sótt þessarri deyja, en eigi
God says so that you shall out-of sickness this die but not
lifna.“ Þegar Isaias hafði mælta þessa rœðu við konunginn,
live-again As-soon-as Isaiah had spoken this talk to the-king
þá hvarf hann frá hánum, en konungrinn sneri andliti sínu
then turned he from him but the-king turned face his
til veggjar ok bað fyrir sér með þessum orðum: „Minnsk
to (the)-wall and prayed for himself with these words Remember
þú, dróttinn minn, hversu staðfastr ek hefi verit í þinni
you lord my how steadfast I have been in your
þjónostu, þvíat ek hefi jafnan verit gagnstaðligr úvinum
service because I have always been hostile to-enemies

þínum, ok af mörgum úkynnum hefi ek þetta fólk snúit,
your and from many heresies have I this folk turned
er þú hafðir mér í hendr selt, þeim sem margr hafði
which you had me into hands given those which many had
áðr en ek kœma til ríkis. Ok eru þeir þrír hlutir, er mér
before than I came to realm And are those three things which to-me
þykki mikit fyrir at deyja nú svá bráðliga or þessarri sótt.
seems much for-it to die now so suddenly out-of this sickness
Sá er hinn fyrsti, er ek hræðumk mest, ef ek hefi eigi
That is the first which I fear most if I have not
til fulls gætt boðorða þinna, ok dey ek við þat, at ek á
to full kept commands your and die I on that that I have
í dauða mínum hefndar ván. Annarr er sá, at ek hefi
in death my of-vengeance expectation (The)-second is that that I have
enn eigi til fulls öllu fólki þínu komit af sínum úkynnum,
still not to full all folk your brought from their heresies
ok hræðumk ek, ef ek dey brátt ífrá, at þat snúisk skjótt
and fear I if I die soon away that it turn quickly
aptr til sinna fyrri úkynna. Sá er hinn þriði hlutr, er ek
back to their former heresies That is the third thing that I
hræðumk mjök, framgang úvina þinna yfir fólk þitt, með
fear much (the)-advance of-enemies your over folk your with
því at son minn er í bernsku, ok mun at hánum afl
that that son my is in childhood and will at him strength
minna verða til varnar fyrir fólki, en þurfa mundi mót
less become for defense for folk than need would against
úvinum þínum. En ef þú vildir heyra bœn mína, dróttinn
enemies your But if you would hear prayer my lord
minn, ok vildir þú lengja líf mitt með nökkurum dögum, þá
my and would you lengthen life my with some days then
mundu allir þessir hlutir dragask til betra tíma en enn er
would all these things draw-themselves to better time than yet is

kominn.“ Guð heyrði bœn Ezechias ok mælti við Isaiam
come God heard (the)-prayer of-Hezekiah and spoke to Isaiah
propheta: „Hverf aptr þú skyndiliga til Ezechias konungs,
prophet Turn back you quickly to Hezekiah (the)-king
ok seg hánum nú önnur tíðendi en þú sagðir hánum fyrr;
and tell him now other tidings than you told him before
þvíat ek hefi nú heyrða bœn hans, ok vil ek auka lífdaga
because I have now heard prayer his and will I increase life-days
hans 15 vetr um þat fram, er ek hafða áðr ætlat hánum,
his 15 winters over that forward which I had before intended him
ok alt hans ríki vil ek frjálsa af úfriði andskota hans.“
and all his realm will I free from (the)-strife of-adversaries his
Þessi er enn þau dœmi, er löngu urðu síðar. Á þeim
These is still those examples which long happened later In those
dögum er Jesus Kristr var hér með mönnum á veröldu, þá
days when Jesus Christ was here among men in (the)-world then
tók vin hans einn sótt, sá er Lazarus hét, ok dó or
took friend his one sickness that-one who Lazarus was-called and died out-of
sóttinni. Bethania hét kastali sá er Lazarus var grafinn í.
the-sickness Bethany was-called castle that which Lazarus was buried in
En þá er hann hafði fjóra daga í gröf legit, þá kom Jesus í
But then when he had four days in grave lain then came Jesus to
Bethania. Nú mun svá sýnask um Lazarus sem alla aðra, þá
Bethany Now will so appear about Lazarus as all others those
er deyja or veröldu, at staðfastr dómr var kominn á mál
who die out-of (the)-world that steadfast judgment was come on case
hans, þar sem hann lá fjóra daga dauðr maðr í jörðu, ok hafði
his there where he lay four days dead man in earth and had
sjálfr dauði skipat hánum sæti í sínu valdi. Jesus lét opna
himself death appointed him seat in his power Jesus let open
gröf Lazarus, ok kallaði hann, ok bauð hánum at slítask
(the)-grave of-Lazarus and called him and bade him to tear-himself

or höndum dauðligra félaga. Því næst reis Lazarus upp af
out-of (the)-hands of-deadly companions That next rose Lazarus up from
dauða ok lifði marga daga síðan. Mörg eru þvílík önnur dœmi,
death and lived many days afterward Many are such other examples
þóat vér hafim helzt þessi í ljós látit, ok fyrir langrar rœðu
though we have most these into light let and for long talk's
sakar þykkir mér eigi nauðsyn fleiri at telja, þóat yfrin sé til.
sake seems to-me not need more to count though ample be to-it

LIV · THE KING'S PRAYER

The father says the king must judge after God's examples, since he cannot ask God's counsel as Moses did, and should ponder them at night or early in the morning. At his hours in church he should pray as if kneeling before God: confessing his faith and sins, then praying for his queen, bishops, clergy, nobles, knights, farmers, and all his people. The father gives the prayer in Latin and in Norse, asking forgiveness, the virtues, wisdom to judge, good counselors, peace for the realm, protection from enemies, a good death, and a lawful heir, and bids the king keep its order every day.

SON Því sannara þykki mér þat er ek heyri fleiri dœmi,
The truer seems to-me that which I hear more examples
er þér mæltut fyrr í yðarri rœðu, at þat mun allmikil
which you spoke before in your talk that it will very-great
nauðsyn vera, at konungar ok aðrir höfðingjar sé margfróðir,
need be that kings and other chieftains be much-learned
þeir sem yfir dóma eru skipaðir, ef þeir skulu sína dóma
those who over judgments are appointed if they shall their judgments
líkja eptir þessum dœmum, sem nú höfum vér heyrt.
liken after these examples which now have we heard

FATHER Þat skalt þú láta þér til fulls skiljask, með því
That shall you let to-yourself to full be-understood with that
at konungrinn heldr af guði nafnit, þá er þat víst hans
that the-king holds from God the-name then is that certain his
skylda at líkja alla sína dóma eptir guðligum dœmum, ok
duty to liken all his judgments after divine examples and
svá allir þeir er yfir dóma eru settir, bæði lærðir ok úlærðir;
so all those who over judgments are set both learned and unlearned
þvíat nú er eigi þess kostr at spyrja af guðs munni sjálfs
because now is not of-that choice to ask from God's mouth himself
hvers ráðs, sem Moyses gerði; ok skulu fyrir því menninir
of-each counsel as Moses did and shall for that the-men
eptir þeim dœmum lifa, sem þá urðu, er þess var kostr
after those examples live which then happened when of-that was choice
at frétta af sjálfum guði, hversu hann vildi at væri. Nú
to ask from himself God how he wished that it-were Now
skal konungrinn fyrir því þessi dœmi opt í munni hafa ok
shall the-king for that these examples often in mouth have and
fyrir augum, ok sem flest önnur þau er hann megi til
before eyes and as most other those which he may to
skilningar draga um sína dóma. Allra helzt má hann tóm
understanding draw about his judgments Of-all most may he leisure
til slíkrar áhyggju bera um nætr eða árla um morna, þá er
for such care bear at nights or early in morning then when
hann er saddr af svefni. En þegar upprisutími nálgask, svá
he is sated with sleep But when rising-time approaches so
at konungi eru mál at hlýða tíðum sínum, þá er þat hans
that to-(the)-king are time to listen to-hours his then is that his
skyldarsýsla at ganga til kirkju ok hlýða tíðum athugasamliga,
duty-business to go to church and listen to-hours attentively
ok biðja fyrir sér með psálmasöng, ef hann kann. Þat
and pray for himself with psalm-singing if he can That

á hann at göra ok hverr annarra kristinna manna, sá er
ought he to do and each of-other Christian men he who
á bœn er staddr, at vera með svá mikilli áhyggju, sem þá
at prayer is placed to be with so great care as-if then
standi hann fyrir kné guði ok mæli við sjálfan hann; ok
stood he before (the)-knee of-God and spoke with himself him and
á hann svá at minnask þeirra orða, er David mælti, þá
ought he so to remember those words which David spoke then
er hann kvað svá at orði: „Jafnan mun ek sjá dróttin minn
when he said so in word Always will I see lord my
í augliti mínu, þvíat hann er jafnan á hœgra veg minn."
in sight my because he is always on right side my
En þetta upphaf á konungr at hafa at bœn sinni, at sýna
But this beginning ought (the)-king to have to prayer his to show
fyrst guði rétta trú sína. Því næst skal hann þat sýna, at
first to-God right faith his That next shall he that show that
hann berr áhyggju yfir jarðligt veldi ok um guðdómligan
he bears care over earthly power and about divine
mátt guðs; því næst á hann at játa guði syndir sínar ok
might of-God that next ought he to confess to-God sins his and
afgerðir, ok sýna þat guði, at hann þykkisk eigi þar vera
misdeeds and show that to-God that he thinks-himself not there to-be
kominn sektarlauss eða svá sem verjandi sína sök; því næst
come guiltless or so as defending his case that next
á hann at biðja vægðar ok miskunnar fyrir viðgengnar
ought he to ask leniency and mercy for committed
afgerðir. Þat skal hann ok sýna guði lítillátliga, at svá
misdeeds That shall he also show to-God humbly that so
þykkisk hann þar vera kominn fyrir kné guði sem þræll
thinks-himself he there to-be come before (the)-knee of-God as thrall
eða þjónn, þóat guð hafi hann skipaðan ríkan manna á
or servant though God have him appointed mighty men on

millum. Hann skal ok eigi síðr minnask annarra manna í
between He shall also not less remember other men in
bœn sinni en sjálfs síns, dróttningar sinnar, ef hann á, er
prayer his than of-self his of-queen his if he has who
með hánum er sett til stjórnar ok landsgæzlu; byskupa sinna
with him is set for governance and land-keeping of-bishops his
ok allra annarra lærðra manna, þeirra sem kristni skulu gæta
and of-all other learned men those who Christianity shall guard
með hánum, ok til þess eru skyldir at halda upp helgum
with him and to that are bound to hold up holy
bœnum fyrir hánum ok öllu öðru fólki, því sem í ríki
prayers for him and all other folk that which in realm
hans er. Svá á hann ok at minnask í bœn sinni annarra
his is So ought he also to remember in prayer his other
landshöfðingja eða riddara, ok allra annarra hermanna sinna,
land-chieftains or knights and all other warriors his
þeirra sem hánum veita fullting til ríkisstjórnar. Svá á
those who to-him give help for realm-governance So ought
hann ok at minnask bónda ok búþegna ok allrar annarrar
he also to remember farmers and householders and all other
alþýðu, þeirra er ríki hans halda upp með verknaði eða
common-people those who realm his hold up with work or
annarri atvinnu. Á hann því allra at minnask, karla
other livelihood Ought he therefore of-all to remember men
ok kvenna, at allir eigu skylduliga á hverjum degi fyrir
and women that all ought dutifully in each day for
hánum helgum bœnum upp at halda. En þessi er sú bœn,
him holy prayers up to hold But this is that prayer
er hann má hafa hvern dag, ef hánum sýnisk, með þeirri
which he may have each day if to-him it-seems with that

skipan sem nú hefi ek sagt, ok svá mikilli áhyggju sem
arrangement which now have I said and so great care as-if
þá mæli hann við guð sjálfan, þvíat hann kveðr svá at orði:
then spoke he with God himself because he says so in word
„O misericordissime Deus, æterne pater! O strenuissime
O most-merciful God eternal father O most-vigorous
victor, Jesu Christe, fili Dei unigenite! O piissime consolator,
victor Jesus Christ son of-God only-begotten O most-loving comforter
spiritus alme! O indeficiens fons sapientiæ, nostræ fidei
spirit nourishing O unfailing fountain of-wisdom of-our faith
integritas, trinitas sancta! O principalis unitas et individua,
wholeness trinity holy O principal unity and undivided
unus Deus omnipotens! Tu qui sedes in arce poli
one God almighty You who sit in (the)-citadel of-(the)-pole
suprema, et omnia conspicis inferiorum occulta. Nulla
highest and all behold of-lower-things hidden-things No
namque creatura potentiam tuam potest subterfugere, quamvis
for creature might your can escape although
iram tuam velit effugere. Et ego si nossem cœlum ascendere
anger your it-wish to-flee And I if I-knew heaven to-ascend
tertium, tu ibi præsides; et si in infimas latebrarum
third you there preside and if into (the)-lowest of-hiding-places
baratri tenebras serpsero, supereminet et illic tua virtuosa
of-(the)-abyss darkness I-creep towers-over also there your mighty
potestas. Et si evolare scirem supra pennas ventorum, ut
power And if to-fly-out I-knew above (the)-feathers of-winds that
laterem extra metas marinæ solitudinis ultimas, tamen
I-might-hide outside (the)-bounds of-sea's solitude (the)-farthest yet
et inde me sumeret dextera tua, sub tuamque justitiam
also thence me would-take right-hand your under and-your justice
reduceret. Tu namque dispersam ventis arenam ineffabili
would-lead-back You for scattered by-winds sand with-unspeakable

scientia dinumeras, commotam etiam maris incessanti motu
knowledge number moved also of-(the)-sea with-ceaseless motion
per amplum orbis spatium; pluviales quoque roris
through (the)-wide of-(the)-world space rainy also of-dew
guttas omnes oculus tuus numero comprehendit. Ideoque
drops all eye your in-number grasps Therefore
te deprecor, domine mi, ut cum servo tuo non intres
you I-beseech lord my that with servant your not you-enter
in sessionem judicii, ut sic perscruteris æquitatem meam;
into (the)-session of-judgment that so you-search-out equity my
sed et ne connumeres multitudinem scelerum meorum, imo
but also not you-count (the)-multitude of-crimes my nay
potius a nequitiis meis faciem tuam averte; ab occultis
rather from wickednesses my face your turn from hidden-things
meis munda me domine; facinora mea dele: quia super
my cleanse me lord misdeeds my blot-out because over
caput meum magna sunt peccata mea, et ponderosa, et
head my great are sins my and weighty and
præ multitudine mihimet innumerabilia, ea præcipue quæ
for multitude to-myself innumerable those especially which
commisi in cogitationibus vanis, in verbis incompositis, in
I-committed in thoughts vain in words disordered in
improvida circa legem tuam sanctam negligentia, improvisis
improvident about law your holy negligence rash
testificationibus, in juramentis, et plurimis operibus malis
testimonies in oaths and very-many works evil
et minus utilibus. Confiteor et concedo coram te, domine
and less useful I-confess and I-concede before you lord
mi, sub omnium sanctorum et electorum testimonio, adeo
my under of-all saints and elect witness so-far
me reum delictorum et iniquorum actuum, quod ex eorum
me guilty of-offenses and of-unjust acts that from their

numero sum damnabilis, nisi summa et præpotenti
number I-am damnable unless by-(the)-highest and very-mighty
copia misericordiæ tuæ muniar, nec non meritis et
abundance of-mercy your I-be-fortified and also by-merits and
intercessione sacra specialis dominæ meæ Dei genitricis
intercession holy of-(the)-special lady my of-God mother
Mariæ, et omnium sanctorum, qui tibi ab exordio
Mary and of-all saints who to-you from (the)-beginning
mundi placuerunt; quia quæcunque palam vel occulte a
of-(the)-world pleased because whatever openly or secretly from
primæva ætate mea quoad hunc diem inique fecerim, nuda
first age my up-to this day unjustly I-have-done naked
tibi sunt et manifesta, et si vellem ea tegere, ne
to-you are and manifest even if I-wished them to-cover that-not
apparerent, fragilitas namque mea improvida in conspectu
they-appear frailty for my improvident in sight
tuo perpetrare sua illicita desideria non erubuit. Sed, domine
your to-commit its unlawful desires not blushed But lord
mi, quia non lætaris super perditione peccantium, sed
my because not you-rejoice over (the)-perdition of-sinners but
magis ut vivant et corripiantur; nosti etiam quod homo
rather that they-live and be-corrected you-know also that man
fragilis sit, et expers propriæ virtutis, velut et alius pulvis
frail is and devoid of-own strength as also other dust
terrenus foliumve marcidum, nisi tu eum misericordiæ tuæ
earthly or-leaf withered unless you him of-mercy your
manibus consolides; ideoque ne me punias in iræ tuæ
with-hands strengthen therefore not me punish in of-anger your
vehementi judicio deprecor, potiusque voluntatem pœnitentiæ
vehement judgment I-beseech and-rather (the)-will of-penitence
et spatium patientia tua mihi largiatur, et ad correctionem
and space patience your to-me may-grant and for correction

perseverantem effectum. Aufer a me, domine mi, invidiam
persevering effect Take-away from me lord my envy
et superbiam, desperationem et cupiditatem, immodestiam
and pride despair and covetousness immoderation
et injustitiam, et detestabilem gulositatem. De septem me
and injustice and detestable gluttony From seven me
purifica vitiis criminalibus et eorum spuriis vitulaminibus.
purify vices criminal and their spurious offshoots
Da mihi, domine mi, charitatem et spem perpetuam, veram
Give me lord my charity and hope perpetual true
fidem et humilitatem, scientiam et justitiam, et in omni
faith and humility knowledge and justice and in every
hora perficiendi voluntatem tuam virtutem perfectam. Da mihi
hour of-performing will your strength perfect Give me
et septem dona Spiritus tui principalia, fructusque consequi,
also (the)-seven gifts of-Spirit your principal and-fruits to-attain
qui de eis germinare poterunt; opus quippe manuum
which from them to-sprout will-be-able work indeed of-hands
tuarum sum ego, ad imaginem tuam formatus, servus tuus
your am I to image your formed servant your
in peccatis a famulo tuo progenitus, et ancillæ tuæ filius.
in sins from servant your begotten and of-handmaid your son
Nunc autem, cum misericordia tua ad officium tuum me
Now but since mercy your for office your me
elegerit, et ad regiam dignitatem indignum me sublimaverit,
has-chosen and to royal dignity unworthy me has-raised
in sacro principatu et super populum sanctum tuum me
in holy principality and over people holy your me
rectorem et judicem locaverit; enixius imploro, ut non mea
ruler and judge has-placed more-earnestly I-implore that not my
merita, sed populi, cui præsideo, necessitatem attendas, et
merits but of-(the)-people which I-rule-over (the)-need you-regard and

concedas mihi intellectum, in jure modestiam et veritatem,
grant me understanding in law moderation and truth
eloquentiam et consilium, ut inter divites et pauperes
eloquence and counsel that between rich and poor
non aliud discernam et judicem, quam quod tuæ libeat
not other I-discern and judge than what to-your may-please
majestati, et de quo gaudeant ipsi invicem ad mei justi
majesty and in which may-rejoice they-themselves mutually at of-my just
judicii executionem. Obsecro et, mi domine, ut coadjutores
judgment execution I-beseech also my lord that helpers
meos et consiliarios spiritu consilii et veritatis inspires
my and counselors with-(the)-spirit of-counsel and of-truth you-inspire
omnes, qui mecum in regimine regni laborant. Præcipue
all who with-me in (the)-rule of-(the)-realm labor Especially
Reginam quam mihi lege matrimonii copulari voluisti, nec
(the)-Queen whom to-me by-law of-matrimony to-be-joined you-willed and
non et ecclesiæ sacrosanctæ ministros, Romanæ Sedis
also even of-church most-holy (the)-ministers of-(the)-Roman See
Pontificem summum, episcopos et abbates nostros, præpositos
Pontiff highest bishops and abbots our provosts
et presbyteros nostros, et clerum universum; ipsis domine
and priests our and clergy whole to-them lord
da vitæ honestatem, et operum rectitudinem, ut coram
give of-life honesty and of-works rectitude that before
te luceant opera eorum bona exempla populo dantia et
you shine works their good examples to-(the)-people giving and
vitæ doctrinam. Principalibus terræ meæ judicibus, meisque
of-life teaching To-(the)-principal of-land my judges and-my
benevolis, qui mecum regni curam agunt, veritatem et
well-wishers who with-me of-(the)-realm care perform truth and
injustitiæ contemptum immitte, juris intelligentiam, et in
of-injustice contempt send-in of-law understanding and in

bonis moribus persistentiam. Adversariis, domine, meis largire,
good morals persistence To-adversaries lord my grant
ut de pravitatibus suis pœnitentes et resipiscentes ad
that from depravities their penitent and returning-to-their-senses to
pacis et concordiæ veritatem convertantur. Universis insuper
of-peace and of-concord truth they-be-converted To-all moreover
hujus regni incolis largire, domine, scire et velle te
of-this realm inhabitants grant lord to-know and to-wish you
solum Deum digne colere et diligere, et obedientiam
alone God worthily to-worship and to-love and obedience
sanam superioribus suis diligenter exhibere, et eisdem annue
sound to-superiors their diligently to-show and to-them grant
pacis auctor pacem bonam, et absque hostium incursione
of-peace author peace good and without of-enemies incursion
telluris ubertatem. Memento etiam, domine mi, per
of-(the)-earth fertility Remember also lord my through
sanctam misericordiam tuam, totius humanæ propaginis, tam
holy mercy your of-all human offspring as
videlicet horum, quos adhuc carnea mancipant ergastula, quam
namely of-those whom still fleshly enslave prisons as
exutorum tuo sancto jussu vel permissu mole carnea,
of-those-stripped by-your holy command or permission from-mass fleshly
in quorum redemptionem dominus noster Jesus Christus,
for whose redemption lord our Jesus Christ
unigenitus tuus, pretiosum sangvinem suum dignatus est
only-begotten your precious blood his deigned has
effundere. Insuper, domine mi, errore vel ignorantia excœcatis,
to-pour-out Moreover lord my by-error or ignorance to-those-blinded
tuamque sanctam trinitatem non intelligentibus, spiritum
and-your holy trinity not understanding (the)-spirit
intelligentiæ præstare digneris, quo illuminati sciant et
of-understanding to-grant may-you-deign by-which enlightened they-may-know and

cognoscant, te solum Deum et nullum alium præter te esse,
recognize you alone God and none other besides you to-be
quia nemo ad tuæ cognitionis contemplationem, nisi tua
because no-one to of-your knowledge contemplation unless your
sancta misericordia ducente, valet pervenire. Et adhuc, domine
holy mercy leading is-able to-arrive And still lord
mi, quia loqui tecum attentavi, si semel loquar quæso
my because to-speak with-you I-have-attempted if once I-speak I-pray
ne dedigneris, sed inclina misericorditer aures tuas, et audi,
not disdain but incline mercifully ears your and hear
et de abundanti pietate tua annue mihi, domine mi, ut
and from abundant piety your grant me lord my that
me nunquam in manus insidiantium mihi tradas, culpis
me never into (the)-hands of-those-plotting against-me you-deliver faults
meis exigentibus, et eorum prædam et capturam aliquando
my demanding and their prey and capture ever
me fieri ne permittas, ne vel ipsi gaudeant de meis
me to-become not permit nor even they-themselves rejoice at my
infortuniis, quos habeo corporales hostes sive spirituales,
misfortunes whom I-have bodily enemies or spiritual
visibiles aut invisibiles. Verumtamen cum in sanctissimam
visible or invisible Nevertheless when into most-holy
tuam voluntatem commisero, sub tuam dexteram me suscipe,
your will I-commit-myself under your right-hand me receive
et nequaquam secundum actus meos, sed secundum tuum
and by-no-means according-to acts my but according-to your
mitissimum miseransque judicium me corripe. Da mihi
most-mild and-merciful judgment me correct Give me
domine valetudinem sufficientem virtutemque securam contra
lord health sufficient and-strength secure against
omnia adversantia, et meorum fraudes hostium, et ultra
all adversities and of-my frauds of-enemies and beyond

vires meæ fragilitatis me tentari ne patiaris. Sub morte
(the)-strength of-my frailty me to-be-tempted not allow By death
me subitanea vitam terminare ne sustineas, magis de hoc
me sudden life to-end not suffer rather from this
seculo me sic evocare digneris, ut dum in vita superstes
world me so to-call-forth deign that while in life surviving
fuero, in vera pœnitentia de omnibus spurcitiis meis tibi
I-shall-be in true penitence for all filths my to-you
satisagam, et labore temporali terminato, tecum et cum
I-may-make-amends and toil temporal ended with-you and with
sanctis tuis perenniter requiescam. Est et quod de gratia
saints your perpetually I-may-rest It-is also what from grace
tua benignus exigere præsumo, ut regalitatis meæ solium
your kindly to-ask I-presume that of-royalty my (the)-throne
nec aliquo principe velis occupari, nisi eo quem de
not by-any prince you-will to-be-occupied except by-him whom from
lumbis meis noveris emanasse, serie tamen tali conservata,
loins my you-know to-have-issued succession yet such kept
ut patri filius succedat. Ne quæso, domine mi, auferas
that to-father son succeed Not I-pray lord my take-away
a genere meo benedictionem, qua me benedixisti, sed
from race my (the)-blessing with-which me you-blessed but
et universis de renibus meis egressis et egressuris concede
also to-all from loins my gone-forth and to-go-forth grant
benedictionem, qua filios Abrahæ sanctificasti Isaac
(the)-blessing with-which (the)-sons of-Abraham you-sanctified Isaac
et Jacob patriarcharum tuorum fidelium. Ramum denique
and Jacob of-patriarchs your faithful Branch finally
meæ stirpis aliquem, vel qui de me originem duxerit, in
of-my stock any or who from me origin shall-draw in
quoquam fervore malitiæ ne permittes arere, vel absque rore
any heat of-malice not allow to-wither or without dew

virtutum desiccari, et non in negligentiæ vel invii
of-virtues to-dry and not into of-negligence or of-(the)-pathless
præcipitium descendat, de incompositis hominibus sumens
precipice descend from disordered men taking
exemplum. Da potius eis, qui de me successuri sunt,
example Give rather to-them who from me to-succeed are
intellectum et affectum ad sciendum et discernendum tuæ
understanding and affection for knowing and discerning of-your
sacræ legis tenorem, virtutum honestatem, et te colendi
holy law (the)-tenor of-virtues honesty and you of-worshiping
tuaque sacrosancta præcepta conservandi devotionem, quia
and-your most-holy precepts of-keeping devotion because
tu solus Deus verus es, qui vivis et regnas per infinita
you alone God true are who live and reign through infinite
secula seculorum Amen."
ages of-ages Amen
„Heyrðu hinn miskunsamasti guð, æverandi faðir! Heyrðu
Hear-you the most-merciful God everlasting father Hear-you
hinn ágætasti sigrari, Jesu Kristr, eingetinn guðs son!
the most-excellent victor Jesus Christ only-begotten God's son
Heyrðu hinn mildasti huggari, heilagr andi! Heyrðu úþrotligr
Hear-you the mildest comforter holy spirit Hear-you unfailing
spektar brunnr ok úbrigðilig trú alheil, heilög þrenning!
wisdom's well and unchangeable faith all-whole holy trinity
Heyrðu úsködd eining, úskiptiligr einn guð allsvaldandi! Þú
Hear-you unharmed unity undividable one God all-ruling You
er sitr yfir hinni hæstu hæð himins ok lítr leyniligar
who sit over the highest height of-heaven and look-on secret
lægðir; þvíat veldi þitt má engi skepna forðask, þóat vili
depths because power your may no creature escape though it-will
flýja þína reiði; ok þóat ek mætta stíga til himna, þá
flee your anger and though I might climb to heavens then

ert þú þar fyrir; ok þóat ek krypa í neztu smogur
are you there before and though I creep into (the)-lowest crevices
helvítis fylsna, þá er þar yfir andligt veldi þitt; ok þóat
of-hell's hiding-places then is there over spiritual power your and though
ek mætta fljúga umfram vindligar fjaðrar ok leynask utan
I might fly beyond windy feathers and hide-myself outside
yztu endimerki hafligrar auðnar, þá gripi mik þar
(the)-outermost end-marks of-sea's wilderness then would-grip me there
hœgri hönd þín, ok leiddi mik aptr undir þitt réttdœmi;
right hand your and would-lead me back under your right-judgment
þvíat hjarta þitt telr dreifðan sand með vindum ok hafs
because heart your counts scattered sand with winds and sea's
afli um alla heimskringlu, ok auga þitt kannar alla dropa
force about all world's-circle and eye your explores all drops
regnligrar döggvar. Fyrir því bið ek þik, dróttinn minn, at
of-rainy dew For that ask I you lord my that
eigi gangir þú í dómsæti með mér þræli þínum til þess
not go you into judgment-seat with me thrall your for that
at rannsaka réttvísi mína, ok eigi telir þú fjölda synda
to examine justice my and not count you (the)-multitude of-sins
minna, heldr snú þú andliti þínu frá illskum mínum, ok
my rather turn you face your from wickednesses my and
hreinsa mik af leyndum glœpum mínum, ok þvá mik af
cleanse me of hidden crimes my and wash me of
öllum löstum mínum, þvíat syndir mínar eru stórar ok
all vices my because sins my are great and
þungar yfir höfði mínu, ok svá margar, at mér eru sjálfum
heavy over head my and so many that to-me are myself
útalligar fyrir fjölda sakar, þær er ek hefi görvar í
countless for multitude's sake those which I have done in
röngum hugrenningum, í heimskligum orðum, í úrœkt
wrong thoughts in foolish words in neglect

boðorða þinna ok í allskyns fyrirgleyming heilags lögmáls
of-commands your and in all-kinds forgetting of-holy law
þíns, í skamsýniligum vitnum ok skjótsvörðum munneiðum,
your in short-sighted witnesses and quick-sworn mouth-oaths
í röngum dómum millim manna ok ofmikilli fégirni, ok
in wrong judgments between men and too-great money-greed and
í allskyns verkum únýtum ok illum. Ek geng ígegn ok
in all-kinds works useless and evil I go against and
játa ek þér, dróttinn minn, at vitni allra heilagra þinna,
confess I to-you lord my at (the)-witness of-all saints your
at ek játa mik svá sekjan af glœpum ok illum verkum,
that I confess myself so guilty of crimes and evil works
at fjöldi synda minna fyrirdœma mik, nema ok njóta
that (the)-multitude of-sins my condemns me unless also I-enjoy
við yfirafligs fjölda miskunnar þinnar ok verðleika góðs
with (the)-over-mighty multitude of-mercy your and (the)-merits of-good
árnaðarorðs frú minnar hinnar helgu meyjar Maríu, ok
intercession of-lady my the holy maiden Mary and
allra heilagra þeirra er þér líkuðu frá upphafi heims;
of-all saints those who to-you pleased from (the)-beginning of-(the)-world
þvíat glœpir mínir ok allir lestir mínir, þeir sem ek hefi
because crimes my and all vices my those which I have
görva frá bernsku ok til þessa dags, eru fyrir þér berir
done from childhood and to this day are before you bare
ok úleyndir, þóat ek vilda leyna ok eigi játa; fyrir því at
and unhidden though I would hide and not confess for that that
skamsýniligr breyskleikr skamdisk eigi at gera illar girndir
short-sighted frailty was-ashamed not to do evil desires
sínar í augliti þínu. En fyrir því, dróttinn minn, at þú
its in sight your But for that lord my that you
glezk eigi yfir þeim er týnask í syndum, ok þú vilt heldr
rejoice not over those who perish in sins and you wish rather

at þeir lifi ok leiðréttisk, ok þú veizt at maðrinn er breyskr
that they live and are-corrected and you know that the-man is frail
án allan krapt, svá sem annat jarðar dust eða fölnanda
without all strength so as other earth's dust or withering
lauf, nema þú styrkir með afli miskunnar þinnar; fyrir
leaf unless you strengthen with (the)-might of-mercy your for
því bið ek þik, at eigi refsir þú mér með bráðum dómi
that ask I you that not punish you me with sudden judgment
reiði þinnar, heldr gefi mér guðlig þolinmœði þín stund
of-anger your rather give me divine patience your time
ok vilja til iðranar ok góða framkœmd til yfirbóta. Tak
and will for repentance and good accomplishment for amends Take
þú frá mér, dróttinn minn, öfund ok ofmetnað, örvilnan,
you from me lord my envy and arrogance despair
eigingirni, úhóf ok ranglæti, ok bölvaða kviðargirnd,
self-seeking immoderation and injustice and cursed belly-lust
ok hreinsa mik af sjau höfuðlöstum ok öllum bölvuðum
and cleanse me of seven chief-vices and all cursed
lýtum þeim, er þar kvíslask af. Gef þú mér, dróttinn
faults those which there branch from Give you me lord
minn, ástsemd ok eilífa ván, rétta trú ok lítillæti, vizku
my love and eternal hope right faith and humility wisdom
ok réttlæti, ok algörvan krapt at gera vilja þinn á hverri
and righteousness and complete strength to do will your at each
stundu; ok gef mér sjau höfuðgjafir heilags anda þíns ok
hour and give me seven chief-gifts of-holy spirit your and
allan blessaðan ávöxt þann, er þar má af blómgask,
all blessed fruit that which there may from blossom
fyrir því at ek em þín handaverk, skapaðr eptir þinni
for that that I am your handiwork created after your
líkneskju, þræll þinn getinn með syndum af þjóni þínum,
likeness thrall your begotten with sins of servant your

son ambáttar þinnar. En miskunn þín hefir kosit mik til
son of-handmaid your But mercy your has chosen me to
þíns embættis ok leiddan mik úverðan til konungligrar
your office and led me unworthy to kingly
tignar ok heilags höfðingjaskaps, ok hefir þú skipat mik
dignity and holy chieftainship and have you appointed me
stjórnarmann yfir helgu fólki þínu ok dómara. Fyrir því bið
governor over holy folk your and judge For that ask
ek þik, at þú virðir meira nauðsynjar heilags fólks þíns,
I you that you value more (the)-needs of-holy folk your
þess er þú hefir mik stjórnara yfir settan, heldr en mína
that which you have me governor over set rather than my
verðleika, ok at þú gefir mér rétta skilning, hóf ok
merits and that you give me right understanding moderation and
sannsýni, orð ok ætlan ok góðan vilja, at ek mega svá
justice word and intent and good will that I may so
skipta ok dœma milli ríkra ok fátœkra, at þér líki, ok
divide and judge between mighty and poor that to-you it-please and
þeir megi fagna réttendum hvárir við aðra. Þess bið ek
they may rejoice-in rights each with others Of-that ask I
þik, dróttinn minn, at þú veitir góðviljaðan skilningar anda
you lord my that you give good-willed understanding's spirit
þinn fulltingsmönnum mínum ok ráðgjöfum, þeim er með
your to-helpers my and counselors those who with
mér gæta ríkisstjórnar. Dróttning minni, þeirri er þú hefir
me keep realm-governance To-queen my her whom you have
mér gefna með hjúskapar sambandi, ok allra helzt helguðum
me given with marriage's bond and of-all most to-hallowed
stjórnarmönnum ok þjónostumönnum heilagrar kirkju, hinum
governors and servants of-holy church to-the
hæsta kennimanni Rúmaborgar byskupi, ok öllum várum
highest priest of-Rome's bishop and to-all our

byskupum, ábótum ok yfirboðum, prestum várum ok öllum
bishops abbots and superiors priests our and to-all
lærðum mönnum, þeim er undir þeirra gæzlu eru, gef
learned men those who under their keeping are give
þeim, dróttinn minn, hreinlífi ok réttlæti, at þeir megi
them lord my chastity and righteousness that they may
sýna þér góð verk sín, en fólki þínu góð dœmi ok réttar
show you good works their but to-folk your good examples and right
kenningar. En landshöfðingjum ok öllum þeim er stjórna
teachings But to-land-chieftains and to-all those who govern
ok gæta ríkis með mér, þá gef þú þeim sannendi ok
and keep (the)-realm with me then give you them truth and
hafnan allra illra siða, en skilning ok elsku allra góðra
rejection of-all evil customs but understanding and love of-all good
siða. Úvinum mínum veittu rétta iðran sinnar illsku
customs To-enemies my grant-you right repentance of-their wickedness
ok ranglætis, ok snú þeim til réttrar sættar ok afláts
and injustice and turn them to right reconciliation and abandonment
síns grimleiks; en fólki þínu ok alþýðu gef þú kunnustu
of-their fierceness but to-folk your and common-people give you knowledge
ok vilja at elska þik sannan guð, ok rétta hlýðni við sína
and will to love you true God and right obedience toward their
yfirboða hafa, góðan frið ok yfrit ár án allan úvina aga.
superiors have good peace and ample year without all of-enemies' strife
Minnsk þú, dróttinn minn, með þinni heilagri miskunn allra
Remember you lord my with your holy mercy all
mannligra kynkvísla, þeirra er dróttinn várr Jesus Kristr,
human kindreds those for-whom lord our Jesus Christ
eingetinn son þinn, helti út sínu blóði þeim til lausnar,
only-begotten son your poured out his blood to-them for redemption
hvárt sem þeir eru heldr lifandi í þessi veröld eða eru þeir
whether that they are rather living in this world or are they

með þínu boðorði ok heilagri þolinmœði héðan kallaðir. En
with your command and holy patience hence called But
þeir, dróttinn minn, er villa ok fáfrœði hefir blindat, svá
those lord my whom error and ignorance has blinded so
at þeir skilja eigi helga þrenning þína, þá send þeim
that they understand not holy trinity your then send them
skilningar anda þinn, at þeir viti ok kenni, at þú einn ert
understanding's spirit your that they know and recognize that you alone are
sannr guð ok engi annarr, þvíat engi má til þín nálgask,
true God and no other because no-one may to you approach
nema þín heilög miskunn leiði hann til þinnar ástar. En
unless your holy mercy lead him to your love But
fyrir því at ek hætta til at mæla við þik, dróttinn minn,
for that that I venture to-it to speak with you lord my
um sinn, þá reizk eigi þú mér þræli þínum, þóat ek
at (this)-time then be-angry not you with-me thrall your though I
biðja þik enn framar, heldr hneig þú miskunsamliga eyru
ask you still further rather incline you mercifully ears
þín, ok heyr þat ok veit, er ek bið, með nógligri mildi
your and hear that and grant what I ask with abundant mildness
þinni. Þess bið ek þik, dróttinn minn, at aldri selir þú
your Of-that ask I you lord my that never give you
mik í hendr úvinum mínum fyrir afgerðir mínar, ok aldri
me into hands to-enemies my for misdeeds my and never
látir þú mik verða þeirra veiði eða hernám, ok aldri látir þú
let you me become their prey or war-capture and never let you
úvini mína eiga at fagna úförum mínum, hvárki andliga né
enemies my have to rejoice-at misfortunes my neither spiritually nor
líkamliga, sýniliga né úsýniliga, heldr tak þú mik undir þína
bodily visibly nor invisibly rather take you me under your
hœgri hönd, ef ek misgöri móti helgum vilja þínum eða
right hand if I misdo against holy will your or

boðorðum, ok refs mér sjálfr, eigi eptir mínum tilverka,
commands and punish me yourself not according-to my deeds
heldr eptir vægiligum miskunnar dómi þínum, ok veit
rather according-to lenient mercy's judgment your and grant
mér yfrit afl ok öruggan krapt móti öllum gagnstaðligum
me ample might and secure strength against all hostile
hlutum ok öllum flærðum, ok lát mik hvergi verða fyrir
things and all frauds and let me nowhere become for
meiri freistni en breyskleikr minn megi standask, ok lát mik
greater temptation than frailty my may withstand and let me
eigi enda líf mitt með bráðum dauða, heldr kalla þú mik
not end life my with sudden death rather call you me
svá af þessum heimi, at ek hafa hér áðr yfirbœtt syndir
so from this world that I have here before amended sins
mínar með réttri iðran, ok at loknu veraldar starfi mega
my with right repentance and at ended world's toil may
ek eilífliga hvílask með þér ok þínum helgum. Þess bið ek
I eternally rest with you and your saints Of-that ask I
þik forkunnliga, dróttinn minn, at þú gefir mér getinn af
you earnestly lord my that you give me begotten of
mínum lendum lögligan erfingja, þann er þú látir þér
my loins lawful heir that-one whom you let to-yourself
sóma með þinni miskunn at setja í þat sœmdarsæti eptir
befit with your mercy to set into that honor-seat after
mik, er þú hefir mik í settan, ok þú látir mitt hásæti
me which you have me into set and you let my high-seat
aldri síðan koma undir aðrar höfðingjaættir, nema þær er
never afterward come under other chieftain-families except those which
af mér kvíslask, svá at son taki jafnan eptir föður. Þess
from me branch so that son take always after father Of-that
bið ek þik, dróttinn minn, at þú veitir mér, at engi kvistr
ask I you lord my that you grant me that no twig

sá er af mér blómgask þorni eða hrörni, ok eigi snúisk
that which from me blossoms wither or decay and not turn
þeir á úrœkt eða villistiga eptir heimskum þjóðum, heldr
they to neglect or error-paths after foolish peoples rather
gef þú þeim skilning ok vit at skilja ok kunna heilagt
give you them understanding and wit to understand and know holy
lögmál þitt, ok krapt ok góðan vilja at elska þik ok þín
law your and strength and good will to love you and your
boðorð; þvíat þú einn ert sannr guð, sá er lifir ok ríkir
commands because you alone are true God he who lives and reigns
um endalausar veraldir veralda. Amen".
through endless worlds of-worlds Amen
Nú er þessi sú bœn, er nú hefir þú heyrt, er konungr
Now is this that prayer which now have you heard which (the)-king
má hafa, er hann vill, með öðrum bœnum eða psálmum,
may have if he wishes with other prayers or psalms
ef hann kann. En þóat hann hafi eigi þessa bœn jafnan,
if he can But though he have not this prayer always
þá skyldi hann þó með þvílíkri skipan bœnahald sitt
then should he yet with such arrangement prayer-keeping his
hafa, sem hér er skipat í þessarri bœn, ok ætla ek víst
have as here is arranged in this prayer and think I surely
þetta hans skyldarsýslu vera á hverjum degi, til þess er
this his duty-business to-be on each day until that when
hann hefir tíðum sínum hlýtt ok messu, ef hann vill því
he has to-hours his listened and mass if he will that
fylgja, sem hans nafni byrjar ok hans er skyldarembætti.
follow which his name befits and his is duty-office

The son asks whether the king may spend his days hunting and hawking. The father answers that kingship exists to bear the people's cares, though some sport keeps his health and skill at arms; holy law binds him daily as the mass binds a bishop. As in kingship's first days, he should sit in his judgment seat, ponder how not to be thrust from it for injustice or folly, judge the cases brought, and, when none come, study the origin of wisdom.

SON Nú virðisk mér svá, sem þér hafit skýrt fyrir mér, hvat
Now seems to-me so as-if you have explained before me what
yðr þykki skyldarsýsla konungs vera um nætr eptir liðna
to-you seems duty-business of-(the)-king to-be at nights after passed
svefnstund, þá er hann berr áhyggju fyrir ríki eða fólki sínu;
sleep-time then when he bears care for realm or folk his
eða svá um morna, þá er hann gengr til kirkju eða bœnahalds
or so in mornings then when he goes to church or prayer-keeping
síns; ok virðisk mér svá sem þessi sýsla sé bæði nytsamlig ok
his and seems to-me so as-if this business be both useful and
svá nauðsynlig, at hennar má engum kosti án. Fyrir því
so necessary that of-it may-one on-no terms without For that
vil ek biðja yðr nú, at þér sýnit mér enn fram á leið, hvat
will I ask you now that you show me still forward on way what
hans skyldarsýsla skal vera um daginn, með því at þér hafit
his duty-business shall be through the-day with that that you have
sýnt mér þat, er hann skal hafa um nóttina eða öndverðan
shown me that which he shall have through the-night or early
morguninn; hvárt yðr sýnisk, at hann beri fyrir því áhyggju
the-morning whether to-you seems that he bear for that care
með náttligri vöku um ríki sitt, at hann megi frjálsligri lifa þá
with nightly watch about realm his that he may more-freely live then
um daginn eptir með þeirri siðvenju, sem ek spyr at konungar
through the-day after with that custom which I learn that kings

hafa nú í flestum stöðum, annathvárt at ríða með haukum
have now in most places either to ride with hawks
eða fara á veiðar með hundum, eða einahverja þá skemtan,
or go to hunting with hounds or some that entertainment
er ek spyr at í flestum stöðum er nú tíð um konunga
which I learn that in most places is now usual about kings'
athæfi; eða sýnisk yðr, at hann ætti aðra skyldarsýslu, ef hann
conduct or seems to-you that he ought other duty-business if he
gerði eptir því sem skyldi, ok taki þeir þessa skemtan
did according-to that which should-be and take they this entertainment
meir fyrir gamans sakar heldr en þat hœfði nafni þeirra?
more for amusement's sake rather than that befitted name their
FATHER Þat er þar spurðir þú, þá ætla ek þat víst, at
That which there asked you then think I that surely that
konungdómr sé meir settr ok skipaðr at bera áhyggju fyrir
kingship be more set and ordained to bear care for
nauðsynjum allrar alþýðu ok ríkis síns, heldr en til loklausu
(the)-needs of-all common-people and realm his rather than for idleness
eða hégómligrar skemtanar; en þó er hánum þat eigi bannat
or vain entertainment but yet is to-him that not forbidden
nökkurum sinnum at fremja nökkura skemtan, annattveggja
some times to perform some entertainment either
með haukum eða hundum eða hestum, eða með vápnum, at
with hawks or hounds or horses or with weapons that
hann megi halda heilsu sinni eða léttleik til vápna ok allra
he may keep health his or lightness for weapons and all
herfara. En hitt en þó hans skyldarsýsla at bera nytsamligar
war-journeys But that is yet his duty-business to bear useful
áhyggjur fyrir mannvitsamligri ríkisstjórn ok góðum orlausnum
cares for wise realm-governance and good answers
um öll vandendamál, eða allskyns nauðsynjum er fyrir hann
about all difficult-matters or all-kinds needs which before him

væri bornar; ok skalt þú þat til víss vita, at jafnskylt er
were borne and shall you that for certain know that equally-binding is
konunginum á hverjum degi at gæta reglu heilagra laga eða
on-the-king on each day to keep (the)-rule of-holy laws or
varðveita réttlæti heilagra dóma, jafnt sem byskupinum,
guard (the)-righteousness of-holy judgments equally as on-the-bishop
er varðveita á rétta reglu heilagrar messu ok allra tíða.
who keep ought (the)-right rule of-holy mass and all hours
SON Ek spyr fyrir því þessarra hluta svá inniliga, at margir
I ask for that these things so closely that many
hyggja þat, at konunglig tign sé skipuð til gamansamligs
think that that kingly dignity be ordained for amusing
ríkdóms ok alfrjálsrar skemtanar í allri girnd sinni. En mér
riches and all-free entertainment in all desire its But to-me
skilsk þat nú af eptir yðarri sögn, at hann á jafnan
is-understood that now from according-to your telling that he ought always
at áneyða sik undir guðs oki, ok virðisk mér svá sem hann
to subject himself under God's yoke and seems to-me so as-if he
eigi hvern dag at bera þunga byrði í allri áhyggju, þeirri er
ought each day to bear heavy burden in all care that which
hann hefir fyrir alþýðu nauðsynjum, þeim er fyrir hann
he has for common-people's needs those which before him
verða bornar. Af því vil ek enn biðja yðr fram á leið, at þér
become borne From that will I still ask you forward on way that you
sýnit mér skilvísliga, hvat konungs sýsla sé eptir loknar tíðir.
show me clearly what king's business be after ended hours
FATHER Þat var siðr forðum þann tíma, er konungdómr var
That was custom formerly that time when kingship was
skipaðr ok hann stóð með fegrstum blóma, at þegar konungr
ordained and it stood with fairest bloom that when (the)-king
sat við engan úvina aga, ok hann var í fullu frjálsi með
sat with no of-enemies' strife and he was in full freedom with

hirð sinni, þá einkaði hann til þess eitt ágætligt hús, at láta
court his then set-apart he for that one excellent house to let
þar setja í hásæti sitt, þat er hann hafði fyrir dómstól,
there set in high-seat his that which he had for judgment-seat
ok lét þat sæti vel búa með konungligri tign allri. Síðan
and let that seat well furnish with kingly dignity all Afterward
settisk þar konungr í, ok hugsaði hann þat hversu ágætliga
sat-himself there (the)-king in and thought he that how excellently
ok háleitliga hann sat; því næst hugum leiddi hann þat,
and loftily he sat that next with-thoughts led he that
hversu hann mætti þess sitja í svá ágætu sæti, at hann
how he might of-that sit in so excellent seat that he
væri eigi með nökkurri háðung brotthrundinn or því sæti,
were not with any shame thrust-away out-of that seat
annathvárt fyrir sakar ranglætis eða illsku, skamsýnis eða
either for sake of-injustice or wickedness short-sightedness or
fólsku, eða ofmikillar bleyði eða ofdrambs, eða ofmikillar
folly or too-great cowardice or over-pride or too-great
yfirgirndar, þóat hann sé háleitliga settr. Nú þykkir mér þat
covetousness though he be loftily set Now seems to-me that
sannligast, með því at við þessum hætti var konungdómr
truest with that that in this manner was kingship
skipaðr fyrir öndverðu, sem nú er sagt, at konungr haldi
ordained at (the)-beginning as now is told that (the)-king hold
enn hinni sömu skipan sem fyrr var skipuð; en þegar
still the same arrangement as before was ordained but as-soon
er konungr kemr í þetta sæti, sem nú er um rætt, ok
as (the)-king comes into this seat which now is about talked and
hann hefir þessa alla hluti hugleidda, sem nú höfum vér
he has these all things pondered which now have we
um talat, þá á hann því næst at dœma um mál manna
about spoken then ought he that next to judge about cases of-men

ok nauðsynjar, ef fyrir hann verða bornar. En með því at
and needs if before him become borne But with that that
eigi verða skyldarnauðsynjar þar fram bornar fyrir hann, þá
not become duty-needs there forward borne before him then
skal konungr hugleiða uppruna heilagrar spektar ok rannsaka
shall (the)-king ponder (the)-origin of-holy wisdom and examine
með athugasamligri áhyggju alla hennar vegu ok stiga.
with attentive care all her ways and paths

LVI · WISDOM'S OWN WORDS

The son asks to hear of wisdom's origin and ways. The father recites wisdom's own speech: begotten of God's heart, she ordered creation with him and walked over mountains, seas, and winds; condemned to death by false gods, she broke the gates of strong towns in anger and offers her feast to all. Blessed is he who dwells in her house of seven pillars, but her anger burns to the deepest foundations. Every king should know such sayings, as Solomon and Jesus son of Sirach wrote them.

SON Þess vil ek nú biðja yðr, herra minn, at þér reiðizk
Of-that will I now ask you lord my that you be-angry
eigi, þóat ek spyrja nú skjótliga ok úfróðliga, þvíat þetta
not though I ask now quickly and unlearnedly because this
virðisk mér torveldlig áhyggja at hugleiða uppruna sjálfrar
seems to-me difficult care to ponder (the)-origin of-herself
speki ok hennar vegu ok stiga, ok fyrir því vil ek biðja
wisdom and her ways and paths and for that will I ask
yðr, at þér sýnit mér nökkut af þessarri áhyggju, svá at
you that you show me somewhat of this care so that
ek mætta nökkura skilning hér af taka, ef svá má vera.
I might some understanding here from take if so may be

FATHER Eigi er við þat reiðandisk, at maðr spyri inniliga þeirra
Not is at that to-be-angry that a-man ask closely of-those
hluta, er hann þykkisk eigi skilja mega, nema hann hafi
things which he thinks-himself not understand may unless he have
nökkura tilvísan. En guðs miskunn görir marga hluti mönnum
some direction But God's mercy makes many things to-men
kunna ok sýniliga, þá er mjök væri fyrir mönnum fólgnir, ef
known and visible those which much were from men hidden if
guð vildi eigi birtask láta, ok hefir hann til þess marga hluti
God would not be-revealed let and has he for that many things
birt fyrir mönnum, þá er áðr váru fólgnir með sjálfum
revealed before men those which before were hidden with himself
hánum, at hann vildi, at maðrinn bæri nytsamliga áhyggju
him that he wished that the-man bore useful care
fyrir fróðleiks auðœfum, þeim er hann eignask af guðligri
for learning's riches those which he owns from divine
féhirzlu. En þessa tilvísan má helzt marka til þeirrar
treasury But this direction may-one best mark to that
áhyggju, er fyrr rœddum vér um, at gæta þeirra orða, er
care which before talked we about to heed those words which
sjálf speki hefir af sér mælt, þá er hon kveðr svá at orði:
herself wisdom has of herself spoken then when she says so in word
„Ek em getin af hjarta guðs, ok gékk ek fram af
I am begotten of (the)-heart of-God and went I forth from
munni hins hæsta, ok skipaða ek öllum hlutum; en
(the)-mouth of-the highest and ordered I all things but
guðs andi fluttisk yfir tómt undirdjúp, ok skildum vér
God's spirit moved over empty under-deep and parted we
ljós frá myrkrum ok skipuðum stundir ok tíma, daga ok
light from darkness and ordered hours and times days and
nætr, ár ok vetr ok eilíflig sumur, ok timbruðum vér
nights years and winters and eternal summers and timbered we

himna konungi stirnt hásæti, ok ekki gerði guð án
of-heavens to-king starry high-seat and nothing made God without
mína hagspakliga atvist; þvíat vér vágum saman léttleik
my skill-wise presence because we weighed together (the)-lightness
lopts ok höfga jarðar, ok hengðum þungan jarðarböll
of-air and (the)-heaviness of-earth and hung heavy earth's-ball
í léttu lopti, ok styrktum festiband himins með öflgum
in light air and strengthened (the)-fastening-band of-heaven with mighty
kröptum. Buðum vér skínandi sólu at skrýða alt dags ljóst
powers Bade we shining sun to adorn all day's light
með björtum geislum, en brigðiligu tungli buðum vér at lýsa
with bright rays but changeable moon bade we to light
náttlig myrkr með bleikum skima. Vér gerðum fagrskapaðan
nightly darkness with pale glimmer We made fair-shaped
mann eptir várri líkneskju, ok skrýddi guð andlit jarðar
man after our likeness and adorned God (the)-face of-earth
með margskyns ávexti trjá ok grasa, ok leiddi hann fram
with manifold fruit of-trees and grasses and led he forth
loptligt skrúð með margfölduðu kyni fugla, ok fal hann
airy adornment with multiplied kinds of-birds and hid he
fjölda fiska með mörgum kynjum í djúpum vatna, ok
multitude of-fishes with many kinds in (the)-deeps of-waters and
bauð hann fjórfœttum kykvendum at margfaldask á jörðu
bade he four-footed creatures to multiply on earth
með margskonar kynkvíslum, ok hann umgyrði alla kringlu
with many-kinds kindreds and he girded-about all (the)-circle
jarðar með þjótanda hafi ok söltum straumum, ok bauð
of-earth with roaring sea and salt currents and bade
hann þjörfum vötnum fram at fljóta af andliti jarðar með
he fresh waters forth to flow from (the)-face of-earth with
bröttum forsum, ok skipaði guð grundvöllu jarðar með
steep waterfalls and ordered God (the)-foundations of-earth with

tilsogligum æðrum, at fljótandi vötn mætti fremja úaflátliga
sucking veins that flowing waters might perform unceasingly
boðit embætti, ok bauð hann léttu jarðardupti at bera þung
bidden office and bade he light earth's-dust to bear heavy
vötn yfir háleik lopts með teygjanda hita, ok hann bauð
waters over (the)-height of-air with drawing heat and he bade
vindþrotnum skýjum upp at spýja svölum regnelum yfir
wind-swollen clouds up to spew cool rain-storms over
andlit jarðar. En skapari allra hluta bauð mér at skynja
(the)-face of-earth But (the)-creator of-all things bade me to perceive
allan hagleik guðligs smíðis, ok steig ek harðliga yfir hvirfil
all craft of-divine handiwork and stepped I hard over (the)-crowns
fjalla með þrýstanda fœti, en ek gékk léttliga um slétta
of-mountains with pressing foot but I went lightly over level
dala ok flata völlu; gékk ek harðliga yfir brattar bárur með
dales and flat plains went I hard over steep waves with
þungu ástigi, ok mælda ek víðáttu sléttra hafa með linligum
heavy tread and measured I (the)-expanse of-level seas with gentle
fetum, þrýsta ek stríðliga stirðum leggjum, þá er ek gékk
steps pressed I harshly with-stiff legs then when I went
yfir fjaðrar stormsamra vinda. Mælta ek blíðliga, þá er ek
over (the)-feathers of-stormy winds Spoke I gently then when I
lærða þegjanda logn til sœtrar snildar. Lagða ek vegu mína
taught silent calm to sweet eloquence Laid I ways my
um háleik himins ok víðáttu lopts, kannaða ek bjúgan
over (the)-height of-heaven and (the)-expanse of-air explored I (the)-curved
hring úkyrrs hafs, ok mælda ek með fetum allan böll
ring of-(the)-unquiet sea and measured I with steps all (the)-ball
ákúfóttrar jarðar. Fór ek um fjöll ok um ása, ok rann
of-convex earth Went I over mountains and over ridges and ran
ek um heiðar ok völlu ok slétta dala, ok gaf ek hunangligar
I over heaths and plains and level dales and gave I honeyed

daggir öllum fræandum grösum. Gékk ek um þorna ok hrís
dews to-all seed-bearing grasses Went I over thorns and brush
ok allskyns skóga, ok gaf ek sœtan blómstr aldinberanda
and all-kinds woods and gave I sweet blossom to-fruit-bearing
viði. En ek setta landtjald mitt í skuggalausum geisla, ok
trees But I set land-tent my in shadowless ray and
gékk ek fram af fögru herbergi sem skrýddr brúðgumi; ek
went I forth from fair chamber as adorned bridegroom I
var glaðr sem sterkr risi fagnandi rásarskeiði. En dauðligir
was glad as strong giant rejoicing-in course-run But mortal
flærðguðar öfunduðu mik, gerðu mik sekjan ok dœmdu mik
false-gods envied me made me guilty and judged me
til dauða. Ok steig ek reiðr niðr til hinna neðstu dala, ok
to death And stepped I angry down to the lowest dales and
braut ek borgir hermanna í reiði minni; gnera ek í sundr
broke I (the)-towns of-warriors in anger my ground I in pieces
þrekliga öll málmhlið sterkra borga, braut ek sterka járnstólpa
mightily all metal-gates of-strong towns broke I strong iron-pillars
ok digrar járnslár, tók ek gull ok gersimar herfengnar með
and thick iron-bars took I gold and treasures war-taken with
gimsteinum; fór ek fagnandi til hinna hæstu bygða með
gemstones went I rejoicing to the highest dwellings with
hrósanda herfangi; fór ek um þorp ok um tún ok
triumphant plunder went I through villages and through homefields and
heraðsbygðir, ok bauð ek fátœkum miðlan míns auðar;
district-settlements and offered I to-poor (the)-sharing of-my wealth
býð ek plógkörlum fræanda korn ok félagsgerðir; hugga ek
offer I to-plowmen seed grain and partnerships comfort I
harmanda, gef ek móðum hvíld, skenki ek þyrstanda, fœði
(the)-grieving give I to-weary rest pour I for-(the)-thirsting feed
ek hungranda. Sæll er sá er drekkr af mínu borðkeri, þvíat
I (the)-hungering Blessed is he who drinks from my table-cup because

minn drykkr hefir úþrotligan sœtleik. Fer ek um borgir
my drink has unfailing sweetness Go I through towns
ok bœi ok kaupstaði, renn ek um garða ok torg ok
and farms and market-towns run I through yards and squares and
stræti, kalla ek með blíðri ok skírri raust, býð ek snæðing
streets call I with gentle and clear voice offer I meal
ok samsæti ok flærðlausa skemtan. Sæll er sá er gengr til
and company and falsehood-less entertainment Blessed is he who goes to
míns snæðings, þvíat mín fœzla þefjar betr hverjum ilm;
my meal because my food smells better than-every fragrance
hunangi sœtari er minn drykkr ok skírri hverju víni; at
than-honey sweeter is my drink and clearer than-every wine at
mínu borði má heyra þjótandi strengleika með sœtum ok
my table may-one hear resounding string-music with sweet and
fögrum tóna; þar er kveðskapr ok fáheyrðir söngar; þar er
fair tone there is poetry and rarely-heard songs there is
skemtan ok gleði ok flærðlauss fagnaðr án alla sorg. Sæll
entertainment and gladness and falsehood-less joy without all sorrow Blessed
er sá er búa skal í mínu herbergi, þvíat í mínu herbergi
is he who dwell shall in my chamber because in my chamber
eru sjau höfuðstólpar, þeir er samantengja alt hválf með
are seven chief-pillars those which join-together all vault with
góðri þekju, ok sjálft gólf með úþrotligum grundvöllum, ok
good roof and itself floor with unfailing foundations and
remma þrekliga alla veggi með sterku afli. Í hverjum stólpa
brace mightily all walls with strong force In each pillar
þessarra má finna sjau höfuðvélir allskyns hagleiks; ok mitt
of-these may-one find seven chief-engines of-all-kinds craft and my
herbergi er stráð með ilmandi grösum ok ágætum urtum,
chamber is strewn with fragrant grasses and excellent herbs
þat er tjaldat með fegrð ok prýði ok allri sælu. Ek em
it is hung with beauty and splendor and all bliss I am

gamansamr félagi millim lítillátra, en styrkr ok drambsamr
amusing companion among humble but strong and proud
móti drambsömum. Ek em höfuðmeistari í hverjum skóla
against proud I am chief-master in each school
ok hin hæsta snild á hverju þingi. Ek em vitrastr millim
and the highest eloquence at each assembly I am wisest among
allra lögmanna ok yfirdómari í öllum dómsætum. Sæll er
all lawmen and over-judge in all judgment-seats Blessed is
sá, er funninn verðr flærðlauss félagi við mik, þvíat ek
he who found becomes falsehood-less companion with me because I
frjálsi minn félaga af öllum háskum, ok fylgi ek hánum
free my companion from all dangers and follow I him
eilífliga. Sá er sæll, er enga skömm hlýtr af mér, þvíat
eternally He is blessed who no shame gets from me because
reiði mín kveykir eld í œði sinni, sá brennir til hinna
anger my kindles fire in fury its that burns to the
neðstu grundvalla. Hann mun svelgja jörð með ávöxtum
lowest foundations It will swallow earth with fruits
sínum ok brenna grundvöllu allra fjalla. Hvar felr sá
its and burn (the)-foundations of-all mountains Where hides that-one
sik, er flýja vill mik? Andi guðs fyllir alla heimskringlu
himself who flee will me (The)-spirit of-God fills all world's-circle
ok rannsakar skilning ok skýring hverrar raddar."
and examines (the)-understanding and explanation of-each voice
Slíkar rœður, sem nú hefir þú heyrðar, eru þær er sjálf
Such talks as now have you heard are those which herself
speki mælir af sér, ok margar aðrar þær, er ekki er hér
wisdom speaks of herself and many others those which not is here
um rœtt, þvílíkar eða enn hærri; þvíat Salamon konungr
about talked such or still higher because Solomon (the)-king
eða Jesus filius Sirach hafa ritat með mikilli snild fjölda
or Jesus son of-Sirach have written with great eloquence a-multitude

þeirra rœðna, er sjálf speki hefir af sér mælt með ýmisum
of-those talks which herself wisdom has of herself spoken in various
háttum. En ef vér minnumk nú þeirra rœðna allra, er vér
manners But if we remember now those talks all which we
megum finna í þeirra ritningum, þá verðr þat dvöl langrar
may find in their writings then becomes that delay of-long
rœðu, ok þykkir mér eigi nauðsyn at gera lengri minning
talk and seems to-me not need to make longer mention
þeirra hluta nú at sinni í várri rœðu, er sjálf speki
of-those things now at (this)-time in our talk which herself wisdom
hefir af sér mælt. En þó er hverjum konungi skyldligt at
has of herself spoken But yet is for-each king binding to
vita görsamliga allar þær rœður, er sjálf speki hefir af sér
know thoroughly all those talks which herself wisdom has of herself
mælt, eða elligar svá vitrir menn, sem fyrr váru nefndir, ok
spoken or else so wise men as before were named and
hugleiða á hverjum degi nökkurn hlut af þeim rœðum, ef
ponder on each day some part of those talks if
hann fær nökkut frelsi til fyrir öðrum skyldarnauðsynjum.
he gets some freedom to-it from other duty-needs

LVII · THE PRINCE AND THE SCALES

The father says the king must study these talks before he judges, punishing or sparing as the case requires. He tells of a wise king, slow to judge, whose favorite son and sages thought him too slow. Sent to judge while the king lay weak after a bloodletting, the son saw three young men: one with letters, one with scales that would never balance, and one with a drawn sword, while hell gaped below him. No case was judged that day, and none faulted the king's slowness again. When Temere's king bent a judgment toward his kin, his hall was overturned; such signs show what waits unseen for unjust judges.

SON Með því at þat er víst skyldarsýsla konungs at verða
With that that it is surely duty-business of-(the)-king to become
vel áskynja til alls mannvits, þá er þat víst sýnt, at þessi
well aware-of for all wit then is that surely shown that this
fróðleikr mun hánum alls skyldastr vera, er nú hafit ér
learning will to-him of-all most-binding be which now have you
um rætt, fyrir því at þat er líkt, at af þessum fróðleik
about talked for that that it is likely that from this learning
megi hann flestar skilningar samanhenda, hvárt er hann vill
may he most understandings gather whether that he will
hugleiða mátt guðligs veldis eða um manna nauðsynjar.
ponder (the)-might of-divine power or about men's needs
Nú með því at yðr sýnisk eigi um þessa hluti lengra
Now with that that to-you seems not about these things longer
at rœða, þá vil ek nú þess biðja yðr, at þér mættit enn
to talk then will I now of-that ask you that you might still
lengja þessa rœðu með nökkurum orðum um þat, hverja
lengthen this talk with some words about that what
hluti konungr skal hugleiða, þá er hann kemr í dómstól
things (the)-king shall ponder then when he comes into judgment-seat
sinn um dóma, þá er hann skal dœma um mál manna.
his about judgments those which he shall judge about cases of-men
FATHER Þessir hlutir eru hánum víst skyldir, sem þú sagðir,
These things are to-him surely binding as you said
at rannsaka vandliga allar þær rœður, er nú höfum vit
to examine carefully all those talks which now have we-two
um rætt með margsmogalli skilning; ok fyrir því, ef hann
about talked with much-searching understanding and for that if he
glósar þessar rœður í hug sér skilvísliga, þá má hann þar
glosses these talks in mind his clearly then may he there
í finna víst, ef hann kann skilja, flesta alla þá hluti,
in-it find surely if he can understand most all those things

er horfa til veldis guðligs máttar, eða svá til þeirra hluta,
which look to (the)-power of-divine might or so to those things
hversu guð hefir skipat sínum gjöfum millim manna eða
how God has arranged his gifts between men or
annarrar skepnu; ok má hverr konungr kenna sik, ok hverr
other creation and may each king know himself and each
annarra vitra manna, hverr hann er ok hverr hann skal vera,
of-other wise men who he is and who he shall be
ef hann vill því fylgja, sem hann er tilskipaðr af guðs hálfu.
if he will that follow which he is appointed on God's half
En þar er þú leitar, hversu dóma skal hugleiða, þá er
But there where you seek how judgments shall-one ponder then when
hann dœmir manna milli, þá skýrða ek þat fyrr fyrir þér í
he judges men between then explained I that before before you in
okkarri rœðu með nökkurum orðum, þá er vit rœddum
our-two's talk with some words then when we-two talked
um þat, hversu guð dœmdi brotit sáttmál millim sín ok
about that how God judged broken covenant between himself and
Adams, eða hverja dómara guð leiddi til dómsetu með sér.
Adam or which judges God led to judgment-sitting with himself
Svá sýnda ek þér ok mörg dœmi, hversu guð skipaði dómum
So showed I you also many examples how God arranged judgments
sínum við þá, er síðar kómu hvárttveggja um Pharao
his toward those who later came both about Pharaoh
konung eða alla þá aðra, er síðar váru nefndir í þeirri
(the)-king or all those others who later were named in that
rœðu; ok er þat víst hverjum konungi athuga leiðanda, er
talk and is that surely to-each king attention to-be-led which
þar má finnask í þeim dœmum. Þat þarf hann ok vandliga
there may be-found in those examples That needs he also carefully
at hugleiða ok skilja, hvar hann þarf refsingar við ok
to ponder and understand where he needs punishment with and

stríðleik í dómum sínum, eða hvar dómum skal vægja;
harshness in judgments his or where with-judgments shall-one spare
fyrir því at eigi eigu í öllum stöðum dómar jafnstríðir at
for that that not ought in all places judgments equally-harsh to
vera; en í öllum dómum skal þó réttlæti vera ok jafngirndar
be but in all judgments shall yet righteousness be and equity's
endimerki, ok má þar segja vel ein dœmi til, ef vill.
end-marks and may-one there tell well some examples to-it if one-wishes
En sá konungr einn, er mér sýnisk helzt af at segja í
But that king one who to-me seems best of to tell in
þessarri rœðu til dœma, hann var ágætr maðr ok ríkr, vel
this talk for examples he was excellent man and mighty well
lærðr til alls mannvits ok sjálfr réttlátr í öllum dómum,
taught to all wit and himself righteous in all judgments
ok kom á hverjum degi mikill fjöldi þeirra manna fyrir
and came on each day great multitude of-those men before
hann, er hann þurfti at dœma um nauðsynjar þeirra,
him whom he needed to judge about needs their
ok sat hann hvern dag langa hríð í dómsæti sínu, til
and sat he each day long while in judgment-seat his for
þess at dœma um mál manna, ok þeir spekingar með
that to judge about cases of-men and those sages with
hánum, er hann fann at vitrastir váru ok bezt viljaðir
him whom he found that wisest were and best willed
til slíkra nauðsynja. En þá er konungrinn sat á þessarri
for such needs But then when the-king sat at this
stefnu ok þeir spekingar, er hann hafði til þess nefnda
meeting and those sages whom he had for that named
með sér, þá váru vápnaðir riddarar fyrir utan húsit at
with himself then were armed knights before outside the-house to
gæta, at konungr sæti í fullum friði. Þessi konungr átti
guard that (the)-king sat in full peace This king had

mjök marga sonu, þó var hánum einn kærastr af öllum
very many sons yet was to-him one dearest of all
þeim, þvíat sá elskaði þat helzt at vera optast nær feðr
them because that-one loved that most to be most-often near father
sínum, ok hann var ok opt á dómsætum með konunginum.
his and he was also often at judgment-seats with the-king
Þat var náttúra konungs þessa at vera seinn í atkvæðum
That was (the)-nature of-king this to be slow in words
um dóma sína, ok rœddu þeir menn þat millim sín,
about judgments his and talked those men that between themselves
er skjótlyndir váru í geði sínu, at konungr mundi skjótara
who quick-tempered were in mind their that (the)-king would quicker
lýsa dómum sínum eða leysa mál manna, ef hann væri
declare judgments his or loose cases of-men if he were
allvitr. Þessarri rœðu samþyktisk son hans ok margir aðrir
very-wise This talk agreed son his and many others
af hans spekingum, ok svá gerðisk þetta mál fjölrœtt
of his sages and so became this matter much-talked
í þeirra munni, at konungr sjálfr varð áskynja þessarar
in their mouth that (the)-king himself became aware of-this
rœðu. Þá gerðisk svá til eitthvert sinn, at konungr var
talk Then happened so to-it some time that (the)-king was
í þyrmslum eptir blóðlát sitt, ok kom þá mikill fjöldi
in weakness after blood-letting his and came then great multitude
á þeirri stundu þeirra manna, er mál sín vildu bera fyrir
at that hour of-those men who cases their would bear before
konung. Konungr kallaði son sinn á mál við sik, þann
(the)-king (The)-king called son his to speech with himself that-one
sem vanr var at sitja í dómum með hánum, ok mælti við
who wont was to sit in judgments with him and spoke to
hann: „Kalla þú spekinga mína, þá er vanir eru at sitja á
him Call you sages my those who wont are to sit at

dómum með mér ok gangit í dómhús mitt, ok sezk
judgments with me and go-you into judgment-house my and set-yourself
þú í sæti mitt í dag ok leysit mál manna svá margra,
you in seat my in day and loose-you cases of-men as many
sem þér fáit flestra leyst í dag.“ Svá var gört sem konungr
as you can most loosed in day So was done as (the)-king
bauð. En þá er þau mál váru framtöluð fyrir þeim, þá
bade But then when those cases were told-forth before them then
sýndisk þeim svá, at þeir mundu skjótliga fá leyst þau mál.
seemed to-them so that they would quickly get loosed those cases
En þá er konungs son var búinn fram at segja lausnir
But then when (the)-king's son was ready forth to tell (the)-loosings
þeirra mála, sem þar váru framborin fyrir hann, þá sýndisk
of-those cases which there were brought-forward before him then seemed
hánum ganga fram þrír ungir menn, fríðir at ásýn ok
to-him to-go forth three young men handsome in appearance and
þó ógurligir; tveir settusk niðr fyrir fœtr hánum á sína
yet terrible two set-themselves down before feet his on his
hönd hvárr. Annarr þeirra hafði með at fara mörg bréf, ok
hand each One of-them had with to go many letters and
var á þeim bréfum öll þau mál, er sætt skyldu vera á
was on those letters all those cases which settled should be on
þeim degi, ok þó ein sök í hverju bréfi. En annarr þeirra
that day and yet one charge in each letter But (the)-other of-them
hafði skálir með at fara; þær sýndusk hánum svá vægar, at
had scales with to go those seemed to-him so sensitive that
ef eitt lítit hár væri þar lagt í, at þó mundu þær eptir
if one little hair were there laid in that yet would they after
láta. Sá hélt upp skálunum, er þær hafði; en sá er
give That-one held up the-scales who them had but he who
bréfin hafði, þá lagði hann í aðra skál þau bréf, er váru
the-letters had then laid he in one scale those letters which were

af hendi sakarábera, en í aðra skál þau bréf, er váru
from (the)-hand of-(the)-accuser but in (the)-other scale those letters which were
af hendi þess er svara skyldi, ok sýndisk hánum sem
from (the)-hand of-him who answer should and seemed to-him as-if
skálirnar mætti aldri jafnvægar verða. Þá sýndisk hánum
the-scales might never equal-weighing become Then seemed to-him
sem þau bréf kœmi fram, er á var ritaðar orlausnir ok
as-if those letters came forth which on was written answers and
ákveðnir dómar, eptir því sem hann hafði ætlat upp
appointed judgments according-to that which he had intended up
at segja, ok allir spekingar höfðu lagt ráð til; ok þá er
to tell and all sages had laid counsel to and then when
þau bréf váru lögð í skálirnar, þá urðu þær aldri jafnvægar
those letters were laid in the-scales then became they never equal-weighing
heldr en áðr. Þá er son konungs sá þessa hluti, þá
rather than before Then when (the)-son of-(the)-king saw these things then
hugði hann at, hvat sá hinn þriði ungi maðr hafðisk
considered he at what that the third young man occupied-himself
at, ok sá at hann stóð þar nær hánum með dregnu sverði
with and saw that he stood there near him with drawn sword
ok búinn við at höggva; þat sverð var snarpeggjat ok svá
and ready for to strike that sword was sharp-edged and so
ógurligt, at hánum sýndisk sem eldr brynni or báðum
terrible that to-him seemed as-if fire burned out-of both
eggjum. Þat sá hann víst, ef hann lyki upp dómum fyrr
edges That saw he surely if he opened up judgments before
en skálirnar væri jafnvægar, at sverð hins unga manns
than the-scales were equal-weighing that (the)-sword of-the young man
kœmi þegar á háls hánum. Þá varð hánum litit niðr fyrir
came at-once on neck his Then became to-him looked down before
fœtr sér, ok sá hann þar opnaða jörðina niðr í gögnum;
feet his and saw he there opened the-earth down in through

hann sá þar helvíti undir með gapanda munni, svá sem
he saw there hell under with gaping mouth so as
væntandi at hann mundi þar koma. En þá er konungs
expecting that he would there come But then when (the)-king's
son sá þessa hluti, þá dvaldisk rœða hans ok upplokning
son saw these things then delayed talk his and (the)-opening-up
dómanna. Spekingar vöktu til, at dómar skyldu vera
of-the-judgments (The)-sages urged to-it that judgments should be
uppsagðir; hann kallaði þá til sín; en sá hverr er til
pronounced he called them to himself but that-one each who to
hans kom, þá sá þessa hluti alla, sem vér höfum nú frá
him came then saw these things all which we have now from
sagt, ok treystisk engi þeirra síðan upp at segja dóma,
told and dared no-one of-them afterward up to tell judgments
þvíat skálir hins unga manns urðu aldri jafnvægar, ok
because (the)-scales of-the young man became never equal-weighing and
varð engum málum lokit á þeim degi. En síðan undraði
became no cases ended on that day But afterward wondered
engi maðr, at konungr væri seinn í uppsögu dóma.
no man that (the)-king were slow in pronouncing of-judgments
Enn eru önnur þvílík dœmi, eptir því sem ek sagða þér
Still are other such examples according-to that which I told you
fyrr í okkarri rœðu, þá er vit rœddum um stað þann, er
before in our-two's talk then when we-two talked about place that which
Temere var kallaðr á Írlandi, ok má enn nökkura minning
Temere was called in Ireland and may-one still some mention
gera þeirrar sömu rœðu, ef sýnisk. En þat var höfuðstaðr á
make of-that same talk if it-seems But that was chief-place in
Írlandi, ok þar var höfuðsæti konungs, ok eigi vissu menn
Ireland and there was (the)-chief-seat of-(the)-king and not knew men
frægra stað á jörðu. En þóat landsfólk væri heiðit ok hefði
more-famous place on earth But though (the)-land's-folk were heathen and had

eigi átrúnað réttan til guðs í þann tíma, þá var þó þat
not belief right toward God at that time then was yet that
fólk svá í trúnað sínum, at þat trúði at réttdœmi mundi
folk so in belief its that it believed that right-judgment would
aldri hallask af hendi þess konungs, er sat í Temere; fyrir
never incline from (the)-hand of-that king who sat in Temere for
því at engi dómr var sá dœmdr á Írlandi, er þeir ætlaði
that that no judgment was that judged in Ireland which they thought
at fyrr væri réttr en konungrinn af Temere hefði dœmt. En
that before were right than the-king of Temere had judged But
þessi atburðr gerðisk eitthvert sinn til, at þat mál var borit
this event happened some time to-it that that case was borne
fyrir konung þann, er sat í Temere, at frændr hans ok vinir
before king that who sat in Temere that kinsmen his and friends
áttu annan veg hlut í, en annan veg áttu þeir mál, er
had on-one way share in but on-the-other way had they case whom
konungr hafði fjándskap við; ok hallaði konungr þá dómi
(the)-king had enmity with and inclined (the)-king then judgment
meir eptir vilja sínum en eptir réttendum. Ok þá
more according-to will his than according-to rights And then
bar raun á því, at þrim náttum síðar þá sneri um höll
bore proof on that that three nights later then turned around (the)-hall
konungsins ok öll önnur hús þau sem hann sat í, ok vissu
of-the-king and all other houses those which he sat in and faced
þá grundvellir upp á, en vígskörð ok veggir í jörð niðr, ok
then foundations up on but battlements and walls into earth down and
þegar tók borgin at eyðask, ok varð hon aldri síðan bygð.
at-once began the-town to be-deserted and became it never afterward settled
Nú skal á slíku marka, at guð lætr til þess slíka hluti
Now shall-one on such mark that God lets for that such things
opinbera verða fyrir mönnum, at hann vill at menninir
revealed become before men that he wishes that the-men

skili þat, at slíkir hlutir eru hvern dag búnir fyrir
understand that that such things are each day prepared for
mönnum andliga ok úsýniliga, þeim sem eigi vilja réttenda
men spiritually and invisibly for-those who not will rights
gæta eða sannra dóma, ef þeir setjask yfir mál manna.
keep or true judgments if they set-themselves over cases of-men

LVIII · SAINT LAURENCE AND STEPHANUS

Justice sold or bent by zeal is never unpunished: Stephanus, a judge in Athens, was contested after death by two troops of angels. Accused of taking land from Saint Laurence's church, he was pinched by the saint but forgiven at Justinus' prayer. Tarquinius himself cleared him of taking a horse as a bribe. Found guilty of freeing three condemned men, a deed many would think good, he was spared at the queen's intercession and sent back to live three years and make amends.

SON Réttlig eru þessi dœmi þeim mönnum, er annathvárt
Right are these examples for-those men who either
eru fégjarnir eða kappsfullir eða bæði.
are money-greedy or zeal-full or both
FATHER Þat skalt þú til víss vita, at hvervetna þar sem
That shall you for certain know that everywhere there where
réttendi verða við verði seld eða með ofkappi niðrfeld, þá er
rights become for price sold or with over-zeal felled-down then is
þat aldri hefndarlaust eða refsingar af guði, annathvárt
that never vengeance-less or punishment(-less) from God either
andliga eða líkamliga, ok eru þar enn ein dœmi til at sýna,
spiritually or bodily and are there still some examples to-it to show
ef vill. Einn ágætr borgarmaðr, er Stephanus var kallaðr,
if one-wishes One excellent burgher who Stephanus was called
í Athenis, hann var dómari yfir öllum þeim málum, er
in Athens he was judge over all those cases which

innan borgar gerðusk til; ekki var hann ok ranglátr maðr
within (the)-town happened to not was he also unjust man
kallaðr. Svá gerðisk til, at Stephanus lét líf sitt, ok kómu
called So happened to-it that Stephanus lost life his and came
í mót hánum tvinnir flokkar engla, aðrir þeir er hans
in against him two troops of-angels others those who his
máli vildu við hjálpa, en aðrir þeir er hánum gáfu margar
case would with help but others those who him gave many
sakar ok stórar, ok vildu leiða hann með sér til dauða.
charges and great and would lead him with themselves to death
Ok með því at þræta gerðisk millim þeirra, ok hvárgir
And with that that dispute arose between them and neither
vildu af láta, þá mælti einn engillinn, at þeir skyldu leiða
would off let then spoke one the-angel that they should lead
Stephanum fyrir kné dómaranum, ok skyldi dómr skilja
Stephanus before (the)-knee of-the-judge and should judgment part
þat mál millum þeirra. En er þeir kómu til dómsins,
that case between them But when they came to the-judgment
þá œptu sakaráberar hátt ok kváðusk hafa mikla sök
then cried accusers loud and said-of-themselves to-have great charge
á hendi Stephano, sögðu svá, at hann hafði tekit jörð
on hand of-Stephanus said so that he had taken land
frá kirkju hins helga Laurencii með röngum dómi. En
from (the)-church of-the holy Laurence with wrong judgment But
dómrinn svaraði því, at Laurencius skyldi ráða atkvæðum
the-judgment answered that that Laurence should rule words
um þat, er hann var ræntr. En á þeirri stundu er
about that which he was robbed But at that hour when
Laurencius gékk til at heyra þat, hversu þat mál var farit,
Laurence went to-it to hear that how that case was gone
þá mælti einn engillinn við Stephanum: „Hví kallar þú eigi
then spoke one the-angel to Stephanus Why call you not

nú hinn helga Justinum prest, er þú sœmdir svá, at þú
now the holy Justinus priest whom you honored so that you
lézt setja hans kapellu nær höll þinni, ok hefir þú hánum
let set his chapel near hall your and have you him
mikit þjónat í mörgum hlutum, ok væri hánum nú vel
much served in many things and were for-him now well
göranda at hjálpa nökkut at þínu máli í þessarri nauðsyn?“
to-be-done to help somewhat at your case in this need
Justinus kom í þann tíma, er þetta var fram flutt fyrir
Justinus came at that time when this was forth brought before
hinn helga Laurencium, ok at framborinni sök, þá spurði
the holy Laurence and at brought-forward charge then asked
Laurencius, hví Stephanus rænti hann ok dœmdi jörð undan
Laurence why Stephanus robbed him and judged land away-from
kirkju hans? Stephanus svaraði því, at hann dœmdi eigi
church his Stephanus answered that that he judged not
þann dóm rangan at vilja sínum, heldr hugði hann at þat
that judgment wrong by will his rather thought he that that
væri réttr dómr. Þá tók Laurencius í síðu Stephano ok
were right judgment Then took Laurence in side of-Stephanus and
klýpti afar fast. Þá bað Justinus fyrir hánum, ok bað
pinched exceedingly hard Then prayed Justinus for him and asked
Laurencium miskunna mál hans, hvárttveggja fyrir bœnar
Laurence to-have-mercy-on case his both for prayer
hans sakar, ok svá fyrir þær sakar at hann vissi eigi, at
his sake and so for those sakes that he knew not that
hann hefði rangan dóm dœmdan. En þat ætlaði Stephanus,
he had wrong judgment judged But that thought Stephanus
at meðan hinn helgi Laurencius hélt í síðu hánum, þóat
that while the holy Laurence held in side his though
hann þyldi eina pínsl jafnlanga hríð í helvíti, at hánum
he bore one torment equally-long while in hell that to-him

mundi eigi sárari kvöl þat vera, en hánum var klýping
would not sorer torment that be than to-him was (the)-pinching
Laurencii. En þegar er Justinus hafði beðit fyrir Stephano,
of-Laurence But as-soon as Justinus had prayed for Stephanus
þá lét Laurencius laust, ok fyrirgaf hánum þá sök.
then let Laurence loose and forgave him that charge
En þá er sakaráberar heyrðu þat, at þeir váru fallnir at því
But then when accusers heard that that they were fallen in that
máli, þá œptu þeir miklu hærra, ok kváðusk hafa meiri
case then cried they much higher and said-of-themselves to-have greater
sök á hendi Stephano. Þeir sögðu svá, at einn rúmverskr
charge on hand of-Stephanus They said so that one Roman
maðr, er Tarkvinus hét, var kominn til Athenis, ok með
man who Tarquinius was-called was come to Athens and with
því at hann var útlenzkr ok frændlauss þar kominn, þá
that that he was foreign and kinless there come then
þóttisk hann þurfa hjálpa Stephani um alla þá hluti, er
thought-himself he to-need help of-Stephanus about all those things which
hánum varðaði, með því at hann var dómari ok höfðingi yfir
him concerned with that that he was judge and chieftain over
allri borginni, ok þá Stephanus hest góðan af hánum, til
all the-town and received Stephanus horse good from him for
þess at hann skyldi halda hann til laga ok réttenda. En þá
that that he should hold him to laws and rights But then
kvað dómrinn svá at, at ef Stephanus hafði selt réttendi við
said the-judgment so to-it that if Stephanus had sold rights for
verði, at hann skyldi sjálfr fylgja til glatanar þeim fjárhlut.
price that he should himself follow to perdition that wealth
En þá er leitat var við Stephanum, hvárt sú sök var
But then when sought was with Stephanus whether that charge was
sönn eða eigi, þá níkvæddi hann þessarri sök, ok kvazk
true or not then denied he this charge and said-of-himself

aldrigi muna, at hann hafi fé tekit í dómi eða gjöf. En
never remember that he have money taken in judgment or gift But
með því at Stephanus nítti sökinni, þá var svá boðit, at
with that that Stephanus denied the-charge then was so bidden that
Tarkvinus skyldi þar koma ok bera sjálfr mál þat or boga.
Tarquinius should there come and bear himself case that out-of bow
En þá er Tarkvinus kom, þá sagði hann svá, at sú sök
But then when Tarquinius came then said he so that that charge
var eigi sönn á hendi Stephano, þvíat hann sagði svá, at
was not true on hand of-Stephanus because he said so that
Stephanus tók aldri fé til dóms, svá at hann vissi; „en
Stephanus took never money for judgment so that he knew but
með því at ek var þar kominn útlendr“, sagði Tarkvinus, „Þá
with that that I was there come foreign said Tarquinius Then
þóttumk ek þurfa vináttu slíks manns, ok gaf ek hánum
thought-myself I to-need (the)-friendship of-such man and gave I him
hest minn eptir vilja mínum, en eigi eptir beizlu
horse my according-to will my but not according-to asking
hans.“ Þá er sakaráberar heyrðu þat, at þeir mundu fallnir
his Then when accusers heard that that they would fallen
vera at þeirri sök, þá œptu þeir miklu hærra, ok kváðusk
be in that charge then cried they much higher and said-of-themselves
hafa miklu meiri sök á hendi hánum en hvárgi var
to-have much greater charge on hand his than neither was
þessarra. Þeir sögðu svá, at Stephanus hafði tekna þrjá menn
of-these They said so that Stephanus had taken three men
undan dauða með ofkappi móti réttendum, er hvártveggja
from-under death with over-zeal against rights whom both
höfðu bitit lög ok réttendi, ok svá dómar réttir. Þá er
had bitten laws and rights and so judgments right Then when
Stephanus var atspurðr, ef hann væri sannr at þeirri sök, þá
Stephanus was asked if he were proven in that charge then

gékk hann í gegn, at hann hafði mennina frelsta undan
owned he up to-it that he had the-men freed from-under
dauða, ok kvazk jafnan þess iðrazk hafa, at hann frelsti
death and said-of-himself always of-that repented to-have that he freed
þá með ofkappi móti réttendum. Þá kvað dómr svá, at
them with over-zeal against rights Then said judgment so that
ef hann frelsti þá undan dauða með ofkappi, er réttendi
if he freed them from-under death with over-zeal whom rights
hafði dœmt til dauða, at hann skyldi sjálfr þola dauða fyrir,
had judged to death that he should himself bear death for-it
nema hann bœtti þar sem hann braut. Þá bað Justinus
unless he amended there where he broke Then asked Justinus
prestr hinn helga Laurencium, at hann skyldi hjálpa við
priest the holy Laurence that he should help with
máli hans, með því at hann hafði fyrirgefit hánum þá sök,
case his with that that he had forgiven him that charge
er hann hafði á hendi hánum, ok engi sök hafði önnur
which he had on hand his and no charge had other
sönn orðit á höndum hánum, nema sú ein, er þá var
true become on hands his except that one which then was
um rœtt. Þá géngu þeir Laurencius ok Justinus skyndiliga
about talked Then went they Laurence and Justinus quickly
til dróttningarinnar ok féllu til fóta henni, ok báðu hana
to the-queen and fell to feet her and asked her
beiðask þeirrar miskunnar, at dómi væri svá miðlat, at
to-ask that mercy that judgment were so tempered that
Stephano væri þar lofat at bœta, sem brotit var. En þegar
to-Stephanus were there permitted to amend where broken was But as-soon-as
dróttningin bað fyrir Stephano, þá var þat lofat sem hon
the-queen prayed for Stephanus then was that permitted which she
bað. Því næst var Stephanus leiddr aptr til Athenis, ok reis
asked That next was Stephanus led back to Athens and rose

upp á þeirri stundu, er líkamr hans var til graftar ætlaðr
up at that hour when body his was for burial intended
at flytja, ok lifði þrjá vetr síðan, ok bœtti sök þessa
to carry and lived three winters afterward and amended charge this
eptir ráði byskups þess, er yfir þeirri borg var.
according-to (the)-counsel of-bishop that who over that town was
Slík eru mörg dœmi til, ef þat þœtti nauðsyn at leiða fleiri
Such are many examples to-it if that would-seem need to lead more
dœmi í þessa rœðu, ok mátt þú nú þat marka eptir
examples into this talk and may you now that mark according-to
því sem ek gat fyrr í orði fyrir þér, at allvandliga verðr
that which I mentioned before in word before you that very-carefully becomes
dómanna gætt, þeirra sem hér verða dœmdir, ok er því mikit
the-judgments heeded those which here become judged and is therefore much
undir, at vel væri athugt þeim, er yfir setjask dómana, at
under-it that well were considered by-those who over set-themselves the-judgments that
með réttum atkvæðum væri dœmdir ok svá uppsagðir; fyrir
with right words were judged and so pronounced for
því at þú heyrðir, hversu mjök dómarnir váru vandaðir fyrir
that that you heard how much the-judgments were made-difficult for
syni konungsins þess, er skálirnar váru upphaldnar fyrir,
(the)-son of-the-king that who the-scales were held-up before
ok þær urðu aldri jafnvægar, ok dauði hánum fyrirrætlaðr, ef
and they became never equal-weighing and death for-him intended if
hann lyki öðrum dómum upp, en skálirnar yrði jafnvægar.
he opened other judgments up than the-scales became equal-weighing
Svá heyrðir þú ok, hversu guð hefndi konunginum ok svá
So heard you also how God avenged-on the-king and so
staðinum Temere, fyrir þat at konungrinn hafði hallat réttum
the-place Temere for that that the-king had inclined right
dómi; þóat fólkit hefði eigi átrúnað réttan til guðs, þá
judgment though the-folk had not belief right toward God then

hefndi hann þó þess, þvíat fólkit trúði því, at rangr dómr
avenged he yet that because the-folk believed that that wrong judgment
mundi aldri koma af Temere. En í þessum síðustum dœmum
would never come from Temere But in these last examples
er þú heyrðir hversu Stephanus var krafðr skynsemdar um
which you heard how Stephanus was demanded reason about
alla þá dóma, er hann hafði dœmda, ok gegndi sök fyrir
all those judgments which he had judged and faced charge for
þat, at hann þá gjöf af vin sínum; en þar hlaut hann
that that he received gift from friend his but there got he
dauðadóm fyrir þat, at hann frelsti menn undan dauða, ok
death-judgment for that that he freed men from-under death and
mundu þat margir ætla, at þat væri heldr gott verk en ilt.
would that many think that that were rather good work than evil

LIX · FOUR THINGS TO SHUT OUT

The son asks when judgments should be harsh and when lenient. The father bids the judge shut out greed, enmity, zeal, and friendship. He should spare one driven to a crime, one who errs unknowingly, or one who steals for hunger, and judge harshly those who act from zeal, vainglory, or greed. A king who must kill should grieve and act from love of the living, and, as an emperor decreed, a man under the king's anger whose guilt is not plain should be kept forty days before judgment.

SON Þess vandara lízk mér þeirra mál, er yfir dóma eru
The more-difficult seems to-me their case who over judgments are
skipaðir, er ek heyri slík dœmi fleiri. Fyrir því vil ek biðja
appointed as I hear such examples more For that will I ask
yðr, at þér lúkit upp nökkurri grein þeirri fyrir mér,
you that you open up some distinction that before me

at þat megi skilja, hvar er dómar eigu stríðir at vera,
that it may-one understand where that judgments ought harsh to be
ok hvar þeir skulu vægiligri fara.
and where they shall more-leniently go
FATHER Þat er mér vant at skilja með ákveðnum orðum:
That is to-me difficult to understand with appointed words
en allir dómar verða þó nökkurar orlausnir hafa, þeir er
but all judgments must yet some answers have those which
fyrir þá menn verða bornir, er yfir dóma eru skipaðir.
before those men become borne who over judgments are appointed
En þann hlut ætla ek þá helzt undan frjálsa stórum sökum
But that thing think I them most from free great charges
við guð, at þeir dœmi sem þeir kunnu réttast; þvíat þat
toward God that they judge as they can most-rightly because that
frjálsti Stephanum undan þeirri sök, at hann hafði dœmt
freed Stephanus from that charge that he had judged
jörð undan kirkju hins helga Laurencii, at hann vissi eigi,
land away-from (the)-church of-the holy Laurence that he knew not
at hann hafði rangt dœmt, ok varð hann þó eigi með öllu
that he had wrongly judged and became he yet not with all
refsingarlauss, en þó tók hann mörgum hlut minni refsing,
punishment-less but yet took he by-many part lesser punishment
en hann mundi taka, ef hann vissi, at hann hefði rangt
than he would take if he knew that he had wrongly
dœmt. Nú eru þeir fjórir hlutir, er hann skal úti byrgja,
judged Now are those four things which he shall outside shut
er hann gengr í dómhús, ok láta aldri koma innan dura
when he goes into judgment-house and let never come inside doors
eða í dómsæti með sér. Einn hlutr er fégirni, annarr er
or into judgment-seat with himself One thing is money-greed (the)-second is
fjándskapr, þriði er kapp, fjórði er vinátta. Þvíat þú heyrðir,
enmity third is zeal fourth is friendship Because you heard

at Stephanus var krafðr skynsemdar fyrir þat, at hann þá
that Stephanus was demanded account for that that he received
eigi til þess gjöf af Tarkvino, at hann skyldi fyrir fjár
not for that gift from Tarquinius that he should for money's
sakar halda hann til réttenda. Ok kvað svá dómr, at ef hann
sake hold him to rights And said so judgment that if he
hefði fé tekit fyrir réttendi, at hann skyldi þeim fjárhlut
had money taken for rights that he should that wealth
fylgja til glatanar. Svá heyrðir þú ok þat, at hann var dœmdr
follow to perdition So heard you also that that he was judged
til dauða fyrir þat, at hann tók menn undan dauða með
to death for that that he took men from-under death with
ofkappi móti réttendum. Þat heyrðir þú ok í hinum fyrrum
over-zeal against rights That heard you also in the former
dœmum, at konungrinn í Temere ok svá staðrinn fórsk fyrir
examples that the-king in Temere and so the-place perished for
þat, at hann hallaði réttum dómi, fyrir því at hann hafði
that that he inclined right judgment for that that he had
vináttu við aðra, en við aðra mikinn fjándskap. Nú þurfu
friendship toward some but toward others great enmity Now need
fyrir þær sakar þessir hlutir úti vera byrgðir, at hvergi sé
for those sakes these things outside be shut that nowhere be
réttum dómi hallat fyrir einnahverra þessarra hluta sakar.
right judgment inclined for some of-these things' sake
En þar er þú spurðir at því, hvar dómum skal vægja
But there where you asked about that where with-judgments shall-one spare
eða hvar þeir skulu stríðir vera, þá er þat nú skýranda
or where they shall harsh be then is that now to-be-explained
með nökkurum orðum; ok skal þat mjök hugleiða, hver
with some words and shall-one that much ponder what
atvik eru sakarinnar þess manns, er fyrir sök verðr.
circumstances are of-the-charge of-that man who for charge becomes

Verðr sá maðr fyrir sök, er gjarna vildi spakr vera, ok
Becomes that man for charge who gladly would peaceable be and
þröngvir hánum ágirnd ok ofkapp annars til úspektar, ok
presses him (the)-greed and over-zeal of-another to disorder and
þykkir hánum sök sín ill ok vill gjarna yfirbœta, þá á
seems to-him charge his ill and will gladly amend then ought
þar dómum at vægja um þess manns mál, er svá er
there with-judgments to spare about that man's case who so is
atlotinn. Svá ok ef sá maðr görir lögbrot, er fáfróðr er
circumstanced So also if that man does law-break who ignorant is
ok veit eigi, þóat hann göri lögbrot, ok vildi eigi þat verk
and knows not though he do law-break and would not that work
gört hafa, ef hann vissi at þat væri lögbrot, þá er þar
done have if he knew that it were law-break then is there
enn dómum at vægja. En þóat þær sakir verði til, er
still with-judgments to spare But though those charges happen to-it which
ljótastar eru millim manna, annathvárt rán eða stuldir, þá
ugliest are between men either robbery or thefts then
er þat enn lítanda, hversu sök berr til handa. Ef maðr
is that still to-be-looked-at how (the)-charge bears to hand If a-man
verðr staddr í þessarri nauðsyn, at hann fær eigi mat at
becomes placed in this need that he gets not food to
þiggja ok eigi at kaupa, ok eigi má hann vinna, en hungr
receive and not to buy and not may he work but hunger
ok líkamlig náttúra þröngvir hánum, svá at hann má eigi
and bodily nature presses him so that he may not
þola, þá eigu dómar at vægja hánum, þóat hann sé tekinn
bear then ought judgments to spare him though he be taken
í þessarri sök; ok hvarvetna þar sem nauðsynjar þröngva
in this charge and everywhere there where needs press
manni til sekta eða lögbrota, þá er þar dómum at vægja.
a-man to guilts or law-breaks then is there with-judgments to spare

En ef þeir menn verða fyrir sökum, er þat gera fyrir kapps
But if those men become for charges who that do for zeal's
sakar eða frægðar sakar, eða sinku eða ágirndar, þá eigu
sake or fame's sake or stinginess or greed then ought
þar dómar stríðir at vera, ok skal þó gæta í öllum
there judgments harsh to be and shall-one yet keep in all
dómum lands laga ok réttenda; en í slíkum stöðum skulu
judgments land's laws and rights but in such places shall
dómar bíta sem stríðast megu eptir lögum, sem nú
judgments bite as harshest may according-to laws as now
höfum vér rætt; en í hinum stöðum sem fyrr rœddum
have we talked but in those places which before talked
vit um, þá á þar sú lagaskipan at vera, at virða svá
we-two about then ought there that law-arrangement to be to value so
nauðsyn, sem til handa hefir borit, ok vægja eptir því
need as to hand has borne and spare according-to that
dómum, sem nauðsynjar virðask miklar til hafa gengit.
with-judgments as needs seem great to-it to-have gone
En ef konungr eða einnhverr landshöfðingi, sá er dómari
But if (the)-king or some land-chieftain that-one who judge
er eða refsingarmaðr, gerir refsingar með manndrápum, þá
is or punisher does punishments with man-slayings then
skal hann sér jafnan láta þykkja mikit fyrir, ok harma
shall he to-himself always let seem much for-it and grieve-at
dauða hins í hugþokka sínum ok úfarar; ok skal
(the)-death of-the-other in mind his and misfortunes and shall
hann þó eigi svá fyrir sér sjá, at hann drepr hinn fyrir
he yet not so for himself look that he kills the-other for
grimmleiks sakar sjálfs síns, eða reiði eða hatrs við þann
fierceness' sake of-self his or anger or hatred toward that-one
er deyr; heldr drepr hann sakar réttrar refsingar ok ástar
who dies rather kills he for-sake-of right punishment and love's

sakar við hina, er eptir lifa, þvíat hann vill, at þeir lifi í
sake toward those who after live because he wishes that they live in
því meira frjálsi eptir ok betra lífi, er þeir sjá úfarar
the more freedom after and better life when they see (the)-misfortunes
hinna ok dauða; ok vill hann, at sú hræzla ok agi,
of-the-others and death and wishes he that that fear and discipline
er þeir taka af annars úförum, stjórni þeim til réttlætis
which they take from another's misfortunes steer them to righteousness
ok góðra siða, þeim sem eigi mátti náttúra til stjórna
and good customs those whom not might nature to steer
fyrir sakar ofmikillar yfirgirndar eða skamsýnis. Þat setti
for sake of-too-great covetousness or short-sightedness That set
einn maðr ágætr, dýrligr keisari ok réttlátr, í konungligri
one man excellent glorious emperor and righteous in kingly
refsing, at ef konungr yrði einumhverjum manni svá reiðr,
punishment that if a-king became with-some man so angry
at hann ætlaði hánum bana, ok væri eigi svá opinberar
that he intended him death and were not so open
sakar á hendi hánum, at þær dœmdi hánum þegar með
charges on hand his that they judged him at-once with
réttdœmi bráðan dauða, þá skyldi þann mann varðveita í
right-judgment sudden death then should-one that man keep in
konungs garði eða í gæzlu 40 daga, áðr en ályktardómr
king's yard or in keeping 40 days before than conclusion-judgment
félli á mál hans; ok þat væri sannligast, at þetta lögmál
fell on case his and that were truest that this law
varðveitti allir konungar til þess, at þeir mætti svá sína
kept all kings for that that they might so their
dóma með réttlæti ok skynsemdar áliti gera, en eigi
judgments with righteousness and reason's consideration make but not
eptir bráðri reiði. En ef sá maðr verðr fyrir sök, er
according-to sudden anger But if that man becomes for charge whom

lög ok réttendi dœma hánum fjárlát en eigi dauða, þá
laws and rights judge for-him wealth-loss but not death then
á konungr eða sá höfðingi, er lands gætir, at taka fé
ought (the)-king or that chieftain who land guards to take wealth
hans fyrir réttrar refsingar sakar ok lands laga, en eigi fyrir
his for right punishment's sake and land's laws' but not for
fésníkni sakar eða sinku. Nú ef slíkra hluta verðr vel
money-grabbing's sake or stinginess Now if such things become well
gætt allra, sem nú höfum vér um rœtt, þá ætla ek þá sízt
kept all which now have we about talked then think I them least
eiga stórsaka ván af guði, er yfir dóma eru skipaðir.
have of-great-charges expectation from God who over judgments are appointed

LX · MOSES' ANGER

The son says sparing a man in anger needs great temper, since even Moses, who broke the tablets and killed many, and David, who had the messenger of Saul's death killed at once, could not restrain their anger. The father answers that the forty days are for men whose guilt is not open, and that Moses knew God's anger against the people and punished from love, not envy. Punishment from envy is manslaughter; punishment from love and right is a holy work.

SON Þat er alllíkligt, at þat land hafi góða stjórn, er
That is very-likely that that land have good governance where
sá höfðingi verðr yfirskipaðr, er þessarra hluta gætir vel,
that chieftain becomes over-appointed who these things keeps well
ok kann fólkit at virða með réttendum hans stjórn. En þó
and knows the-folk to value with rights his governance But yet
vil ek enn með leyfi spyrja þeirra hluta, er mik forvitnar
will I still with leave ask of-those things which me make-curious
um réttlæti dóma. Þér gátut þess, er mér þykkir
about (the)-righteousness of-judgments You mentioned that which to-me seems

allíkt vera, at þat væri góð lögrétta, er keisarinn gaf
very-likely to-be that that were good law-amendment which the-emperor gave
um konungliga refsing, at hann gæfi þeim manni 40 daga
about kingly punishment that he gave to-that man 40 days'
frest í konungs varðveizlu, er fyrir konungs reiði verðr,
respite in king's keeping who for king's anger becomes
at eigi félli ofbráðr dómr á mál hans með ákafligri reiði,
that not fell too-sudden judgment on case his with fierce anger
ok virðisk mér svá sem þar muni þurfa mikit skapgœði við
and seems to-me so as-if there will need great good-temper with
þat, ef maðr skal þyrma manni í reiði sinni. En jafnréttvíss
that if a-man shall spare a-man in anger his But equally-righteous
maðr sem Moyses var ok heilagr, þá fékk hann eigi stilt
man as Moses was and holy then got he not restrained
reiði sinni, þá er hann kom til Israels fólks reiðr, eptir
anger his then when he came to Israel's folk angry according-to
því sem mér er sagt ífrá, at hann varð svá ákafliga reiðr,
that which to-me is told from-it that he became so fiercely angry
at steinspjöld þau sem hann hafði í fangi sér, ok sjálfr guð
that stone-tablets those which he had in arms his and himself God
hafði ritat með sínum fingrum með 10 boðorðum lögmála
had written with his fingers with 10 commands of-laws
sinna, þá rak Moyses þau við steini ok braut öll í sundr í
his then struck Moses them against stone and broke all in pieces in
bræði sinni, ok hljóp þegar til vápna, ok allir þeir er hánum
rage his and ran at-once to weapons and all those who him
fylgja; ok drap á þeim degi mörg hundruð manna. Svá hefi
follow and killed on that day many hundreds of-men So have
ek ok þat heyrt, at sá maðr er kom or bardaganum,
I also that heard that that man who came out-of the-battle
þeim er Saul féll í, ok sagði þau tíðendi at Saul var dauðr,
that which Saul fell in and told those tidings that Saul was dead

þá bauð David í bráðri reiði sinni, at drepa skyldi þann
then bade David in sudden anger his that kill should-one that
mann þegar, en eigi lét hann varðveita hann til umræða.
man at-once but not let he keep him for discussions
FATHER Minnstu þess, er ek gat fyrir þér í fyrra
Remember-you that which I mentioned before you in (the)-former
orði, at þeim mönnum eru þau lög skipuð, er eigi verða
word that for-those men are those laws appointed who not become
fyrir svá opinberum sökum, at réttdœmi dœmir þeim bráðan
for so open charges that right-judgment judges them sudden
dauða. En Moyses skildisk svá við guð, at hann vissi reiði
death But Moses parted so with God that he knew (the)-anger
hans við alt Israels fólk, ok drýgði hann ástarverk en eigi
his toward all Israel's folk and committed he love's-work but not
öfundar, þá er hann sneri þeim af villu ok illum siðum
envy's then when he turned them from error and evil customs
með þessarri refsing; ok sagða ek þér, at konungr skyldi gera
with this punishment and told I you that (the)-king should do
í sinni refsing fyrir ástar sakar en eigi öfundar; fyrir því
in his punishment for love's sake but not envy's for that
at hver sú refsing, er gör verðr fyrir öfundar sakar, þá er
that each that punishment which done becomes for envy's sake then is
þat manndráp, en hver sú refsing er gör verðr fyrir ástar
that man-slaying but each that punishment which done becomes for love's
sakar ok réttenda, þá er þat heilagt verk en eigi manndráp.
sake and rights' then is that holy work but not man-slaying

The son asks how killing can be a good and loving work. The father answers that Moses' punishment hallowed the hands of those who struck, turned the survivors to repentance, and cleansed the slain, who suffered briefly rather than forever. A king's just punishment restrains the lawless and protects the good, moves the condemned to repent, and spares them eternal pain; and Saul lost his kingdom for punishing too little.

SON Nú vil ek inniliga spyrja yðr með leyfi um dóma. Þat
Now will I closely ask you with leave about judgments That
munu fáir menn láta skiljask sér, at þat sé gott verk
will few men let be-understood to-themselves that that be good work
ok heilagt ok ástsemdarverk, at menn sé drepnir, ok þarf
and holy and love's-work that men be killed and need
ek þess ok margr annarr út ífrá, at þér skýrit þat með
I of-that and many another out from that you explain that with
nökkurum orðum, at þat verk sé gott ok réttligt, at drepa
some words that that work be good and rightful to kill
menn í réttri refsing, þvíat allir hógværir menn ok friðsamir
men in right punishment because all gentle men and peaceable
styggjask mjök við manndráp ok þykkja ill vera ok syndsamlig.
shy much at man-slaying and seem ill to-be and sinful
FATHER Þar eru opinber skynsemdarsvör til, sem nú rœddum
There are open reason-answers to-it as now talked
vit um, er Moyses var. Jafnheilagr maðr ok réttvíss sem
we-two about where Moses was Equally-holy man and righteous as
hann var ok allskostar hógværr, ef hann vissi, at refsing
he was and in-all-respects gentle if he knew that punishment
hans væri jafnsyndlig sem annat manndráp, þá gerði hann
his were equally-sinful as other man-slaying then did he
eigi þat. En ef hann væri svá bráðr í stríðri reiði, at hann
not that But if he were so sudden in harsh anger that he

hefði þetta verk gört meir fyrir bræði sakar en réttenda,
had this work done more for rage's sake than rights'
þá mundi guðs réttdœmi hafa hefnt hánum með stríðri
then would God's right-judgment have avenged-on him with harsh
refsing ok harðri hefnd, fyrir jafnmikit manndráp sem
punishment and hard vengeance for equally-great man-slaying as
hann gerði; þvíat Moyses bauð hverjum manni þeim, er
he did because Moses bade each man that who
til vápna tók með hánum, at engi skyldi þyrma hvárki
to weapons took with him that no-one should spare neither
feðr né brœðr eða öðrum frændum sínum, er hann væri í
father nor brother or other kinsmen his if he were in
því verki staddr, sem guð var þeim reiðr orðinn fyrir. Ok
that work placed which God was with-them angry become for And
þrefaldaðisk réttlæti Moyses í þessarri refsing, þvíat þeir
tripled-itself (the)-righteousness of-Moses in this punishment because they
helguðu hendr sínar, er með Moysi váru í refsinginni, í
hallowed hands their who with Moses were in the-punishment in
blóði hinna, er drepnir váru, þvíat þeir drýgðu hlýðni við
(the)-blood of-those who killed were because they committed obedience toward
höfðingja sinn ok gæzlu heilagra laga í verki sínu; en þeir
chieftain their and keeping of-holy laws in work their but those
er lifnuðu, iðruðusk lögbrota ok snerusk síðan til yfirbóta
who lived repented law-breaks and turned afterward to amends
fyrir brotit lögmál; en þeir er drepnir váru, hreinsuðusk í
for broken law but those who killed were were-cleansed in
sinni iðran ok pínsl, er þeir þoldu í dauða sínum, ok
their repentance and torment which they bore in death their and
var þeim miklu betra at þola skamma kvöl í dauða sínum
was to-them much better to bear short torment in death their
en langa pínsl í helvíti. Ok með hinum sama hætti eru
than long torture in hell And in the same manner are

nú konunga refsingar, þvíat konungr hreinsar sik í blóði
now kings' punishments because (the)-king cleanses himself in (the)-blood
ranglátra, ef hann drepr þá í réttri refsing ok gæzlu
of-unjust if he kills them in right punishment and keeping
heilagra laga. En margir eru þeir siðarmenn, er hræðask
of-holy laws But many are those mannered-men who fear
refsing ok mundu göra lögbrot, ef þeir hefði engan aga
punishment and would do law-break if they had no discipline
af konungs refsing. En hinn er þolir refsingardóm, þá
from king's punishment But he who bears punishment-judgment then
gengr hann til skripta, ok iðrask hann þá misgerninga
goes he to shrift and repents he then misdeeds
sinna, er hann mundi enga iðran taka, ef hann sæi eigi
his which he would no repentance take if he saw not
þar bráðan dauða sér búinn vera; ok verðr hann hólpinn
there sudden death for-him prepared to-be and becomes he saved
af iðran ok kvöl, er hann þolir í dauða sínum; ok
by repentance and torment which he bears in death his and
er hánum betra hér at taka skjótar hefndir en kvöl ok
is to-him better here to take quick vengeances than torment and
pínsl utan enda; þvíat eigi hefnir guð tysvar hins sama. Ok
torture without end because not avenges God twice the same And
verðr fyrir því konungs refsing gott verk ok ástsemdarverk
becomes for that king's punishment good work and love's-work
við alla þá, sem undir hánum eru, at hann vill, at
toward all those who under him are that he wishes that
sá er fyrir refsingum verðr, taki hér skamma pínsl fyrir
that-one who for punishments becomes take here short torture for
illskur sínar, heldr en hann sé eilífliga týndr annars
wickednesses his rather than he be eternally lost of-(the)-other
heims. Ok frjálsar hann hinn réttláta ok hinn spaka með
world And frees he the righteous and the wise with

ástsemd undan ágirnd ok illsku hins úspaka. Svá er ok
love from (the)-greed and wickedness of-the unwise So is also
þat markanda, at refsing er gott verk, ef hon er gör
that to-be-marked that punishment is good work if it is done
eptir réttdœmi; þvíat Saul konungr var fyrir þat afsagðr
according-to right-judgment because Saul (the)-king was for that deposed
ríki sínu, at hann refsti eigi eptir því sem guð
from-realm his that he punished not according-to that which God
bauð hánum, þá er hann fór í Amalech ok Amorea ríki.
bade him then when he went into Amalek and Amorites' realm

LXII · DAVID'S JUDGMENTS

The son asks why David killed the man who told him of Saul's death. The father answers that the man claimed to have killed the Lord's anointed at Saul's own request and was judged by his own words, though he then wished to take them back. David likewise had the murderers of Ishbosheth killed for betraying their lord, cutting off their hands and feet and hanging them by a pool at Hebron.

SON Nú vil ek þess spyrja yðr, hví David drap þann mann,
Now will I of-that ask you why David killed that man
er vit rœddum fyrst um, er hánum sagði þau tíðendi,
whom we-two talked first about who him told those tidings
at Saul var fallinn, ok hvárt þat var réttdœmi, at hann
that Saul was fallen and whether that was right-judgment that he
drap hann, eða var þat af bráðri reiði?
killed him or was that from sudden anger
FATHER Sá er sagt hafði þau tíðendi, þá spurði David, hví
He who told had those tidings then asked David why
hann vissi þat? en sá kvazk hafa borit vápn á Saul
he knew that but he said-of-himself to-have borne weapons on Saul

eptir bœn sjálfs hans. En þá er David heyrði þetta,
at (the)-prayer of-self his But then when David heard this
sá svaraði hann svá: „Vesall ert þú þess, at þú þorðir
that answered he so Wretched are you for-that that you dared
at leggja hendr á krist dróttins, ok er þér betra hér
to lay hands on (the)-anointed of-(the)-Lord and is to-you better here
at taka skjóta hefnd heldr en sjá sök fylgi þér til helvítis
to take quick vengeance rather than this charge follow you to hell
eilífliga.“ Því næst bauð David at drepa skyldi þann mann.
eternally That next bade David to kill should-one that man
En er hinn sá, at hánum mundi dauði ætlaðr vera, þar
But when he saw that to-him would death intended be there
sem hann hugði, at hánum mundi fagnaðr búinn fyrir sín
where he thought that for-him would welcome prepared for his
tíðendi ok góðar gjafir, þá iðraðisk hann, at hann hafði
tidings and good gifts then repented he that he had
logit sök á hönd sér, ok vildi gjarna aptr kippa, ef hann
lied charge on hand his and would gladly back snatch if he
mætti, orðum sínum; en David svaraði svá: „Vitni sjálfs
might words his but David answered so (The)-witness of-self
þíns dœmir þik, en eigi ek; þvíat þú sagðir á hendr þér
your judges you but not I because you said on hands you
sjálfum, at þú hafðir drepit krist guðs.“ Enn eru þvílík
self that you had killed (the)-anointed of-God Still are such
önnur dœmi þeir menn, er drápu Ysboseth son Sauls, ok
other examples those men who killed Ishbosheth son of-Saul and
hugðusk mundu taka vináttu af Davidi fyrir þat, ok
thought-themselves would take friendship from David for that and
fóru til Davids ok sögðu hánum, at þeir höfðu drepit úvin
went to David and told him that they had killed enemy
hans, þann er upp vildi reisask móti hánum ok hans ríki.
his that-one who up would raise-himself against him and his realm

En þá er David heyrði þessi tíðendi, þá svaraði hann þessa
But then when David heard these tidings then answered he this
leið: „Veslir erut þit fyrir verki, at þit dráput herra
way Wretched are you-two for (the)-work that you-two killed lord
ykkarn, þar sem þit várut menn Ysboseths, ok hafi þit
your-two's there where you-two were men of-Ishbosheth and have you-two
gört dróttinsvik ok níðingsverk, þar sem þit lögðut hendr
done lord-treachery and villain's-deed there where you-two laid hands
á herra ykkrum, eigi sem þit værit mínir menn ok gerði
on lord your-two's not as-if you-two were my men and did
þit þat í trúnaði við mik. Nú er ykkr nauðsyn at
you-two that in trust toward me Now is for-you-two need to
taka bráða hefnd ok skjóta refsing, at sjá sök dragi ykkr
take sudden vengeance and quick punishment that this charge draw you-two
eigi til eilífra kvala." Því næst bauð David, at af skyldi
not to eternal torments That next bade David that off should-one
höggva þeim bæði hendr ok fœtr, ok lét síðan hengja
hew them both hands and feet and let afterward hang
þá upp við vatnstjörn eina í stað þeim er Ebron heitir.
them up by water-pool one in place that which Hebron is-called

LXIII · SAUL AND DAVID

The son asks why Saul lost his kingdom for sparing Amalek while David was forgiven adultery and murder. The father answers that disobedience to God is the heavier charge, and Saul lied that he had spared the spoil for sacrifice. David sinned from frailty, repented at once, and was still punished: Bathsheba's child died, God refused his temple, and Absalom shamed him. God saw Saul's greed and pride, shown later when he tried to kill David, slaughtered the priests of Nob, and hunted him. David twice spared Saul, mourned him and Jonathan, wept for Absalom, and offered his own neck for his people.

SON Enn vil ek til hætta at spyrja yðr eina spurning um
Still will I to-it venture to ask you one question about
þá hluti, er mér þykki guð hafa undarliga dómum snúit,
those things which to-me seems God to-have wondrously judgments turned
ok vil ek því helzt spyrja, at mér skiljask þessir hlutir
and will I that most ask that to-me are-understood these things
varla, hver grein ok atsvif hafa verit í skilning
hardly what distinction and circumstances have been in (the)-understanding
þessarra dóma, er nú vil ek eptir spyrja. Þér gátut fyrr
of-these judgments which now will I after ask You mentioned before
í rœðu yðarri, at guð kipti því ríki frá Sauli konungi,
in talk your that God snatched that realm from Saul (the)-king
at hann var ofvæginn í manndrápi, ok mundu þat margir
that he was too-lenient in man-slaying and would that many
menn ætla, at þat væri eigi mikit illvirki; þvíat kostr mundi
men think that that were not great evil-deed because choice would
vera at drepa yfrit marga, ef þat þœtti betra verk vera en
be to kill amply many if that would-seem better work to-be than
lifa láta. En hánum féll þó svá þungliga sú sök, at guð
live let But to-him fell yet so heavily that charge that God
kvazk iðrask þess, at hann hafði kosit Saul til konungs
said-of-himself to-repent of-that that he had chosen Saul to king
yfir fólk sitt, ok hét því þegar, sem hann efndi síðan,
over folk his and promised that at-once as he fulfilled afterward
at konungdómr skyldi aldri ganga lengra í hans ætt, ok
that kingship should never go further in his family and
kaus þegar annan, meðan Saul lifði, þann er konungr
chose at-once another while Saul lived that-one who king
skyldi vera eptir hans daga. En þessi er sú sök, er David
should be after his days But this is that charge which David
féll í síðan hann varð konungr, er eigi mundi þykkja
fell into after he became king which not would seem

minni at at hyggja, at hann hóraði konu Urie riddara
less at to consider that he lay-with (the)-wife of-Uriah knight
síns, góðs manns ok tryggs, en síðan réð hann banaráð
his good man and trusty but afterward contrived he death-plot
sjálfum hánum, eigi fyrir réttar sakar, heldr fyrir því at
himself to-him not for right charges rather for that that
hann vildi hafa konu hans. En síðan Nathan bar upp þessa
he would have wife his But after Nathan bore up this
sök fyrir David ok hann gékk í gögn, þá var hánum
charge before David and he owned up to-it then was to-him
þegar fyrirgefit, ok var allnær sem staðfestisk ríki hans
at-once forgiven and was very-nearly as-if was-confirmed realm his
meir eptir þat en áðr var. Ok veit ek eigi, hvárt meiri
more after that than before was And know I not whether greater
var sökin, at drepa saklausan mann ok hóra konu hans,
was the-charge to kill guiltless man and lie-with wife his
eða gefa þeim líf, er sakafullr var? Nú munu svá margir
or give to-him life who guilty was Now will so many
menn skilja, þeir er eigi kunnu grein á, at guð hafi
men understand those who not know distinction on-it that God have
elskat meir David en Saul, ok hafi þat tilgengit, at Davidi
loved more David than Saul and have that gone-to that to-David
varð léttari sín sök. En fyrir því at guð dœmir alla hluti
became lighter his charge But for that that God judges all things
eptir réttendum en eigi eptir mismuna, þá mun þat
according-to rights but not according-to partiality then will that
synd vera, at menn skilja eigi þessa hluti rétt, ok mun
sin be that men understand not these things right and will
þat betr vera, at þér skilit þetta með nökkurum orðum, ef
that better be that you explain this with some words if
yðr þykki ek eigi til heimskliga spyrja. Þat kann ok at vera,
to-you seems I not too foolishly ask That can also to be

at stórhöfðingjar, þeir sem yfir dóma eru skipaðir, megi
that great-chieftains those who over judgments are appointed may
því betri skilning hér af taka, at þetta sé inniliga skilat.
the better understanding here from take that this be closely explained
FATHER Svá berr þessarri spurning til, at hana mun verða með
So bears to-this question to-it that it will must with
löngum rœðum inna, ef hana skal vel skilja. En með því
long talks tell if it shall-one well understand But with that
at spurt er, þá vil ek gjarna þessa rœðu inna, eptir því
that asked is then will I gladly this talk tell according-to that
sem ek kann, ok þó sem ek má skemst, ok þarf nú þess
which I can and yet as I may shortest and need now of-that
at minnask, sem ek gat í fyrri rœðu, þá er vit
to remember which I mentioned in (the)-former talk then when we-two
rœddum um dóma, hvar þeir skyldu stríðir vera ok hvar
talked about judgments where they should harsh be and where
þeir skyldu vera linari, ok gat ek þess fyrir þér, at ef
they should be softer and mentioned I that before you that if
góðr maðr ok spakr félli í sök, ok þœtti illr vera glœpr
good man and wise fell into charge and seemed ill to-be crime
sinn, ok vildi gjarna bœta, þá eigu dómar at vægja hánum
his and would gladly amend then ought judgments to spare him
fyrir sakar mannligrar náttúru, þvíat mannlig náttúra er svá
for sake of-human nature because human nature is so
breysk, at engi getr sín gætt svá, at hann falli aldri í
frail that no-one can himself keep so that be fall never into
sök. En sumir falla með því í sök, at þeir mikla sik
charge But some fall with that into charge that they magnify themselves
í því, ok sjá eigi við at falla þegar í aðra sök. Nú var
in that and look not against to fall at-once into another charge Now was
sú náttúra Davids, at hann var manna vaskastr til vápna í
that nature of-David that he was of-men bravest at weapons in

orrostum ok vel harðr í réttri refsing; en hann var maðr
battles and well hard in right punishment but he was man
góðgjarn ok ástholl hverjum manni ok aumhjartaðr yfir
good-willed and loving to-each man and soft-hearted over
úförum hvers manns; hann var ok tryggr maðr í öllum
misfortunes of-each man he was also trusty man in all
hlutum, ráðvandr ok fastorðr í vináttu ok í öllum heitum,
things honest and firm-worded in friendship and in all promises
ok svá lastvarr, at hann vildi engan löst á sik vita, ok
and so fault-wary that he would no fault on himself know and
eigi var hans maki í Israels fólki; þvíat guð tók svá til orðs
not was his equal in Israel's folk because God took so to word
í vitnisburð sínum, þá er hann kaus David til konungs,
in witness his then when he chose David to king
at hann kvazk funnit hafa mann eptir lunderni sínu. En
that he said-of-himself found to-have man after mind his But
því voldi breyskleikr manndómsins, at David féll í þá sök,
that caused (the)-frailty of-manhood that David fell into that charge
sem fyrr rœddum vit um, at hann hóraði konu Urias; ok
which before talked we-two about that he lay-with (the)-wife of-Uriah and
svá skjótt sem hann hafði í þessa sök fallit, þá iðraðisk
so quickly as he had into this charge fallen then repented
hann mjök með andvörpum ok með tárum, þegar hann var
he much with sighs and with tears when he was
einnsaman staddr. En fyrir því at regla laganna dœmdi
alone placed But for that that (the)-rule of-the-laws judged
þenna glœp ljótan löst, ef upp kœmi fyrir fólkinu, þá leitaði
this crime ugly vice if up came before the-folk then sought
David þeirrar athygli, at hann mætti heldr þegja yfir ok
David that attention that he might rather be-silent over-it and
sæi guð iðran hans, en fólkit géngi dult lögbrota hans,
saw God repentance his but the-folk went unaware of-law-breaks his

ok tœki eigi hans glœp til dœma, at þeim þœtti þá
and took not his crime for example that to-them would-seem then
minna fyrir at falla í glœpi ok lögbrot, ef þeir vissi hans
less for-it to fall into crimes and law-breaks if they knew his
glœp. En með þessarri list vildi David leyna glœp sínum, at
crime But with this art would David hide crime his that
þegar er hann vissi, at Bersabe var með getnaði, kona Urie,
as-soon as he knew that Bathsheba was with child wife of-Uriah
sá sendi hann eptir Uriam ok vildi sjá við manndrápi,
that-one sent he after Uriah and would look against man-slaying
ok vildi at hann sjálfr ætti lag við konu sína, ok
and wished that he himself had intercourse with wife his and
væri hánum sjá getnaðr kendr, en hann vildi bœta glœp
were to-him this child ascribed but he would amend (the)-crime
hórdóms síns í leynd, ok vildi aldri síðan koma nær konu
of-adultery his in secret and would never afterward come near (the)-wife
hins. En síðan er hann sá, at þat barsk undan, at
of-the-other But after when he saw that that bore-itself away that
Urias vildi leyti eiga við konu sína, þá leitaði hann þeirrar
Uriah would leave have with wife his then sought he that
listar, at hann mætti leyna glœp sínum fyrir mönnum, þóat
art that he might hide crime his before men though
hann aukaði synd sína fyrir guði. En síðan Nathan propheta
he increased sin his before God But after Nathan prophet
bar þessa sök á hendr Davidi alla saman, þá svaraði David
bore this charge on hands to-David all together then answered David
svá sem sjálfr dœmandi sik, þvíat hann svaraði svá: „Svá
so as himself judging himself because he answered so So
er glœpr minn illr ok þungr, at ek em dauða verðr fyrir
is crime my evil and heavy that I am of-death worthy for
sök þessa, ok em ek vesall þess, at ek gaf þvílík dœmi
charge this and am I wretched for-that that I gave such examples

fólki guðs, þar sem hann skipaði mik stjórnarmann ok
to-(the)-folk of-God there where he appointed me governor and
dómara yfir fólk sitt, ok vil ek gjarna heldr þola nú bráðan
judge over folk his and will I gladly rather bear now sudden
dauða, heldr en sjá glœpr fylgi mér til helvítis. Nú með því
death rather than this crime follow me to hell Now with that
at ek gerða syndlig dœmi fyrir fólki guðs í glœpinum,
that I made sinful examples before (the)-folk of-God in the-crime
þá em ek nú búinn eptir vilja dróttins míns at þola
then am I now ready according-to (the)-will of-lord my to bear
refsingina til þeirrar viðrsýnar, at eigi falli fólkit í slíkan
the-punishment for that warning that not fall the-folk into such
glœp." En þá er sannendi ok réttvísi litu iðran
crime But then when truth and justice looked-at (the)-repentance
Davids, þá skutu þær atkvæðum þessa dóms undir miskunn,
of-David then shot they (the)-verdicts of-this judgment under mercy
þvíat Nathan propheta svaraði: „Guð sér iðran þína ok
because Nathan prophet answered God sees repentance your and
vill hann eigi, at þú takir dauða fyrir synd þína, en hann
wishes he not that you take death for sin your but he
mun hefna þér með mundangshófi refsingar þessa verks,
will avenge-on you with balance's-measure of-punishment this work
áðr en þú deyr." Nú skalt þú þat vita, at eigi lét guð svá
before than you die Now shall you that know that not let God so
fyrirgefna þessa synd Davidi, at hann hefndi eigi eptir
forgiven this sin to-David that he avenged not according-to
réttendum; þvíat sú var hin fyrsta hefnd, er David tók
rights because that was the first vengeance which David took
af guði, at barn þat er hann hafði getit með Bersabe,
from God that (the)-child that which he had begotten with Bathsheba
þá var þat son ok var afar fríðr, ok vildi David gjarna,
then was it son and was exceedingly handsome and would David gladly

at barnit hefði líf, en guð vildi eigi unna hánum nytja á
that the-child had life but God would not grant him use of
því barni, er hann hafði svá syndliga getit; þó lá David
that child which he had so sinfully begotten Yet lay David
sjau daga fastandi á jörðu í úgleðisklæðum, ok bað guð
seven days fasting on earth in gloom-clothes and asked God
lífs því barni, en guð vildi eigi heyra bœn hans, ok dó
life for-that child but God would not hear prayer his and died
barnit á hinum áttanda degi. En þessi var önnur hefnd,
the-child on the eighth day But this was (the)-second vengeance
at guð vildi eigi þiggja af Davidi, at hann gerði hánum
that God would not accept from David that he made him
templum, ok kallaði, guð David manndrápsmann fyrir þat,
temple and called God David man-slaying-man for that
at hann hafði ráðit Uriam af lífi. En fyrir hór konu
that he had contrived Uriah from life But for adultery of-(the)-wife
Urie, þá þoldi hann fyrir þat þá skömm, at Absalon
of-Uriah then bore he for that that shame that Absalom
son hans gékk í augliti alls fólks ok lagðisk með friðlum
son his went in (the)-sight of-all folk and laid-himself with concubines
hans, ok gerði þessa skömm feðr sínum fyrir öllu fólki.
his and did this shame to-father his before all folk
En þar er þú spurðir þess, hvár meiri var sök, at David
But there where you asked that which greater was charge that David
drap Uriam saklausan ok hóraði konu hans, eða var sú, at
killed Uriah guiltless and lay-with wife his or was that that
Saul vildi eigi drepa yfrit marga í Amalech, nú skaltu þat
Saul would not kill amply many in Amalek now shall-you that
til víss vita, at sú var sök meiri, er Saul gerði, þvíat
for certain know that that was charge greater which Saul did because
engi er ein sök þungari en veita úhlýðni yfirboða sínum,
no is one charge heavier than give disobedience to-superior his

sem Saul gerði; ok máttu marka enn í dag á því um
as Saul did and may-you mark still in day on that about
klaustramenn, at ef munkrinn er úhlýðinn ábóta sínum,
cloister-men that if the-monk is disobedient to-abbot his
er hann er yfir klaustranum, eða priori, ef hann er, þá
who he is over the-cloister or prior if he is then
skal hann þegar vera útrekinn frá heilagri reglu ok or
shall he at-once be driven-out from holy rule and out-of
klaustra sínum, ok haldinn sem einn leikmaðr; svá ok ef
cloister his and held as one layman so also if
prestrinn vill eigi vera hlýðinn byskupi, yfirboða sínum, þá
the-priest will not be obedient to-bishop superior his then
er hann þegar sagðr af lærðra manna tign, ok messusöngr
is he at-once deposed from learned men's dignity and mass-singing
af hánum tekinn, ok alt annat embætti af hánum kipt;
from him taken and all other office from him snatched
svá ok ef byskupinn vill eigi hlýðinn vera sínum yfirboða,
so also if the-bishop will not obedient be to-his superior
hvárt sem hann er ríkr eða úríkr, þá er hann þegar
whether that he is mighty or unmighty then is he at-once
afsagðr sinni tign ok öllu embætti, ok síðan svá haldinn
deposed from-his dignity and all office and afterward so held
millim allra lærðra manna sem einnhver úlærðr maðr engrar
among all learned men as some unlearned man of-no
sœmdar verðr. En enn heldr máttu þat vita, at Sauli mundi
honor worthy But still rather may-you that know that to-Saul would
eigi duga at vera úhlýðinn slíkum yfirboða sem guð er
not avail to be disobedient to-such superior as God is
sjálfr, þar sem hann hafði boðit hánum at fara í Amalech
himself there where he had bidden him to go into Amalek
ok í Amorea ríki, at drepa alt þat er kvikt væri. Guð
and into Amorites' realm to kill all that which alive were God

tók refsingarvönd sinn ok seldi í hendr Sauli, ok bað
took punishment-rod his and gave into hands to-Saul and bade
hann hefna reiði sinnar ok vægja engu því er kvikt væri,
him avenge anger his and spare nothing that which alive were
brenna borgir ok bólstaði, klæði ok alt annat þat sem þar
burn towns and dwellings clothes and all other that which there
var; skyldi týna ok hreinsa svá alt land með sverði ok
was should-one destroy and cleanse so all land with sword and
exi ok eldi. En Saul skipaði svá þeirri refsing, er hánum
axe and fire But Saul arranged so that punishment which to-him
var boðin, at hann týndi því öllu, er hvárki var fagrt né
was bidden that he destroyed that all which neither was fair nor
fémætt, en alt þat er hánum þótti eiguligt vera ok fegrst
valuable but all that which to-him seemed worth-having to-be and fairest
ok fémætt, þá þyrmdi hann því ok skipti manna sinna á
and valuable then spared he that and divided of-men his on
millim, ok hafði heim í sitt land. En þá er Samuel kom
between and had home into his land But then when Samuel came
til Sauls ok sagði hánum reiði guðs, þá svaraði Saul sem
to Saul and told him (the)-anger of-God then answered Saul as
verjandi sína sök: „Lofaðr sé guð, at ek fylda boðorð hans,
defending his case Praised be God that I fulfilled commands his
ok fór ek út í Amalech ok eydda ek alt þat ríki með
and went I out into Amalek and laid-waste I all that realm with
eldi ok sverði; en ek leidda hingat Agag konung, þvíat ek
fire and sword but I led hither Agag (the)-king because I
vilda sœma svá guðs boð, at hann dœi hér, ef hann vill
would honor so God's command that he died here if he wishes
at hann deyi; feitir yxn ok fagrir sauðir þá eru til þess
that he die fat oxen and fair sheep then are to that
hingat leiddir, at ofra guði slíkt af, er hann vill þiggja;
hither led to offer to-God such from as he will accept

en ríkra manna börn leidda ek hingat til þess at veita oss
but mighty men's children led I hither for that to give us
sœmiliga þjónostu, en þau sjálf í þrældóm ok í ánauð."
honorable service but they themselves into thralldom and into bondage
Þá svaraði Samuel: „Hversu má guð þiggja þat hér í fórn,
Then answered Samuel How may God accept that here in sacrifice
er hann bölvaði sjálfr í sinni reiði, þvíat guð vill þiggja
which he cursed himself in his anger because God will accept
blessaða fórn en eigi bölvaða; þat skalt þú víst vita, at betri
blessed sacrifice but not cursed that shall you surely know that better
þykkir guði hlýðni en engi fórn önnur." Sannendi stóð nær
seems to-God obedience than no sacrifice other Truth stood near
ok svaraði: „Hví þarf at leyna, hvat Sauli gékk til, at
and answered Why needs-one to hide what to-Saul went to-it that
hann gerði eigi sem guð bauð hánum? Saul þóttisk nú
he did not as God bade him Saul thought-himself now
svá fullkominn vera í ríkisdóm sínum, at hann þóttisk
so perfect to-be in realm-power his that he thought-himself
nú slíkum hlutum mega skipa meir eptir vilja sínum,
now such things may arrange more according-to will his
en eptir guðs boðum, ok var þat ofdramb Sauls í
than according-to God's commands and was that (the)-over-pride of-Saul in
þessu, at hann gáði eigi þess hverr hánum gaf ríkdóm. En
this that he heeded not that who to-him gave power But
fyrir því tók hann góða hesta eða yxn eða sauði ok margar
for that took he good horses or oxen or sheep and many
aðrar gersimar, at hann vægði í því fésníkni riddara
other treasures that he yielded in that to-(the)-money-grabbing of-knights
sinna ok sinku annarra hermanna meir, en hann vildi gæta
his and stinginess of-other warriors more than he would keep
guðs boða. En í því drýgði hann lygi, er hann sagði,
God's commands But in that committed he lie when he said

at hann flutti fyrir því hesta ok sauði ok aðrar gersimar
that he brought for that horses and sheep and other treasures
í ríki sitt, at hann vildi at guði væri þar ger af
into realm his that he wished that to-God were there made from-them
fórn, þvíat hann vissi, at guð vildi eigi bölvat ofr þiggja.“
sacrifice because he knew that God would not cursed offering accept
Þá var sá dómr lagðr undir réttvísi; en réttvísi svaraði
Then was that judgment laid under justice but justice answered
svá: „Með því at guð tók refsingarvönd sinn ok seldi í
so With that that God took punishment-rod his and gave into
hendr Sauli, ok bað hann hefna reiði sinnar á bölvuðu
hands to-Saul and bade him avenge anger his on cursed
fólki, þá liggi sú refsing á Sauli ok hans kyni, sem hann
folk then lie that punishment on Saul and his kin which he
sparði við hina, er guð bauð hánum at hann skyldi
spared toward the-others whom God bade him that he should
frammi hafa. Ok sá refsingarvöndr er seldr var í hendr
forward have And that punishment-rod which given was into hands
Sauli, at hann skyldi hrista yfir öðrum, þá skal annarr
to-Saul that he should shake over others then shall another
þann refsingarvönd hafa ok hrista yfir Sauli ok öllu hans
that punishment-rod have and shake over Saul and all his
kyni. En fyrir því at hann vildi fyrir sinku sakar eignask
kin But for that that he would for stinginess's sake own
þau auðœfi, er hánum váru bönnuð, þá glatisk þaú auðœfi
those riches which to-him were forbidden then be-lost those riches
fyrir hánum, er hánum váru áðr gefin.“ En fyrir því
from him which to-him were before given But for that
gerðisk þessi dómr réttvísi svá stríðr við Saul, at guð
became this judgment of-justice so harsh toward Saul that God
þekti görla náttúru hans. En þessi var hans náttúra, at
recognized fully nature his But this was his nature that

hann var stríðr ok drambsamr í guðs augliti, þá er hann
he was harsh and proud in God's sight then when he
þóttisk fullkominn í staðfestu ríkis; hann gerðisk
thought-himself perfect in (the)-steadfastness of-realm he became
sinkr ok fégjarn, svá sem hér berr vitni um í þvísa máli.
stingy and money-greedy so as here bears witness about in this matter
Nú skildi þat lunderni þeirra Davids, þá er Nathan propheta
Now differed that temper of-them of-David then when Nathan prophet
bar sök á hendr Davidi, þá lastaði hann glœp sinn náliga
bore charge on hands to-David then blamed he crime his nearly
sem dœmandi sjálfan sik, bað miskunnar ok bauð sik
as judging self himself asked mercy and offered himself
þó undir refsing svá sem þakksamliga búinn við at taka
yet under punishment so as thankfully ready to to take
hverjum kosti, er guð vildi at hann hefði fyrir sinn glœp,
whatever choice which God wished that he had for his crime
ok hlaut hann fyrir því líkn með vægiligum miskunnar
and got he for that comfort with lenient of-mercy
dómi. Þó dó son hans fyrir dauða Urias, at hann dœi
judgment Yet died son his for (the)-death of-Uriah that he died
eigi sjálfr; en fyrir hór konu Urie þá hlaut hann yrna
not himself but for adultery of-(the)-wife of-Uriah then got he ample
skömm, þar sem son hans skemdi hann í augliti alls fólks.
shame there where son his shamed him in (the)-sight of-all folk
En þá er Samuel bar sök á hendr Sauli, þá svaraði hann
But then when Samuel bore charge on hands to-Saul then answered he
sem verjandi sína sök, ok hrósaði at hann hafði vel gört,
as defending his case and boasted that he had well done
þá er hann kvað svá at orði, „at guð sé lofaðr, at ek
then when he said so in word that God be praised that I
fylda þat sem hann bauð mér", ok vissi þó með sér aðra
fulfilled that which he bade me and knew yet with himself other

hluti sannari; ok féll hann fyrir því með dómi réttvísi, at
things truer and fell he for that with judgment of-justice that
guð sá drambsamliga hœlni hans ok lygiliga sakarvörn. En
God saw proud boasting his and lying defense But
þó tók síðan öfund ok dramb meir at birtask, er hann
yet began afterward envy and pride more to appear when he
fann, at guð var reiðr hánum; þvíat Saul tók sótt, þá er
found that God was angry with-him because Saul took sickness that which
endr ok stundum kom at hánum höfuðœrslur, ok þurfti
now and then came at him head-madnesses and needed-one
at gæta hans, meðan sú sótt var á hánum, ok var hánum
to watch him while that sickness was on him and was for-him
funnit þat til lækningar, at fá skyldi þann mann, er vel
found that for healing that get should-one that man who well
kynni hörpu at slá yfir hánum, ok mundi hann þá minnr
could harp to strike over him and would him then less
saka sóttin. Því næst var funninn einn ungr maðr ok
harm the-sickness That next was found one young man and
fríðr, er David var, son Ysay í Bethleem, er vel kunni
handsome who David was son of-Jesse in Bethlehem who well could
at slá hörpu, ok kom hann til konungsins, ok þegar
to strike harp and came he to the-king and as-soon-as
sóttin tók konunginn, þá stóð David fyrir hánum ok sló
the-sickness took the-king then stood David before him and struck
hörpu sína, ok hvarf þegar sóttin af hánum. En þegar
harp his and vanished at-once the-sickness from him But when
konungrinn kendi, at sótt hans var linari, þá elskaði hann
the-king felt that sickness his was softer then loved he
mjök David, ok gerði hann at skjaldsveini sér; en þó
much David and made him to shield-swain for-himself but yet
hafði Samuel smurðan hann áðr til konungs leyniliga, svá
had Samuel anointed him before to king secretly so

at engi vissi nema faðir hans ok brœðr. David var marga
that no-one knew except father his and brothers David was many
daga með Sauli konungi ok þjónaði hánum tryggliga; en
days with Saul (the)-king and served him faithfully but
í öllum verkum Davids, þá fannsk þat öllum mönnum, at
in all works of-David then was-found that by-all men that
guð var með hánum. Saul var ok vel við hann í fyrstunni,
God was with him Saul was also well with him in the-first
ok gaf hánum dóttur sína ok fékk hánum lið sitt fyrir
and gave him daughter his and got him host his for
at ráða. En eptir sigr þann er Saul konungr hafði unnit
to rule But after victory that which Saul (the)-king had won
á Philisteis, ok David hafði drepit Goliam risa, ok þeir
over (the)-Philistines and David had killed Goliath giant and they
hurfu aptr or þeirri herför, þá géngu út konur or
turned back out-of that war-journey then went out women out-of
borgum ok kaupstöðum, ok dönsuðu móti þeim, ok sungu
towns and market-towns and danced against them and sang
þeim lof fyrir sigr sinn; en svá varð í söng þeirra, at
them praise for victory their but so became-it in song their that
Saul konungr hafði unnit sigr á þúsund, en David á 10
Saul (the)-king had won victory over thousand but David over 10
þúsundum. Ok þegar er Saul heyrði þessa hluti, þá rann á
thousands And as-soon as Saul heard these things then ran on
hann þegar reiði ok öfund við David, ok mælti í hugþokka
him at-once anger and envy toward David and spoke in mind
sínum: „Nú skil ek, at guð hefir ætlat þeima manni at
his Now understand I that God has intended for-this man to
taka ríki eptir mik, en eigi sonum mínum, ok skal ek við
take realm after me but not for-sons my and shall I on
leita at fyrirkoma því ráði, ef ek má, ok þó með þeirri list,
seek to do-away-with that plan if I can and yet with that art

at engi skal vita, at ek drepa hann at vilja mínum.“ Fám
that no-one shall know that I kill him by will my Few
dögum síðar kom vanyflasótt Sauls at hánum, en David tók
days later came weakness-sickness of-Saul at him but David took
hörpu sína, ok stóð fyrir hánum ok sló eptir siðvenju
harp his and stood before him and struck according-to custom
sinni, at sótt konungs skyldi minka. Saul hafði spjót
his that (the)-sickness of-(the)-king should lessen Saul had spear
í hendi ok skaut at Davidi, ok hafði hann ætlat gögnum
in hand and shot at David and had he intended through
hann at skjóta ok negla hann þar við hallarvegginn; en
him to shoot and nail him there to the-hall-wall but
hann ætlaði at forða sér svá frá manndrápi, at fólkit
he intended to save himself so from man-slaying that the-folk
skyldi því um kenna, at hann gerði þat í ærslum, en
should that on blame that he did that in madness but
eigi eptir illsku. David komsk undan ok fékk forðat sér
not from wickedness David got away and got saved himself
við lífsháska. En þá er Saul sá þat, at David komsk
from life-danger But then when Saul saw that that David got
undan, ok at hann gat eigi veiddan hann, þá sendi hann
away and that he could not caught him then sent he
David í margar herfarar millim heiðinna þjóða, ok ætlaði
David into many war-journeys among heathen peoples and intended
at hann skyldi þar falla. En því optar er David fór í
that he should there fall But the oftener which David went into
herfarar, því fleiri sigra vann hann ok ágætari varð, ok
war-journeys the more victories won he and more-excellent became and
miklaði guð David í augliti alls fólks. En Saul öfundaði
magnified God David in (the)-sight of-all folk But Saul envied
David því meir, sem hann sá at hánum tóksk betr til.
David the more as he saw that for-him it-went better to-it

Nú máttu skilja náttúru Sauls konungs. Hann hafði engar
Now may-you understand (the)-nature of-Saul (the)-king He had no
sakar Davidi at fá nema góðar einar; en fyrir því at
charges for-David to find except good alone but for that that
hann sá, at guð elskaði David mjök fyrir lítillætis sakar ok
he saw that God loved David much for humility's sake and
tryggleiks, þá öfundaði hann David, svá sem Kain öfundaði
faithfulness's then envied he David so as Cain envied
Abel bróður sinn fyrir því at guð elskaði hann. Ok gerðisk
Abel brother his for that that God loved him And became
svá opinberr fjándskapr Sauls við David, at hann leyndi
so open (the)-enmity of-Saul toward David that he hid
engan mann því, at hann vildi drepa David; þó minti
from-no man that that he would kill David yet reminded
Jonathas son hans konunginn á, at þat var synd at drepa
Jonathan son his the-king of that that was sin to kill
saklausan mann, ok mælti svá: „Herra minn! hví ert þú reiðr
guiltless man and spoke so Lord my why are you angry
Davidi þjóni þínum? Ef nökkur er sú sök á hendi hánum,
with-David servant your If some is that charge on hand his
er gagnstaðlig er þínu ríki eða sœmd, þá vill hverr maðr,
which hostile is to-your realm or honor then will each man
er með yðr er, um hans líf liggja, ok megum vér þegar
who with you is about his life lie and may we at-once
hafa hann, er vér viljum, þvíat hann varask oss ekki,
have him when we wish because he guards-himself against-us not
er hann veit sik saklausan. Hann hefir yðr lengi þjónat
when he knows himself guiltless He has you long served
ok verit tryggr í öllum hlutum, ok gékk við mikit ofrefli,
and been trusty in all things and went against great over-force
þá er hann drap Goliam, ok frelsti guð alt ríki yðart með
then when he killed Goliath and freed God all realm your with

undarligum sigri Davids, þar sem hann barðisk vápnlauss
wondrous victory of-David there where he fought weaponless
maðr móti einum risa; þjónat yðr í nauðar sóttarferði yðru,
man against one giant served you in need's sickness-time your
ok þar sem þér hafit beitt hann fyrir fólk yðart, þá hefir
and there where you have set him before folk your then has
hann haldit upp mikilli vörn fyrir ríki yðru, ok veit engi
he held up great defense for realm your and knows no
maðr annat á hendr hánum en tryggleik. Nú still reiði
man other on hands his than faithfulness Now still anger
þinni, herra minn, ok fall eigi í svá opinbera manndráps
your lord my and fall not into so open man-slaying
sök fyrir guði, at þér týnit saklausum manni.“ Saul varð
charge before God that you destroy guiltless man Saul became
því öllu reiðari ok gaf svikræða sök syni sínum ok öllum
for-that all the-angrier and gave treason charge to-son his and to-all
þeim mönnum öðrum, er nökkut gott orð mæltu um David.
those men others who some good word spoke about David
David flýði braut undan reiði Sauls konungs, hvárttveggja
David fled away from-under (the)-anger of-Saul (the)-king both
vápnlauss ok klæðlauss með fám sveinum, ok kom í þann
weaponless and clothesless with few lads and came into that
stað, er Nobe var kallaðr. En þar var Abimelech byskup
place which Nob was called But there was Abimelech bishop
fyrir, son Achitobs byskups; en Achitob var son Ichaboths,
present son of-Ahitub bishop but Ahitub was son of-Ichabod
sonar Phinees, sonar Ely byskups. En þá er David kom til
son of-Phinehas son of-Eli bishop But then when David came to
Abimelecs byskups, þá sagði hann, at hann fór nauðsynja
Abimelech bishop then said he that he went need's
erenda Sauls konungs, ok bað hann gefa sér nökkut til matar
errands of-Saul (the)-king and asked him give him something for food

ok sveinum sínum, ok bað hann fá sér nökkut til vápns. Ok
and for-lads his and asked him get him something for weapon And
Abimelech byskup fékk hánum slíkan mat, sem hann hafði,
Abimelech bishop got him such food as he had
en vápn hafði hann engi at fá hánum, nema sverð þat
but weapon had he none to get him except sword that
er Golias hafði átt; ok fékk hann hánum þat, þvíat hann
which Goliath had owned and got he him that because he
vissi eigi, at hann var á flótta, nema hann hugði, at hann
knew not that he was in flight but he thought that he
fœri konungs erenda, sem hann sjálfr sagði. En svá mikill
went king's errands as he himself said But so great
fjándskapr var konunginum á Davidi, at þegar er hann vissi,
enmity was to-the-king on David that as-soon as he knew
at Abimelech byskup hafði gefit hánum mat, at hann tók
that Abimelech bishop had given him food that he took
byskupinn ok alt hans kyn ok gaf hánum svikræða sök. Þá
the-bishop and all his kin and gave him treason charge Then
svaraði byskupinn svá: „Herra minn, ek geng ígegn því, at
answered the-bishop so Lord my I go against that that
ek gaf Davidi slíkan mat sem ek hafða, ok þat vápn sem
I gave to-David such food as I had and that weapon which
ek hafða, þvíat hann kvazk fara nauðsynja erenda yðarra.
I had because he said-of-himself to-go need's errands your
Hví munda ek eigi vel fagna slíkum manni, sem David er,
Why would I not well welcome such man as David is
er mestr ok mætastr manna er með yðr utan sonu yðra,
who greatest and worthiest of-men is with you except sons your
ok þó mágr yðarr, ok verit yðr tryggr í öllum hlutum;
and yet son-in-law your and been to-you trusty in all things
aldri réð ek svik móti yðr eða yðarri sœmd. Ætla eigi
never counseled I treason against you or your honor Think not

þat, herra minn, at ek þjónn þinn ráða nökkut mót vilja
that lord my that I servant your counsel anything against will
þínum við David, þvíat ekki vissa ek til, hví David fór
your with David because nothing knew I to-it why David went
svá nauðsynliga, nema þat er hann sagði mér, at hann
so urgently except that which he told me that he
fór yðarra nauðsynja erenda, ok í enga sök vissa ek hann
went your need's errands and into no charge knew I him
hafa fallit við yðr.“ Saul svaraði þegar með ákafligri reiði:
to-have fallen toward you Saul answered at-once with fierce anger
„Þess sver ek, at þú skalt deyja í dag ok alt kyn þitt.“ Ok
That swear I that you shall die in day and all kin your And
því næst lét hann drepa byskupinn ok fimm menn aðra ok
that next let he kill the-bishop and five men others and
átta tigu, þeir sem allir váru skrýddir með kennimannligri
eight tens those who all were adorned with priestly
tign. En síðan lét hann brenna borgina Nobe, ok lét alt
dignity But afterward let he burn the-town Nob and let all
þat drepa, er kvikt var í borginni, bæði börn ok konur.
that kill which alive was in the-town both children and women
Nú hefi ek sýnt þér grimleik Sauls, þann sem guð sá
Now have I shown you (the)-fierceness of-Saul that which God saw
í brjósti hánum, þá er hann kipti hánum frá ríki, ok
in breast his then when he snatched him from realm and
síðan gerðisk opinberr, svá sem nú hefir þú heyrt, ok margr
afterward became open so as now have you heard and many
annarr þvílíkr, þóat ek hafa þenna taldan; ok féll fyrir því
another such though I have this counted and fell for that
svá þungliga sú sök konunginum, er hann féll í við
so heavily that charge on-the-king which he fell into toward
guð, at guð sá ágjarnligan grimleik í brjósti hans, þann
God that God saw greedy fierceness in breast his that

er síðan tók birtask. Nú vildi hann drepa David saklausan,
which afterward began to-appear Now would he kill David guiltless
þvíat hann fann at guð elskaði hann; ok byskupinn drap
because he found that God loved him and the-bishop killed
hann saklausan með svá miklum grimleik, at hann drap alt
he guiltless with so great fierceness that he killed all
þat, sem kvikt var í borginni, ok brendi borgina síðan. En
that which alive was in the-town and burned the-town afterward But
þar sem guð bauð hánum slíkan grimleik frammi at hafa,
there where God bade him such fierceness forward to have
þá þyrmdi hann þar, en hér drap hann guðs þjónostumenn
then spared he there but here killed he God's service-men
móti guðs boði. En því gerðisk sök Davids linari
against God's command But therefore became (the)-charge of-David softer
í guðs dómi, at svá sem guð skildi grimleik þenna í
in God's judgment that so as God perceived fierceness this in
brjósti Sauls, þá skildi hann sanna iðran ok mildleik
(the)-breast of-Saul so perceived he true repentance and mildness
í brjósti Davids, eptir því sem nú vil ek sýna þér.
in (the)-breast of-David according-to that which now will I show you
Abiathar hét son Abimelecs byskups, sá er flýit hafði í
Abiathar was-called son of-Ahimelech bishop he who fled had into
fjallsholu eina, þá er þeir váru drepnir, er fyrr váru taldir.
mountain-hole one then when they were killed who before were counted
Abiathar flýði til Davids ok sagði hánum alla þessa hluti. Sem
Abiathar fled to David and told him all these things When
David heyrði þessi tíðendi, þá klökk hann, ok svaraði með
David heard these tidings then wept he and answered with
miklum harmi hugar: „Guð með sinni miskunn þá fyrirgefi
great grief of-mind God with his mercy then forgive
mér þetta manndráp, þvíat ofmikill hluttakari em ek af þvísa,
me this man-slaying because too-great partaker am I of this

þvíat ek át mat föður þíns; ok nú með því at þú ert
because I ate (the)-food of-father your and now with that that you are
hér kominn, þá ver með mér; ok ef guð vill láta mik lifa,
here come then be with me and if God will let me live
þá mun hann gæta þín með mér, ok gangi slíkt yfir báða
then will he keep you with me and go such over both
okkr saman, sem guð vill at sé.“ Því næst hóf David hann
us-two together as God wishes that be That next raised David him
til byskupsdóms, sem faðir hans hafði haft. En er frændr
to bishopric as father his had had But when kinsmen
Davids spurðu til, at hann fór í skógum úti, þá fóru þeir
of-David learned to-it that he went in woods outside then went they
til hans með fjölmenni, ok var þat þá eigi minna lið en 4
to him with multitude and was that then not smaller host than 4
hundruð manna, ok styrktisk Davið upp ífra því, eptir
hundreds of-men and strengthened-himself David up from that according-to
því sem guð vildi. David var úti í fjöllum með þvísa liði,
that which God would David was out in mountains with this host
ok herjaði jafnan á úvini Sauls, en aldrigi á sjálfan hann
and harried always on enemies of-Saul but never on himself him
eða á vini hans. En hvarvetna þar sem Saul spurði til, at
or on friends his But everywhere there where Saul learned to-it that
David leyndisk, þá fór hann at hánum ok vildi drepa hann.
David hid-himself then went he at him and would kill him
En svá barsk nökkut sinni til, þar sem David leyndisk
But so happened some time to-it there where David hid-himself
í helli nökkurum miklum með liði sínu, at Saul gékk inn
in cave some great with host his that Saul went in
einn nauðsynja sinna; þá mæltu um félagar Davids: „Nú
alone for-needs his then spoke about companions of-David Now
hefir guð þat efnt, er hann hefir heitit þér, at sent í
has God that fulfilled which he has promised you that sent into

hendr þér úvin þinn; kunn nú at nýta þér þessa veiði."
hands your enemy your know-how now to use for-yourself this catch
David stilti til ok skar nökkut af kyrtilsblaði Sauls konungs,
David stole to-it and cut some off kirtle-flap of-Saul (the)-king
svá at hann varð eigi varr við, ok gékk svá aptr til
so that he became not aware of-it and went so back to
félaga sinna. Þá mæltu um félagar Davids: „Ef þú vilt
companions his Then spoke about companions of-David If you will
eigi sjálfr leggja hendr á hánum, þá lát oss drepa hann."
not yourself lay hands on him then let us kill him
David svaraði: „Jöfn er sök mín fyrir guði, at ek göra
David answered Equal is charge my before God that I do
þat, ok þá at ek bjóða einumhverjum öðrum. Guð gæti
that and then that I bid some other God keep
mín frá því verki ok allra várra félaga, at eigi leggim vér
me from that work and all our companions that not lay we
hendr á kristi guðs. Hann er herra minn, ok hefi ek
hands on (the)-anointed of-God He is lord my and have I
þjónat hánum lengi; hann er ok kristr dróttins, ok væri
served him long he is also (the)-anointed of-(the)-Lord and were
þat mikit illvirki, ef ek legða hendr á hánum, þar sem ek
that great evil-deed if I laid hands on him there where I
á hvárki at hefna á hánum föður né bræðra, né engarra
have neither to avenge on him father nor brothers nor no
annarra frænda, ok er eigi sem hann ynni þetta sæti undan
other kinsmen and is-it not as-if he won this seat from
mínum frændum með nökkurum svikum eða afli, er nú
my kinsmen with some treasons or force where now
sitr hann í, nema guð kaus hann til ok helgaði hann
sits he in-it but God chose him to-it and hallowed him
sér til þjónostumanns, ok skrýddi hann með sjálfs síns
for-himself as service-man and adorned him with of-self his

nafni; ok er þat rétt, at sá taki hann frá með sínum
name and is that right that that-one take him away with his
vilja, er hann kaus til, en eigi ek með ágirndligri dirfð.
will who him chose to-it but not I with greedy boldness
Ok sver ek þess í dag, at guð skal kalla hann, annathvárt
And swear I that in day that God shall call him either
at hann skal falla í bardaga fyrir úvinum sínum eða krefi
that he shall fall in battle before enemies his or demand
guð hann andar sinnar; elligar skal hann lifa marga daga
God him of-spirit his or-else shall he live many days
fyrir mínum höndum. Þó iðrumk ek mjök, at ek skadda
for my hands Yet repent I much that I damaged
klæðum hans, ef hánum þykki nökkut illa eða svívirðing at.“
clothes his if to-him seems somewhat ill or disgrace at-it
En er Saul var brottgenginn ok til liðs síns, þá rann
But when Saul was gone-away and to host his then ran
David á hæð nökkura, ok mælti: „Mátt þú heyra, herra
David onto height some and spoke May you hear lord
minn, Saul konungr!“ En þegar er konungrinn snerisk aptr
my Saul king But as-soon as the-king turned back
ok vildi heyra, hvat sá maðr mælti, þá hneigði David þegar
and would hear what that man spoke then bowed David at-once
bæði kné sín til jarðar ok laut konunginum, ok mælti við
both knees his to earth and bowed to-the-king and spoke to
hann: „Illa gera þeir menn, er þat segja yðr, herra konungr,
him Ill do those men who that tell you lord king
at ek vil vera úvin yðarr; þviat hér hefi ek nú vitni í
that I will be enemy your because here have I now witness in
hendi mér, at ek átta lífs þíns kosti í dag, þá er þú
hand my that I had life's your choice in day then when you
gékkt í helli einn frá öllu þínu liði, ok munda ek eigi
went into cave alone from all your host and would I not

síðr eiga kosti at skeðja lífi þínu en klæðum þínum; þvíat
less have choice to harm life your than clothes your because
hér hefi ek nú í hendi mér mikinn hlut af kyrtilsblaði
here have I now in hand my great part of kirtle-flap
þínu. Nú mun guð millim okkar dœma. Sét þér þat nú,
your Now will God between us-two judge See you that now
at þeir hafa úsanna sögu sagða, er þat sögðu, at ek læga
that they have untrue story told who that said that I lay
um líf þitt." Saul lét sér vel skiljask þessa hluti, þvíat
about life your Saul let to-himself well be-understood these things because
David sagði satt, ok hét því, at aldri síðan skyldi hann
David told truth and promised that that never afterward should he
hata David. En eigi váru þess margir dagar á millum, at
hate David But not were of-that many days on between that
Saul fór at leita Davids, ok jafnan síðan. Nú bar enn svá
Saul went to seek David and always afterward Now bore still so
til annat sinni, þá er Saul hafði farit mœðiliga at leita
to-it a-second time then when Saul had gone wearily to seek
Davids, þá sofnaði hann ok allr herr hans, ok gékk David
David then fell-asleep he and all host his and went David
í herinn, þar sem Saul lá, svá at engi þeirra varð varr
into the-host there where Saul lay so that none of-them became aware
við. Abisay hét sá maðr, er fylgði Davidi ok mælti við
of-it Abishai was-called that man who followed David and spoke to
hann: „Nú mátt þú sjá, at guð vill víst þenna úvin þinn
him Now may you see that God will surely this enemy your
selja í hendr þér, ok er ráð at hafna eigi því er guð
give into hands your and is counsel to reject not that which God
sjálfr býðr þér. Ok mun ek nú leggja spjóti mínu gegnum
himself offers you And will I now thrust spear my through
hann, ef þú leyfir mér, ok förum síðan til liðs várs." David
him if you allow me and go-we afterward to host our David

svaraði: „Þat gerir guð til freistni við mik, ok vill vita, ef
answered That does God for trial with me and will know if
ek vilja mínar hendr leggja á kristi hans. Nú mun ek svá
I will my hands lay on anointed his Now will I so
svara sem fyrr, at annathvárt skal guð kippa undan hánum
answer as before that either shall God snatch from-under him
ríkinu, svá at hann krefi hann andar sinnar, eða elligar
the-realm so that he demand him of-spirit his or else
falli hann fyrir úvinum sínum, en lifa skal hann marga daga
fall he before enemies his but live shall he many days
fyrir sakar minna handa; þar sem ek á hvárki at minnask
for sake of-my hands there where I have neither to remember
til hefnda við hann stórra rána né frænda láts, nema
for vengeances toward him great robberies nor kinsmen's loss except
þeirra einna, at hann hefir hreinsat land með réttri refsing.
of-those alone that he has cleansed land with right punishment
Ok er þat hvárki mitt ok enskis annars rétt verk, at hefna
And is that neither my and of-no-one other right work to avenge
þess, þvíat þat er meira stórmæli en vitr kunni hugleiða,
that because that is greater great-matter than wise could ponder
at leggja hendr á kristi dróttins, er vígðr er guði
to lay hands on (the)-anointed of-(the)-Lord who consecrated is to-God
til handa ok helgaðr. Nú skulum vit taka söðulker hans
to hand and hallowed Now shall we-two take saddle-cup his
ok spjót til jartegna, ok förum síðan til liðs várs."
and spear for tokens and go-we afterward to host our
Nú máttu skilja náttúru hvárstveggja Sauls ok Davids,
Now may-you understand (the)-nature of-both of-Saul and of-David
eptir því sem fyrr sagða ek þér. David vissi sik kosinn
according-to that which before told I you David knew himself chosen
af guði til ríkisstjórnar, ok vígðr kristr dróttins, helgaðr
by God to realm-governance and consecrated anointed of-(the)-Lord hallowed

guði eigi síðr en Saul; hann vissi ok, at guð hafði hafnat
to-God not less than Saul he knew also that God had rejected
Sauli, ok leiddi guð Saul í hendr Davidi, svá at hann
Saul and led God Saul into hands to-David so that he
átti kosti lífs hans iðuliga, ef hann vildi; ok sýndi David
had choices of-life his frequently if he would and showed David
í því mikinn tryggleik ok lítillæti, at hvert sinn er
in that great faithfulness and humility that each time when
David sá Saul, þá laut hann ok fagnaði hánum svá sem
David saw Saul then bowed he and greeted him so as
einnhverr úvigðr leikmaðr, sá er ekki væri kosinn til
some unconsecrated layman that-one who not were chosen to
höfðingjaskaps. Þóat Saul lægi um líf hans, þá þjónaði
chieftainship Though Saul lay about life his then served
David hánum ok lá á úvinum hans, slíkt er hann mátti.
David him and lay on enemies his such as he might
En Saul hafði þá eina sök Davidi, at hann vissi at guð
But Saul had that one charge for-David that he knew that God
hafði kosit hann til konungs, ok sýndi hann í því mikinn
had chosen him to king and showed he in that great
grimleik ok illsku, at hann vildi drepa saklausan mann,
fierceness and wickedness that he would kill guiltless man
ok þann er hánum þjónaði tryggliga; en í því sýndi hann
and that-one who him served faithfully but in that showed he
hóflaust dramb, at hann vildi fyrirkoma þeim manni, er
measureless pride that he would do-away-with that man whom
guð sjálfr hafði til ríkis kosit eptir hann. Nú féllu fyrir þær
God himself had to realm chosen after him Now fell for those
sakar stríðliga dómar á mál Sauls af guði, þvíat guð
sakes harshly judgments on (the)-case of-Saul from God because God
skildi þat í brjósti hans, er menninir máttu eigi skilja,
perceived that in breast his which the-men might not understand

ok þó gerði guð síðan þessa hluti opinbera fyrir manna
and yet made God afterward these things open before men's
augum. En því váru Davidi léttari sínar sakar fyrir guði,
eyes But therefore were to-David lighter his charges before God
at guð fann hann tryggvan ok jafnan lítillátan í öllum
that God found him trusty and always humble in all
hlutum, sem síðan sýndi hann mönnum. Ok þar berr enn
things as afterward showed he to-men And there bears still
vitni um, at þá er David spurði fall Sauls ok Jonathas
witness about that then when David learned (the)-fall of-Saul and of-Jonathan
sonar hans, þá klökk hann með miklum harmi ok allr herr
son his then wept he with great grief and all host
hans, ok mælti svá: „Bölvuð verði þér, fjöll Gelboe! Láti
his and spoke so Cursed be you mountains of-Gilboa Let
guð aldri yfir yðr koma dögg né regn né gróandi grös, þvíat
God never over you come dew nor rain nor growing grasses because
þér veittut Sauli konungi ok Jonathe svikliga flóttastigu yfir
you gave Saul (the)-king and Jonathan treacherous flight-paths over
hvirfil yðarn, ok vildut eigi veita þeim líknligar götur, þær
crown your and would not give them comforting roads those
er þeir mætti forða lífi sínu undan úvina höndum, ok eigi
which they might save life their from-under enemies' hands and not
veittut þér þeim hermannligar varnir á hæðum yðrum. Beiskr
gave you them warlike defenses on heights your Bitter
harmr er öllu Israels fólki þetta, at svá ágætir höfðingjar
grief is to-all Israel's folk this that so excellent chieftains
skulu vera fallnir ífrá ráðagerðum ok ríkisstjórn sem Saul
shall be fallen from counsels and realm-governance as Saul
ok Jonathas váru. Mikill þrekr ok afl hefir týnzk á þeima
and Jonathan were Great strength and might has perished on this
degi, þar sem svá dýrligir höfðingjar hafa týnzk, sem Saul
day there where so glorious chieftains have perished as Saul

konungr ok Jonathas váru, ok margr góðr riddari, ok mart
(the)-king and Jonathan were and many good knight and many
gott vápn ok mörg góð brynja, sem þar hefir glatazk með
good weapon and many good mail-coat which there has been-lost with
þeim. Varisk smælingar reiði guðs, þar sem hann lofaði
them Beware small-folk (the)-anger of-God there where he permitted
heiðnum þjóðum at leggja hendr á kristi sínum. Harmi allr
heathen peoples to lay hands on anointed his Grieve all
lýðr slíka tjón, at svá dýrligir stjórnarmenn skulu falla fyrir
people such loss that so glorious governors shall fall before
heiðnum þjóðum." Slík orð ok mörg önnur þvílík mælti
heathen peoples Such words and many others such spoke
David á þeim degi, ok harmaði svá fráfall þeirra, heldr en
David on that day and grieved so (the)-fall of-them rather than
hann fagnaði því, at ríkit væri komit undir hann ok hans
he rejoiced-at that that the-realm were come under him and his
gæzlu. Nú skal á slíku marka, hversu mikill heilhugi
keeping Now shall-one on such mark how great whole-hearted-man
hann var, ok lastvarr ok hreinn af öllum glœpum. En hvert
he was and fault-wary and clean of all crimes But each
sinni er hann féll í nökkurn glœp sakar mannligrar
time when he fell into some crime for-sake-of human
náttúru, þá iðraðisk hann þegar ákafliga, ok bað guð líknar
nature then repented he at-once fiercely and asked God comfort
ok vægðar, ok guð leit þegar sanna iðran hans.
and leniency and God looked-at at-once true repentance his
Vér gátum ok þess fyrr í rœðu várri, hversu Absalon son
We mentioned also that before in talk our how Absalom son
Davids reisti upp alt land móti feðr sínum. En þá er riddarar
of-David raised up all land against father his But then when knights
Davids kómusk við at berjask móti Absalon, ok David spurði
of-David got to-it to fight against Absalom and David learned

fall hans, þá kvað hann svá at orði: „Hvat skyldi mér
(the)-fall his then said he so in word What should to-me
gömlum karli at lifa, hrörnanda á hverjum degi, en þú, son
old churl to live decaying on each day but you son
minn Absalon, skyldir deyja í blóma aldrs þíns. Guð gefi,
my Absalom should die in (the)-bloom of-age your God grant
at ek mætta nú heldr deyja, en þú mættir lifa, son minn.“
that I might now rather die than you might live son my
Eigi var beiskleikr Davids meiri við alla menn, en hann vildi
Not was bitterness of-David greater toward all men than he would
heldr sjálfr dauða þola, en sjá annars dauða, nema þar sem
rather himself death bear than see another's death except there where
hann sá, at fyrir réttdœmis sakar væri refsing gör. Svá berr
he saw that for right-judgment's sake were punishment done So bears
vitni um, at þá er alt ríki Davids varð fyrir reiði guðs,
witness about-it that then when all realm of-David became for (the)-anger of-God
þá kom drep í alt ríkit svá ákaft, at þúsundum féllu
then came plague into all the-realm so fiercely that by-thousands fell
menn niðr dauðir. En er sóttin nálgaðisk til Jórsalaborgar,
men down dead But when the-sickness approached to Jerusalem-town
þá sá David engilinn, þann er drap fólkit, standa með eldligu
then saw David the-angel that who killed the-folk stand with fiery
sverði millim himins ok jarðar. En er hann sá engilinn
sword between heaven and earth But when he saw the-angel
standa með reiddu sverði, ok svá sem búinn at höggva, þá
stand with raised sword and so as ready to strike then
rétti David háls sinn fram undir sverðit, ok mælti: „Þess
stretched David neck his forth under the-sword and spoke Of-that
bið ek, dróttinn minn, at þetta sverð snúisk heldr mér á
ask I lord my that this sword turn rather onto-me on
háls, en fólk guðs sé nú meira drepit, ok snúisk reiði
neck than (the)-folk of-God be now more killed and turn (the)-anger

dróttins míns heldr á mik verðugan ok makligan ok á mitt
of-lord my rather on me worthy and deserving and on my
kyn, heldr en fólk guðs fyrirfarisk af mínum völdum".
kin rather than (the)-folk of-God perish from my causing
Þá er guð sá iðran Davids ok heyrði svá þekkiligar
Then when God saw (the)-repentance of-David and heard so pleasing
bœnir hans, þá bauð guð þegar englinum at hætta, ok drepa
prayers his then bade God at-once the-angel to cease and kill
eigi fólk fleira, ok þegar tók af sóttin um alt ríkit.
not folk more and at-once took off the-sickness through all the-realm
Nú mátt þú á slikum hlutum marka ok mörgum öðrum
Now may you on such things mark and many others
þvílíkum, hversu líknarfullr ok gœzku er David var við alt
such how comfort-full and of-goodness who David was toward all
fólk. Ok svá sem guð sá í brjósti hans mildi ok miskunsemd
folk And so as God saw in breast his mildness and mercifulness
ok lítillæti, svá þekti guð í brjósti Sauls ágirnd ok grimleik
and humility so recognized God in (the)-breast of-Saul greed and fierceness
ok hóflaust dramb, ok varð fyrir því Sauli þungari allar sakar
and measureless pride and became for that to-Saul heavier all charges
við guð en Davidi, þvíat mennina skildi. David var hinn
toward God than to-David because the-men understood David was the
hógværasti maðr ok hinn miskunsamasti, ok bað guð líknar,
gentlest man and the most-merciful and asked God comfort
þegar hann féll í nökkura sök; en Saul var því öllu grimmari
as-soon-as he fell into some charge but Saul was the all fiercer
ok öfundsjúkari, er hann féll í fleiri glœpi, ok hann sá at
and more-envious which he fell into more crimes and he saw that
guðs reiði nálgaðisk hann meir. Nú ef þér þykkir svá sem þessi
God's anger approached him more Now if to-you seems so as-if these

svör leiði þik til fullrar skilningar eptir þinni spurning,
answers lead you to full understanding according-to your question
þá þykki mér sem eigi þurfi fleira um þetta mál at tala.
then seems to-me as-if not needs-one more about this matter to speak

LXIV · SOLOMON'S JUDGMENT

The son asks whether Solomon would really have divided the child had the mother kept silent. The father answers that he would have, had she asked no mercy for it, and the guilt would then have been hers, not the king's. Asked whether Solomon rightly killed Joab, Adonijah, and Shimei, the father says he did, for God afterward gave him wisdom and every other gift because he chose just judgment.

SON Mér skilsk nú þetta, eptir því sem þér gátut í
To-me is-understood now this according-to that which you mentioned in
fyrri rœðu, at dómar hafi því orðit Davidi vægiligri,
(the)-former talk that judgments have for-that become to-David more-lenient
at hann iðraðisk glœpa sinna, þeirra er hann féll í, en
that he repented crimes his those which he fell into but
því þungari Sauli, er hann vildi síðr yfirbœta sinn misverka.
the heavier to-Saul that he would less amend his misdeed
Nú er sá einn hlutr, er mik forvitnar mjök, ok ek vil
Now is that one thing which me makes-curious much and I will
spyrja yðr með leyfi, um þá hluti, er síðar urðu eptir
ask you with leave about those things which later happened after
andlát Davids, þá er tvær konur kómu fyrir konunginn
(the)-death of-David then when two women came before the-king
Salamon, ok prættu um barn eitt, þá bauð konungrinn, at
Solomon and disputed about child one then bade the-king that
sundr skyldi höggva barnit, ok fá hálft hvárri þeirra; ok vil
asunder should-one hew the-child and give half to-each of-them and will

ek nú þess spyrja, ef hvárgi hefði konan um rætt, hvárt
I now of-that ask if neither had the-woman about talked whether
konungrinn mundi hafa látit sundr höggva barnit eða eigi?
the-king would have let asunder hew the-child or not
FATHER Til þess bauð konungrinn at skipta skyldi barninu,
For that bade the-king that divide should-one the-child
at hann vissi þat til víss, at sú er móðirin væri, at
that he knew that for certain that she who the-mother were that
hon mundi eigi vilja láta sundr skipta.
she would not wish let asunder divide
SON Ek spurða þess, ef móðirin hefði þagt yfir, hvárt
I asked of-that if the-mother had kept-silent over-it whether
konungrinn mundi skipta vilja barninu?
the-king would divide wish the-child
FATHER Ef móðirin væri svá miskunnarlaus, at hon beiddisk
If the-mother were so merciless that she asked
engrar líknar barninu, þá hefði konungrinn skipt barninu
no comfort for-the-child then had the-king divided the-child
millim þeirra.
between them
SON Mundi yðr eigi þat sýnask manndráp fult, ef hann
Would to-you not that seem man-slaying full if he
hefði drepit barnit saklaust, ok væri þat þó eigi refsing?
had killed the-child guiltless and were it yet not punishment
FATHER Þat væri víst manndráp, ef hann hefði drepit barnit,
That were surely man-slaying if he had killed the-child
ok væri þó eigi sök á konunginum, en móðirin bæri sökina,
and were yet not guilt on the-king but the-mother bore the-guilt
ef hon hefði eigi beizk miskunnar barni sínu, þar sem hon
if she had not asked mercy for-child her there where she
heyrði af konunginum jafnaðardóm millim þeirra, ok sá
heard from the-king equity-judgment between them and saw

hon at þat væri dauðadómr barninu, ok félli því sökin á
she that that were death-judgment for-the-child and fell therefore the-guilt on
hana, ef hon hefði synjat móðurligrar mildi barninu til lífs.
her if she had refused motherly mildness to-the-child for life
SON Hvat sýnisk yðr um dauða Joabs ok Adonias, er
What seems to-you about (the)-death of-Joab and Adonijah whom
Salamon konungr drap, hvárt þat var réttr dómr eða eigi? Eða
Solomon (the)-king killed whether that was right judgment or not Or
hví Salamon drap Semei fyrir þat, at hann hafði bölvat Davidi
why Solomon killed Shimei for that that he had cursed David
feðr hans, ok hafði David áðr fyrirgefit Semei þessa sök?
father his and had David before forgiven Shimei this charge
FATHER Ef Salamon hefði þetta gört án rétta refsing,
If Solomon had this done without right punishment
þá hefði guð hefnt hánum með réttri refsing, svá sem
then had God avenged-on him with right punishment so as
manndráp. En eptir þessi öll verk þá vitraðisk guð Salamoni
man-slaying But after these all works then appeared God to-Solomon
í draumi, ok bauð hánum at kjósa einahverja gjöf af sér,
in dream and bade him to choose some gift from himself
þá sem hann vildi. En Salamon kaus, at guð skyldi gefa
that which he would But Solomon chose that God should give
hánum vizku ok skilning millim allra réttra dóma; en guð
him wisdom and understanding between all right judgments but God
svaraði hánum svá: „Ef þessi kostr væri mörgum gefinn, þá
answered him so If this choice were to-many given then
mundi þeir margir vera, at kjósa mundu fé ok ríki eða
would they many be who choose would wealth and realm or
langlífi eða frið eða sigrsælu; en með því at þú kaust þenna
long-life or peace or victory-luck but with that that you chose this
hlut, þá skalt þú eignask þat er þú kaust í fyrstunni, ok
thing then shall you own that which you chose in the-first and

alla þessa hluti með, er ek hefi nú nefnda.“ Nú skalt þú
all these things with-it which I have now named Now shall you
á slíku marka, hversu vel guði líkar réttdœmi, er guð gaf
on such mark how well to-God pleases right-judgment where God gave
allar hinar hæstu höfuðgjafir Salamoni, fyrir þat at hann kaus
all the highest chief-gifts to-Solomon for that that he chose
sér réttdœmi til handa. Svá skalt þú ok þat ætla, ef hann
for-himself right-judgment to hand So shall you also that reckon if he
hefði með röngum dómi hina fyrri drepna, at eigi mundi
had with wrong judgment the former killed that not would
guð gefa hánum slíkar höfuðgjafir, sem hann gaf hánum.
God give him such chief-gifts as he gave him

LXV · SHIMEI'S DEATH

The son asks why Solomon killed Shimei, whom David had forgiven. The father answers that Shimei asked mercy from fear, not repentance, and never made amends. Solomon let him live within Jerusalem on condition that he never leave it, and when Shimei broke the covenant after three years, had him killed, so that he would pay here rather than eternally and others would beware.

SON Þeir hlutir eru víst sannligir, er nú sögðu þér, ef Salamon
Those things are surely reasonable which now said you if Solomon
hefði þessa drepna með ágirnd utan réttdœmi, þá hefði hann
had these killed with greed outside right-judgment then had he
eigi slíkar höfuðgjafir hlotit af guði eptir þat verk vunnit,
not such chief-gifts got from God after that work done
sem nú hlaut hann. En þó vilda ek gjarna þess beiðask,
as now got he But yet would-wish I gladly of-that ask
ef svá má vera, at þér sýnit mér réttan framgangsveg þessa
if so may be that you show me (the)-right forward-going-way of-this

réttdœmis, at mér verði ljósara fyrir augum, ok svá öðrum
right-judgment that to-me become clearer before eyes and so to-others
þeim er heyra, at þat væri réttdœmi, at Salamon drap Semei,
those who hear that that were right-judgment that Solomon killed Shimei
þar sem David faðir hans hafði áðr fyrirgefit hánum sökina.
there where David father his had before forgiven him the-charge
FATHER Þessi eru skynsemdarsvör til, at Salamon gerði heldr
These are reason-answers to-it that Solomon did rather
fyrir sakar réttdœmis en grimleiks, at þá er Semei
for sake of-right-judgment than fierceness that then when Shimei
hafði bölvat Davidi, þá gerði hann fyrir sakar kapps ok
had cursed David then did he for sake of-zeal and
illsku, en eigi fyrir réttar sakar. En þá er hann beiddisk
wickedness but not for right sake But then when he asked
miskunnar af Davidi, þá beiddisk hann heldr fyrir hrælzlu
mercy from David then asked he rather for fear's
sakar en iðranar, þvíat hann hræddisk, at David mundi
sake than repentance's because he feared that David would
drepa hann, eptir því sem dómr heilagra laga stóð
kill him according-to that which (the)-judgment of-holy laws stood
til. En David svaraði hánum á þessa leið, þá er hann
to But David answered him in this way then when he
bað miskunnar: „Eigi mun ek at þessu sinni drepa þik,
asked mercy Not will I at this time kill you
þó biðr þú miskunnar, en þú gef gaum at sjálfr, hvárt
yet ask you mercy but you give heed to-it yourself whether
þú munt hefnd taka fyrir þitt verk, nema þú bœtir með
you will vengeance take for your work unless you amend with
sannri iðran.“ Í því orði sýndi David þat, at Semei átti at
true repentance In that word showed David that that Shimei ought to
bœta með ástsemdar vinättu þau orð, er hann mælti með
amend with loving friendship those words which he spoke with

fullum fjándskap En síðan lifði Semei svá alla daga, at
full enmity But afterward lived Shimei so all days that
menn funnu þat ekki, at hann hefði fjándskap við David,
men found that not that he had enmity toward David
en þat birtisk ok hvergi, at hann veitti vináttu móti því,
but that appeared also nowhere that he gave friendship against that
at David hafði gefit hánum líf sitt, þar sem lög dœmdu
that David had given him life his there where laws judged
hánum dauða. En þá er hann kom til Salamons eptir
him death But then when he came to Solomon after
andlát Davids, þá mælti Salamon við hann: „Minnsk þú
(the)-death of-David then spoke Solomon to him Remember you
þess, Semei, at þú hefir bölvat kristi guðs, þvíat engi
that Shimei that you have cursed (the)-anointed of-God because no
maðr veit, hvárt þú hefir þess síðan réttliga iðrazk. En þessi
man knows whether you have of-that since rightly repented But this
sættargerð skal vera okkar á millim í minning iðranar
reconciliation shall be us-two on between in memory of-repentance
þinnar, at þú skalt eigi lifa jafnfrjálsliga, sem sá maðr
your that you shall not live equally-freely as that man
er eigi hefir fallit í þenna glœp. Nú með því at þú átt
who not has fallen into this crime Now with that that you have
þér hallir stórar ok góðar ok mörg hús í Jórsalaborg,
for-yourself halls great and good and many houses in Jerusalem-town
þá lifðu innan borgar með frjálsi, ok nýt þér þá alla
then live-you within town with freedom and enjoy for-yourself those all
fjárhluti þína eptir þinni girnd; en þegar er þú kemr
goods your according-to your desire but as-soon as you come
utan borgar, þá skalt þú eiga lögliga hefnd yfir höfði
outside town then shall you have lawful vengeance over head
þínu, með því at þú gáðir eigi fyrr at iðrask en ek minta
your with that that you heeded not before to repent than I reminded

þik á.“ Sem konungrinn hafði lokit sinni rœðu, þá lét
you of-it When the-king had ended his talk then expressed
Semei þakksamliga yfir þessarri sætt, ok kvað sér
Shimei thankfully over this reconciliation and said to-himself
mundu þykkja í þvi lítit meinlæti at koma eigi utan borgar,
would seem in that little mortification to come not outside town
þegar hann skyldi með frjálsi ok konungs vináttu lifa innan
when he should with freedom and king's friendship live within
borgar ok njóta sjálfr sinna fjárhluta. En 3 vetrum síðar
town and enjoy himself his goods But 3 winters later
þá gleymdi Semei þessu sáttmáli, ok gékk utan borgar at
then forgot Shimei this covenant and went outside town to
skemta sér, svá sem hrósandi dirfð eptir brotit sáttmál. En
amuse himself so as boasting boldness after broken covenant But
þegar konunginum váru sögð þessi tíðendi, þá lét hann taka
when to-the-king were told these tidings then let he take
Semei ok leiða til sín, ok mælti við hann: „Gleymdir þú
Shimei and lead to himself and spoke to him Forgot you
at skammask þess, at brjóta sáttmál þat, er vit gerðum
to be-ashamed of-that to break covenant that which we-two made
báðir í minning þeirrar iðranar, er þú bölvaðir kristi
both in memory of-that repentance that you cursed (the)-anointed
guðs, ok er nú tvíföld sök yfir höfði þínu, ok er þér betra
of-God and is now twofold charge over head your and is to-you better
hér at taka skjótliga hefnd, svá at aðrir varisk af þínum
here to take quickly vengeance so that others beware from your
úförum, heldr en þessi sök fylgi þér til dauða eilífliga, ok
misfortunes rather than this charge follow you to death eternally and
dirfisk aðrir í slíkri illsku, ef þú deyr hefndarlauss.“ Því
grow-bold others in such wickedness if you die vengeance-less That

næst lét konungrinn drepa hann, ok lét grafa utan borgar
next let the-king kill him and let bury outside town
öðrum til minnis ok viðrsýnar, at brjóta gört sáttmál.
for-others for memory and warning to break made covenant

LXVI · ADONIJAH AND ABISHAG

The son asks why Solomon killed Adonijah for asking for Abishag. The father tells how Adonijah made himself king while David lived; how David had Solomon anointed and counseled him on Joab, Shimei, Adonijah, and Abiathar; how Solomon spared the penitent Adonijah; and how, through Bathsheba, Adonijah asked for Abishag, David's last companion, to strengthen his claim. Solomon, who had granted his mother's request unheard, went back on it, had Adonijah and Joab killed, the latter at the altar, and sent Abiathar home as a plowman, forbidden the priesthood.

SON Nú vil ek þess spyrja, hví hann lét drepa Adoniam
Now will I of-that ask why he let kill Adonijah
bróður sinn, fyrir þat at hann beiddisk Abisag sér til
brother his for that that he asked Abishag for-himself as
konu?
wife

FATHER Adonias gerði fyrir öndverðu, sem þú munt heyrt
Adonijah did at (the)-beginning as you will heard
hafa, at hann gerði uppreist móti feðr sínum. Í þann tíma
have that he made uprising against father his At that time
er David var gamall maðr ok allnær örvasi at aldri, kaus
when David was old man and very-near decrepit in age chose
Adonias sik sjálfr til konungs utan vitorð föður síns,
Adonijah himself himself to king outside (the)-knowledge of-father his
gerði hátíðliga veizlu sem nývígðr konungr; lét hann renna
made festive feast as newly-consecrated king let he run

um borgina með trumbum ok pípum, ok lét boða um alla
about the-town with drums and pipes and let proclaim about all
borgina, at þá var Adonias konungr. Þessir váru höfðingjar
the-town that then was Adonijah king These were chieftains
í ráðagerð með hánum: Joab, hertogi Davids ok frændi hans,
in counsel with him Joab duke of-David and kinsman his
ok Abiathar byskup, ok margir aðrir höfðingjar. En þá er
and Abiathar bishop and many other chieftains But then when
Sadoch byskup, ok Nathan propheta, ok Bananias höfðingi,
Zadok bishop and Nathan prophet and Benaiah chieftain
ok Barsabe dróttning sögðu Davidi svá sem harmandi, at
and Bathsheba queen told David so as grieving that
hann var leyndr slíkum stórræðum, þá þagnaði David
he was kept-ignorant of-such great-deeds then fell-silent David
nökkura hríð ok klökk mjök; því næst svaraði hann sem með
some while and wept much that next answered he as with
harmi hugar, ok mælti svá: „Eigi vilja synir mínir draga mína
grief of-mind and spoke so Not will sons my draw my
náttúru til sín, þvíat ek þjónaða Sauli konungi marga daga
nature to themselves because I served Saul (the)-king many days
við þat, at hann lá um líf mitt, ok hafði þó guð kosit mik
with that that he lay about life my and had yet God chosen me
til konungs, þvíat hann var Sauli konungi reiðr; þó beið
to king because he was with-Saul (the)-king angry yet awaited
ek þess dóms at, at guð dœmdi hann af ríki, en eigi
I that judgment for that God judged him from realm but not
vilda ek dœma hann, þóat hann væri andskoti minn; ok hefir
would I judge him though he were adversary my and has
son minn nú þat gört við mik, er ek vilda eigi gera við
son my now that done to me which I would not do to
úvin minn. Nú með því at Adonias hefir dœmt mik frá því
enemy my Now with that that Adonijah has judged me from that

ríki, er sjálfr guð kaus mik til, fyrr en ek sagða upp, eða
realm which himself God chose me to before than I said up or
elligar tœki sá mik frá, er mik kaus til, fyrir því skal hann
else took he me from who me chose to-it for that shall he
með háðung frá falla þessarri sœmd, svá sem sá féll, er
with shame from fall this honor so as he fell who
hina fyrstu uppreist gerði með drambi móti dróttni sínum."
the first uprising made with pride against lord his
Því næst mælti David við Sadoch byskup: „Tak múl minn,
That next spoke David to Zadok bishop Take mule my
ok lát hann búa með öllum þeim búnaði, er hann var
and let him furnish with all that furnishing which he was
þá búinn, er ek reið hánum með allri tign, ok set þar á
then furnished when I rode him with all dignity and set there on
Salamon son minn, ok kalla með þér Nathan spámann ok
Solomon son my and call with you Nathan prophet and
Bananiam höfðingja, ok alla hina tryggustu mína höfðingja
Benaiah chieftain and all the most-trusty my chieftains
ok riddara, ok ríð til landtjalds guðs í Zion, ok smyr þar
and knights and ride to (the)-land-tent of-God in Zion and anoint there
Salamon son minn til konungs. Því næst lát taka lúðra
Solomon son my to king That next let take trumpets
sjálfs míns, ok lát blása um alla borgina með hátíðligu
of-self my and let blow through all the-town with festive
kalli, ok lát boða, at Salamon er konungr at vilja guðs
call and let proclaim that Solomon is king by (the)-will of-God
ok at kosning Davids. Því næst leið hingat Salamon son
and by (the)-choice of-David That next lead hither Solomon son
minn til mín, at ek mega fagna nýsettum konungi í sæti
my to me that I may welcome (the)-newly-set king into seat
mitt." En at lokinni rœðu Davids, þá gerði Sadoch byskup
my But at ended talk of-David then did Zadok bishop

alla þá hluti, er David bauð hánum. En þá er Salamon
all those things which David bade him But then when Solomon
kom aptr farandi skrýddr með allri konungligri tign, þá
came back going adorned with all kingly dignity then
stóð David sjálfr upp í móti hánum ok hneigði hánum, ok
stood David himself up in against him and bowed to-him and
blessaði hann með þessum orðum: „Blessaðr sé þú, guð, at
blessed him with these words Blessed be you God that
þú lézt þér sóma at hefja mik til svá mikillar sœmdar
you let to-yourself befit to raise me to so great honor
af litlum stigum, sem ek em nú í skipaðr, ok hefir nú
from little steps as I am now in placed and has now
hólpit mér í mörgum háskum, ok leiddan mik nú til þeirrar
helped me in many dangers and led me now to that
hugganar eptir mart vandræði ok langt stárf, at augu mín
comfort after much trouble and long toil that eyes my
megu þann sjá í dag, framgenginn af mínum lendum,
may that-one see in day gone-forth from my loins
er þú hefir nú sjálfr skipat í þat sœmdarsæti, sem þú
whom you have now yourself placed into that honor-seat which you
hafðir mik áðr í skipaðan, eptir því sem þú hézt
had me before in placed according-to that which you promised
mér, dróttinn minn. Þess bið ek þik, dróttinn minn, at
me lord my Of-that ask I you lord my that
þú tvífaldir ok þrífaldir mannvit ok tign Davids í þessum
you double and treble (the)-wit and dignity of-David in this
œskumanni, ok ger hann fullkominn höfðingja at gæta þíns
youth and make him perfect chieftain to keep your
heilags fólks eptir þínum vilja.“ Því næst kysti David
holy folk according-to your will That next kissed David
Salamon, ok mælti við hann: „Sá guð er himninum stýrir,
Solomon and spoke to him That God who heaven steers

margfaldi þér frið á jörðu umfram alla konunga, ok gefi
multiply to-you peace on earth beyond all kings and give
þér blessan ok jarðar ávöxtu ok alla sælu." En at lokinni
you blessing and earth's fruits and all bliss But at ended
þessi rœðu ok blessan, þá mælti David við Salamon: „Með
this talk and blessing then spoke David to Solomon With
því at ek finn, at guð hefir gefit þér speki ok mannvit,
that that I find that God has given you wisdom and wit
þá gættu ríkisstjórnar með vitrligu réttdœmi, svá nökkuru
then keep-you realm-governance with wise right-judgment so somewhat
refsingasamr, at eigi sýnisk ríki þitt stjórnarlaust vera fyrir
punishing that not seem realm your governance-less to-be for
þinnar bleyði sakir. Gæt ok með mundangshófi harðrar
your softness' sake Keep also with balance's-measure (the)-hard
refsingar, at eigi verðir þú funninn miskunnarlauss með
punishment that not become you found merciless with
ofmiklum grimleik. Þó skaltu minnask Joabs frænda þíns,
too-great fierceness Yet shall-you remember Joab kinsman your
er mér hefir lengi þjónat með miklu starfi, ok hœfir þat
who me has long served with great toil and befits it
eigi, at syndligar sakir þær, er hann hefir í fallit, fylgi
not that sinful guilts those which he has into fallen follow
hánum til helvítis, þvíat hann drap Abner ok Amasa ágæta
him to hell because he killed Abner and Amasa excellent
höfðingja í mínum griðum, er lengi höfðu þjónat Sauli
chieftains in my truces who long had served Saul
konungi með miklum tryggleika; ok margir aðrir eru þeir,
(the)-king with great faithfulness and many others are those
er hann drap fyrir ofrkapps sakir en eigi réttrar refsingar,
whom he killed for over-zeal's sake but not right punishment's
ok er betr, at þú látir hann heldr taka hér skjóta hefnd,
and is better that you let him rather take here quick vengeance

en hann týnisk eilífliga í þessum sökum. Halt ok orð
than he perish eternally in these guilts Keep also words
mín við Semei, þóat hann bölvaði mér, þá er ek flýða
my toward Shimei though he cursed me then when I fled
ofríki Absalons bróður þíns, ok þó með þeim hætti, at
(the)-tyranny of-Absalom brother your and yet in that manner that
hann hafi nökkura minning glœps síns til iðranar, at eigi
he have some memory of-crime his for repentance that not
staðfestisk sú bölvan eilífliga yfir höfði hánum, at hann
be-confirmed that curse eternally over head his that he
bölvaði mér saklausum. Væg ok frændsemi við Adoniam
cursed me guiltless Spare also kinship with Adonijah
bróður þinn, ef þú sér, at hann iðrask þess, er hann
brother your if you see that he repents of-that which he
gerði svikliga uppreist móti feðr sínum. Minnsk þú þess, at
made treacherous uprising against father his Remember you that that
Abiathar byskup lét föður sinn ok alla frændr sína fyrir þat
Abiathar bishop lost father his and all kinsmen his for that
er ek var fœddr í Nobe, þá er ek flýða af augliti Sauls
that I was fed in Nob then when I fled from (the)-sight of-Saul
konungs. Þess á ok Abiathar at njóta, er hann flýði með
(the)-king That ought also Abiathar to enjoy that he fled with
mér ok bar örk guðs fyrir mér, þá er ek flýða fyrir
me and bore (the)-ark of-God before me then when I fled before
Absalon bróður þínum. Þó gá þú þess, at Abiathar hafi
Absalom brother your Yet heed you that that Abiathar have
rétta minning iðranar fyrir þat, er hann var í svikræðum
right memory of-repentance for that that he was in treason-plots
við mik með Adonia bróður þínum ok móti mér, at sú
toward me with Adonijah brother your and against me that that
sök fylgi hánum eigi til dauða. Gersk þú djarfr ok styrkr,
guilt follow him not to death Make-yourself you bold and strong

harðhendr ok þó hófsamr. Ger í öllum hlutum vilja guðs,
hard-handed and yet moderate Do in all things (the)-will of-God
þá eignask þú hvárttveggja stundliga sælu ok eilífa."
then own you both temporal bliss and eternal
Þá mælti David við Sadoch byskup ok Nathan propheta:
Then spoke David to Zadok bishop and Nathan prophet
„Leiðit nú Salamon konung í höll mína, ok setit hann
Lead-you now Solomon (the)-king into hall my and set-you him
í hásæti mitt með öllum hátíðligum fagnaði, ok gerit
in high-seat my with all festive rejoicing and make-you
nú veizlu." En þeir gerðu alt sem David bauð þeim. En
now feast But they did all as David bade them But
at lokinni veizlu Adonie þá heyrðu þeir söngva ok pípur
at ended feast of-Adonijah then heard they songs and pipes
ok hverskyns gleði, svá sem með nýkomnum fagnaði um
and every-kind gladness so as with newly-come rejoicing about
borgina. En er Adonias spurði, hverju gegndi sá fagnaðr,
the-town But when Adonijah asked what meant that rejoicing
hvárt sú gleði var fyrir hans tignar sakir, eða væri nökkur
whether that gladness was for his dignity's sake or were some
ný tíðendi; þá var hánum sagt, at David konungr hafði
new tidings then was to-him told that David (the)-king had
sjálfr gefit Salamoni nafn sitt ok kosit hann til konungs ok
himself given to-Solomon name his and chosen him to king and
til allrar konungligrar tignar, ok Salamon var þá vígðr til
to all kingly dignity and Solomon was then consecrated to
konungs ok sat þá í hásæti Davids með öllum hátíðligum
king and sat then in (the)-high-seat of-David with all festive
búnaði, ok fagnaði allr lýðr þeim tíðendum sem ágætri
attire and rejoiced all people at-those tidings as excellent
hátíð. Þá er Adonias heyrði þessi tíðendi, þá varð hann
festival Then when Adonijah heard these tidings then became he

harðla hræddr, ok allir þeir er í þessi ráðagerð váru með
very afraid and all those who in this counsel were with
hánum, ok flýðu, hverr til síns heimilis, en Adonias flýði til
him and fled each to his home but Adonijah fled to
landtjalds guðs ok lagði hönd sína á heilagt altari, svá sem
(the)-land-tent of-God and laid hand his on holy altar so as
játandi sik til hreinlífis ok þjónostumanns í helgu tjaldi
confessing himself to chastity and service-man in (the)-holy tent
guðs. Þvi næst sendi hann mann til konungs, ok mælti: „Hér
of-God That next sent he man to (the)-king and spoke Here
skal ek deyja, nema því at eins, at herra minn Salamon
shall I die except that at only that lord my Solomon
konungr heiti mér með fastmælum, at hann drepi mik
(the)-king promise me with firm-words that he kill me
eigi, þjón sinn, fyrir þat er ek hefi misgert.“ Þá svaraði
not servant his for that which I have misdone Then answered
Salamon konungr: „Adonias er bróðir minn at frændsemi, ok
Solomon (the)-king Adonijah is brother my in kinship and
vil ek gjarna vægja hánum, ef hann vill réttliga iðrask fyrir
will I gladly spare him if he will rightly repent for
þat, er hann gerði svikliga uppreist móti feðr sínum David,
that that he made treacherous uprising against father his David
ok vil ek bera þessa byrði með hánum fyrir guði, með
and will I bear this burden with him before God with
þeim máldaga at hann verði jafnan kendr við tryggleik ok
that condition that he become always known for faithfulness and
lítillæti fyrir utan alla flærð. En ef nökkur flærðsamlig girnd
humility before outside all falsehood But if some false desire
verðr funnin með hánum, þá á hann vísa ván hefndar
becomes found with him then has he certain expectation of-vengeance

yfir höfði sér. Nú fari hann heim til eigna sinna, ok njóti
over head his Now go he home to possessions his and enjoy
þeirra æ, meðan hann heldr þetta, er nú er mælt."
them ever while he keeps this which now is spoken
En þá er andlátstími Davids nálgaðisk, þá vitjaði Salamon
But then when (the)-death-time of-David approached then visited Solomon
konungr Davids föður síns jafnan, þar til er hann var
(the)-king David father his always there to when he was
líflátinn, ok grét danða hans marga daga með öllum þeim
dead and wept (the)-death his many days with all those
höfðingjum, er í hans ríki váru, ok bjó gröft hans
chieftains who in his realm were and prepared burial his
með allri konungligri tign ok útalligum auðœfum. En eptir
with all kingly dignity and countless riches But after
andlát Davids þá bað Adonias Bersabe dróttning, at hon
(the)-death of-David then asked Adonijah Bathsheba queen that she
skyldi beiðask af Salamoni konungi, at hann gæfi hánum
should ask from Solomon (the)-king that he gave him
Abisag til eiginkonu. En sá var atburðr um Abisag, at þá
Abishag for wedded-wife But that was (the)-event about Abishag that then
er David konungr hafði elli tekit, þá nálgaðisk kuldi hörund
when David (the)-king had age taken then approached cold skin
hans, svá at hann mátti eigi af klæða yl varmr verða.
his so that he might not from clothes' warmth warm become
Þá var Abisag, ung mær ok meyja fegrst í ríkinu, af hinni
Then was Abishag young maiden and of-maidens fairest in the-realm of the
beztu ok stœrstu ætt; en hon var leidd til sængr Davids
best and greatest family but she was led to (the)-bed of-David
konungs, til þess at liggja nær hánum at verma hann ok
(the)-king for that to lie near him to warm him and
þjóna hánum, at David skyldi taka verma af blóma hennar
serve him that David should take warmth from bloom her

ok blautu hörundi, ok af girnd fagrar meyjar. En David
and soft skin and from (the)-desire of-fair maiden But David
elskaði hana mjök með allri ást, svá sem fóstrmóður sína, en
loved her much with all love so as foster-mother his but
eigi sem konu. En fyrir þat hlaut Abisag svá mikla sœmd,
not as wife But for that got Abishag so great honor
at hon var virð höfuðdróttning yfir öllum dróttningum í
that she was valued chief-queen over all queens in
augliti alls lýðs, ok helgaðisk svá tign hennar af faðmlagi
(the)-sight of-all people and was-hallowed so dignity her from (the)-embrace
Davids. En með þeirri athygli leitaði Adonias kvánfangs eptir
of-David But with that attention sought Adonijah marriage after
andlát Davids, at hann ætlaði svá at komask at ríkinu með
(the)-death of-David that he intended so to come to the-realm with
flærðsamligri vél, þvíat svá mundi fólkit alt mæla, ef hann
false engine because so would the-folk all say if he
fengi Abisag, at sá væri makligastr at sitja í sæti
got Abishag that that-one were most-fitting to sit in (the)-seat
Davids, er verðastr var at stíga í sæng hans, ok þess var
of-David who most-worthy was to step into bed his and that was
verðr at liggja í þeim faðmi, er David hafði helgat með
worthy to lie in that embrace which David had hallowed with
sjálfum sér. Þat ætlaði hann ok, sem vera mundi, at brœðr
self himself That intended he also as be would that brothers
Abisag ok allir frændr hennar mundu betr unna hánum ríkis,
of-Abishag and all kinsmen her would better grant him realm
ef hann fengi hennar, heldr en þeim manni, er ekki var við
if he got her rather than that man who not was with
þá leytum bundinn. Bersabe dróttning tók við erendi
them by-kinship-degrees bound Bathsheba queen took with (the)-errand
Adonie, ok fór síðan til fundar við Salamon konung, son
of-Adonijah and went afterward to meeting with Solomon (the)-king son

sinn; en þegar er hon kom í höll konungs, þá gékk hann
her but as-soon as she came into hall of-(the)-king then went he
sjálfr í móti móður sinni ok leiddi hana til sætis með sér.
himself in against mother his and led her to seat with himself
Því næst birti dróttning erendi sitt ok mælti svá: „Ek hefi
That next revealed (the)-queen errand her and spoke so I have
eina bœn litla at flytja til þín, ok vil ek birta eigi fyrr, en
one prayer little to bring to you and will I reveal not before than
þú veitir mér áðr." Konungr svaraði: „Þú ert móðir mín, ok
you grant me before (The)-king answered You are mother my and
má ek eigi synja þér þess, er þú vilt beðit hafa, ok vil ek
may I not refuse you that which you will asked have and wish I
víst, at þú þiggir þat, er þú biðr; en þat samir þér víst
surely that you receive that which you ask but that befits you surely
at hugleiða, at þú beiðir þess, er mér er vel veitanda."
to ponder that you ask that which to-me is well to-be-granted
Þá mælti Bersabe dróttning til konungsins: „Ek vil þess
Then spoke Bathsheba queen to the-king I will of-that
biðja, at þú gefir Adonie, bróður þinum, Abisag til konu."
ask that you give to-Adonijah brother your Abishag as wife
Salamon konungr svaraði henni mjök reiðr: „Hvat er undir
Solomon (the)-king answered her very angry What is under
því at beiðask hánum Abisag til konu? En ef þú ant
that to ask for-him Abishag as wife But if you grant
hánum betr konungdómsins en mér, þá bið hánum ríkisins;
him better the-kingship than me then ask for-him the-realm
fyrir því at þú veizt, at Adonias bróðir minn er ellri en
for that that you know that Adonijah brother my is older than
ek, ok gaf sér sjálfr konungs nafn með kosningi hinna
I and gave himself himself king's name with (the)-choice of-the
ágætustu höfðingja, fyrr en faðir minn kysi mik til ríkis
most-excellent chieftains before than father my chose me to realm

með guðs vilja. Nú eru þeir at sönnu enn í dag í öllu
with God's will Now are they in truth still in day in all
fulltingi með hánum, Joab hinn ríkasti höfðingi ok hertogi,
support with him Joab the mightiest chieftain and duke
ok Abiathar byskup, en Abisag er af því bezta kyni, er í
and Abiathar bishop but Abishag is of that best kin which in
er borginni ok í öllu ríkinu, enda virð af öllum mönnum
is the-town and in all the-realm moreover valued by all men
hin hæsta dróttning fyrir fóstrs sakar þess, er hon veitti
the highest queen for fostering's sake that which she gave
feðr mínum í elli sinni. En ef Adonias fær hennar til
to-father my in age his But if Adonijah gets her as
konu, þá virðir alþýðan svá, at hann sé nálægastr
wife then reckons the-common-people so that he be nearest
at sitja í sæti Davids, þar sem hann er verðr at liggja
to sit in (the)-seat of-David there where he is worthy to lie
í sæng hans eða þeim faðmi, er David lá í sjálfr. Nú
in bed his or that embrace which David lay in himself Now
með því at Adonias gerði dróttinsvik móti feðr sínum, þá
with that that Adonijah did lord-treachery against father his then
buðumk ek til at bera ábyrgð þeirrar syndar með hánum
offered-myself I to-it to bear responsibility of-that sin with him
fyrir guði, fyrir frændsemi sakir okkarrar, en nú þrífaldar
before God for kinship's sake our-two's but now trebles
hann í annat sinn þau svik við mik bróður sinn, er
he in another time that treachery toward me brother his which
hann hóf upp í öndverðu við föður sinn. Fyrir því sver
he raised up at (the)-beginning toward father his For that swear
ek þess við þann guð, er mér skipaði í sæti Davids, at
I that by that God who me placed in (the)-seat of-David that
Adonias skal bera sök sína, ok hverr annarra þeirra, er í
Adonijah shall bear charge his and each of-others those who in

þessu niðingsráði váru með hánum." Því næst mælti Salamon
this villain's-plot were with him That next spoke Solomon
konungr við Bananiam höfðingja: „Far þú til ok drep
(the)-king to Benaiah chieftain Go you to-it and kill
Adoniam bróður minn, þvíat heldr vil ek, at hann taki hér
Adonijah brother my because rather wish I that he take here
skjóta hefnd, eptir því sem regla heilagra laga býðr fyrir
quick vengeance according-to that which (the)-rule of-holy laws bids for
dróttinsvik, heldr en hann beri níðingssök til helvítis. Drep
lord-treachery rather than he bear villain's-charge to hell Kill
þú ok Joab frænda minn, þvíat hann gerði tvau níðingsverk
you also Joab kinsman my because he did two villain's-deeds
við David konung, þá er hann drap Abner ok Amasam
toward David (the)-king then when he killed Abner and Amasa
ágæta höfðingja í griðum ok trúnaði Davids. En þessi er
excellent chieftains in truces and trust of-David But this is
hans hin þriðja sök, er miklu er mest, at hann gerði
his the third charge which much is greatest that he did
dróttinsvik móti Davidi, þá er hann gaf konungs nafn
lord-treachery against David then when he gave king's name
Adonie, ok er hann at vísu týndr annars heims eilífliga,
to-Adonijah and is he for sure lost of-(the)-other world eternally
nema hann taki iðran þessa heims með lögligri refsing."
unless he take repentance of-this world with lawful punishment
Í þessum stað sýnir Salamon konungr mikil dœmi, at vel
In this place shows Solomon (the)-king great examples that well
samir at rjúfa þau heit ok jákvæði, er beidd verða eða
befits to break those promises and assents which asked become or
játuð móti réttendum; þvíat hann veitti Bersabe dróttning,
granted against rights because he granted Bathsheba queen
móður sinni, þat er hon bað, fyrr en hann vissi hvat þat
mother his that which she asked before than he knew what that

var; en þegar hann varð varr við, at þat var skaðsamlig
was but as-soon-as he became aware of that that was harmful
bœn, þá drap hann þann mann, er þeirrar bœnar bað fyrir
prayer then killed he that man who that prayer asked at
öndverðu. Bananias gerði sem Salamon konungr bauð hánum,
(the)-beginning Benaiah did as Solomon (the)-king bade him
ok drap Adoniam. En svá sem Joab hertogi ok Abiathar
and killed Adonijah But so as Joab duke and Abiathar
byskup váru í ráðagerð, at gefa konungs nafn Adonie, svá
bishop were in counsel to give king's name to-Adonijah so
váru þeir ok í þeirri ráðagerð, at hann skyldi beiðask Abisag
were they also in that counsel that he should ask Abishag
sér til konu; ok þá er þeir spurðu dauða Adonie,
for-himself as wife and then when they learned (the)-death of-Adonijah
þá væntu þeir sér ok dauða. Bananias tók Abiathar
then expected they for-themselves also death Benaiah took Abiathar
byskup ok lét leiða fyrir Salamon konung; en Joab flýði til
bishop and let lead before Solomon (the)-king but Joab fled to
landtjalds guðs, ok lagði hönd sína á heilagt altaris horn,
(the)-land-tent of-God and laid hand his on holy altar's horn
svá sem játandi sik til hreinlífis ok þjónostumanns í helgu
so as confessing himself to chastity and service-man in holy
tjaldi guðs. Bananias kom til tjalds guðs, ok mælti: „Gakk
tent of-God Benaiah came to (the)-tent of-God and spoke Go
út, Joab! konungr býðr þér, at þú gangir út or tjaldi
out Joab (the)-king bids you that you go out out-of (the)-tent
guðs.“ En Joab svaraði: „Með því at ek em nú hér kominn
of-God But Joab answered With that that I am now here come
á guðs grið, þá skal ek hér annathvárt dauða þola eða
onto God's truce then shall I here either death bear or
í griðum vera.“ Því næst lét Bananias segja konungi þessi
in truce be That next let Benaiah tell (the)-king these

tíðendi með sendimanni sínum, ok þá er sendimaðrinn
tidings with messenger his and then when the-messenger
kom fyrir konung með Abiathar byskupi, ok sagði alla þessa
came before (the)-king with Abiathar bishop and told all these
hluti, þá svaraði Salamon konungr sendimanninum: „Seg
things then answered Solomon (the)-king the-messenger Tell
þessi orð mín Bananie, at hann drepi Joab hvar sem hann
these words my to-Benaiah that he kill Joab where that he
er staddr, þvíat verk hans ok dómr heilagra laga drepr
is placed because works his and (the)-judgment of-holy laws kills
hann, en hvárgi okkarr." Bananias gerði sem konungr bauð
him but neither of-us-two Benaiah did as (the)-king bade
hánum, ok drap Joab þar sem hann var kominn.
him and killed Joab there where he was come
En konungr mælti á þá leið við Abiathar byskup: „Veiztu þat,
But (the)-king spoke in that way to Abiathar bishop Know-you that
at þú ert dauðamaðr at réttu eptir lagaskipan heilagrar
that you are death-man by right according-to (the)-law-arrangement of-holy
reglu; en fyrir því at þú lézt föður þinn ok alla ætt þína í
rule but for that that you lost father your and all family your in
Nobe á einum degi, fyrir þat er faðir þinn gaf mat Davidi
Nob in one day for that that father your gave food to-David
feðr mínum; svá bartu ok örk guðs fyrir hánum, þá er
father my so bore-you also (the)-ark of-God before him then when
hann flýði af augliti Absalons bróður míns; fyrir því er þess
he fled from (the)-sight of-Absalom brother my for that is of-that
vert, at þú njótir þess at sinni, at þú þolir eigi bráðan
worthy that you enjoy that at (this)-time that you bear not sudden
dauða. En með því skaltu þér nú líf kaupa at sinni,
death But with that shall-you for-yourself now life buy at (this)-time
at þú haldir jafnan þessa minning iðranar þinnar fyrir
that you keep always this memory of-repentance your for

dróttinsvik þau, er þú gerðir í móti Davidi. Far þú nú til
lord-treachery that which you did in against David Go you now to
eigna þinna, ok lif þar sem einn plógkarl, ok njót með því
possessions your and live there as one plowman and enjoy with that
allra eigna þinna, at þú lifir þar sem einnhverr bóndi. En svá
all possessions your that you live there as some farmer But so
skjótt sem þú réttir hendr þínar til nökkurrar kennimannligrar
quickly as you stretch hands your to some priestly
þjónostu eða embættis, þá vit þú víst réttdœmi heilagra
service or office then know you surely (the)-right-judgment of-holy
laga yfir höfði þínu." Abiathar fór heim ok hélt jafnan
laws over head your Abiathar went home and kept always
síðan þat, er konungr bauð hánum, ok lifði marga daga;
afterward that which (the)-king bade him and lived many days
en Semei dó þrem vetrum síðar, fyrir þat er hann hélt eigi
but Shimei died three winters later for that that he kept not
þat sem hánum var boðit, eptir því sem fyrr sögðum vér.
that which to-him was bidden according-to that which before told we

LXVII · PROMISES BROKEN FOR RIGHT

The son asks why Joab could be killed in God's tent and why Solomon broke his promise to his mother. The father answers that a gift foolishly asked may be wisely taken back, as Solomon did, while Herod, who kept his oath at the feast, killed John the Baptist and perished with the women who asked it. Yet no man should be loose-tongued, least of all the mighty, though no promise binds where great crimes follow.

SON Nú eru þeir nökkurir hlutir, at mér þykkir sem ek hafa
Now are those some things that to-me seems as-if I have
vanspurt. Hví varð Salamoni konungi þat fyrir at brjóta
under-asked Why happened to-Solomon (the)-king that for to break

grið á Joab, þar sem hann flýði á guðs grið ok í þat
truce on Joab there where he fled onto God's truce and into that
hús, sem guði var helgat í öllum heiminum? Nú er nær
house which to-God was hallowed in all the-world Now is nearly
allr heimrinn skipaðr með kirkjum, ok þykkir þat illa gert,
all the-world ordered with churches and seems that ill done
at drepa mann í kirkjugriðum. En ek hugða þat, at því
to kill a-man in church-truces But I thought that that the
ágætligar mundi varðveitt vera tign heilags guðs húss,
more-excellently would kept be (the)-dignity of-holy God's house
er þau eru færri. Þessi er sá annarr hlutr, er mik fýsir
when they are fewer This is that second thing which me desires
at spyrja, hví Salamoni konungi varð þat fyrir at heita
to ask why to-Solomon (the)-king happened that for to promise
því móður sinni, er hon bað, ok halda eigi síðan? Heldr
that to-mother his which she asked and keep not afterward Rather
hugða ek þat, at jafnvitr maðr sem Salamon konungr var,
thought I that that equally-wise man as Solomon (the)-king was
at hann mundi eptirleita, hvat þat væri, er hon bað, fyrr
that he would inquire what that were which she asked before
en hann lofaði, heldr en hann mundi eigi vilja halda þat
than he promised rather than he would not wish keep that
er hann hét, þóat eigi væri eptir hans vilja beitt.
which he promised though not were according-to his will asked
FATHER Þess gátum vér fyrr í várri ræðu, at þat er mannvit
That mentioned we before in our talk that that is wit
þess er biðr, at beiðask þeirra hluta, er viðrkvæmiligir eru
of-him who asks to ask those things which suitable are
ok vel veitandi, ok eigu þær gjafir allar at vera staðfastar ok
and well to-be-granted and ought those gifts all to be steadfast and
haldkvæmar, er hvárttveggja eru vitrliga gefnar ok svá beðnar.
holding-useful which both are wisely given and so asked

En í þessum stað sýndi Salamon konungr góð dœmi ok
But in this place showed Solomon (the)-king good examples and
nytsamlig, at hann tók vitrliga þá gjöf aptr, er móðir hans
useful that he took wisely that gift back which mother his
bað heimskliga, þóat hann hefði áðr veitt henni. Þessi dœmi
asked foolishly though he had before granted her These examples
váru löngu síðar, er verri váru, er Herodes gerði í Galilea
were long later which worse were which Herod made in Galilee
at veizlunni, þá er hann hét stjúpdóttur sinni, at þiggja
at the-feast then when he promised stepdaughter his to receive
hvat sem hon beiddisk, en hon bað hann með ráði móður
whatever that she asked but she asked him with (the)-counsel of-mother
sinnar höfuðs Johannis Baptiste. Herodes vissi, at Johannes
her (the)-head of-John (the)-Baptist Herod knew that John
var saklauss ok heilagr maðr, ok iðraðisk mjök, er hann hafði
was guiltless and holy man and repented much that he had
jákvætt henni þessa bœn. En hans iðran hafði engan ávöxt,
assented her this prayer But his repentance had no fruit
þvíat hann gáði eigi þess, at taka þá gjöf aptr vitrliga, er hon
because he heeded not that to take that gift back wisely which she
beiddisk heimskliga, heldr gerði hann þat illvirki, er hon bað
asked foolishly rather did he that evil-deed which she asked
hann, ok týndisk því hvárttveggja, konurnar fyrir beizluna,
him and perished therefore both the-women for the-asking
en Herodes fyrir gjöfina. En Salamoni konungi þótti þat betra
but Herod for the-gift But to-Solomon (the)-king seemed that better
at sjá reiðan hug móður sinnar, fyrir þat er hann níkvæddi
to see angry mind of-mother his for that that he denied
þat vitrliga, er hann hafði bráðliga játat, heldr en hann vildi
that wisely which he had suddenly assented rather than he would
þola stórglœpsamligan skaða fyrir staðfestu heimskligrar
bear great-criminal harm for (the)-steadfastness of-foolish

bœnar ok rangligrar. En þó skaltu þat láta skiljask þér
prayer and wrongful But yet shall-you that let be-understood to-you
til fulls, at engum manni samir þat vel at vera lausorðum,
to full that to-no man befits that well to be loose-worded
ok berr þat því hverjum manni verr, sem hann er ríkari. En
and befits that the to-each man worse as he is mightier But
hvetvetna þar sem stórglœpir ok stórsakir standa af, þá
everywhere there where great-crimes and great-charges stand from-it then
er þat engum manni haldanda, þóat hann hafði áðr játat.
is that by-no man to-be-kept though he had before assented

LXVIII · WHAT TO GRANT

The son asks which promises must be kept. The father answers that a lord should weigh what he is asked, whether it brings harm or honor, who asks, and how much to give, lest he fare like Herod, who promised drunk and without limit. Gifts that cost no honor may be granted, but one that costs honor, though granted in haste, is wisely taken back, as are gifts gained by lies or given to the ungrateful. A giver should seldom need to take back his gifts, lest he seem loose-tongued.

SON Þess vil ek nú biðja yðr, at þér gerit enn meiri
Of-that will I now ask you that you make still greater
grein fyrir mér á þessu, hvat haldanda er, þat sem játat
distinction before me on this what to-be-kept is that which assented
er, eða hvat rjúfanda er, þat sem lofat er.
is or what to-be-broken is that which promised is
FATHER Ef ríkr maðr er beðinn nökkurra hluta, ok verðr
If mighty man is asked some things and becomes
bœnin látin í ljós við hann, þá er hánum vel hugleiðanda,
the-prayer let into light with him then is for-him well to-be-pondered
hvat þat er sem hann er beðinn, hvárt þat er hánum til skaða
what that is which he is asked whether it is to-him for harm

eða til sœmdar. En ef hann sér, at hánum er þat skaðalaust,
or for honor But if he sees that to-him is it harmless
þá er hánum þat hugleiðanda, hverjum hann gefr þat, er
then is for-him that to-be-pondered to-whom he gives that which
hann er beðinn, eða hversu mikit hverjum er veitanda, at
he is asked or how much to-each is to-be-granted that
eigi verði hánum þess dœmi, sem Herode varð, sem vér
not become to-him of-that example which to-Herod happened as we
gátum fyrr; þvíat hann gætti hvárki til fulls verðleika þess
mentioned before because he heeded neither to full (the)-merits of-him
er bað, ok eigi gætti hann, hverr tíminn var eða hversu
who asked and not heeded he what the-time was or how
mikit hann skyldi gefa. En hánum bar þessa leið til handa,
much he should give But to-him bore this way to hand
þá er hann gaf, at hann var drukkinn, þvíat hann gerði
then when he gave that he was drunk because he made
veizlu mikla öllum höfðingjum sínum, ok gætti hann þá eigi
feast great for-all chieftains his and heeded he then not
tímans, þvíat eigi var þat hans at gefa drukkinn; þvíat fár
the-time because not was that his to give drunk because few
gjafir verða til mundangshófs stiltar í drykkjunni. En þar
gifts become to balance's-measure tempered in the-drinking But there
gætti hann eigi mundangshófs, er hann gaf svá mikla gjöf
heeded he not balance's-measure when he gave so great gift
stjúpdóttur sinni, einni konu úskyldri sér, þar sem hann
to-stepdaughter his one woman unrelated to-himself there where he
kvað svá at orði: „Hvat sem þat er, er þú biðr, þá skal ek
said so in word Whatever that it is which you ask then shall I
gefa þér, þóat þú vilir beiðask hálfs ríkis míns." Ok máttu
give you though you will ask half realm my And may-you
nú á þessu marka, at hann var hálfœrr af drykk, er hann
now on this mark that he was half-mad from drink when he

mælti slíkt; þvíat stjúpdóttir hans vann hánum ekki meira
spoke such because stepdaughter his worked for-him not more
til sœmdar, en trumbaði fyrir hánum, ok var leikr hennar
for honor than drummed before him and was play her
miklu minni gjafar verðr, en þá játti hann; ok var þat eigi
much less of-gift worthy than then assented he and was that not
hans at leggja undir annars tungurœtr hvárttveggja hófit
his to lay under another's tongue-roots both the-measure
beizlunnar ok gjafarinnar, þar sem hann kvað svá at orði:
of-the-asking and of-the-gift there where he said so in word
„Hvat sem þú biðr, þá skaltu þiggja, þóat þú beiðisk hálfs
Whatever that you ask then shall-you receive though you ask half
ríkis míns." En ef hann hefði svá at orði kveðit: „hvat sem
realm my But if he had so in word said whatever that
þú beiðisk með hófi ok skynsemd, ok sé mér veitanda, þá
you ask with measure and reason and be to-me to-be-granted then
skaltu þiggja", þá hefði hann vel mælt ok vitrliga, ok hefði
shall-you receive then had he well spoken and wisely and had
þá alt vald undir sér, hvat er hann vildi halda eða níkvæða.
then all power under himself what that he would keep or deny
Nú er þat enn framar at skýra fyrir þér, hverir þeir hlutir
Now is that still further to explain before you what those things
eru, er höfðingjum sé veitandi, ef þeir verða beðnir. Þat er
are which for-chieftains be to-be-granted if they become asked That is
alt veitanda, er höfðingjum stendr eigi skaði af ok engum
all to-be-granted which to-chieftains stands not harm from and to-no
öðrum, ok þó sé þeim sœmd í, er þiggr, ok fullting. En
others and yet be to-them honor in who receive and support But
þóat þess verði höfðingi beðinn, at veita starf sitt eða elligar
though of-that become chieftain asked to give toil his or else
fé sitt, þá er hánum þat vel veitanda, þegar engi verðr
wealth his then is to-him that well to-be-granted when no becomes

niðran sœmd hans í; en þóat hann veiti hvárttveggja fé
lowering honor his in but though he give both wealth
ok starf, þá er þat vel veitanda, þegar hann gefr þeim, er
and toil then is that well to-be-granted when he gives to-him who
mikillar sœmdar er verðr. En hvarvetna þar sem maðr verðr
of-great honor is worthy But everywhere there where a-man becomes
þess beðinn, er hánum er vegþurðr í eða sœmdarspell, þá
of-that asked which to-him is loss-of-esteem in or honor-spoiling then
er þat eigi veitanda; en þóat hann veiti þat bráðliga, þá er
is that not to-be-granted but though he grant that suddenly then is
þat vitrliga aptrtakanda. Þat er ok aptrtakanda, ef maðr veitir
that wisely to-be-taken-back That is also to-be-taken-back if a-man grants
mikit, ok kann sá litla öfúsu, er þiggr, ok hvergi verðr
much and knows that-one little gratitude who receives and nowhere must-one
at hafa langar staðfestur mikillar gjafar, þegar hann kann eigi
to have long confirmations of-great gift when he knows not
rétta öfúsu fyrir, ok tekr þá gjöf aptr frá hánum skynleysi
right gratitude for-it and takes that gift back from him (the)-unreason
ok lítil sannsýni sjálfs hans, en eigi lausyrði þess er
and little justice of-self his but not (the)-loose-wordedness of-him who
gaf. Þær gjafar eru ok allar aptr takandi, þóat veittar sé,
gave Those gifts are also all back to-be-taken though granted be
er beizlumaðr hefir fengit með lygi eða með flærðsamligri
which (the)-asking-man has gotten with lie or with false
slœgð; ok taka þær gjafar aptr lygi hans ok slœgð, en eigi
slyness and take those gifts back lie his and slyness but not
lausyrði þess er gaf, þóat játtat hafi verit. En ef
(the)-loose-wordedness of-him who gave though assented have been But if
höfðingi vill vitrliga sjá fyrir gjöfum sínum, þá er hánum
chieftain will wisely look before gifts his then is for-him
þat vel hugleiðanda, hvers hann er beðinn, eða hvat manna
that well to-be-pondered what he is asked or what of-men

sá er, er biðr. Ok með því at eigi eru allir jafnmikillar
that-one is who asks And with that that not are all of-equally-great
gjafar verðir, þá er þat hugsanda, hversu mikillar gjafar
gift worthy then is that to-be-thought how great gift
hverr er verðr, eða í hvern tíma gefanda er hverja gjöf.
each is worthy or at what time to-be-given is each gift
En sá er gefr verði sem sjaldnast við þat kendr, at taka
But he who gives become as most-seldom with that known to take
sínar gjafir aptr, at hann verði eigi at lausyrðum funninn.
his gifts back that he become not for loose-words found

LXIX · THE TWO HALLS OF GOD

The son asks why Solomon could kill Joab at the altar. The father answers that Solomon would neither offer sacrifice like Saul nor drag Joab away, and that a just death does not defile the altar. God has two halls on earth, the judgment seat kept by the king and the table kept by the bishop, as Moses and Aaron divided them. At the Last Judgment a king answers for his judgments, for the seat's dignities, which he may not give away as he gives gold, and for his punishments, lest he join Saul, Herod, and Nero; one who kept it well is welcomed as a faithful servant.

SON Nú vil ek þess spyrja, hver skynsemdarsvör til þess eru, at
Now will I of-that ask what reason-answers to that are that
þat var réttdœmi, at Salamon konungr lét drepa Joab í helgu
that was right-judgment that Solomon (the)-king let kill Joab in holy
landtjaldi guðs, þar sem hann hélt á helgu guðs altari. Hví
land-tent of-God there where he held on holy God's altar Why
hann lét eigi leiða hann áðr í braut ok lét drepa hann síðan?
he let not lead him before off away and let kill him afterward

FATHER Þessi spurning er nú spurðir þú, þá mun þér eigi
This question which now asked you then will to-you not
verða ljós fyrir augum, nema hon verði skýrð með langri
become clear before eyes unless it become explained with long
rœðu, ok þeirri, er líkari mun þykkja glósum en réttum
talk and that which more-like will seem to-glosses than to-right
framgangsveg upphafðrar rœðu. En þá er Salamon konungr
forward-going-way of-begun talk But then when Solomon (the)-king
dœmdi þat, at drepa skyldi Joab þar sem hann sat, heldr
judged that that kill should-one Joab there where he sat rather
en hann leiddi hann braut, þá gerði hann þat eigi utan
than he led him away then did he that not without
rétta sök, fyrir því at hann vildi eigi falla í slíka sök
right cause for that that he would not fall into such charge
sem Saul konungr, þá er hann flutti fórnir yfir heilagt
as Saul (the)-king then when he brought sacrifices over holy
guðs altari. Nú vildi eigi Salamon konungr, at þat skyldi
God's altar Now wished not Solomon (the)-king that that should-one
kenna, at hann skyldi færa fórnir eða ofr svá sem með
ascribe that he should bring sacrifices or offerings so as with
byskupligu embætti yfir heilagt altari; eigi vildi hann ok með
episcopal office over holy altar not would he also with
afli eða herfangi taka þá hluti brott, er svá náliga váru
force or plunder take those things away which so nearly were
komnir helgu altari guðs, sem Joab var, þar sem hann hélt
come to-holy altar of-God as Joab was there where he held
á helgu altari. En þessa hluti hugleiddi Salamon með sjálfum
on holy altar But these things pondered Solomon with self
sér: „Þat er mitt at gæta reglu heilagra dóma hvar sem
himself That is mine to keep (the)-rule of-holy judgments wherever that
maðrinn er staddr, sá er þá skal um dœma, en eigi er
the-man is placed he who then shall-one about judge but not is

mitt at draga þann með afli ok með herfangi brott, er sjálfr
mine to draw that-one with force and with plunder away who himself
hefir flýit til heilags staðar, þvíat allir réttir dómar þá eru at
has fled to holy place because all right judgments then are by
réttu guðs dómar en eigi mínir, ok veit ek víst, at heilagt
right God's judgments but not mine and know I surely that holy
altari guðs saurgask ekki né afhelgask í blóði Joabs, þvíat
altar of-God is-defiled not nor is-unhallowed in (the)-blood of-Joab because
þat er úthelt með réttri refsing hánum til iðranar, en eigi
it is shed with right punishment to-him for repentance but not
með öfund svá sem með rangri fordœming." Í þessum dómi
with envy so as with wrong condemnation In this judgment
birtir Salamon konungr þat skipti, er guð hafði skipat millim
reveals Solomon (the)-king that division which God had arranged between
þeirra Moyses ok Aarons, at hann vildi því eigi brigða, at
them Moses and Aaron that he would that not change that
hann félli eigi í sakir við guð; þvíat guð hafði svá skipat
he fell not into charges toward God because God had so arranged
millim þeirra, at Moyses skyldi varðveita reglu heilagra
between them that Moses should keep (the)-rule of-holy
dóma, en Aaron skyldi varðveita þær fórnir, er kœmi til
judgments but Aaron should keep those sacrifices which came to
heilags altaris; ok þat skalt þú til víss vita, at þat á
holy altar and that shall you for certain know that that ought
enn í dag at standa með réttu, ok mun þér þat þá verða
still in day to stand with right and will to-you that then become
ljósara fyrir augum, ef ek birti þat fyrir þér með nökkurum
clearer before eyes if I reveal that before you with some
orðum. En þessi er sú skýring, at guð skipaði sér þau
words But this is that explanation that God appointed for-himself those
tvau hús á jörðu, er hann kaus til síns embættis, ok
two houses on earth which he chose for his office and

er annat kirkja, ok svá má kalla hvárttveggja, ef vill,
is one church and so may-one call both if one-wishes
fyrir því at svá þýðisk nafn kirkju sem þinghús, fyrir
for that that so means (the)-name church as assembly-house for
sakar samkvámu fólksins, er þar kemr. En þessi tvau hús
sake of-the-gathering of-the-people which there comes But these two houses
eru hallir guðs, ok hefir hann skipat tvá menn til at gæta
are halls of-God and has he appointed two men to to keep
þessarra húsa; hefir hann sett í aðra þessa höll borð sitt,
these houses has he set in one this hall table his
ok heitir þat fœzluhús, fyrir því at til þess kemr saman
and is-called it food-house for that that to that comes together
fólk guðs at taka þar andliga fœzlu; en í aðra þessa
(the)-folk of-God to take there spiritual food but in (the)-other this
höll þá hefir hann settan helgan dómstól sinn, ok er
hall then has he set holy judgment-seat his and is
þar samkváma fólks, til þess at heyra skýring heilagra
there gathering of-folk for that to hear (the)-explanation of-holy
dóma guðs. En til þessarra tveggja húsa þá hefir hann
judgments of-God But to these two houses then has he
setta tvá gæzlumenn, er annarr konungr, en annarr byskup.
set two keepers who one king but (the)-other bishop
Nú er konungrinn skipaðr at gæta þess hins helga húss,
Now is the-king appointed to keep that the holy house
er sett er í þat helga sæti, at gæta heilagra dóma guðs;
which set is in that holy seat to keep holy judgments of-God
skal hann svá dœma líkamliga millim manna, at hann
shall he so judge bodily between men that he
taki á móti heilsu eilífliga, ok allir þeir, er gæta síðan
take on against health eternally and all those who keep afterward
þeirra dóma, er dœmdir verða með réttu. Hánum hefir
those judgments which judged become with right To-him has

guð ok í hendr selt refsingarsverð, þat er hann skal
God also into hands given (the)-punishment-sword that which he shall
höggva með, er þarf, eptir því sem fyrr sögðum vér,
strike with when needs-one according-to that which before told we
at Salamon konungr gerði, þá er hann lagði Joab undir
that Solomon (the)-king did then when he laid Joab under
refsingarsverð, ok marga aðra, þá sem hann lagði undir rétta
punishment-sword and many others those whom he laid under right
refsing. Nú skal konungr höggva hvern utan öfund með
punishment Now shall (the)-king strike each without envy with
réttri refsing; en hvern er hann drepr fyrir öfundar sakar,
right punishment but each whom he kills for envy's sake
þá er þat manndráp, ok á hann at svara manndráps sök
then is that man-slaying and ought he to answer man-slaying's charge
fyrir guði. Þat skalt þú ok til víss vita, at allir þeir hlutir
before God That shall you also for certain know that all those things
er guð skipaði fyrir öndverðu til þeirrar hallar ok hásætis,
which God ordained at (the)-beginning for that hall and high-seat
þá má engi því frá kippa, nema hann vili ræna guð sjálfan
then may no-one that from snatch unless he will rob God himself
ok heilagt hans dómsæti, ok brigði með yfirgirnd þeirri
and holy his judgment-seat and change with covetousness that
skipan, er guð hefir görva. Hverr sá ok er hann
arrangement which God has made Each that-one also who he
er skipaðr í þetta sæti, þá verðr hann með mikilli áhyggju
is placed in this seat then must he with great care
varask þau svör, er hann verðr fyrir sér at hafa, þegar
beware those answers which he must for himself to have when
hann kemr fyrir kné dómara sínum; þvíat þessarrar rœðu
he comes before (the)-knee of-judge his because of-this talk
á hann vísa ván, at svá mun hinn hæsti dómari at
has he certain expectation that so will the highest judge in

orði kveða við hvern einvörðungum, er fyrir hann kemr,
word say to each singly who before him comes
þann er gæzlumaðr hefir verit þessarrar hallar: „Þú ert
that-one who keeper has been of-this hall You are
skrýddr með mínu nafni, þvíat þú ert bæði konungr ok
adorned with my name because you are both king and
dómari sem ek; nú vil ek at þú gjaldir skynsemd þinnar
judge as I now wish I that you render reason of-your
sýslu, með því at þú ert skipaðr hertogi ok dómari yfir
business with that that you are appointed duke and judge over
fólki mínu.“ Nú þyrfti fyrir þær sakar hverr sem einn,
folk my Now would-need for those sakes each as one
at með góðri skynsemd ok langri áhyggju hefði fyrir sér
that with good reason and long care had for himself
brúat, hverju hann eigi at svara, þá er hann kemr fyrir
bridged what he ought to answer then when he comes before
kné dómaranum. Þar sem höfuðengillinn, sá er án
(the)-knee of-the-judge There where the-archangel he who without
allan breyskleik er, svarar hræddr ok skjálfandi, ef hann
all frailty is answers afraid and trembling if he
er skynsemdar spurðr fyrir sína þjónostu af várum herra
is reason asked for his service by our lord
ok dróttni; því er þat þá markanda, hversu hræddr ok
and master that is that then to-be-marked how afraid and
skjálfandi maðrinn breyskr ok syndugr mun verða, ef hann
trembling the-man frail and sinful will become if he
verðr skynsemdar spurðr fyrir sína sýslu í guðs augliti.
becomes reason asked for his business in God's sight
En allra helzt mun sá svá vera spurðr, er gæzlumaðr var
But of-all most will he so be asked who keeper was
þessarrar hallar, hversu hann hefir gætt dóma milli manna;
of-this hall how he has kept judgments between men

en ef hann fær eigi þar svarat skynsemd fyrir sik, þá á
but if he gets not there answered reason for himself then has
hann skjóta ván þessarra orða: „Þú, illr þræll! með því
he quick expectation of-these words You evil thrall with that
at þú gættir eigi réttdœmis, þá far þú þangat, sem allir
that you kept not right-judgment then go you thither where all
dómar eru rangir dœmdir, þvíat sjálfs þíns munnr dœmdi
judgments are wrong judged because of-self your mouth judged
þik til þess staðar, þvíat hann skammaðisk eigi at bera fram
you to that place because it was-ashamed not to bear forth
ranga dóma." En ef hann fær með góðri skynsemd svarat
wrong judgments But if he gets with good reason answered
sínu réttdœmi, þá má hann sæll þykkjask þeirrar sýslu,
his right-judgment then may he blessed think-himself of-that business
ok mun hann þá þessi orð heyra: „Með því at þú gættir
and will he then these words hear With that that you kept
allra réttra dóma, þá er þess vert, at þú njótir réttdœmis
all right judgments then is of-that worthy that you enjoy right-judgment
um alla hluti." Þá mun hann verða enn spurðr skynsemdar
about all things Then will he become still asked reason
um fleiri hluti; því næst mun hann verða at svara, hversu
about more things that next will he must to answer how
vitrliga eða athugasamliga hann hefir gætt allra þeirra hluta,
wisely or attentively he has kept all those things
er guð hefir skipat fyrir öndverðu til þess dómsætis. En
which God has ordained at (the)-beginning for that judgment-seat But
ef hann hefir eigi gætt allra þeirra hluta, sem guð hefir
if he has not kept all those things which God has
skipat fyrir öndverðu til þess hins helga dómsætis, þá mun
ordained at (the)-beginning for that the holy judgment-seat then will
hann verða leiddr til sýnar við þá, er vel hafa gert, sem
he become led to sight with those who well have done as

annathvárt er Melchisedek eða Moyses eða David, eða aðrir
either is Melchizedek or Moses or David or others
þeir er með þvílíkri áhyggju hafa gætt, sem þeir er nú
those who with such care have kept as those who now
váru nefndir. Því næst mun hann heyra þessi orð mælt:
were named That next will he hear these words spoken
„Ef þú hefðir með þvílíkri skipan ok áhyggju gætt þeirrar
If you had with such arrangement and care kept that
sœmdar, er ek skipaða fyrir öndverðu til heilags dómsætis
honor which I ordained at (the)-beginning for holy judgment-seat
míns, þá mundir þú þvílíka ömbun fyrir taka, sem nú
my then would you such reward for-it take as now
taka þessir. En svá mikla sœmd sem þú lézt draga með
take these But so great honor as you let draw with
röngu undan dómsæti mínu, svá mikillar sœmdar skaltu
wrong from-under judgment-seat my so great honor shall-you
hér þarnask, ok svá miklu minni skaltu hér nú sýnask ok
here go-without and so much less shall-you here now appear and
lægri, en þeir er gættu úskaddrar þeirrar sœmdar, er þeir
lower than those who kept undamaged that honor which they
váru yfirsettir. Eigi vart þú fyrir því yfirskipaðr dómsæti
were over-set Not were you for that over-appointed judgment-seat
mitt, at þér væri vald til þess gefit, at skipa með öðrum
my that to-you were power for that given to arrange in other
hætti þjónostum ok tignum ok helgum sœmdum, en ek
manner services and dignities and holy honors than I
hefi tilskipat fyrir öndverðu; fyrir því at eigi var þér
have appointed at (the)-beginning for that that not was to-you
sú sýsla gefin sem eilíf erfð, heldr var hon þér léð
that business given as eternal inheritance rather was it to-you lent
stundliga, til þess at þú skyldir taka eilífa ömbun móti,
temporally for that that you should take eternal reward against-it

ef þú gættir hennar vel. Til þess var þér veldi gefit, at
if you kept it well For that was to-you power given that
þú skyldir veita veraldlig auðœfi gull ok silfr, ok þó með
you should give worldly riches gold and silver and yet with
skynsemd, en eigi tignir eða sœmdir heilags dómsætis míns."
reason but not dignities or honors of-holy judgment-seat my
En ef þat má rannsakat verða, at hann hefir gætt með
But if that may examined become that he has kept with
skynsemd, þá mun hann sæll þykkjask þeirrar sinnar
reason then will he blessed think-himself of-that his
sýslu; en hann mun þó verða spurðr fleiri hluta. Því
business but he will yet become asked more things That
næst mun hann þess verða spurðr, hversu hann hefir gætt
next will he of-that become asked how he has kept
refsingarvandar þess, er hánum var í hendr seldr, ok
(the)-punishment-rod that which to-him was into hands given and
væri þá allmikit undir, at vel hefði gætt verit réttenda
were then very-much under-it that well had kept been rights
í refsingum; at eigi berisk svá illa til handa sem Sauli
in punishments that not happen so ill to hand as to-Saul
konungi, þá er hann sparði rétta refsing, eptir því sem
(the)-king then when he spared right punishment according-to that which
guð bauð hánum at hafa frammi við fólk þat, er bygði
God bade him to have forward toward folk that which inhabited
Amalech, en hann drap Abimelech byskup með röngum
Amalek but he killed Abimelech bishop with wrong
dómi, ok alla þá kennimenn er váru í Nobe. En ef svá
judgment and all those priests who were in Nob But if so
illa kann til handa at berask þeim, er þá verðr skynsemdar
ill can to hand to happen to-him who then becomes reason
krafðr fyrir þessa refsing, at hann hefir í slíkar sakir
demanded for this punishment that he has into such charges

fallit, sem nú nefndum vér, ok Saul konungr féll í, þá
fallen as now named we and Saul (the)-king fell into then
mun hann skjótt heyra þessi orð: „Leiðit hann þangat, sem
will he quickly hear these words Lead-you him thither where
Saul konungr er, eða Herodes, eða Nero, eða þeir aðrir er
Saul (the)-king is or Herod or Nero or those others who
þvílíkir eru, ok veri hann þar með þeim, með því at hann
such are and be he there with them with that that he
vildi þeim líkjask í grimleik sínum.“ Þó mun eigi verða
would them be-like in fierceness his Yet will not be
gleymt, ef hann hefir í nökkurum stað miskunsamr verit í
forgotten if he has in some place merciful been in
sinum dómum eða refsingum, ok ef hann féngi forðazk þær
his judgments or punishments and if he got avoided those
sakir með skynsemd, er fyrr höfum vér um rætt. Þvíat þá
charges with reason which before have we about talked Because then
mundi hann sæll þykkjask allrar sinnar sýslu, ok mundi hann
would he blessed think-himself of-all his business and would he
þá skjótt heyra þessi orð: „Þú ert velkominn, tryggr þjónn
then quickly hear these words You are welcome trusty servant
ok góðr vin, þvíat þú gættir með tryggleik lítillar sœmdar
and good friend because you kept with faithfulness little honor
stundligrar; þú skalt nú með fagnaði eignask mikla sœmd
temporal you shall now with joy own great honor
eilífliga ok úbrigðiliga án alla sorg ok háska.“ Ok er sá
eternally and unchangeably without all sorrow and danger And is that-one
sæll, er þessi orð öðlask at heyra, en sá er vesall, er
blessed who these words obtains to hear but that-one is wretched who
þau reiðyrði skal heyra, er fyrr töluðum vér um. En í því
those angry-words shall hear which before spoke we about But in that

þarf eigi at ifask, at önnurhvár mun heyra orðin hverr
needs-one not to doubt that either-of-two will hear the-words each
sá, er skynsemdar verðr krafðr fyrir sína sýslu ok skyldu.
he who reason becomes demanded for his business and duty

LXX · KING AND BISHOP

The son asks why Solomon could depose Abiathar if neither keeper may take from the other. The father answers that both halls are God's, and the king's two-edged sword must guard the bishop's hall too, while the bishop strikes with words, denying the sinner God's table. Abiathar lost his office for trying to depose David, and the bishop is the king's teacher and counselor while the king is the judge. The king's sword bites however it is struck, the bishop's only when struck rightly, and then more sorely; the father promises to explain this more fully later.

SON Þetta skilsk mér vel, at sá er víst skipaðr fyrir
This is-understood to-me well that he is surely appointed for
mikinn vanda, er á at gæta reglu heilagra laga ok
great difficulty who ought to keep (the)-rule of-holy laws and
varðveita réttdœmi í öllum hlutum; ok skilsk mér þat
guard right-judgment in all things and is-understood to-me that
nú vel, at Salamon konungr svaraði því eigi sökum fyrir
now well that Solomon (the)-king answered therefore not charges for
þat, er hann drap Joab í landtjaldi guðs, þvíat hann drap
that that he killed Joab in (the)-land-tent of-God because he killed
hann öfundarlaust með réttri refsing, en eigi með öfund, sem
him envy-less with right punishment but not with envy as
Kain drap Abel bróður sinn, ok saurgaðisk eigi landtjald
Cain killed Abel brother his and was-defiled not (the)-land-tent
guðs í blóði Joabs, þvíat þat var eigi með öfund úthelt;
of-God in (the)-blood of-Joab because it was not with envy shed

en því saurgaðisk jörðin í blóði Abels, at þat var með
but therefore was-defiled the-earth in (the)-blood of-Abel that it was with
öfund úthelt. Ok skilsk mér þat nú til víss, at öfundin
envy shed And is-understood to-me that now for certain that the-envy
gerir saurganina ok syndina, en eigi refsingin. En þar sem
makes the-defilement and the-sin but not the-punishment But there where
þér gátut um hallir þær tvær, er guð helgar sér á
you mentioned about halls those two which God hallows for-himself on
jörðu, þá eru þeir hlutir þar, er mik fýsir at spyrja. Þér
earth then are those things there which me desires to ask You
gátut þess, at í annarri höllinni stendr dómsæti guðs,
mentioned that that in one the-hall stands (the)-judgment-seat of-God
ok hafit þér nú skýrt fyrir mér um þat, ok svá um þann
and have you now explained before me about that and so about him
er gætir. En þér gátut þess, at í annarri höllinni stendr
who keeps-it But you mentioned that that in (the)-other the-hall stands
borð guðs, þat er fólk guðs skal taka andliga fœzlu
(the)-table of-God that which (the)-folk of-God shall take spiritual food
af, ok sögðut þér, at byskupinn væri skipaðr gæzlumaðr yfir
from and said you that the-bishop were appointed keeper over
því. Fyrir því vil ek yðr nú spyrja, hví Salamon konungr tók
it For that will I you now ask why Solomon (the)-king took
Abiathar byskup frá þeirri sýslu, er hann var tilskipaðr, at
Abiathar bishop from that business which he was appointed to
gæta þeirrar hallar, er vér gátum nú, ok þó svá þungliga,
keep that hall which we mentioned now and yet so heavily
at hann skyldi aldri síðan rétta hendr sínar til byskupligs
that he should never afterward stretch hands his to episcopal
embættis, heldr skyldi hann jafnan síðan lifa sem einnhverr
office rather should he always afterward live as some
þorpari ok plógkarl. Nú hugða ek þat, at hvárgi þeirra mundi
churl and plowman Now thought I that that neither of-them would

annan eiga at taka frá þeirri gæzlu, er hann var yfirskipaðr,
(the)-other ought to take from that keeping which he was over-appointed
ok vilda ek fyrir því fá hér nökkur skynsemdarsvör, þau
and would-wish I for that get here some reason-answers those
er mér sýndi þat, hversu Salamon konungr mátti taka
which to-me showed that how Solomon (the)-king might take
Abiathar byskup frá sínu embætti ávítalaust við guð.
Abiathar bishop from his office blameless toward God
FATHER Ek gat þess fyrir þér, at þú skalt minnask, at
I mentioned that before you that you shall remember that
þær tvær hallir eru báðar guðs hús, ok er bæði konungr ok
those two halls are both God's houses and is both king and
byskup þjónostumenn guðs ok gæzlumenn þeirra húsa; en eigi
bishop service-men of-God and keepers of-those houses but not
eru þeir eigandi til þess at kippa nökkuru frá þeim, því
are they owning to that to snatch anything from them of-that
er fyrir öndverðu var til þeirra skipat. Nú má konungrinn
which at (the)-beginning was to them appointed Now may the-king
ekki kippa frá því húsinu, er byskupinn er yfirskipaðr,
nothing snatch from that the-house which the-bishop is over-appointed
fyrir því at hvárgi skal annan ræna, ok ekki hernám skal
for that that neither shall (the)-other rob and no plunder shall
millim þeirra vera, þvíat einn á bæði, er guð er, ok á
between them be because one owns both who God is and ought
hvárr þeirra at fulltingja öðrum. Þess gat ek ok fyrir
each of-them to support (the)-other That mentioned I also before
þér, at guð hafði selt í hendr konunginum refsingarvönd,
you that God had given into hands to-the-king punishment-rod
ok svá byskupinum. En sá refsingarvöndr er seldr er í
and so to-the-bishop But that punishment-rod which given is into
hendr konunginum, þat er tvíeggjat sverð. Með því sverði
hands to-the-king that is two-edged sword With that sword

skal hann vera skyldr at höggva hvern þann til dauðs, er
shall he be bound to strike each that-one to death who
nökkurn frádrátt vill gera þessarrar hinnar helgu hallar, er
some subtraction will make from-this the holy hall which
hann er gæzlumaðr at. En því er konungs sverð tvíeggjat,
he is keeper of But therefore is king's sword two-edged
at hann er jafnskyldr at varðveita þá höll, er byskupinn
that he is equally-bound to guard that hall which the-bishop
er yfirskipaðr, ef byskup fær eigi með sínum refsingarvendi
is over-appointed if (the)-bishop gets not with his punishment-rod
gætt. En sá refsingarvöndr er byskup hefir, þá skal hann
kept But that punishment-rod which (the)-bishop has then shall he
í munni hafa ok með orðum höggva, en eigi með höndum
in mouth have and with words strike but not with hands
sem konungrinn; en þetta er þat högg, er byskupinn skal
as the-king but this is that blow which the-bishop shall
höggva, ef nökkurr vill svívirða þá hinu helgu höll, er
strike if any will disgrace that the holy hall which
hann er gæzlumaðr at, þá skal hann afsegja hánum þat
he is keeper of then shall he deny him that
borð, er sett er í þat helga hús, ok þá hinu helgu fœzlu,
table which set is in that holy house and that the holy food
er af því borði skal taka. En þá er Salamon konungr
which from that table shall-one take But then when Solomon (the)-king
tók Abiathar byskup frá byskupligri tign ok embætti, þá
took Abiathar bishop from episcopal dignity and office then
sagði hann, at sök hans tók hann ífrá, en eigi hann. En
said he that charge his took him away but not he But
fyrir því at hann dœmdi David konung frá sínu sæti, fyrr
for that that he judged David (the)-king from his seat before
en guð dœmdi hann, ok kaus annan konung í höfuð
than God judged him and chose another king over head

Davidi, at hánum lifanda, ok var þat rétt, at hann léti
of-David at him living and was that right that he lost
sitt byskupligt embætti, með því at hann vildi ræna David
his episcopal office with that that he would rob David
konungligu embætti. En því varð Sauli konungi þung sú
of-kingly office But therefore became to-Saul (the)-king heavy that
sök, er hann drap Abimelech byskup ok alla kennimenn,
charge that he killed Ahimelech bishop and all priests
þá er váru í borginni Nobe, at hann gerði þat utan rétta
those who were in the-town Nob that he did that without right
sök. En Salamon konungr mundi þó verða ávítalauss, at
cause But Solomon (the)-king would yet become blameless that
hann hefði drepit Abiathar byskup fyrir þat at hann rænti
he had killed Abiathar bishop for that that he robbed
höll guðs þeim höfðingja, er sjálfr guð hafði skipat til
(the)-hall of-God of-that chieftain whom himself God had appointed for
gæzlumanns í sitt heilagt dómsæti. Ok átti Abiathar byskup
keeper in his holy judgment-seat And had Abiathar bishop
engan til at taka, ok engum frá at kippa, eptir því sem
no-one to to take and no-one from to snatch according-to that which
síðar bar raun á; þvíat David kaus þann til konungs í sitt
later bore proof on because David chose that-one to king into his
sæti, er hann vildi, en sá kosningr er Abiathar kaus hann
seat whom he wished but that choice which Abiathar chose it
var engu nýtr. En Abiathar byskup kom með þeim hætti til
was of-no use But Abiathar bishop came in that manner to
byskupligrar tignar, at David hóf hann til. Ok skaltu láta
episcopal dignity that David raised him to-it And shall-you let
þér skiljask, at sú er grein á sýslu þeirra konungs
to-yourself be-understood that that is distinction in (the)-business of-them king
ok byskups, at byskupinn er skipaðr at vera meistari ok
and bishop that the-bishop is appointed to be master and

lærifaðir ok ráðgjafi með konunginum, en konungrinn er
teacher and counselor with the-king but the-king is
skipaðr at vera dómari ok harðendismaðr í allri refsing, til
appointed to be judge and hardness-man in all punishment to
fullrar ógnar við alla þá, er undir hánum eru; en þó hefir
full terror toward all those who under him are but yet has
byskupinn eigi síðr refsingarvönd í hendi sér en konungrinn.
the-bishop not less punishment-rod in hand his than the-king
En sú er grein á því sverði, er byskupinn hefir, frá
But that is distinction in that sword which the-bishop has from
því er konungrinn hefir, at konungs sverð bítr jafnan er
that which the-king has that king's sword bites always when
höggvit er með, ok bítr til mikils skaða, ef með því er
struck is with-it and bites to great harm if with it is
úréttliga höggvit, en þeim verðr þó til gagns, er fyrir
unrightly struck but to-him becomes yet for benefit who before-it
verðr, ef réttliga er með höggvit. En byskupsins sverð bítr
becomes if rightly is with struck But the-bishop's sword bites
eigi nema réttliga sé höggvit með; en ef hann höggr rangliga
not unless rightly be struck with but if he strikes wrongly
með því, þá verðr þeim mein at því, er höggr með, en
with it then becomes to-him harm from that who strikes with but
eigi þeim er fyrir verðr. En ef byskupinn höggr réttliga,
not to-him who before-it becomes But if the-bishop strikes rightly
þá bítr þat enn sárara en konungsins sverð. En þó munum
then bites it still sorer than the-king's sword But yet will
vér þá hluti gerr fyrir þér skýra síðar meir, ef sýnisk.
we those things more-fully before you explain later more if it-seems